NTT DoCoMo

Manual for

FOMA® D901iS '05.9

おサイフケータイ it-ケータイ FeliCa

Contents/Cautions
Before Using D901iS
Making/ Receiving Calls
Video-phone Calls
Phonebook
Sounds/Displays/Lights
Safety Settings
Camera
i-mode
Mail
i-αppli
i-motion
Mobile Wallet i-mode FeliCa
Data Management
Other Convenient Functions
Network Services
Data Communication
Character Entry
Appendix
Quick Search/INDEX/Quick Reference

DoCoMo W-CDMA System

Thank you for selecting the FOMA D901iS.
Carefully read this manual, as well as the individual manuals for other devices such as the battery pack, before using your FOMA D901iS, and consult the corresponding manuals while using the phone so that you are able to use it correctly and effectively. If you are unclear as to any point indicated in any of these manuals, call the number for General Inquiries that is listed on the back of this manual.
Your FOMA D901iS is a valuable asset. Handle it with care and it will be your trusted partner for years to come.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- The FOMA terminal is cordless so you may not be able to use it in certain locations where signals cannot penetrate, such as in tunnels, underground, in some buildings or outdoors if the signal is weak or you are outside the service area. You also may not be able to use your FOMA terminal on the upper floors of some highrise building, even though there is nothing around you that interferes with the signal. Please note that your call may be disconnected even when the signal is strong (when the signal strength indication shows three bars) and you are not moving.
- When using the FOMA terminal in public, busy or quiet places, be careful not to disturb others.
- Since the FOMA terminal relies on radio transmission, it is theoretically possible for third parties to intercept a call; however, because the W-CDMA system automatically employs a secrecy function for all calls, a third party will pick up nothing but signal noise.
- Since the FOMA terminal operates by the wireless transmission of voices converted to digital signals, if you are in a location where the signal is weak, the original voice may not be accurately reproduced from the received digital signal, therefore, the voice you hear may differ from the original sound of the speaker's voice.
- DoCoMo asks that you keep a separate record (e.g. written copy) of all information you store in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any loss that occurs should the contents of the FOMA terminal's memory be lost or altered.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any such damage or loss.
  Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrusted Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan, inc.
- The FOMA terminal can be used in the FOMA Plus-Area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

Before using this manual

Be sure to thoroughly read this manual before using your FOMA terminal and the UIM (FOMA card). Use with care when storing the manual to avoid losing or misplacing it.

How to refer this manual

- Refer to the front cover and side indexes:
  Look at operation items or functions of the front cover or side indexes.
- Refer to the Contents:
  Look at operation items or functions of the Contents. ☛P2
- Refer to the INDEX:
  Look at operation items or functions of the INDEX. ☛P520
- Refer to the features. ☛P4
- Refer to Quick Search. ☛P518
- Use Quick Reference Manual. ☛P524

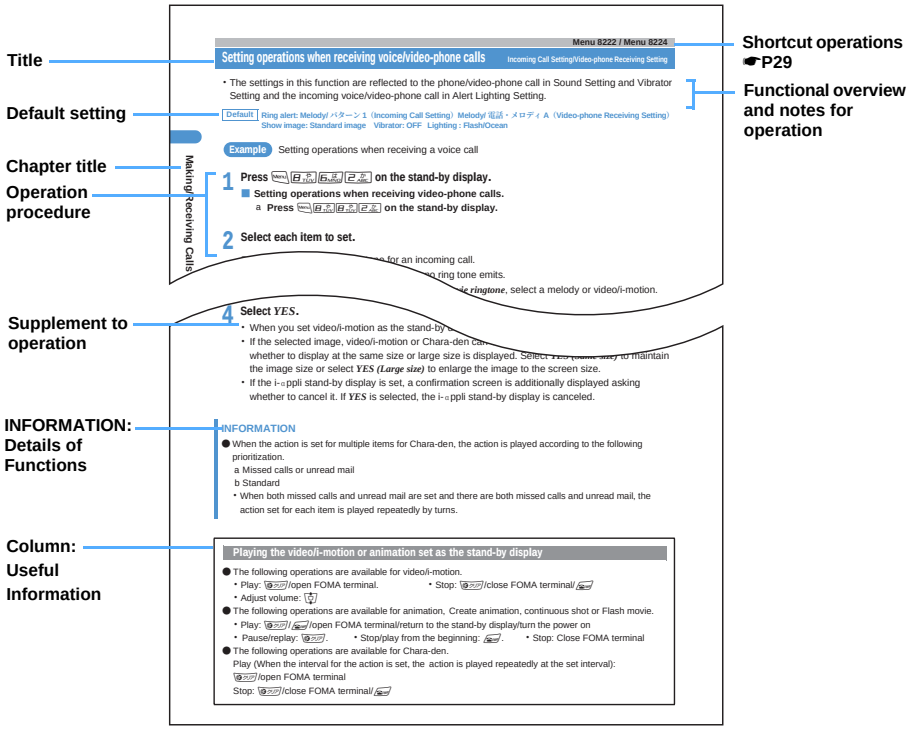
- In the manual for FOMA D901iS, the FOMA D901iS is usually referred to as "FOMA terminal".
- This manual explains functions performed with a miniSD memory card. A miniSD memory card is required separately.
  Before using the miniSD memory card ☛P346
- Unauthorized copying of this manual in whole or in part is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

Note: Before using your FOMA terminal, read "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" on P8.

How to use this manual

Quick Search ☛P518
Quick Reference Manual ☛P524

■ Page layout



※ The above is an example of the page layout in this manual. It may differ from the actual page.

■ Explanatory note

- The operation procedure is mainly explained in shortcut operations. When there are two or more possible procedures, the simplest one is mentioned.
- In this manual, to select an item by placing the cursor with (Easy Selector Plus) and pressing (enter key) is referred to as “select”. Also, the step of pressing which requires after entering characters in the entry field is omitted in description.
- The procedure for entering characters is mainly explained by in-line entry (direct insertion of text into the entry field). ☛P464

INFORMATION

- The images or illustration provided in this manual are for information purposes only and may differ from the actual displays or products.
- In this manual, the i-αppli compatible with Mobile Wallet that supports the IC card function is referred to as “Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli”.
- Some screens do not support the bilingual function and items or buttons may be displayed in Japanese. In this manual, these Japanese words are written by both in Japanese and English only for the first time in a chapter or a section.

Contents

Before using your FOMA terminal ..... Inside front cover
Before using this manual ..... Inside front cover
How to use this manual 1
Features of FOMA D901iS 4
Making full use of D901iS 6
SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (Always follow these directions) 8
Handling instructions 16
About intellectual property rights 18
Basic package and optional accessories 20

Before Using D901iS 21

Names and functions of parts Reading display Menu selection
Using UIM (FOMA card) Attaching/removing battery pack Charging
Battery Level Power ON/OFF Select Language Date and Time Setting
Caller ID Notification Own Number etc.

Making/Receiving Calls 45

Making calls Redial 186/184 Call WORLD CALL Receiving calls Any Key Answer
Open Answer Close Setting Received Calls Volume Ring volume
Response and Hold Driving Mode Answer Machine etc.

Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls 73

Making video-phone calls Receiving video-phone calls Chara-den
Setting images to send Customizing video-phone call display
Video-phone Settings etc.

Phonebook 91

Phonebook New Entry Group Setting Phonebook Search Edit Phonebook
Delete Phonebook Secret Attribute Quick Dial etc.

Sounds/Displays/Lights Settings 111

Sound Setting Vibrator Setting Silent Mode Stand-by Display Setting
Mail/Call Image Setting Alert Lighting Setting Clock Display Format
Information Line Setting etc.

Safety settings 135

Security Code Change Terminal Security Code PIN code All Lock Remote Lock
Self Mode PIM Lock Keypad Dial Lock Privacy Mode Setting
Key Lock Secret Mode etc.

Camera 153

Still Camera Movie Camera Setting for shooting Bar Code Reader etc.

i-mode 179

What's i-mode? Site display Change i-mode Password Internet Connection
Bookmark Screen Memo Save Image i-melody Downloading PDF data
i-mode Setting Message R/F Certificate etc.

Mail 217

Composing and sending i-mode Mail Deco-mail Attachment Saving i-mode Mail Receiving i-mode Mail Check i-mode Message i-motion Mail Display/Save Image Play/Save Melody Mail Setting Chat Mail Composing and sending SMS etc.

i-αppli 285

Download Starting i-αppli i-αppli To function i-αppli Stand-by Display etc.

i-motion 309

i-motion Downloading i-motion i-motion Setting

Mobile Wallet i-mode FeliCa 313

Mobile Wallet Starting Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli IC Card Lock

Displaying/Editing/Managing Data 317

Displaying/Editing images Playing/Editing video/i-motion Chara-den Playing melody miniSD memory card Managing data Infrared communication Sound Recorder Displaying the PDF data etc.

Other Convenient Functions 381

Multiaccess Multitask Edit by Slide Auto Power ON/OFF Alarm Clock Scheduler Custom Menu Own Number Call Duration/Call Cost Rest Call Coast Call Cost Limit Calculator Notepad Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch Reset Delete All Data etc.

Network Services 419

Voice Mail Call Waiting Call Forwarding Nuisance Call Blocking Caller ID Request Dual Network English Guidance Service Dialing Number Arrival Call Act Remote Control etc.

Data Communication 431

Data communication Connecting PC Installing communication configuration file Using FOMA PC configuration software AT command etc.

Character Entry 463

Entering characters 5-touch Input Method Save Phrase Copy Character KUTEN Code Input Save Word Slot Input Method Input Method Setting

Appendix 473

Menu list List of dial keys and character assignments Play Sound Troubleshooting Error Message Warranty and After-Sales Service Software Update Virus Scan Function etc.

Quick Search/INDEX/Quick Reference Manual 517

Quick Search INDEX Quick Reference Manual

Features of FOMA D901iS

FOMA is the name of a set of services provided by DoCoMo based on W-CDMA, which is recognized as one of the systems compliant to the global standard for third generation mobile communications (IMT-2000).

It's amazing because it's i-mode!

i-mode is an online service used with i-mode terminals. This service supports connection to i-mode Sites (Programs) or i-mode compatible Internet web sites that provide a variety of useful information and allows you to exchange i-mode mail.

i-motion

Video/sound can be downloaded from sites to enjoy them. i-motion obtained can be set to a ring tone or incoming image (Movie ringtone). ☛P310

i-motion Mail

Video taken with the built-in camera or i-motion downloaded from sites can be attached to i-mode Mail to send them. ☛P233

Main functions of FOMA D901iS

Mobile Wallet i-mode FeliCa

Downloading the Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli enables you to charge electronic money from sites to the IC card of your FOMA terminal. Also you can use it as an airplane ticket or a reward point card. The Mobile Wallet makes your phone more convenient in daily life. ☛P314

PDF compatible viewer

Allows you to view PDF. You can download useful information such as maps, catalogs and schedules from i-mode or Internet web sites and view it on your i-mode terminal. You don't need to bring books. ☛P200, P375

Video-phone

Allows you to see and talk with others in real time. Using the speaker phone and the out-camera, you can have a conversation and transmit actual views of the surrounding scenery. You can switch a voice call to a video-phone call while talking. ☛P74

Chara-den

Allows you to choose to display a preset character or a downloaded character instead of your image during video-phone calls. A motion and expression can also be attached to the character by key operation. ☛P79, P337

Deco-mail

Allows you to compose and send your original messages. Enjoy expressive decorated mail by changing the character color and size or background color, and by pasting images such as Deco-mail pictures or still images shot with the built-in camera in the text. Since templates can be used with this function, you can create Deco-mail in the same style as for Deco-mail you have received or downloaded form Internet websites. ☛P227

High-capacity i-αppli/i-αppli DX

Downloading i-αppli from sites allows you to enjoy various games and automatically review stock prices and weather information on your phone. I-αppli DX provides better uses in conjunction with i-mode terminal information such as a phonebook and mail. ☛P286

3D x 3D

The powerful 3D graphics and sounds allow you to enjoy realistic games such as car race games. ☛P113, P291

Safety settings

Key Lock

Prevents from the wrong operation of keys. ☛P147

Secret Mode

The phonebook data and the schedule data that have set a secret attribute can not be displayed except when Secret Mode is on. ☛P147

Privacy Mode

By setting Privacy Mode, access to phonebook entries, mail messages, images, schedules, received calls, redials is prevented without entering the terminal security code. You can also set Privacy Mode automatically when you do nothing for a certain period of time on FOMA terminal. ☛P145

Note: For details on other Safety settings, see P135

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Wide array of network services

- Voice Mail Service (charged)*1 ☛P420
- Call Forwarding Service (free of charge)*1 ☛P424
- SMS (Short Message Service) (free of charge)*2 ☛P276
- Call Waiting Service (charged)*1 ☛P422
- Dual Network Service (charged)*1 ☛P427

*1 Separate application is required.
*2 Separate application is not required.

Useful functions

One-push open

You can quickly slide and open your FOMA terminal with one hand at the touch of the one-push open button on the side of the terminal.

Functions working with slide operation

- To receive an incoming call, open FOMA terminal by slide operation. ☛P59
  To put the call on hold or end the conversation, close it. ☛P59
- The reply screen or the edit screen can be displayed by only opening FOMA terminal while a received mail or schedule is displayed. ☛P386

High-quality melody playback

The FOMA terminal also supports ring tones such as PCM generated 64-note harmonic, voice and sound effects, etc. (ADPCM sounds).

Built-in camera

FOMA terminal contains an out-camera and in-camera, which allow you to take images while viewing the large display. You can shoot a still image of up to 4M pixels using auto focus. In addition to Max 28 x zoom, various modes are available for shooting including close-up, framed shooting and continuous shooting. You can activate or deactivate Camera by opening/closing the lens cover. ☛P154
[Out-camera] Effective pixels: 2M
(Max record pixels: 4M)
[In-camera] Effective pixels: 320K
(Max record pixels: 310K)

Multiaccess function

Voice call and packet communication can be used simultaneously. This allows you to talk during an i-mode connection or send/receive mail while talking. ☛P382

Multitask function

Allows you to execute several functions at the same time and perform operations by switching the screen. For example, you can read mail or register phonebook entries while making a call. ☛P384

Simple menu

In addition to the main menu, you can use another menu to display frequently used functions such as でんわ (phone), メール (mail), カメラ (camera) and i モード (i-mode) in large size of characters. ☛P28

High-definition large display

The 2.4-inch TFT LCD (240 x 345 dots) is provided for the display. It clearly displays fine images and characters. There are the QVGA size of main LCD and the information line in a screen. You can display a calendar, note and schedule and check incoming mails on the information line. ☛P133

High-resolution video

Allows you to record or play smooth motion video. Recording and replaying video on the large display of the QVGA size (240 x 320 dots) are possible. ☛P164, P328

Automatic time correction

The time in FOMA terminal is automatically corrected by the information from DoCoMo network. Also you can set the time on your phone ahead or back, if you want. ☛P42

Bar Code Reader

JAN codes or QR codes can be scanned using the built-in camera. You can perform a variety of operations such as registering phonebook entries, connecting to sites and sending mail. ☛P175

Infrared communication/infrared remote control

You can use the infrared communication function to exchange data between two FOMA terminals. In addition, devices that support TV infrared remote control can be operated from your FOMA terminal. ☛P364, P370

Support for miniSD memory card

A miniSD memory card enables you to back up data stored in your FOMA terminal such as images, melodies, phonebook entries and mail messages. ☛P346
You can save video files and music data (i-motion with no image) created by external devices to the miniSD memory card and play them on your FOMA terminal. (Some files may not be played.) ☛P493, P494
By connecting your FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB cable (optional), the miniSD memory card in FOMA terminal can be used as an external memory of a PC. ☛P434

Making full use of D901iS

A variety of functions of D901iS visual communications are explained here.

Chara-den to express your feeling

During video-phone calls, you can send a character instead of your image to have it display on the other party's screen. Actions such as movement and expression can be attached to the character by key operation to express your feeling. ☛P79, P337

Your screen

©BVIG

Press dial keys to have a character make actions

Other party's screen

©BVIG

A character moves

One-shot Message to send images

You can shoot an image with the camera during a voice call and mail it immediately to the other party. ☛P174

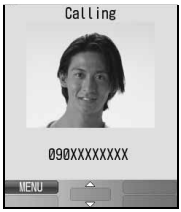
While talking

Shoot an image while talking

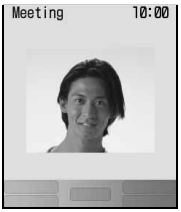
Mail address stored in the phonebook is set and you can easily compose and send mail

Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion) to signal incoming calls and alarms

If i-motion or video recorded with D901iS is set for ring alert, incoming calls are notified by the video with image and voice/sound. You can also register the other party's video in the phonebook. ☛P331
If i-motion or video is set for an alarm or schedule, the set time is informed by the video with image and voice/sound. ☛P388, P392



Set for ring tone



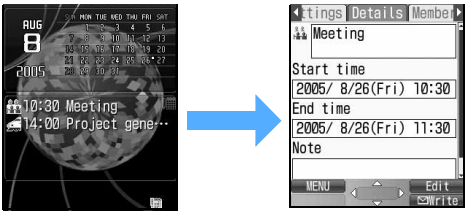
Set for an alarm

Plentiful stand-by display

The slide system allows you to view and check the display quickly on the large screen. Make a selection from various types of clock display. ☛P132
By displaying information on unread mail, missed call, calendar or schedule on the stand-by display, its details screens can be opened with simple operation (Custom stand-by display). ☛P122
In addition, images in a folder you have selected can be displayed at random on the stand-by display. ☛P120

Example of the clock display

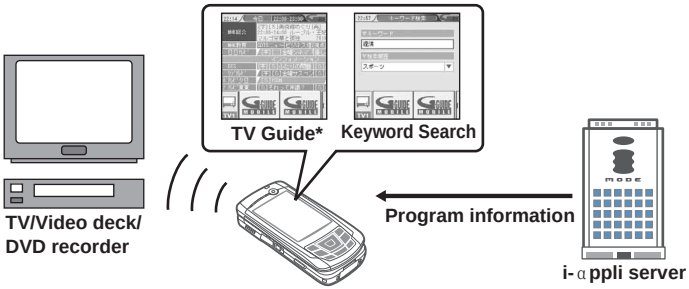
Custom stand-by display



Press ● to select an area **Check the contents**

G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller

The FOMA terminal is equipped with an i-αppli "G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller" for operating the TV, video deck and DVD recorder remotely while viewing the TV program information. You can search for TV program information using keywords such as the program category or your favorite entertainer. In addition, it allows to register a TV program in the FOMA terminal's Scheduler and sound an alarm when the TV program starts. ☛P296



* The display shown here represents an example and may differ from the actual display. Channels according to the home area are displayed.

Information line display

You can display a calendar, note and schedule on the information line and check them during another operation. In addition, this function notice you incoming mail and Message R/F. ☛P133

Example of a calendar **Example of a schedule** **Example of new incoming mail***

Information line

* In this case, Display Priority is set in ***Continue operation***. You can check out incoming mail on the information line while continuing operations on the screen.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (Always follow these directions)

- Read the following SAFETY PRECAUTIONS to ensure that the phone is used correctly. Also, store this manual in a convenient location for future reference.
- It is essential that these precautions be observed to prevent injury to the user and third parties as well as damage to property.
- **The following symbols are used to indicate the degree of danger or damage that may result from failing to follow the specified precautions.**

DANGER	Indicates an imminently hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.
WARNING	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.
CAUTION	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, may result in injury or property damage.

- **The following symbols are used to highlight instructions that are very important and that must be strictly followed.**

This indicates the action is prohibited.			
	This indicates disassembly is prohibited.		This indicates the part must not be exposed to water.
	This indicates that handling with wet hands is prohibited.		

	This indicates an action that must be performed in accordance with the directions.
	This indicates you must remove the plug from the power outlet.

- **The SAFETY PRECAUTIONS are separated into six categories.**

Handling the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (and charger) and UIM (general information) P9
Handling the FOMA terminal P10
Handling the battery pack P11
Handling optional devices (AC adapter/DC adapter/desktop holder/in-car holder) P13
Handling the UIM (FOMA card) P14
Using the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of medical devices P15

DANGER

Use only DoCoMo-certified battery packs, adapters (and chargers) with the FOMA terminal.
Use of non-specified items could cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack or other devices to leak, overheat, rupture, catch fire or malfunction.

Battery pack: D04 Desktop holder: D04 Rear cover: D04
FOMA AC adapter: 01 FOMA DC adapter: 01
For additional details about compatible products, check with your nearest DoCoMo service center.

Do not expose the FOMA terminal to water.
The FOMA terminal may overheat, cause electric shock, fire or damage if exposed to water, pet urine or other liquids. Do not use the FOMA terminal in locations where it could get wet.

WARNING

Be sure to turn off the FOMA terminal before entering a place such as a gas station that is subject to flammable gases. Do not charge in such a place. Charging could cause fire.
When using Osaifu-Keitai inside a gas station, make sure to turn off the FOMA terminal in advance. (If IC Card Lock is set, cancel the lock and then turn the power off.)

Do not place the battery pack, FOMA terminal or adapter (and charger) in a microwave oven, pressure cooker or other cooking devices.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and could damage the circuitry of the FOMA terminal and adapter (and charger), causing overheat, smoke or fire.

Do not expose the components to strong shocks by dropping or throwing them.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and damage the equipment, resulting in fire.

Do not use or place the components close to a fire, stove or other heating devices.
Doing so could cause to overheat, rupture or catch fire.

Do not let the recharging terminal and external device terminal touch any conductive material, such as a piece of metal or lead. Also do not put any conductive material into the recharging terminal and external device terminal.
The battery can short-circuit, causing burns and damage.

Carry out the following immediately should you detect smoke, strange smells or some other malfunction.
1. **Remove the power plug from the power outlet or power socket.**
2. **Turn off the FOMA terminal.**
3. **Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.**

In such a situation, continuing to use (charge) the equipment could cause fire or other failure.
Remove the battery pack and contact your nearest DoCoMo service center.

CAUTION

Keep out of the reach of small children.
The components can be accidentally swallowed, resulting in injury.

Do not place the components on an unstable or tilted surface.
Doing so could cause the equipment to slide off, possibly causing personal injury or damaging the equipment.

When a child uses the FOMA terminal, first be sure an experienced adult teaches proper usage methods and techniques. Observe the child to determine that they are using the FOMA terminal correctly.
Failure to do so could result in injury.

Do not store in locations subject to high temperature and humidity or excessive dust.
Doing so could damage the equipment.

Do not use or leave the components in locations exposed to direct sunlight or other hot locations such as a car exposed to the hot sun.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire, and the equipment to malfunction or deform. Part of the case may become very hot, causing burn injuries, etc.

Handling the FOMA terminal

⚠ WARNING

Turn off the FOMA terminal inside an aircraft, hospital or other location where use of mobile phones is prohibited.
The FOMA terminal may interfere with the correct functioning of electronic equipments. If the automatic power on function is used, cancel the setting and turn the power off. Observe any regulations posted in medical facilities.
If you have done prohibition acts such as using the FOMA terminal inside an aircraft, you may be punished as stipulated by law.

Turn off the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of electronic equipment that relies on high-precision control or faint signals.
The FOMA terminal may interfere with the correct functioning of such electronic equipment.
Examples: hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators, other medical devices, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatically controlled equipment.
Users of such medical equipments should check with the electronic equipment or device manufacturer with respect to the effect of electromagnetic interference.

Do not use the FOMA terminal while driving.
Use of the FOMA terminal in vehicles could cause unsafe driving conditions. Park the car in a safe place before using the phone or use Driving Mode.
From November 1, 2004, the Road Traffic Law has been revised and using mobile phones while driving is set as the object of penal regulations.

Do not hold the FOMA terminal close to your ear during speakerphone operation.
Doing so could cause the hearing loss.

Do not place the FOMA terminal in a breast or inner pocket if you are carrying or using electronic medical equipment.
The FOMA terminal could cause any medical equipment in its vicinity to malfunction.

People with weak hearts should take care with respect to setting the incoming vibrator and ring volume.
The FOMA terminal may interfere hearts.

Do not disassemble or alter.
Doing so could cause fire, injury, electric shock or damage to the equipment.

Do not aim the infrared port at your eyes and attempt to transmit.
Eyes could be affected. Aiming at other infrared devices and transmitting could cause other devices to malfunction.

Do not turn on the compact light toward eyes at close range.
Taking a look at compact light directly affects your eyes damage. You may be blinded by the light and injury could result.

Do not place your FOMA terminal in an area over an air bag or in an air bag deployment area such as on a dashboard in a vehicle.
If the air bag inflates, the FOMA terminal may hit you and injury and damage to itself could result.

Do not aim the compact light toward oncoming vehicles or other drivers.
The other driver could be temporarily blinded or momentarily startled, causing an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

Rarely, some FOMA terminal users may develop itching, skin irritation or eczema. If such a condition occurs, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and seek medical attention.
Metal is used in the following components:

Part	Material
Easy Selector Plus, Mail, Web, Camera and one-push open button	Chromium plating

If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, immediately turn the power off and move to a safe location.
Use of the phone in such a situation could expose you to lightning strikes or electric shock.

Do not allow water or other liquids, pieces of metal or other foreign material to enter into the UIM slot and a miniSD memory card slot of the FOMA terminal.
Doing so could cause fire, electric shock, or damage to the FOMA terminal.

Do not swing the FOMA terminal around by the strap.
Doing so could cause injury to yourself or a third party or damage the phone.

Do not bring magnetic cards, etc. near the FOMA terminal.
Magnetic data stored on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, and floppy disks may be corrupted or lost.

Use in certain makes of cars may affect onboard electronic equipment.
Continued use under such conditions could cause unsafe driving. Do not use the FOMA terminal in such a case.

Do not hold your finger inside when closing the FOMA terminal.
Doing so could cause injury.

Do not use the compact light for purposes other than for use with the camera.
The compact light is turned off if no action is taken. In such a case, the surrounding environment could suddenly become dark, possibly inadvertently causing an accident.

Handling the battery pack

■Check the battery type indicated on the battery pack label.

Indication	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium ion battery

⚠ DANGER

If electrolyte from the battery pack gets in your eyes, do not rub; instead, rinse immediately with copious amounts of clean water and seek medical attention.
Doing so could cause the loss of vision.

Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.

Do not attach metallic materials such as wire to the port. Do not carry or store the battery pack together with a necklace or other metallic items.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.

Do not pierce the battery pack with nails, hammer on it or step on it.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.

Do not disassemble or alter. Do not directly solder.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.

When you attach the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, never attempt to forcefully insert, because it should slide in easily and fit correctly. Check the direction of the battery pack and try again.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.

Do not use or place the battery pack close to a fire, stove or other heating devices.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.

WARNING

Should any electrolyte from the battery pack come into contact with your skin or clothing, immediately stop using the battery and rinse with clean water.
Failure to do so could cause skin injuries.

If you notice any unusual conditions such as strange odors, overheating, discoloration or deformation while using, charging or storing the battery pack, immediately detach it from the FOMA terminal and stop using it.
Continued use under such conditions could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.

Stop charging if it is not possible to fully charge the battery pack within the specified time.
Failure to do so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.

If the battery pack leaks or emits strange odors, immediately stop using it, and always keep away from sources of fire.
Failure to do so could cause the battery liquid to catch fire, and the battery pack itself to rupture.

Do not use or leave the battery pack in areas exposed to direct sunlight or other hot locations such as in a car left in the hot sun.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak or overheat, and lead to loss of performance or shorten battery life.

CAUTION

Do not dispose of the battery pack with other regular household waste.
Failure to properly dispose of the battery pack in an environmentally sensitive manner could cause the battery pack to catch fire and damage the environment. Use tape to cover the terminal of battery pack when it is no longer in use and take it to any DoCoMo service center. Alternatively, you can also dispose of the battery pack in accordance with local regulations.

WARNING

Use care not to short circuit the recharging terminal when the adapter (and charger) is connected to a wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not touch the recharging terminal with your hands or fingers, or some other part of the body.
Doing so could cause fire, equipment failure, electric shock or other injury.

Do not use the AC adapter and desktop holder in bathrooms or other potentially high humidity locations.
Doing so could cause electric shock.

When the adapter (and charger) is not to be used for a prolonged period, disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.
Failure to do so could result in electric shock, fire, or equipment failure.

If the adapter (and charger) or holder is exposed to water or other liquid, immediately disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
Failure to do so could result in electric shock, smoke or fire.

Do not disassemble or alter the adapter (and charger) or holder.
Doing so could result in electric shock, fire, or equipment failure.

Be sure the power plug is free of dust.
Failure to do so could cause the equipment to catch fire.

During charging, place the adapter (and charger) and desktop holder in a stable location. Do not cover or wrap the adapter (and charger) and desktop holder with a cloth or blanket, etc.
Using the equipment under such conditions could cause the FOMA terminal to be detached from the holder, or cause a heat buildup that leads to fire or equipment failure.

Do not touch the adapter (and charger) cord or wall outlet with wet hands.
Doing so could cause electric shock.

Never use the adapter (or charger) when it has a damaged power cord.
Failure to do so could result in electric shock, overheat or fire.

When connected to a wall outlet, make sure that the AC adapter does not come into contact with metallic straps or other metal objects and the plug is properly seated.
Failure to do so could result in electric shock, short circuit, or fire.

Use the designated power source and correct voltage.
Use of incorrect voltage could cause fire or equipment failure. When using your FOMA terminal overseas, use the FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter 01.

AC adapter: 100V AC
FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter
: 100V to 240V
(Always connect to the outlet for internal household use.)
DC adapter: 12V DC, 24V DC
(specific for negative ground) vehicle)

Use only the specified fuse for the DC adapter.
Use of the incorrect fuse could cause fire or equipment failure. Check the instruction manual for details of the correct fuse to use.

The DC adapter is for use with negative ground cars. Never use them with positive ground cars.
Doing so could result in fire.

Do not touch the FOMA terminal and AC/DC adapter when hearing thunder.
Contact with the FOMA terminal and adapter could cause you lightning strikes or electric shock.

If it is difficult to disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet, do not attempt to forcefully disconnect.
Doing so could damage the equipment, resulting in electric shock or accident.

Do not carry out using beyond the rating of a wall outlet or wiring accessories.
Using in excess of rating such as plugging too many leads into a single socket could cause overheat or fire.

CAUTION

Disconnect the power plug before beginning any maintenance.
Failure to do so could cause electric shock.

Do not yank on the adapter (and charger) cord or power cord when disconnecting the adapter (and charger) from the wall outlet.
Doing so could damage the cord, resulting in electric shock or fire.

Do not place heavy objects on the adapter (and charger) cord or power cord.
Doing so could cause electric shock or fire.

Never attempt to charge the battery pack when it is wet.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to overheat, rupture or catch fire.

Handling the UIM (FOMA card)

WARNING

Do not place the UIM in a microwave oven, pressure cooker or other heating devices.
Doing so could cause the UIM to melt, overheat, generate smoke, resulting in failure and loss of data.

CAUTION

Store the UIM out of reach of small children.
The UIM can be accidentally swallowed, resulting in injury.

Do not use or place the UIM close to a fire, stove or other heating devices.
Doing so could cause the UIM to melt, overheat, generate smoke, resulting in failure and loss of data.

Take care when removing the UIM.
Failure to do so could cause injury to hand and fingers.

Do not touch the IC or short-circuit it.
Doing so could cause data loss and failure.

Do not expose the UIM to the heat or throw it into a fire.
Doing so could cause the UIM to melt, overheat, generate smoke, resulting in failure and loss of data.

Do not bend or place heavy objects on the UIM.
Doing so could cause the UIM to fail.

Do not damage the IC.
Doing so could cause the UIM to fail.

Do not drop the UIM or expose it to shock.
Doing so could cause the UIM to fail.

Do not expose the UIM to water.
Exposing the UIM to water, urine from pet and other liquids could cause the UIM to fail.

Do not disassemble or alter the UIM.
Doing so could cause data loss or damage.

Use the UIM only with devices designated by NTT DoCoMo.
Using the UIM with other devices could lead to data loss or failure. Consult a DoCoMo service center for details on what devices the UIM can be used with.

Do not store the UIM in a location exposed to direct sunlight, high temperature and high humidity.
Doing so could cause the UIM to fail.

Do not store the UIM in a dusty location.
Doing so could cause the UIM to fail.

Using the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of medical devices

The information given below conforms to the guidelines set forth by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phone units.

WARNING

Turn off the FOMA terminal on packed trains or in crowded places as someone with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be nearby.
The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.

When inside a medical institution, always remember the following guidelines:

- Never take the FOMA terminal inside an operating room, intensive care unit (ICU) or coronary care unit (CCU).
- Always turn off the FOMA terminal in hospital wards.
- Even in the lobby and other areas, always turn off the FOMA terminal when electronic medical equipment is nearby.
- Follow the directives of the medical institution. There may be specific regulations as to items that are prohibited or use of which is restricted.
- If you are using the automatic power on function, cancel the setting and turn off the power.

If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, keep your FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from it.
The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.

If you are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators at your home or outside the confines of a medical institution, be sure to check with the manufacturer about possible adverse effects caused by electromagnetic interference.
The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of electronic medical equipment.

Handling instructions

General

●Do not get the components wet.

The FOMA terminal, battery pack and adapter (and charger) are not waterproof. Avoid using the components in a bathroom or other high humidity areas or locations exposed to rain. If you carry the components, sweat could cause internal corrosion that leads to equipment failure. As a result of investigation, if component failure is found to be water-related, repair is not covered by the warranty and may not be able to be performed.
In such a case, should it be found to be possible to repair the unit, you will be billed for all repairs.

●Clean the components with a soft, dry cloth.

- Clean the components using a soft, dry cloth (such as a lens cloth).
- Using alcohol, thinner, benzene or detergents could cause the printed text to fade or disappear, or the equipment to become discolored.

●Occasionally clean the terminals with a dry cotton swab.

Dirty terminals could cause intermittent contact that could interrupt the flow of power to the unit. Such a situation also causes insufficient charging. Use a dry cloth or cotton swab to clean the terminal.

●Do not place the components near an air conditioner vent.

Sudden changes in temperature could cause condensation, leading to corrosion inside the components and equipment failure.

●Do not place the FOMA terminal in locations where it could be exposed to excessive pressure.

Do not place it in a bag together with many other things or in your pocket when you sit down as this could exert pressure on the LCD or damage the internal boards, resulting in equipment failure. Damage arising from such causes is not covered by the warranty.

●Carefully read the instruction manuals supplied with the battery and adapter (and charger) before use.

FOMA terminal

●Avoid extremely high or low temperatures.

Use in an environment with an ambient temperature of 5-35 ℃ and relative humidity of 45-85 %.

●If the FOMA terminal is used near a radios, televisions or general subscriber phone, it could affect such equipment. Use the phone as far away from such equipment as possible.

●With regard to data stored in the FOMA terminal, keep it separately in a memo, etc. so as not to permanently lose important data.

NTT DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of stored data.

●Do not put the FOMA terminal in your back pocket and sit on it. Avoid putting the phone in the bottom of a bag, etc. where it is subject to excessive pressure.

Damaged may result.

●Do not close the FOMA terminal with the strap held inside.

Malfunction or damage may result.

●Use the hand strap while holding the FOMA terminal.

Failure to do so could cause you to drop the phone, resulting in equipment failure.

●Usually, use the FOMA terminal with the earphone/microphone terminal cap, external device terminal cap, and the miniSD memory card slot cover closed.

Failure to do so could allow water or other contaminants to get inside the unit, causing equipment failure.

●Do not aim the camera directly at the sun and leave it.

Elements may be discolored or baked.

●It is normal for the FOMA terminal to become warm during using or recharging. You can continue to use it while warm.

●Do not attach a thick seal on the back side of the display or on the keypad face.

Malfunction or damage may result.

Battery pack

●The battery pack will gradually wear out.

Battery life also depends on how you use the battery pack; you know it is time to replace it when the usage time is very short even though you fully charge it. The specified battery pack can be purchased separately.

●Recharge the battery pack in locations where the ambient temperature is between 5 ℃ and 35 ℃.

●When using for the first time or after a long period of non-use, be sure to fully charge the battery pack before use.

●The time of use provided by the battery pack depends on the ambient conditions and the condition of the battery pack itself.

●Do not dispose of the battery pack with other regular household waste.

Tape the terminals of battery packs that are no longer needed and take them to an DoCoMo service center. Alternately, you can also dispose of the battery pack in accordance with local regulations.

●Do not the battery lose power when not in use.

When you do not use your phone for a long time, please detach the battery from the FOMA terminal and keep it in a cool area. Charge the discharged battery once every 6 months.

Adapter (and charger)

●Recharge the battery pack in a location where the ambient temperature is between 5 ℃ and 35 ℃. Do not recharge in the following locations:

- Locations that are subject to high humidity, dust or excessive vibration
- Near general subscriber phones, TVs or radios

●It is normal for the adapter (and charger) to become warm during recharging. You can continue charging with a warm adapter.

●When the battery pack is recharged using the DC adapter, always keep the car engine running.

Failure to do so could cause the car battery to run down more quickly than normal.

●When an outlet with falling prevention mechanism is used, check the instruction manual for the outlet before use.

●Do not expose to the strong shock and deform the recharging terminal.

Giving the strong shock on an adapter can cause damage.

UIM (FOMA card)

●Do not place an excessive load on the UIM when inserting it into the terminal.

●The UIM becomes warm during use. This is normal and not a cause for concern.

●Note that any card failures resulting from inserting the UIM in an IC card reader/writer not designated by NTT DoCoMo are the responsibility of the customer.

●Make sure that the IC is kept clean.

●Use a clean dry cloth for cleaning the UIM.

●It is recommended that users maintain data stored on the UIM in some other form.

If the data should be erased, NTT DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

●Any UIMs that are no longer needed should be returned to an DoCoMo service center for proper disposal.

●Avoid extremely high or low temperature.

[Shooting and sending images]
When you shoot images or send those images as mail attachments, pay careful attention not to infringe intellectual property rights such as copyrights and other rights including the right of portrait and right to privacy. If you infringe other's rights or shoot or send images as mail attachments that cause a nuisance or are against public order or morality, you may be punished as stipulated by law or be the subject of legal action claiming compensation.

If you should use the FOMA terminal to make a public nuisance, you might be punished under the laws and bylaws such as Japan's nuisance prevention ordinance.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

About intellectual property rights

Copyrights and portrait rights

Except in cases where reproduction and quoting for private use is sanctioned under copyright laws, the reproduction, alteration and public transmission of such content as text, images, music or software for which another party owns the copyrights, whether accomplished by using this product to photograph or record that content or by downloading it from Internet websites, is prohibited without the permission of the owner.
Taking photographs or recordings of such events as performances and exhibitions may be prohibited even for purposes of private use.
In addition, if you use this product to take a another person's photograph without their permission, or display such a photograph without their permission on an Internet website and make that content public to an indeterminate number of people, you may be in violation of portrait rights.

Trademarks

Company names and trade names used in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-motion", "i-mode", "i-αppli", "i-αppli search", "i-melody", "i-anime", "DoPa", "mopera", "mopera U", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Drive Mode", "Short Mail", "i-motion mail", "Deco-mail", "Chaku-motion", "Mobile Wallet" "Chara-den", "Multiaccess", "i-αppli DX", "i-shot", "i-area", "Dual Network", "QUICKCAST", "FirstPass", "sigmarion", "Security Scan", "musea", and the FOMA and i-mode logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo.
- "キャッチホン (Call Waiting)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Microsoft® and Windows® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the US and other countries.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- "Multitask" is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- is a trademark of FeliCa Networks Inc.
- This product contains NetFront v3.0 for FOMA to provide Internet functionality.
  NetFront v3.0 is a product of ACCESS CO., LTD. Copyright© 1996-2005, ACCESS CO., LTD.
  NetFront and NetFront® are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
  This software contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

- This product contains Macromedia® Flash™ Player technology of Macromedia, Inc.
  Copyright© 1995-2005 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved.
  Macromedia, Flash, and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- McAfee and VirusScan are registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
  All other registered and unregistered trademarks herein are the sole property of their respective owners.
  ©2004 Networks Associates Technology, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- QR code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.
- This product contains Adobe Reader of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
  Copyright© 2005 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Patents pending.
  Adobe, the Adobe logo and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
- miniSD™ and miniSD are trademarks of the SD Card Association.
- Powered By Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™
  Mascot Capsule® is a registered trademark of HI CORPORATION.
- G-GUIDE Mobile and the G-GUIDE Mobile logo are trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. in Japan. G-GUIDE, G-Code and the G-GUIDE logo are registered trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. in Japan.
- “電車で GO！” is a trademark of TAITO CORPORATION.
  ©TAITO CORPORATION 1996, 2005 ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.
  Commercialization is licensed by JR East Japan, JR West Japan, JR KYUSHU, and Hokuetsu express.
- “ウゴクフォトミラクル” is a trademark of FUJI PHOTO FILM CO., LTD.
  ©2005 FUJI PHOTO FILM CO., LTD. All Rights Reserved.
  ©2005 IMJ Corporation. All Rights Reserved.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- “Privacy Mode” is a registered trademark of FUJITSU.
- In addition to the above, company names and trade names used in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

Other rights and responsibilities

- ＦｅｌｉＣａ is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
- “Edy” is a brand of the electronic money service provided by bitWallet, Inc.
- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. The use of MPEG-4 Video Codec function is allowed for personal and nonprofit use only in the following cases:
  - ・Recording videos that conform to MPEG-4 Visual Standard (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
  - ・Playing MPEG-4 Videos recorded personally by consumers not engaged in profit activities
  - ・Playing MPEG-4 Videos supplied from the provider licensed from MPEG LA

  For further utilizing such as promotion, in-house use or profit-making business, please contact MPEG LA, LLC in the US.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

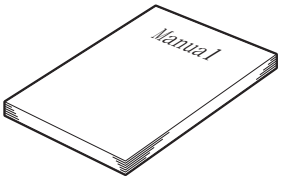
4,901,307	5,600,754	5,267,261	5,506,865	5,710,784
5,504,773	5,416,797	5,568,483	5,228,054	5,778,338
5,109,390	5,490,165	5,414,796	5,544,196	
5,535,239	5,101,501	5,659,569	5,337,338	
5,267,262	5,511,073	5,056,109	5,657,420	

Basic package and optional accessories

Basic package

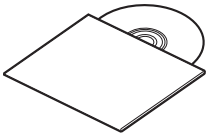
FOMA D901iS
(including the written warranty and the rear cover D04)

Instruction manual
(this book)



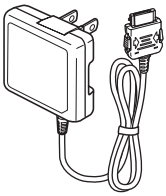
Quick Reference Manual is appended on P524.

CD-ROM for FOMA D901iS

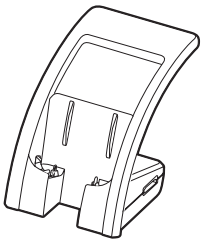


Optional accessories

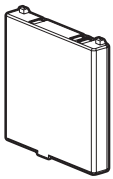
FOMA AC adapter 01
(including the written warranty and the instruction manual)



Desktop holder D04
(including the instruction manual)



Battery pack D04
(including the instruction manual)

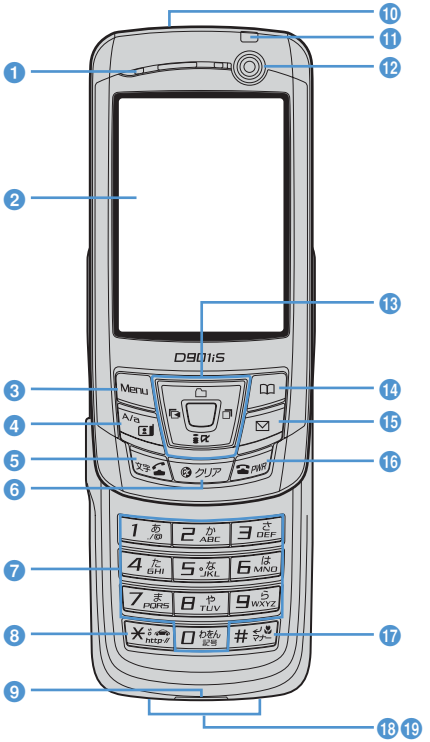


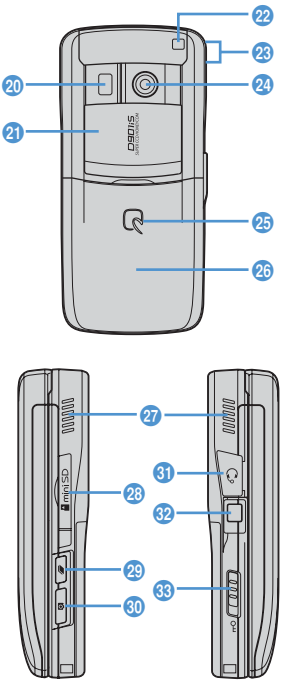
• Other optional accessories ☛P492

Before Using D901iS

Names and functions of parts 22
Reading display 24
Selecting the menu.....27
Number of saved, registered and protected items in FOMA terminal 33
Using the UIM (FOMA card) 34
Attaching/removing the battery pack 36
Charging the battery 37
Checking the remaining battery level..... Battery Level 40
Turning the power on/off ..... Power ON/OFF 41
Switching to English ..... Select Language 42
Setting the date and time..... Date and Time Setting 42
Notifying your phone number to the other party..... Caller ID Notification 44
Checking your own phone number..... Own Number 44

Names and functions of parts





Size (mm)：106 (H) x 50 (W) x 24 (D)
(when closed)
Weight (g)：Approx. 128
(with battery pack)

1. **Earpiece**
   Caller's voice comes out of here.
2. **Display** ☛P24
3. **MENU/upper left soft/Silent Mode key**
   Use this key to display menus, perform the operation shown in the upper left part of the guide row, set/cancel Silent Mode, etc.
4. **Start video-phone/scroll/lower left soft key**
   Use this key to make/answer video-phone calls, make video-phone calls using the speakerphone function, scroll mail or site display by a page, switch between upper/lower cases when entering characters, perform the operation shown in the lower left part of the guide row, etc.
5. **Start voice call/speakerphone/character key**
   Use this key to make/answer voice calls, switch between ordinary and speakerphone calls, switch input modes for entering characters, etc.
6. **Clear key**
   Use this key to delete entry, return to the previous screen, set/cancel Self Mode, etc. On the i-αppli stand-by display, press this key to start i-αppli.
7. **Dial keys**
   Used to enter phone numbers and text and to select menu items.
8. **✳ /Driving Mode key**
   Use this key to enter "✳", set/cancel Driving Mode, switch screen modes during the camera use, etc.
9. **Microphone**
   Picks up your voice.
10. **Infrared data port** ☛P364
    Exchange data with the infrared communication.
11. **Call indicator**
    Lights or flashes when a call or mail is received, FOMA terminal is opened/closed, Camera is activated, etc. The lighting color and pattern can be set (☛P130). Lights or flashes for new information. Lights in red during charging.
12. **In-camera** ☛P85, P154
    Used to shoot yourself or send your image during a video-phone call.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

13 **Easy Selector Plus**

Enter key

Use this key to perform the selected operation, activate Focus Mode, start i-αppli set for One-touch Button, etc.

Data Box/Movie Camera/ ↑ key

Use this key to display Data Box menu, activate Movie Camera, move the cursor upward, adjust volume, etc.

i-mode/i-αppli/ ↓ key

Use this key to display i-mode menu or i-αppli folder list, move the cursor downward, adjust volume, etc.

Received Calls/ ←(previous) Key

Use this key to display the received call history, switch between pages, move the cursor leftward, set/cancel Privacy Mode, etc.

Redial/ →(next) key

Use this key to display the redial data, switch between pages, move the cursor rightward, set/cancel IC Card Lock etc.

14 **Phonebook/schedule/upper right soft key**

Use this key to display the phonebook or schedule, perform the operation shown in the upper right part of the guide row, etc.

15 **Mail/scroll/lower right soft key**

Use this key to display Mail menu, compose new mail, scroll mail or site display by a page, perform the operation shown in the lower right part of the guide row, etc.

16 **Power/End/Hold key**

Use this key to turn the power on/off, place incoming calls on hold, end calls or functions in operation, cancel Secret Mode, etc.

17 **#/Silent Mode/line-feed key**

Use this key to enter "#", set/cancel Silent Mode, start a new line when entering characters, etc. Switches between the standard mode and the macro mode during the out-camera use.

18 **Charging terminals**

Used when charging FOMA terminal in the desktop holder.

19 **External connection terminals** ☛P39, P435

Used to connect various optional accessories.

20 **Compact light** ☛P87, P159, P164

Used during the out-camera use. Lights or flashes in red when shooting still images or videos (however, when the Compact light is turned on for shooting, the red light may be difficult to see).

21 **Lens cover** ☛P155

22 **Strap opening**

23 **Antenna (built-in)**

Take care not to cover the built-in antenna with your hand so that you can use FOMA terminal on better conditions.

24 **Out-camera** ☛P85, P154

Used to shoot still images or videos or send images during a video-phone call.

25 **FeliCa mark**

The mark means that a piece of IC card is mounted. Use IC card functions by placing the marked side over the external device (reader/writer). The IC card cannot be detached.

26 **Rear cover**

27 **Speaker**

Ring tone and other sounds come out of here. When the speakerphone function is used, the voice of the other party comes out.

28 **miniSD memory card slot** ☛P350

Insert the miniSD memory card in this slot to use it.

29 **TASK key** ☛P382, P384

Use this key during Multiaccess or Multitask.

30 **Answer Machine/shutter key**

Use this key to display Answer Machine/Voice Memo menu, use Quick Record Message, activate Camera and shoot images, stop ring tone/alarm sound, etc.

Note: has 2 positions: half press and full press for shooting images with auto focus, so the feel of pressing this key is different from other keys.

31 **Earphone/microphone jack**

Used to connect a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional).

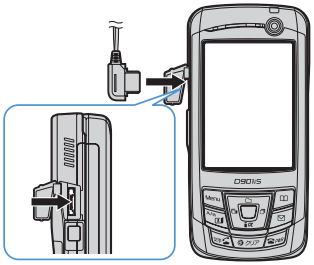
32 **One-push open button**

Use this button to open FOMA terminal.

33 **Keylock switch** ☛P147

Use this key to set/cancel Key Lock.

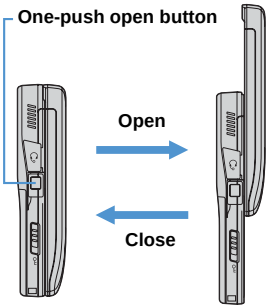
Connecting to earphone/microphone set with switch



Note: You can plug in a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) and use it. Using the earphone jack converter adapter P001 allows you to use an existing earphone/microphone set.

Opening/closing FOMA terminal

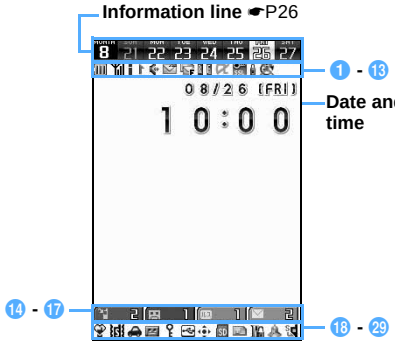
To open FOMA terminal, press the one-push open button. To close it, slide the front face (with the display) downward.



- Operations such as accessing the screen to reply to mail or to edit schedules or notes are made easily by opening FOMA terminal. ☛P243, P393, P410
- FOMA terminal allows you to make calls without opening it. You can also answer an incoming call by opening FOMA terminal and end or put on hold the call by closing it. ☛P59

Reading display

The description of icons displayed at the top or the bottom of the display are shown below:



Note: The background images on the stand-by display shown in this manual are for example purposes only. You can change the stand-by display to your favorite image. ☛P118

1 : Battery level ☛P40
漢/半/半/半/全/全/全/鍵
: Character input mode ☛P464

2 : Received signal level ☛P41
圏外 : Out of service area ☛P41
self : Self Mode is set ☛P143
: During data transfer ☛P432
Infrared communication in progress ☛P365
Accessing miniSD memory card ☛P350, P354, P356
In the miniSD mode ☛P434
Data link software in progress ☛P493

3 : In i-mode communication (during i-mode connection) ☛P186
: In i-mode communication (during packet communication) ☛P207, P240

4 : Infrared communication in progress ☛P365
Infrared remote control function in operation ☛P370

5 : Speakerphone function in operation ☛P47
: USB hands-free communication in progress ☛P55
: Total call cost exceeds the maximum limit ☛P408

6 *1 : i-mode Mail and Message R/F storage space is full in the Center *2 ☛P241, P208
/ / : i-mode Mail or Message R/F storage space is full in the Center ☛P241, P208
: Unreceived i-mode Mail and Message R/F in the Center ☛P241, P208
/ / : Unreceived i-mode Mail or Message R/F in the Center ☛P241, P208

7 *1 : Unread i-mode Mail or SMS storage space is full and SMS storage space is full on UIM ☛P279
: Unread i-mode Mail or SMS storage space is full ☛P241, P279
: SMS full on UIM ☛P279

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

: Unread i-mode Mail and SMS exist ☛P240, P278
: Unread i-mode Mail exists ☛P240
: Unread SMS exists ☛P278

8 / (blue/red)
: Unread Message R exists/unread Message R storage space is full ☛P207

9 / (green/red)
: Unread Message F exists/unread Message F storage space is full ☛P207

10 : i-αppli running ☛P290
: i-αppli stand-by display on ☛P121
: Blinks while starting i-αppli from the i-αppli stand-by display ☛P303
: i-αppli DX running ☛P290
: i-αppli DX stand-by display on ☛P121
: Blinks while starting i-αppli from the i-αppli DX stand-by display ☛P303

11 : Displaying SSL page, using i-αppli downloaded from SSL pages and in SSL communication with i-αppli ☛P187

12 : Secret Mode is set ☛P147

13 : i-αppli auto start failed ☛P302

14 : Number of missed calls ☛P32

15 : Number of recorded messages ☛P32

16 : Number of new voice mail messages ☛P32

17 : Number of unread mail ☛P32

18 : Silent Mode is set ☛P117
: Customize Silent Mode is set ☛P117

19 : Ring alert volume is silent ☛P63
: Vibrator for incoming voice call is set ☛P115
: Ring alert volume is silent and vibrator for incoming voice call is set ☛P63, P115

20 : Driving Mode is set ☛P67

21 : Answer Machine is set ☛P69
: Recorded messages full ☛P69

22 : Key Lock is set (in gray when Key Lock is temporarily released) ☛P147

23 : Using video-phone from external device via USB ☛P89
USB cable connected ☛P435

24 / :Effective Easy Selector Plus keys in Focus Mode ☛P32

25 : miniSD memory card inserted ☛P350

26 : Reading UIM ☛P41

*1 : IC Card Lock is set ☛P316

27 : PIM Lock is set ☛P143

*1 : Keypad Dial Lock is set ☛P144

28 : Alarm Clock is set ☛P388
: Schedule alarm is set ☛P392
: Alarm Clock and schedule alarm are set simultaneously

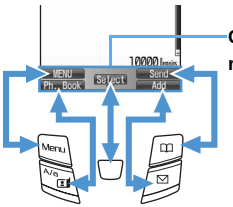
29 : Software Update reserved ☛P509

*1 The current highest priority item is displayed. These icons are listed in the order of priority from the top.
*2 Displayed when the storage space for either i-mode Mail or Message R/F is full and other unreceived mail/ messages exist.

Reading the guide row

Operations that can be executed by pressing Menu, A/a, , , and are displayed in the guide row.

Example Guide row for the mail composition screen



Display positions and keys correspond as shown in the figure. In this manual, the operations displayed in the guide row are explained using the corresponding keys (Menu, A/a, , ,).
The operations displayed in the guide row differ depending on the screen.

- on the guide row corresponds to of the Easy Selector Plus (it may be different depending on the used function or site).

Reading the information line

You can set to show a calendar, note or schedule on the information line. ☛P133
Also, when Camera is activated, the setting status icon is shown (☛P156); when receiving mails/ messages, the reception result is scrolled.

Example 1 week calendar

Information line

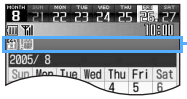
- If ***Partial display*** in Information Line Setting is set to ***ON*** and you do not press any key for about 90 seconds, the date/time and various icons* (battery level, received signal level, received mail status, missed calls, Silent Mode and Key Lock) are displayed on the information line.

* During a call, various icons (Battery level, received signal level and talking) are displayed.

Reading the task bar

The icon for the function (task) in progress is displayed on the task bar (up to 9 icons).
You can confirm functions being used and run.

Example Task bar when schedule calendar is displayed during a video-phone call



Task bar

: Voice call
: Video-phone (64 K)
: Video-phone (32 K)
: 64K data communication
: Mail
: Receiving i-mode Mail
: Receiving SMS
: Chat Mail
: Message R/F
: Checking for i-mode Mail/SMS
: i-mode
: Bookmark/Internet Connection/Last Visited URL/Screen Memo/i-mode Shortcut
: i-αppli
: Originating/communicating packet via USB
: Sending/receiving packet via USB
: My Picture (***Image***)

: i-motion
: Melody
: Chara-den
: My Document
: Sound Recorder
: Camera
: Movie Camera
: Bar Code Reader
: Phonebook
: Answer Machine/Voice Memo
: Notepad
: Scheduler
: Schedule alarm sounding
: Calculator
: Received Calls
: Redial
: Data exchanging with external device
: Saving to INBOX/setting reception method for infrared communication

/ (dark blue/gray)
: Accessing/waiting for access to miniSD memory card
/ (dark blue/gray)
: In the miniSD mode (communication is possible)/ (USB cable unconnected/no miniSD card inserted)
: Alarm Clock ringing
: Own Number
/ (dark blue/gray): Setting/holding each function
: Software Update activated
: Software Update notified
: Update Definition activated/ version display
: Setting each network service
: Video-phone call through external device

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Reading the list screen

Example ***Color scheme*** screen

The number of the currently displayed page and the total number of pages (when a list extends over multiple pages)

indicates that other selectable items exist above and below the selected item.

- Press to move the cursor.
- When is pressed on the last item of the page, the next page appears, and when is pressed on the first item of the page, the previous page appears.

indicates that selectable items exist over multiple pages.

- Press to switch between pages.

Note: You cannot switch between pages on the icon selection screen, etc.

- Color scheme names are named based on imagery.

INFORMATION

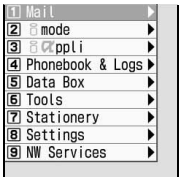
- Note that the following cases may occur due to the characteristics of liquid crystal display (LCD) and they are not defects in FOMA terminal.
  - FOMA terminal display is manufactured by taking advantage of highly advanced technology but some dots may be always or never lit.
  - When the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal with the power turned on, residual images may remain for some time. Remove the battery pack with the power turned off.
  - When a screen has been displayed for a certain time, if you change it to another screen with some operations performed, residual images of the previous screen may remain.
- When the terminal is turned off, the color of the information line may look different from the main display part. This is due to the characteristics of LCD, and not a malfunction.

Selecting the menu

In addition to the normal menu, the simple menu which offers popular features is provided. In the simple menu, the menu items are displayed in large letters. Also, you can create your original menu (Custom Menu ☛P400).

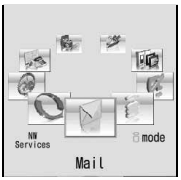
Display format for the normal menu and the custom menu

Select from 3 types (Menu Setting ☛P128).



List view

Tile display



3D display

Switching to the simple menu

- You cannot switch FOMA terminal to the simple menu when ***English*** is set in Select Language. Also, when you choose the simple menu, Select Language settings are unavailable.
- Even if you selected the simple menu before turning your FOMA terminal off, the menu will change to the normal one when you insert the UIM for which English mode is specified as language and then turn the power on again.

1 Press Menu on stand-by display.

The normal menu is displayed.

- When the custom menu is displayed, press 📖.

2 Press ✉.

The simple menu is displayed.

■ Switching to the normal menu

① **Press Menu on the stand-by display, and press ✉.**

- To switch the custom menu, press Menu 📖 on the stand-by display.

When the simple menu is set

- During a call, you can see how to adjust the volume of caller's voice.
- In stand-by display, enter the memory No. (1 to 9) to see the registered names and telephone numbers. Key operations for making voice calls/video-phone calls are also shown. During calls you can also press Menu, select *ダイヤル入力* (Dial up) and enter a memory number to see the same information.

Functions available on the simple menu

- Some menus cannot be accessed form the simple menu.

Menu Item		Shortcut
でんわ	電話帳検索	Menu 1 1
	電話帳登録	Menu 1 2
	リダイヤル	Menu 1 3
	着信履歴	Menu 1 4
	伝言メモ一覧	Menu 1 5
	自局番号	Menu 1 6 / Menu 0
メール	受信メール	Menu 2 1
	送信メール	Menu 2 2
	未送信メール	Menu 2 3
	新規メール	Menu 2 4
	i モード問合せ	Menu 2 5
カメラ	カメラ	Menu 3 1
	マイピクチャ	Menu 3 2
	待受画面設定	Menu 3 3

Menu Item		Shortcut
i モード	iMenu	Menu 4 1
	Bookmark	Menu 4 2
	ラスト URL	Menu 4 3
	画面メモ	Menu 4 4
i アプリ	ソフト一覧	Menu 5 1
	待受画面設定	Menu 5 2
	i アプリ設定 *	Menu 5 3
データ BOX*1		Menu 6
設定／ステーショナリー	音／バイブ *	Menu 7 1
	ディスプレイ *	Menu 7 2
	アラーム	Menu 7 3
	電卓	Menu 7 4
	伝言メモ設定	Menu 7 5
	情報表示／リセット *	Menu 7 6
	留守番電話 *	Menu 7 7

* The menu items beyond the this level are the same as the normal menu.

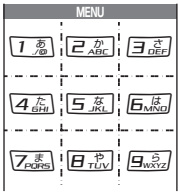
Selecting functions from the menu

Select menu items by using the dial keys (Shortcut operations). Also, use the Easy Selector Plus to select from among menu items.

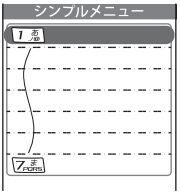
- When any lock function is set or the UIM is not inserted, some functions are disabled. The disabled functions are indicated by 🔒 or dimmed, and cannot be selected.

Selecting menu items with the dial keys (Shortcut operations)

Each menu item has a number (item number) and can be selected by pressing the corresponding key ([1あ/@] to [9わ/WXYZ]). The item position corresponds to each key as follows:



Normal menu (Tile display)



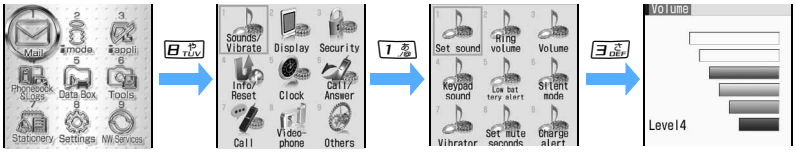
Simple menu (Japanese only)

- In this manual, the operation procedure is mainly explained in Shortcut operations of the normal menu.

Example Executing ***Volume*** from the normal menu

1 Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [1 あ/@] [3 さ DEF] on the stand-by display.

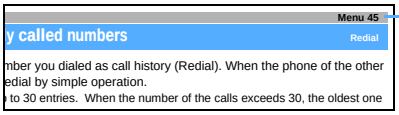
The screen for adjusting volume is displayed.



When several shortcuts are available

Shortcut operations are shown at the right of the titles in the body text.

Example For redialing



Press [Menu] to show the menu, then press [4 た GHI] then [5 な JKL] to show the redial list.

- **✉ means pressing [✉], and ▼ means pressing [▼].**

Selecting menu items with Easy Selector Plus

Example Executing ***Volume*** from the normal menu (Tile display)

1 Press [Menu] on the stand-by display.

2 Press [●] and select *Settings*.

- In the simple menu, press [▲] to highlight the desired item, then press [●] or [▼].

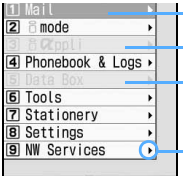
3 **Press ● to select *Sounds/Vibrate*.**

4 **Press ● to select *Volume*.**

The screen for adjusting volume is displayed.

Selecting menu items (List view)

Press ● to place the cursor at a menu item and press ●.



Menu item at the cursor position

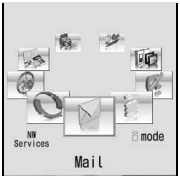
Menu item that cannot be selected (Dimmed)

Lower-level menu exists

- You can select an item by pressing the dial key for the item number.
- You can also select a menu item by pressing ● to place the cursor at the item and pressing ●.
- To return to the previous menu, press ● or クリア.

Selecting menu items (3D display)

Press ● to move the icon ring to bring the desired item to the front and press ●.



- Press ● to move the the icon at the rear to the front.
- You can select an item by pressing the dial key for the item number. Check the item numbers in the tile display or list view menu.

Displaying description of menu items (Describe function)

Press ● to place the cursor at the desired menu item. After a brief interval, description of the item's function is displayed.

Example In the normal menu

- The function description disappears automatically after a brief interval.
- You can set FOMA terminal not to display the function description of menu items. ☛P128

Description of *Mail* menu is displayed.

Returning to the stand-by display or previous screen

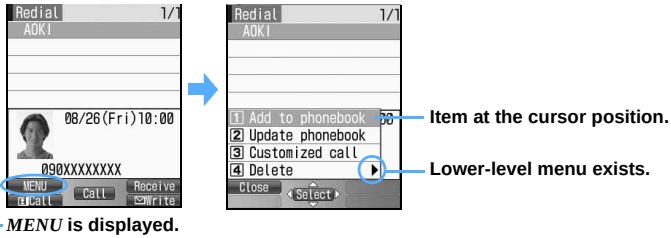
PWR : Returns to the stand-by display. クリア : Returns to the previous screen.

Selecting functions from the submenu

In some functions, ***MENU*** is displayed at the upper left of the guide row. You can select submenu items and perform various operations.

Example Selecting Redial submenu

1 Press Menu in the redial list.



2 Press ● and select a submenu item.

- You can select an item by pressing the dial key for the item number. Even for the same function, the item numbers may differ depending on the screen.
- You can also select a submenu item by pressing ● to place the cursor at the item and pressing ●.
- To return to the previous menu, press ◀ or クリア.
- Press Menu while the submenu is displayed to close it.

Selecting items on the screen

Selecting *Yes* or *No* on a confirmation screen

1 Press ● and select *Yes* or *No*.

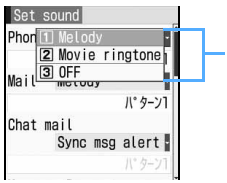
- For some operations, items other than ***Yes*** and ***No*** may appear.

Selecting an item from the pulldown menu

1 Press ● to place the cursor at an item to set.

2 Press ▼ to display a pulldown menu and press ● to place the cursor at an item.

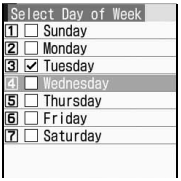
- You can select an item by pressing the dial key for the item number.



3 Press ●.

Selecting an item from the check box

1 Press ▼ to place the cursor at a check box and press ●.



The check box changes from ☐ to ☑, and is selected.

- Select the selected item (☑) to cancel the selection (☐).
- Depending on the function, select/cancel all items by pressing Menu.
- You can select an item by pressing the dial key for the item number.

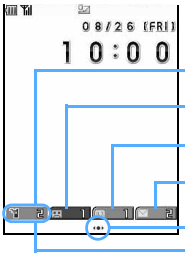
Displaying information quickly

Focus Mode

When the icons such as 2 or 1 are displayed on the stand-by display, you can quickly display the information.

- When the custom stand-by display is set, information is displayed on the stand-by display. You can check the detail information quickly by selecting the displayed information.

1 Press ● on the stand-by display and press ▼ to place the cursor at an icon.



- The number of stored items is displayed at the right of each icon.

Missed call (unanswered call) exists.
Unplayed recorded message exists.
New voice mail message exists.
Unread received mail exists.
Effective Easy Selector Plus keys
Color of the icon at the cursor position changes.

2 Press ●.

The screen for the selected icon is displayed.

2 : The received call list is displayed, letting you check the date and time and the caller information.

1 : The recorded message list is displayed, letting you play the recorded messages.

1 : The confirmation screen for playing voice mail messages is displayed, letting you play the messages.

2 : The Inbox folder list is displayed. You can display unread mail.

INFORMATION

- When you select an icon and hold down C クリア for over a second, the icon temporarily disappears from the screen. It reappears when information is viewed and the number of items changes.
- Depending on the setting of lock functions such as PIM Lock, some icons may not be displayed.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Number of saved, registered and protected items in FOMA terminal

Type		No. of saved/ registered items	No. of protected items
Mail	Received mail*1, *2	Up to 1,000	Up to 500
	Sent mail*1, *2	Up to 200	Up to 100
	Unsent mail*1, *2	Up to 200	Up to 100
	Template*1	Up to 100	—
SMS in UIM*3		Up to 20	—
Message R*1		Up to 100	Up to 50
Message F*1		Up to 50	Up to 25
Bookmark		Up to 100	—
Screen memo*1		Up to 100	Up to 50
i-αppli*4		Up to 100	Up to 100
Image*1		Up to 1,000	—
Melody*1		Up to 500	—
PDF data*1		Up to 100	—
Video/i-motion/sound recorded with Sound Recorder*1		Up to 100	—
Chara-den*1		Up to 50	—

*1 Depending on the size of data, the actual number of items that can be saved and registered may be fewer.

*2 The total number of i-mode Mail and SMS.

*3 The total number of sent and received SMS. The number of delivery report is not included.

*4 Up to 5 items of Message i-αppli (as part of the 100 items, maximum number of i-αppli that can be saved) can be saved. Depending on the i-αppli size, the actual number of items you can save may be fewer.

INFORMATION

- Because data saved in FOMA terminal may be lost due to failure, repair or other handlings of FOMA terminal, it is recommended that you maintain a separate record of the important data in FOMA terminal. We are not responsible for any lost data.
- It is recommended that you save the data stored in FOMA terminal such as mail, bookmarks, images, melodies or video/i-motion to the miniSD memory card. Exchangeable data ☛P350
- If you have a PC, you can use FOMA D series data link software contained in the attached CD-ROM to transfer and save the data such as mail, bookmarks, images, melodies, video/i-motion to your PC.
- Depending on the function, the displayed file size of data in FOMA terminal may differ slightly.

Using the UIM (FOMA card)

Use the UIM (FOMA card) to store your phone number and other information.
Insert the UIM into a FOMA terminal to use it.

・For details on handling the UIM, refer to the UIM manual.

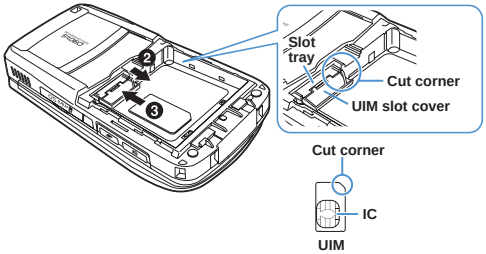
Inserting/removing the UIM

Use your FOMA terminal with the UIM inserted. If the UIM is not inserted in your FOMA terminal, first insert it.

・Before inserting or removing the UIM, turn the power off.
・Insert or remove the UIM with FOMA terminal closed using both hands.

Inserting the card

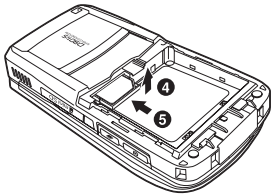
Tray is pulled out until it stops.



❶Remove the rear cover and then the battery pack. ☛P37

❷Pull out the UIM slot tray.
Place your finger on the slot cover and slide it out until the slot tray stops.

❸Insert the UIM into the slot with the IC side of the card facing down.



❹Lift the slot cover until its bottom is even with the slot tray.
Align the cut corner of the slot tray to the cut corner of the UIM.

❺Push the slot tray in until it fits into place.

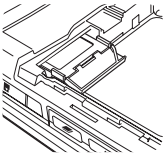
❻Reattach the battery pack and then the rear cover. ☛P36

Removing the card

❶Pull out the UIM slot tray.
・The operations are the same as ❶ to ❷ in “Inserting the card”.

❷Remove the UIM by sliding it out.

When the UIM slot tray is removed



Insert the UIM slot tray and push the tray straight in.
● Remove the UIM before replacing the slot tray.

INFORMATION

● Insert the UIM carefully as forcing it may damage the card.
● Carefully handle the removed UIM so it does not become lost.
● When attaching the battery pack, make sure that the UIM slot tray is in place. If not, do not attach the battery pack. Forcibly attaching the battery pack may damage the UIM or the UIM slot tray.
● When pushing the UIM slot tray in, make sure that the UIM is properly placed in the tray. Forcibly pushing the slot tray into FOMA terminal may cause an operation error.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

UIM security codes

The PIN1 and PIN2 codes are used for the UIM.
Both codes are set to “0000” at time of subscription to the FOMA service. You can change this to any code (4 to 8 digits). ☛P138

PUK (PIN Unblocking Key)

- The PUK (PIN Unblocking Key) is the 8-digit number used to unblock the PIN1 and PIN2 lock. It is given to you at time of purchase.
- If you enter the PUK incorrectly 10 times in a row, FOMA terminal is locked. Be sure to keep a separate note of the number. Please be notified, if you forget your PUK or cannot release the lock of FOMA terminal, you need to bring your FOMA terminal, UIM and identification (driver’s license etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop. Unblocking PIN lock ☛P139

UIM operation restriction function

FOMA terminal is provided with the UIM operation restriction function for protecting your data and files.

- When data or files downloaded from sites or data attached to mail are saved in FOMA terminal with the UIM inserted, the UIM operation restriction is automatically set to these data or files.
- If the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal, data or files with the UIM operation restriction set cannot be displayed or played.
- Data which is subject to the restriction is as follows:
  - Screen memo
  - Image inserted in Deco-mail text
  - i-αppli (including i-αppli stand-by display)
  - Image (including animation and Flash movie)
  - Melody
  - Message R/F
  - File attached to i-mode Mail
  - i-motion
  - Chara-den
  - PDF data
- For i-αppli with the UIM operation restriction set, the following operations are disabled when the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal:
  - Start
  - Auto start
  - Upgrade
  - Displaying Detail Info
  - Changing auto start setting
  - i-αppli Settings
  - Setting the i-αppli stand-by display

INFORMATION

- When data with the UIM operation restriction enabled is set for the stand-by display, call image or ring tone, the image and sound settings return to the default if the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal. In this case, the image and sound that are actually displayed/generated may differ from the settings. Inserting the UIM that was used when the data was downloaded restores the original settings. (Note that the setting may be canceled if the data was used for Random Display Image.)
- The UIM operation restriction is not set to data obtained via infrared communication, the miniSD memory card or data link software or to images taken with the built-in camera.
- Data or files with the UIM operation restriction set cannot be moved/copied to the miniSD memory card or cannot be exchanged by infrared communication.
- Even when Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli cannot be started because of UIM operation restriction, the function for holding FeliCa mark over a external device (reader/writer) is available.

Functional differences between UIM types

There are 2 types of UIMs: green and blue. The functions differ depending on the type as shown below:

Item	UIM (green)	UIM (blue)	Page
Number of digits of phone number that can be registered in the UIM phonebook	Up to 26 digits	Up to 20 digits	P97
Certificate Download for using FirstPass	Available	Unavailable	P213
WORLD WING service	Available	Unavailable	P36
Service Dialing Number	Calling DoCoMo for General Inquiries and DoCoMo for Repairs available	Unavailable	P428

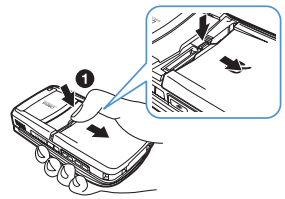
WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the DoCoMo FOMA international roaming service. By taking out the UIM (green) from the FOMA terminal you normally use and inserting it into an overseas mobile phone (GSM handset), you can make/receive a call in foreign countries with your own mobile phone number. A separate subscription is required to use WORLD WING. Contact “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual for details.

Attaching/removing the battery pack

- Turn the power off and close FOMA terminal before attaching or removing the battery pack.
- Be careful not to touch the camera lens.

Attaching the battery pack



❶Remove the rear cover.
While pressing the right part the concave on top of the rear cover with your thumb, slide it in the direction of the arrow until it is removed.

❷With the printed surface of the battery pack facing up, insert the battery pack into FOMA terminal in the angle as shown.
Do not force the battery pack terminals into FOMA terminal. Doing so could damage these terminals or the body connector.

❸Push the battery pack in.

❹Place the rear cover plate so that it can slide about 5 mm on the FOMA terminal.

❺Slide the rear cover into place.
Failure to follow the correct procedure could damage the rear cover.

Removing the battery pack

❶Remove the rear cover.
❷Lift the edge of the battery pack with your finger and remove it.

Battery recycling

FOMA terminal uses a lithium ion battery containing valuable materials that should be recycled. To protect the environment, return used batteries to an NTT DoCoMo service center, NTT DoCoMo agent or recycling center.

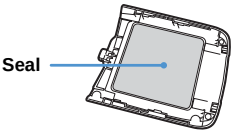
● Please take the following precautions when recycling batteries:
- Attach a piece of adhesive tape on the terminals of used battery packs
- Do not disassemble or modify battery packs

Li-ion

INFORMATION

● The FOMA terminal display uses an active LCD. Due to the characteristics of the active LCD, residual images or crossbar may remain for a while when the battery pack is attached or removed. This is not a fault of FOMA terminal.

● Do not remove the seal placed on the backside of the rear cover. If you do so, the IC card may not be recognized, disabling the IC card function. When attaching or removing the rear cover, take care not to remove the seal.



Charging the battery

When the battery level is low, charge the battery.

- The battery level icon shows how much charge remains in the battery. ☛P40

Charging time and operation time on full charge (estimates)

Charging time	Continuous call time	Continuous stand-by time*	
Approx. 140 minutes	During a voice call : Approx. 170 minutes During a video-phone call : Approx. 100 minutes	While standing still	***Partial display*** is ***ON*** : Approx. 400 hours
			Partial display is ***OFF*** : Approx. 600 hours
		While moving	***Partial display*** is ***ON*** : Approx. 300 hours
			Partial display is ***OFF*** : Approx. 430 hours

* ***Partial display***: Sets whether to display the information line even while the display light is turned off. It is set to ***ON*** by default.

- Continuous call time is an estimate of call time for FOMA terminal when it can send or receive signals normally.
- Continuous stand-by time is an estimate of operation time of FOMA terminal when it is closed and able to receive signals normally. The call/stand-by time may be reduced to about half, depending on the amount of charge in the battery, the function settings, the ambient temperature and signal conditions (radio waves do not or hardly reach). Using i-mode communication reduces the call (communication)/stand-by time. Even if you do not make a call or use i-mode, the call (communication)/stand-by time will be reduced by composing i-mode Mail, or starting downloaded i-αppli software or the i-αppli stand-by display.
- Continuous stand-by time (while standing still) is the average operation time of FOMA terminal when it is standing still, closed and able to receive signals normally.

・Continuous stand-by time (while moving) is the average operation time of FOMA terminal that is standing still, moving and outside the area when it is closed and able to receive signals normally.
・Alternatively, if you use data communication, Multiaccess or Camera, the call (communication)/stand-by time will also be reduced.

Notes on battery pack

● Use the battery pack D04.
● The battery pack is a consumable part and will gradually wear out. Each time it is charged, it will accept slightly less charge than the previous time. When the battery charge lasts only half as long as when it was new, replace it with a new one. The battery pack's life is about 1 year. This life may be shorter depending on the frequency of use.

Starting/ending charging and other items to note

The battery pack can be charged regardless of whether FOMA terminal is turned on or off. However, charging takes longer with the power turned on.

・When charging starts, the call indicator lights in red.
When FOMA terminal is turned on, the charge alert sounds and the battery level icon blinks.

Icon	Call indicator	Meaning
(Charging: Blinks Charged: Lights)	Charging: Lights in red Charged: Goes off	Charging normally.

Note: The icon design can be changed in Battery Icon. ☛P130

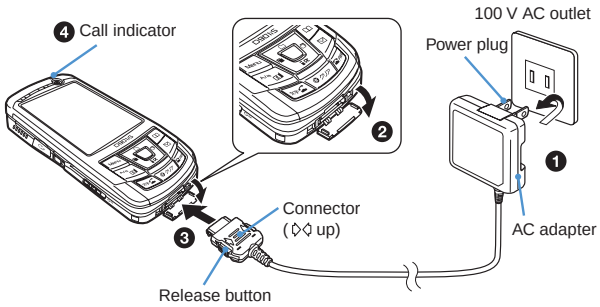
・If the call indicator does not light in red at the start of charging or it flashes in red, charging is unsuccessful. If the battery pack still cannot be charged even after charging again, contact "Repairs" on the back of this manual.

・When charging is completed, the call indicator goes off.
When FOMA terminal is turned on, the charge alert sounds and the battery level icon lights. (If the battery level icon blinks, charging is not completed.)
・You can set the charge alert not to sound. ☛P116
・Do not charge the battery for an extended period (longer than a full day) with FOMA terminal turned on. FOMA terminal uses power so the adapter continues charging until FOMA terminal is unplugged from the adapter. In such a case, the AC or DC adapter charges again but when FOMA terminal is removed in the middle of charging, the following could occur:
・Low battery level
・Message appears indicating that the battery runs out
・FOMA terminal is operational for a short time
・If the battery is sufficiently charged, connecting FOMA terminal to the AC or DC adapter may not start charging.
・If you use FOMA terminal while charging the battery for an extended period with the AC or DC adapter connected, the ambient temperature may rise above the acceptable range.
・Insert or remove the connector from FOMA terminal slowly and firmly without forcing it.
・Insert or remove the AC adapter connector straight to/from FOMA terminal.

Charging from a wall outlet

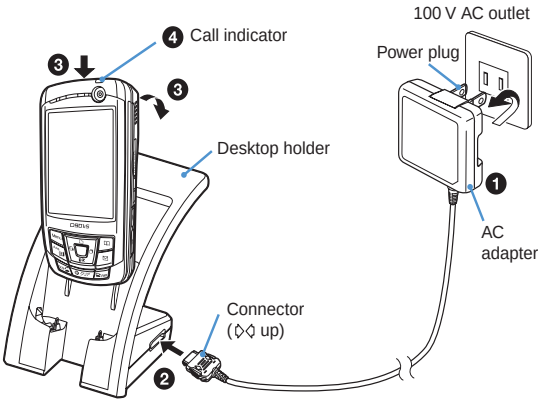
Use the FOMA AC adapter 01 (optional) to charge the battery. Also it can be used with the desktop holder D04 (optional).
You can charge the battery with FOMA terminal either closed or open.
・The battery pack can only be charged when it is attached to FOMA terminal.
・Be careful not to touch the camera lens.
・For details, refer to the manuals for the AC adapter and the desktop holder.

■ Charging the battery with the AC adapter alone



❶Unfold the power plug from the AC adapter and plug it into a 100V AC outlet.
❷Open the external connection terminal cap.
❸Insert the AC adapter connector in firmly until it clicks.
❹Check that charging starts.
When charging is completed, remove the AC adapter connector from FOMA terminal while pressing the release buttons on both sides of the connector, and unplug the AC adapter from the outlet. Then close the terminal cap.

■ Charging the battery in the desktop holder



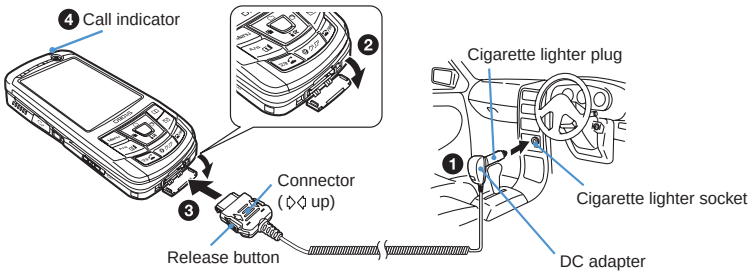
❶Unfold the power plug from the AC adapter and plug it into a 100V AC outlet.
❷Insert the AC adapter connector in the desktop holder until it clicks.
❸Insert FOMA terminal vertically into the desktop holder and then tilt back.
❹Check that charging starts.
Check that the call indicator lights in red. When charging is completed, remove FOMA terminal from the desktop holder by tilting to front.

・When inserting FOMA terminal into the desktop holder, be careful not to put a strap in the holder.

Charging in a car

Use the FOMA DC adapter 01 (optional) to charge the battery in a car. It can be used with negative ground cars (both 12 V and 24 V).
・For details, refer to the DC adapter manual.

❶Insert the cigarette lighter plug of the DC adapter into the cigarette lighter socket of the car.
❷Turn off FOMA terminal and open the external connection terminal cap.
❸Insert the DC adapter connector in firmly until it clicks.
❹Check that charging starts.
When charging is completed, remove the DC adapter connector from FOMA terminal while pressing the release buttons on both sides of the connector, and remove the cigarette lighter plug from the cigarette lighter socket. Then close the terminal cap.



INFORMATION

- The car battery may be discharged if you charge FOMA terminal with the engine off. Use the DC adapter when the car engine is running.
- When not in use, remove the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket.
- The DC adapter fuses (DC adapter: 2A) are consumable items. New fuses are available at automotive supply stores.

Checking the remaining battery level

Battery Level

The display indicates the remaining battery level in 3 levels.

- The remaining battery level display should be used as a rough indication.

(Remaining battery level 3): Ample charge
(Remaining battery level 2): Low charge
(Remaining battery level 1): Recharging recommended

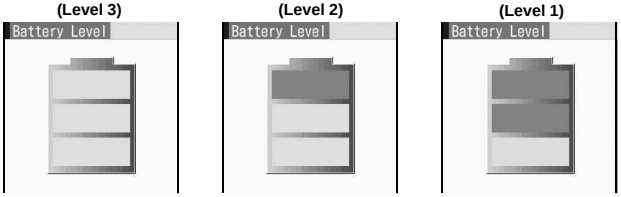
- The icon can be changed by Battery Icon setting. ☛P130

Checking the remaining battery level by sound and display

- The sound does not ring in the following situations:
  - Keypad Sound is set to ***OFF***
  - Silent Mode is set
  - The ring alert volume for calls is set to ***Silent***

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 4 GHI 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

The remaining battery level is displayed. The sound rings at the sound set in Keypad Sound.



Sound rings 3 times. **Sound rings twice.** **Sound rings once.**

When the battery is almost exhausted

A message appears or an alert sound (low battery alert) rings indicating low battery. Charging the battery stops the low battery alert. If you want to stop it immediately, press Clear.

- In stand-by, a message indicating low battery appears. The message disappears by pressing [●]. After a brief interval, it reappears and the low battery alert sounds. At this time, all the icons on top of the screen blink and after approximately 1 minute the power turns off automatically.
- During a call, the low battery alert sounds from the earpiece and a message indicating low battery appears. The message disappears by pressing [●], [クリア] or [PWR]. When approximately 20 seconds elapses after the low battery alert, the call is cut off and the stand-by display reappears. Then, after approximately 1 minute the power turns off automatically.

Setting the low battery alert not to sound

Low Battery Alert

- The low battery alert does not sound when Silent Mode or Driving Mode is on.

Default ON

1 Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [1 あ] [5 な JKL] on the stand-by display.

2 Press [2 か ABC].

- To set the alert, press [1 あ].

INFORMATION

● Even if Low Battery Alert is set to ***OFF***, when the battery almost runs out during a call, the low battery alert sounds from the earpiece and a message indicating low battery is displayed.

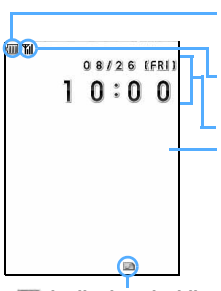
Turning the power on/off

Power ON/OFF

Turning the power on

1 Hold down [PWR] for over 2 seconds.

The wake-up screen is displayed and the stand-by display appears (Displaying the wake-up screen may take some time).



Battery level icon

Received signal level

Date/day/time

Stand-by image

is displayed while reading the UIM and disappears when reading is completed.

* The background image on the display is for example purposes only (and differs from the default).

Received signal level status	
→ →	圏外
Strong → Weak	Outside the service area and where radio waves are hard to reach

- If the date and time have not been set, a message appears informing you that the date and time are not set. Press [●] and perform Date and Time Setting.
- If no UIM is inserted, a message informing you that attachment of UIM is required is displayed. Turn the power off, insert the UIM and turn the power back on.
- When PIN Code ON/OFF is set to ***ON***, enter the PIN1 code.
- The following items can be changed:
  - Stand-by image ☛P118
  - Display format of date and time ☛P132
  - Battery level icon ☛P130

Turning power off

1 Hold down PWR for over 2 seconds.

- When Key Lock is set, you cannot turn the power off. Cancel Key Lock and then turn the power off.

INFORMATION

- If you make a call or use i-mode communication when 圏外 is displayed in locations outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach, move to another locations where the icon is not displayed. However, calls may be cut off even when ▼ is displayed and you are not moving.
- When Reset Call Cost is set to ON, enter the PIN2 code.
- If you do not press any keys for 90 seconds when showing in the following, the display light is turned off automatically (except while shooting with the camera, etc.). The display light is turned on again if there is any key operation or incoming call.
  - When the lighting time is set to other than ***Always*** in Display Light Setting
  - During charging (when ***Turn light on*** is set to other than ***Always***, and ***AC adapter connected*** is set to ***Terminal settings*** in Display Light setting)

Switching to English

Select Language

Default Japanese

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 2 ABC 8 TUV on the stand-by display.

2 Press 2 ABC.

- To switch to Japanese mode, press 1 あ.

INFORMATION

- In English mode, the character input mode changes in the following order: *半英* (alphabet) → *半数* (numeric) →*漢* (hiragana/kanji) →*半カナ* (katakana)

Setting the date and time

Date and Time Setting

The time setting can be done in two ways: obtaining the time information from DoCoMo network to adjust the time settings of your FOMA terminal, or manually input current time to your terminal.

- If ***Auto Time Set*** is ***ON***, automatic time correction takes place when UIM is inserted and you turn the power on in a location where radio waves reach.
- Automatic time correction sometimes causes a time error of several seconds. It may fail to correct the time depending on the radio wave condition.
- Even if time information is received while i-αppli is running, time might not be able to be corrected according to i-αppli.
- If ***Auto Time Set*** is set to ***ON***, time might not be set for a while.
- When no UIM is inserted or FOMA terminal is out of the service area, the automatic time correction will be unavailable even if you turn the power off and then on.

Default Auto Time Set: ON Offset: +, 00h00m

1 Press Menu 8 TUV や 5 JKL な 1 あ on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

- When you turn on the automatic time correction, specify the time offset. Date and time adjustment is not available.

Auto Time Set

：Turn the automatic time correction set on/off.

- To enter the date and time manually, set ***Auto Time Set*** to ***OFF***.

Offset ：Specify the amount of time advance (+) or delay (-) so that your terminal's clock advances from/delays to the time obtained at certain hours and minutes.

- Enter the time between 00h00m and 23h59m.
- Prefix 0 if the time and/or minute is single digit (0 to 9).

Date, Time ：Set the date and the time.

- Year should be specified by the last 2 digits of year. From January 1st 2000 to December 31st 2050 is available.
- Enter time in the 24-hour clock (00h00m - 23h59m).
- Prefix 0 if the month, date, time and/or minute is single digit (0 to 9).
- Also, you can increase or decrease the entered values by pressing ▼.
- Or, repeat pressing ▼ till the value to change is highlighted, and then enter the number.

3 Press ▶.

INFORMATION

● You cannot use the following functions when the date and time are not set:

- Random Display Image (When the timing switch is set to other than ***Open slide***)
- Scheduler
- Auto Power ON
- Auto Power OFF
- Alarm Clock
- i-αppli auto start ☛P300
- i-αppli DX requiring the time setting ☛P286
- Downloading i-motion with playback restrictions set ☛P331
- Data (schedule) transfer ☛P365, P367
- Software Update
- Update Definition
- Certificate Download ☛P213
- SSL communication (authentication)

● If the date and time are not set, the date and time are not recorded for the following functions and "----/--/--" or "----------" is displayed. A number to segmentalize (segmental number) may be appended.

- Redial/Received Calls
- Answer Machine, Voice Memo
- Date and time of image/video shot with the camera ☛P157
- Date and time in file name of data read by Bar Code Reader ☛P176
- Date and time of downloaded i-αppli ☛P292
- Date and time of sent mail, unsent mail ☛P252
- Date and time of downloaded still image, melody, Chara-den, mail template ☛P360, P233

● The set time remains even when the battery pack is replaced, but may be reset if the battery pack is removed for an extended period. In this case, set the date and time again.

● You can set the date and time by pressing Menu 4 GHI during a voice call.

● When Call Cost Limit or Reset Call Cost is set to ***ON***, entry of the security code is required.

Notifying your phone number to the other party

Caller ID Notification

Set FOMA terminal to send your number (caller ID) to be displayed on the other party's phone every time you make a call.

- Caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether to send your caller ID.
- Caller ID is displayed only when the other party's phone has the ability to display caller ID such as digital mobile phones.
- You do not need to apply to use Caller ID Notification. No monthly fee is required.
- Caller ID Notification cannot be set in a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Move to another location with good radio reception.
- For details, see "FOMA Network Services User's Guide".

1 Press Menu 9 5 1 on the stand-by display.

■ **Checking current setting**

① **Press Menu 9 5 2 on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.**

2 Enter the network security code and press 1.

- The network security code entered is masked with "✳".
- To deactivate, press 2.

INFORMATION

● You can use the following ways to show/hide caller ID to the other party.
- Setting to either show/hide caller ID for each phonebook entry ☛P107
- Setting to either show/hide caller ID for each call ☛P51, P52

● If you hear a guidance to request your caller ID when you make a call, call back after setting FOMA terminal to send your caller ID.

Menu 47

Checking your own phone number

Own Number

Check your phone number ***(My phone number)***, name, mail address, etc.

Default Terminal settings

1 Press Menu 0 on the stand-by display.

- The subscribing mobile phone number is set for ***My phone number***.
- To check your i-mode Mail address, press ▽ 1 on the stand-by display to display iMenu, then select ***English*** → 4***Options*** → 1***Mail Settings*** → ***Confirm Mail Address***.

INFORMATION

● Press ▷ 0 to check your phone number during a call.

● Saving information other than phone number ☛P404

● You can exchange the Own Number information between other FOMA terminals with infrared communication function.

Making/Receiving Calls

Making calls

Making calls 46
Switching from a voice call to a video-phone call.....49
Calling back previously called numbers ..... Redial 50
Setting whether to send your phone number for each call ... 186/184 Call 51
Making calls by setting the conditions ..... Customized Call 52
Using international calls ..... WORLD CALL 53
Making a call by specifying a sub-address ..... Sub Address 54
Setting the alarm indicating reconnection of the interrupted call ..... Reconnect Alarm 55
Suppressing ambient noises to improve the call quality ..... Noise Reduction 55
Talking without using hands in a car ..... In-car Handsfree 55

Receiving calls

Receiving calls 56
Enabling use of dial keys to answer a call ..... Any Key Answer 59
Setting to start talking by opening FOMA terminal ..... Open Answer 59
Disconnecting/continuing/holding a call when closing FOMA terminal ..... Close Setting 59
Using Received Calls ..... Received Calls 60
Adjusting the volume of the caller's voice ..... Volume Setting 62
Adjusting the ring volume ..... Ring Volume Setting 62
Setting operations when receiving voice/video-phone calls ..... Incoming Call Setting/Video-phone Receiving Setting 63
Setting priority screen displayed for incoming calls during a call or packet communication ..... Priority Comm Mode 64

When you can/could not answer a call

Putting incoming calls on hold when you cannot answer right away ..... Response and Hold 65
Setting a response hold guidance ..... Status Message 66
Setting an on-hold tone ..... On-hold Tone 66
Setting not to receive calls during driving ..... Driving Mode 67
Allowing the caller to leave message when you cannot answer the call ..... Answer Machine 69

Making calls

The procedures for making voice calls and the operations in common with video-phone calls are explained here.

- You cannot make calls even if you press dial keys when Keypad Dial Lock is on.
- Do not cover the built-in antenna with your hands during a call.

1 Enter a phone number on the stand-by display.

Calling general subscriber phone	Always include the area code even when calling from the same city.
Calling mobile phone	090 - XXXX - XXXX 080 - XXXX - XXXX
Calling PHS phone	070 - XXXX - XXXX

- You can enter up to 80 digits for the phone number. However, only 24 digits are displayed.
- To correct the phone number, press クリア.
- To return to the stand-by display, hold down クリア for over a second.

2 Press 発信.

You will hear a dial tone. You can start talking when the call is answered.

- If the phone of the other party is busy, you will hear busy signals. Press 電源 to end the call and make a call again later. You can call back quickly using Redial.
- If the power of the other party's mobile phone or PHS is turned off or the other party is in an area where radio waves are hard to reach, a guidance informs that the connection is unavailable.

3 Press 電源 when a call is finished.

- To end the call by closing FOMA terminal, change the setting in Close Setting.

INFORMATION

- You can also make a call in order of Step 2, Step 1. A voice call will be made automatically about 5 seconds after you have pressed 発信 and entered the phone number.
- You may not be able to make a call while executing another function. ☛P490
- When a call is made to the other party with a video/i-motion set for the image of the phonebook data, the first frame of the video/i-motion is displayed on the dialing screen. ☛P94
- Multiple communication functions can be used simultaneously. ☛P382, P488
- If a guidance to request your caller ID is heard when a call is made, call back after you have set FOMA terminal to send your caller ID.
- When you make a call by entering a phone number without appending "186" or "184" before the phone number or by setting ***Caller ID*** to ***No specified*** in Customized Call, the operation depends on the setting for Caller ID Notification.
- When there is an incoming packet call during a voice call, the incoming screen appears according to the setting for Priority Comm Mode.
- The flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) can be used to make calls.

Putting calls on hold while talking

On-hold

Putting the call on hold while talking allows you to talk without the caller hearing your voice.

- The callers are charged for the time spent on hold.

1 Press [ ] during a call.

The call is put on hold and a guidance is played. For video-phone calls, the video-phone on-hold image is displayed on the terminal of the other party and yourself.

On-hold during a voice call

On-hold during a video-phone call

The video-phone call on-hold image

- Press [ ] or [ ] while voice calls are on hold to cancel the hold.
- Press [ ] while video-phone calls are on hold to cancel the hold and send the image similar to that has been sent before the hold. Press [ ] to cancel the hold and send a camera image to the other party. Press [ ] to cancel the hold and send a substitute image.

INFORMATION

- To put the call on hold by closing FOMA terminal, change the setting in Close Setting. When the call is put on hold by closing FOMA terminal, the hold cannot be released even if FOMA terminal is opened.
- The melody can be played while on hold. ☛P66
- The video-phone on-hold image can be changed. ☛P84
- The melody applicable to 3D sound set as on-hold tone may be heard deteriorated to the other party.

Using the speakerphone function

You can make a call allowing the voice of the other party to be heard from the speaker.

1 Enter a phone number on the stand-by display and hold down [ ] or [ ] for over a second.

- While dialing, you can switch between the ordinary call and the call using the speakerphone function by pressing [ ]. While talking, you can switch by pressing [ ] or [ ].
- is displayed during using the speakerphone function.
- The operation is the same as when operating from the list of the phonebook, redials, received calls, recorded messages and voice memos.

INFORMATION

- When switching to the speakerphone function, the volume may suddenly increase and damage your ears, so use it with FOMA terminal away from your ears.
- If a call is hard to hear with a large amount of noise around you or the other party, make the call from earpiece normally.
- Talk to FOMA terminal within approximately 30 cm.
- The speakerphone function can also be used even when Silent Mode is on.

Operation during voice calls

• The following operations can be performed from the submenu:

Submenu item	Description	Page
1 *Switch to V-phone*	Switches from a voice call to a video-phone call.	P49
2 *Received calls*	Displays received calls.	P60
3 *Redial*	Displays redials.	P50
4 *Set time*	Sets the date and time.	P42
5 *Reconnect alarm**	Allows setting an alarm sound indicating reconnection of a call under improved signal quality which has been cut off due to poor signal quality.	P55
6 *Quality alarm**	Sets whether to sound alarm when your call is about to be cut off due to poor signal quality.	P116
7 *Terminal close*	Sets whether to hang up by closing FOMA terminal.	P59
8 *Dial up*	Allows making a call to another party during a call using Call Waiting Service.	P423
9 *Volume*	Adjusts the earpiece volume.	P62

* The setting can be changed while an alarm is sounding. The change is effective when the alarm once stopped.

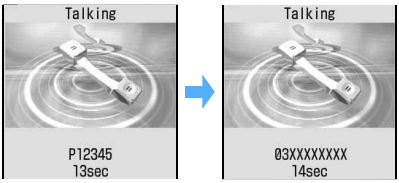
• The operation can be performed by following keys during a call:
- Press [phonebook] to start the phonebook.
- Hold down [camera] for over a second to record the other party's voice (Talking Voice Memo).
- Press [volume] to adjust the volume.
- Press [received calls] for received calls or [redials] for redials to display.
- Press [camera] to activate Camera.

Entering pauses or timed pauses

• Pauses and timed pauses apply only to voice calls.

Example When you call to "03XXXXXXXXP12345" (P=Entered a pause)

When you press [navigation] after the call is connected, all phone numbers after the pause are dialed.



Entering a pause "P"

A pause (P) is used for sending messages to beepers*, operating the answering system at home, reserving tickets, etc. At the point the pause (P) is entered, the dial digits are separated and a tone signal (DTMF) is sent.

1 Hold down [#] for over a second.

• You cannot make a call if a pause is entered at the beginning of the phone number.

* From January 2001, the DoCoMo display beeper name has changed to "QUICKCAST".

Entering a timed pause “T”

A timed pause (T) is used to dial outside line numbers with extensions. Enter “T” between the outside line and extension number to dial the extension number after a pause of a set number of seconds following the outside line number.

1 Hold down [#] for over a second.

- Timed pauses can be entered in succession.
- Each timed pause is followed by a second interval.
- You cannot make a call if a timed pause is entered at the beginning of the phone number.

INFORMATION

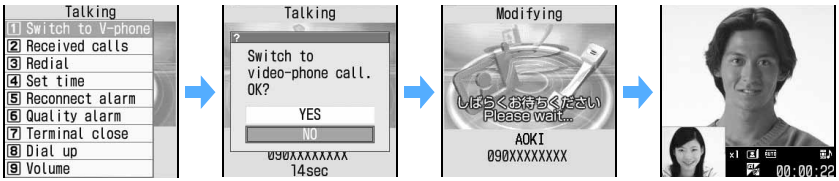
- Tone signals (DTMF) may not be received depending on the receiving device.
- When it is necessary to send tone signals (DTMF) following voice prompts as in making ticket reservations, the speakerphone function is useful. In this case, input tone signals (DTMF) after switching to the speakerphone.
- A subscriber to Call Waiting Service cannot make a call to another party by putting the current call on hold and entering a pause (P) or timed pause (T).
- When ***On hold*** is set in Close Setting, the call is continued even if you close FOMA terminal while sending tone signals (DTMF).

Switching from a voice call to a video-phone call

You can switch to a video-phone by operating from the submenu during a voice call when the other terminal is compatible with switching a call. Switching can be performed only from the terminal which made the voice call. (for 901iS series only as of May, 2005)

- To switch to a video-phone call, the other party needs to set ***Indication ON*** of Indicate V-phone in advance. ☛P88

1 Press [Menu] [1] during a voice call and select *YES*.



- The guidance that the call is switched is played during switching the call.
- Select ***No*** to return to the voice call talking screen.
- You can switch to the call using the speakerphone function by pressing [ ] or [ ] while switching the call.

INFORMATION

- During packet communication, disconnect the packet communication and switch to a video-phone call.
- When the other party is during packet communication, the call cannot be switched to a video-phone call.
- It takes about 5 seconds to switch. In addition, it might take time to switch depending on radio wave conditions.
- A voice call may not be switched to a video-phone call and the connection may be interrupted due to radio wave conditions.
- The call is not charged while ***Modifying*** is displayed.

- Switching from a video-phone call to a voice call. ☛P77
- The second call received during switching a call is rejected and recorded in the received call list.
- The speakerphone function is used continuously even if a voice call and video-phone call are switched.
- The settings (such as switching the camera or selecting the frame) during a video-phone call are canceled when a voice call and a video-phone call are switched.
- According to the call duration of a video-phone call and voice call, the call charges are added, respectively.

Menu 45

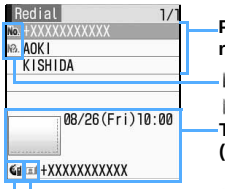
Calling back previously called numbers

Redial

This function records the number you dialed as call history (Redial). When the phone of the other party is busy, etc., you can redial by simple operation.

- The redial list can contain up to 30 entries. When the number of the calls exceeds 30, the oldest one is deleted.
- When the date and time have not been set, the date and time is not recorded in the redial data.
- When the same number is redialed, only the most recent call is recorded for each of ***No specified***, ***Notify***, ***Not notify*** of the caller ID set in Customized Call.
- While not in Secret Mode, when the call is made to the other party who is registered in the phonebook with Secret Attribute set, the phone numbers of the other party is displayed in the redial.

1 Press ☎ on the stand-by display and place the cursor at the party to redial from the redial list.



Phone number or name (when the other party's phone number is registered in the phonebook)

No. : When set to show caller ID in Customized Call

No. : When set to hide caller ID in Customized Call

The date and time and phone number of outgoing call to the selected party (an image when the other party's image is saved in the phonebook)

: Making a video-phone call

: Making an international call

Registering an entry to the phonebook

① Place the cursor at the redial to register and press Menu 1.

- To add entries to the registered phonebook data, press Menu 2.

② Register the name or address by pressing 1 or 2. ☛P94, P97

- To add entries to the registered phonebook data, press 1 or 2 to select the data of the registration destination. ☛P104

Composing SMS

① Place the cursor at the redial number to set for an address, and hold down ✉ for over a second.

The SMS composition screen with the redial phone number specified as the address is displayed.

- If the redial phone number is saved in the phonebook together with mail addresses, pressing ✉ displays the i-mode Mail composition screen with the first mail address specified as the address. If not, the screen is displayed with the redial phone number specified as the address.

Switching to the received call list

① Press 📖 .

- Each press switches the screen between the redial list and received call list.

2 Press .

A voice call is made.

- Press to make a video-phone call.
- Press to make a call in the same way as in the way of dialing of the selected redial (voice call in case the redial is a voice call/video-phone call in case the redial is a video-phone call). Note that the redial dialed by 32K video-phone call is dialed by 64K video-phone call.

INFORMATION

- When Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- When Keypad Dial Lock or PIM Lock is set, the numbers recorded in the redial data up to that point are deleted. Not that calls made after the setting are recorded and can be made from the redial data.
- You can make a call after switching to show/hide the caller ID or appending a prefix to the phone number. ☛P52

Deleting redials

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the redial to delete and press Menu 4 1.

- To delete all redials, press Menu 4 2.

3 Select *Yes*.

Setting whether to send your phone number for each call

186/184 Call

Set whether to make your phone number (caller ID) to display on the other party's terminal when you make a call.

- The caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether to send your caller ID.
- The caller ID is displayed only when the other party's terminal has the ability to display caller ID as in the case of digital mobile phone.

Making calls by adding "186 (✳31#)"/"184 (#31#)" to the phone numbers

Prefix a specific number to the beginning of the phone number when you make a call.

■ **Showing your caller ID**

"1 8 6 (or ✳ 3 1 #) + the other party's phone number + "

- To make a video-phone call, press instead of .

■ **Hiding your caller ID**

"1 8 4 (or # 3 1 #) + the other party's phone number + "

- To make a video-phone call, press instead of .

INFORMATION

- If a guidance to request your caller ID is heard when you make a call, call back after you have set FOMA terminal to notify your caller ID.
- When setting/operating the multiple caller ID notification methods simultaneously, the caller ID is notified in the following priority order (① to ③).
  ①When you select the caller ID notification method from ***Customized call*** in the submenu when making a call
  ②When appending "186 (☆31#)"/"184 (#31#)" before the other party's phone number
  ③When setting Caller ID Notification
  Also, when setting/operating the above caller ID notification methods simultaneously, the number displayed on the screen may differ from the actually sent number (with or without caller ID notification).
- When making an international call, the caller ID may not be notified depending on the going phone company even if "186 (☆31#)" is added.
- When making a call adding "186 (☆31#)"/"184 (#31#)" to the other party's phone number, the phone number added with "186 (☆31#)"/"184 (#31#)" is also recorded in the redial data.

Making calls by setting the conditions

Customized Call

This function allows you to select a call type, show/hide your caller ID, use multi-number and append a prefix for each voice/video-phone call.

1 Enter a phone number on the stand-by display and press Menu 3 DEF.

- The operation is the same as when operating from the list of redials, received calls, recorded messages or voice memos.
- Customized Call can also be made by pressing Menu 5 JKL on the phonebook list.

2 Select each item to set a condition for dialing.

Call Type : Select a voice call, 64K or 32K video-phone call.

Caller ID : Set to show/hide caller ID. When ***No specified*** is set, the setting for Caller ID Notification is used.

Multi No. : ☛P429

Prefix : Select the number (prefix) appended before the phone number.

- The default setting is "009130010" for international calls.
  Prefix ☛P54

3 Press Menu and select *Yes*.

A call is made by the settings.

- When you select ***64K V-phone*** or ***32K V-phone*** call in ***Call Type***, you can select ***Chara-den call*** to select Chara-den to be displayed during a video-phone call.

INFORMATION

- Even if the number "186 (☆31#)"/"184 (#31#)" are added to the phone number in the phonebook, the number notification of this function have the priority.
- On the details (***Top***/***Phone***) screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook, the details screen of the UIM phonebook or the details (***Phone***) screen of Own Number, press Menu and select ***Customized call***.
- If a guidance to request your caller ID is played when a call is made, call back after you have set FOMA terminal to send your caller ID.
- In case of international call, caller ID may not be notified depending on the going phone company even when ***Notify*** is selected in ***Caller ID***.

Using international calls

WORLD CALL

DoCoMo international call service “WORLD CALL”

- This international call service “WORLD CALL” is available for DoCoMo mobile phones.
- How to call

0 0 9 1 3 0 ▶ 0 1 ▶country code ▶area code ▶the other party’s phone number ▶

* The above phone number can be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

* When the area code begins with “0”, dial without “0”. (When calling to a general subscriber phone and other phones in Italy, you need to dial “0”).

- You can call to approximately 220 countries and regions around the world.
- WORLD CALL charges are added to the FOMA service charges every month.
- No subscription charges or monthly fee is required.

  Note: You were subscribed to “WORLD CALL” as one of standard services at the time of subscription to the FOMA service (unless you request not to subscribe to it).
- Change the international call dial procedure

  MY LINE service is not applicable to mobile telephone communications, including WORLD CALL service. However, along with the introducing of MY LINE service, the dialing procedure for international communications using a mobile telephone was changed. Consequently, the previous dial procedure (without prefix “010”) no longer be used.
- Contact “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual for details.

  Note: To use the international call services other than the DoCoMo service, contact the carrier for details.

- “International video-phone” calls to parties using specific overseas 3G mobile phone terminals can be made by dialing as described above and placing a call in the video-phone mode.

Note 1: For the countries and overseas carriers you can connect to, visit the DoCoMo website.

Note 2: The image of the other party displayed on FOMA terminal may be distorted or connection may not be established depending on the terminal at the other end of the international video-phone line.

Using “WORLD CALL” by simplified dialing

Auto Assist Setting

If ***Auto*** is set for Auto Assist Setting, entering “+” followed by phone number from a country code makes an international call easily appending “009130010” for international call automatically.

- If “+” is prefixed to dial followed by the country code of Japan “81”, “009130010” for international call is not appended even when ***Auto*** is set for Auto Assist Setting.

Default Auto

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 7 PQRS 6 MNO on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 .

- To cancel the setting, press 2 ABC.

■ **When making international calls using Auto Assist Setting**

① **Hold down 0 for over a second on the stand-by display and enter a country code and then phone number.**

• "+" can be entered by holding down 0 for over a second.

② **Press .**

Setting numbers other than "WORLD CALL" Prefix

By registering a number to add to the beginning of the phone number (Prefix) in advance, you can add a prefix even after entering the phone number to make an international call easily.

• The default setting is "009130010" for international calls. "009130010" can be changed to another prefix.

Default 009130010

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 7 PQRS 5 JKL on the stand-by display.

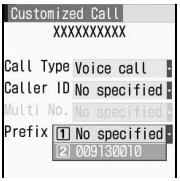
2 Select *Prefix* field and enter a number.

• Up to 3 numbers in total and up to 10 digits for each number can be entered.

• Do not include a pause or timed pause in the phone number. If you set a prefix containing a pause or timed pause, you cannot add the prefix when making a call.

3 Press .

■ **Selecting a prefix when making an international call**



① **Enter a country code and then phone number on the stand-by display.**

② **Press Menu 3 DEF and select *Prefix* field.**

③ **Select a prefix number to be used.**

④ **Press Menu and select *Yes*.**

Making a call by specifying a sub-address Sub Address

Specify a sub-address to call a specific phone or communication device.

• This setting is also used to select the contents in a video delivery service, "M-stage V live".

Default ON

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 7 PQRS 7 PQRS on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 .

• To cancel the setting, press 2 ABC.

Making a call by specifying a sub-address

Press * (sub-address delimiter) after the phone number, enter a sub-address and press (for a voice call) or (for a video-phone call). Note that the sub-address needs to be set for the other party's terminal or communication device.

INFORMATION

- Even when Sub Address is ***ON***, if a phone number begins with "＊" or an added prefix contains "＊", the digits after "＊" are not recognized as a sub-address and called as the number containing "＊".
- Even when Sub Address is ***ON***, if "＊" is pressed after entering a pause or timed pause, it is not recognized as a sub-address delimiter and sent as tone signals (DTMF) containing "＊".

Setting the alarm indicating reconnection of the interrupted call

Reconnect Alarm

Sets an alarm that is heard at the time of reconnecting the voice call or video-phone call interrupted by poor signal conditions in a tunnel or behind a building when signal conditions improve.

- The other party's voice is not heard while signals are disrupted.
- The time until the call is reconnected depends on line use or signal conditions. (The approximate time is a maximum of 10 seconds.)
- Note that the call is charged for the time until the call is reconnected (up to 10 seconds).
- The call may be cut off before the alarm sounds depending on line use or signal conditions.

Default High alarm

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 7 PQRS 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 to 3 DEF.

Suppressing ambient noises to improve the call quality

Noise Reduction

By suppressing ambient noises during a call, the other party can hear your voice clearly and you can also hear the other party's voice clearly.

- It is recommended that this function be turned ***ON*** when using normally.

Default ON

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 7 PQRS 1 on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1.

- To cancel the setting, press 2 ABC.

Talking without using hands in a car

In-car Handsfree

Connecting FOMA terminal with a handsfree device (e.g. car navigation system), which is available in market, through FOMA USB connection cable (optional), allows you to make or answer calls without using hands during driving.

This function is an optional function that will be available when the compatible device is released.

Note: For operations of handsfree devices, refer to the instruction manual for each handsfree devices.

INFORMATION

- Display and ring alert for incoming calls operate according to the FOMA terminal settings. However, if the setting is made to activate ring alert of a handsfree device and while the handsfree device is connected, the ring alert of a handsfree device sounds for incoming calls even if Silent Mode is on or ***OFF*** is set for Sound Setting on FOMA terminal.
- Incoming calls during Driving Mode operate according to the FOMA terminal settings.
- If a video-phone call is made with a handsfree device using the phonebook or Redial, it depends on the communication speed setting of the handsfree device. If no communication speed setting is made, the video-phone call is made at fixed 64K.
- When a video-phone call is made/received with a handsfree device, a substitute image is sent to the other party.
- If the setting is made to hear sounds from FOMA terminal while a handsfree device is connected, FOMA terminal operates according to Close Setting when it is closed during a call. If the setting is made to hear sounds from a handsfree device, the call continues even if FOMA terminal is closed, regardless of Close Setting.
- When Answer Machine is set, it is operated according to the Answer Machine setting even if a handsfree device is connected.
- Ring volume or earpiece volume cannot be adjusted from handsfree devices.

Note: The compatible device has not been released as of May, 2005.

Receiving calls

The procedures for receiving voice calls and the common operations for voice calls and video-phone calls are explained here.

・For a voice call, calls can also be answered by pressing 0わ to 9WXYZ, *ﾀﾞ, and #ﾔﾏ other than 通話 (Any Key Answer). ☛P59

1 A call is received.

The ring tone sounds, the display light turns on and the call indicator lights/flashes.

・Press PWR to put the call on hold (Response and Hold).

2 Press 通話.

You can talk. The call duration is displayed.

・Press ● to put the call on hold (On-hold).

・You can switch to calls using the speakerphone function by pressing 通話 or ✉.

・You can also answer the calls by opening FOMA terminal. ☛P59

3 Press PWR when a call is finished.

・To end the call by closing FOMA terminal, change the setting in Close Setting.

Display information

The caller's phone number, name or still image, video/i-motion may be displayed on the screen according to the terminal condition of the caller and the FOMA terminal settings. The name or phone number can be set not to be displayed. ☛P126

■ **When the other party has sent their caller ID**

When the phone number of the other party is not registered in your phonebook, the phone number and the image set in Incoming Call Setting or Video-phone Receiving Setting is displayed.

- When the phone/video-phone call of Sound Setting is set to ***Movie ringtone***, Movie ringtone is played. When Movie ringtone is with sound only (i-motion without image such as singer's voices), the incoming image by default is displayed, however, the image can be changed in Incoming Call Setting or Video-phone Receiving Setting.

If the phone number of the other party has been already registered in your phonebook, the name is displayed. In addition, when Contact Image is ***ON***, the still image or video/i-motion set in the phonebook is also displayed. ☛P125

- When the ring alert settings are set to ***Movie ringtone***, the image for Movie ringtone is played according to the setting in order of priority of 1.phonebook (phonebook No.) → 2.phonebook (group) → 3.phone/video-phone of Sound Setting. When the image for Movie ringtone or the phonebook is not set, the image set in Incoming Call Setting is displayed.

■ **If the other party's caller ID is not notified**

Displays a reason why no caller ID is sent.

Reason for no caller ID	Description
User unset	The caller selected not to send the caller ID.
Payphone	The call was made from a payphone, etc.
Not support	The call was made from a party who cannot send caller ID, such as a call from overseas or from a general subscriber phone via forwarding service (however, caller ID may be displayed depending on connecting phone companies.)

When a voice call arrives, an incoming operation or image set in Anonymous Caller is prioritized. When a video-phone call comes in, an incoming image operates according to Video-phone Receiving Setting.

Operations while receiving calls

- When there is an incoming voice call, you can perform the following operations from the submenu. When ***Answer*** is set for Arrival Call Act, the same operation can also work when there is another incoming call during a call.

Submenu item	Description
1 ***Voice mail****1	The incoming call is transferred to the Voice Mail Service Center.
2 ***Call rejection***	The call is disconnected (the caller does not pay for the call).
3 ***Call forwarding****2	Forwards the incoming call to the forwarding phone number.

*1 Valid when you use Voice Mail Service and have received a voice call.

*2 Valid when you use Call Forwarding Service and have set a forwarding phone number.

- You can respond a call with Answer Machine by holding down [📷] for over a second (Quick Record Message).
- You can also adjust the ring volume or stop the vibrator. ☛P63

When you hear beeps (call waiting ring tone) while talking

If you subscribe to Voice Mail, Call Waiting or Call Forwarding Service, you will hear beeps (the call waiting ring tone) when you receive another incoming call while talking and the following operations can be performed:

・If you do not subscribe to Call Waiting Service, you cannot receive calls even if you hear beeps.

Service	Operation	Page
Voice Mail Service*	The incoming call is transferred to the Voice Mail Service Center.	P420
Call Waiting Service	Puts the current call on hold and answers the second call.	P422
Call Forwarding Service*	Forwards the incoming call to the forwarding phone number.	P424

* This service can be selected with the settings of ***Yes*** in Arrival Act Setting and ***Answer*** in Arrival Call Act.

INFORMATION

- For calls received from callers not registered in the phonebook, you can reject calls, or set the ring tone or vibrator ringer action not to start immediately. ☛P151, P150
- Call Rejection can be set for some parties registered in the phonebook. ☛P148
- Telephones that do not support dialed long-distance calls such as in-building phones and PBX cannot be used to make calls to FOMA terminals.
- When there is an incoming packet call during a voice call, the incoming screen appears according to the setting for Priority Comm Mode.
- Multiple communication functions can be used simultaneously. ☛P382, P488
- When a call forwarded from FOMA terminal arrives, the phone number from which it was forwarded is displayed at the lower left part of the incoming screen. Note that the name is not displayed but only the phone number is displayed even if the phone number of forwarding source is saved in the phonebook. The phone number may not be displayed depending on the forwarding source.
- Even if i-motion is set to the image for incoming calls in the phonebook or Incoming Call Setting, i-motion is not played and the first frame of i-motion is displayed when there is an incoming voice call during the voice call.
- If a voice call arrives during Software Update, any video/i-motion set as the ring tone is not played.
- i-motion set as the ring tone in Sound Setting may change to *パターン**1*** if there is an incoming call while i-motion is being deleted or saved, regardless of the settings. If a melody or incoming image is set, when a call arrives while the melody or image is being moved, deleted and saved, the melody may be *パターン**1*** or the image may be the standard image.
- When you receive an international call, a plus sign (+) appears at the beginning of the caller ID.
- The flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) can be used to receive calls.

Receiving a call by switching from a voice call to a video-phone call

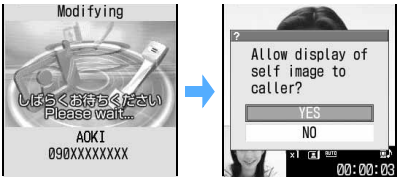
・The operation for switching can be performed only from the side which made the voice call. It cannot be performed from the side which received the voice call.

・To receive the request of switching to a video-phone call, set ***Indication ON*** of Indicate V-phone. ☛P88

1 Receive the request of switching to a video-phone call during a voice call.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to send your self image.

2 Select *Yes*.



The call is switched to a video-phone call and your self image is sent to the other party.

・The guidance notifying that the call is switched is played while switching the call.

・Select ***No*** to send the substitute image to the other party.

INFORMATION

● When you select ***Yes*** in Step 2, your self image is sent for the first time.

Enabling use of dial keys to answer a call

Any Key Answer

Allows you to answer a call by pressing 0わをん to 9wxyz, *tone or #sp- other than ☎.

- This function is available only for voice call. However, it is unavailable when receiving a call while talking.

Default ON

1 Press Menu 8tuv 6mno 8tuv on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1あ/@.

- To cancel the setting, press 2abc.

Setting to start talking by opening FOMA terminal

Open Answer

- This function is available only for voice call (it is also available while Key Lock is on).

Default OFF

1 Press Menu 8tuv 7pqrs 9wxyz on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1あ/@.

- To cancel the setting, press 2abc.

Disconnecting/continuing/holding a call when closing FOMA terminal

Close Setting

- This function does not operate during 64K data communication or packet communication.

Default Continue

1 Press Menu 8tuv 7pqrs 8tuv on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1あ/@ to 3さdef.

End the call : Ends the call.

Continue : Continues the call without putting it on hold. During a video-phone call, the call can be continued with the image as it is.

On hold : Puts the call on hold and sends an on-hold tone to the other party.

INFORMATION

- When ***End the call*** is set, closing FOMA terminal while on hold ends the call.
- When ***Continue*** is set, the substitute image is sent if FOMA terminal is closed while switching from a voice call to a video-phone call or it is opened after switching the call.
- When ***On hold*** is set, the operations are as follows.
  - The call is put on hold if you close FOMA terminal while recording a talking voice memo or switching a voice call/video-phone call.
  - The frame is canceled while sending the image with frame during a video-phone call.
  - The call is continued even if you close FOMA terminal while sending tone signals (DTMF) or switching between a voice call and a video-phone call.
- When FOMA terminal is closed during a call by connecting a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) or other hands free devices (available in market) and the setting is made to hear sounds from the connected device, the call continues regardless of this function's setting.
- When FOMA terminal is closed while recording a message, the recording is continued regardless of this setting.
- This setting is applied when FOMA terminal is closed while recording a talking voice memo. When ***On hold*** is set, the contents which were being recorded by just before putting on hold are saved.

Menu 44

Using Received Calls

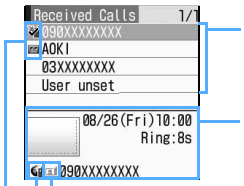
Received Calls

Received Calls records all the incoming calls both answered and missed calls in memory. Recorded messages are also included in the list.

- Up to 30 calls are recorded. When the number exceeds 30, the oldest one is deleted chronologically.
- When the date and time are not set, the date and time are not recorded in the received call history.
- While not in Secret Mode, when the call is received from the other party who is registered in the phonebook with Secret Attribute set, the other party's phone number is displayed on the received call history.

Example Making calls from the received call history

1 Press [▷] on the stand-by display and place the cursor at a received call from the list.



Phone number, name (when the other party's phone number is registered in the phonebook) or reason for no caller ID ☛P57

The date and time and phone number of incoming call from the selected party (the ringing time in case of missed calls, an image when the other party's phone number is saved in the phonebook)

: Received video-phone call/ : Received 64K data communication

: Received international call

: Missed call (unread) **: Recorded message exists**

: Missed call (read) **: Recorded message is deleted**

2 Press [2 ABC] or [Talk].

- Pressing [▷] makes calls in the same way as in the way of receiving of the selected received call (voice call/video-phone call).

Registering an entry into the phonebook

① Place the cursor at the received call to register and press [Menu] [1 あ].

- To add data into the registered phonebook entries, press [Menu] [2 か ABC].

② **Register a name or an address by pressing 1 or 2. ☛P94, P97**

- When adding data to the registered phonebook entries, press 1 or 2 and select the phonebook entry to be registered. ☛P104

■ **Composing SMS**

① **Place the cursor at the received call to be set as an address and hold down ✉ for over a second.**

The SMS composition screen that the phone number of the received call is specified as the address appears.

- When the cursor is placed on the received call with the reason for no caller ID, the SMS composition screen without setting the address appears by holding down ✉ for over a second.
- If the phone number of the received call is registered in the phonebook together with the mail address, pressing ✉ displays the i-mode Mail composition screen with the first mail address specified as the address. If not, the screen is displayed with the phone number of the received call specified as the address.
  When the cursor is placed on the received call with the reason for no caller ID, pressing ✉ displays the i-mode Mail composition screen without setting the address.

■ **Switching to the redial list**

① **Press 📖.**

- Each press switches the screen between the received call list and redial list.

Unanswered calls (missed calls)

1 with the number of missed calls is indicated and the call is recorded in the received call history. ☛P32

- When ***Indicator light*** in Alert Lighting Setting is set to ***ON***, the call indicator flashes until the received calls will be displayed.
- When there is a missed call from an unknown phone number, the ringing time enables you to check whether the call is a malicious call (One-Ring Call, etc.) made for the sole purpose of leaving the phone number in the received call history.

INFORMATION

- If ***Missed call*** is set to ***Not display*** with ***Delayed ring alert*** in Mute Seconds Setting set to ***ON***, missed calls within the set delay time are not displayed. Press Menu 5 3 on the received call list to display the corresponding missed calls. To return to the previous received call, press Menu 5 2 and to display all the received calls, press Menu 5 1.
- When only missed calls within the set delay time are recorded as received calls, pressing ☎ on the stand-by display displays a confirmation screen notifying you of received calls not displayed. When ***Yes*** is selected, missed calls within the set delay time are displayed.
- Calls received from callers using dial-in services in such as office may display different numbers from the caller's dial-in number.
- When Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- When Keypad Dial Lock or PIM Lock is set, the numbers stored in the received call history up to that point are deleted. Note that the received calls after setting are recorded in the received call history and calls can be made from it when PIM Lock is on.
- When Reject non-Reg. Caller is set, any call from the other party not registered in the phonebook is rejected and recorded in the received call history.
- You can make a call after switching to show/hide the caller ID or appending a prefix to the phone number. ☛P52

Deleting received calls

Delete Received Calls

1 Press ☎ on the stand-by display.

2 Place a cursor at a received call to delete and press Menu 4 1 .

- To delete all, press Menu 4 2 . All the received calls also including missed calls within the set delay time are deleted.

3 Select *Yes*.

Adjusting the volume of the caller's voice

Volume Setting

- The volume of the caller's voice can be adjusted from ***Level1*** (lowest volume) to ***Level6*** (highest volume).
- The set ring volume is also reflected to the volume of keypad sounds and playback sounds of recorded messages or voice memos.
- The volume level changed while talking is retained even after the call is ended.
- The set volume is retained even if the power is turned off.

Default Level 4

Adjusting during a call

1 Press ▲ during a call.

The volume is set automatically by pressing ● or waiting for a while after you stopped key operations.

- To turn up the volume, press ▲ or ▲. To turn down the volume, press ▼ or ▼.
- When the speakerphone function is used, the volume of the speakerphone is adjusted.
- Press Menu 0 to adjust the volume during a video-phone call.

Adjusting in stand-by

1 Press Menu 8 1 3 on the stand-by display.

2 Press ▲.

3 Press ●.

Adjusting the ring volume

Ring Volume Setting

Adjust the ring volume for call, mail and Message R/F.

- The ring volume can be adjusted from 7 levels, ***Silent*** and ***Level1*** to ***Level6***. You can also set ***Ascending*** (the volume of ring tone changes into ***Silent*** → ***Level1*** → … → ***Level6*** every about 3 seconds) in stand-by.
- The ring volume changed while receiving a call returns to the original volume when the call is ended.
- The ring volume changed while in stand-by is retained even if the power is turned off.
- The ring volume for calls is also reflected to the volume of i-αppli and schedule alarm. Note that when ***Ascending*** is set, the volume of i-αppli is ***Level4***.

Default Ring alert volume: Level 4 Msg. alert volume: Level 4

Adjusting the ring volume while receiving a call

1 Press [▲] while receiving a call.

The volume is set automatically by pressing [▲] or waiting for a while after you stopped key operations.

- To turn up the volume, press [▲] or [▶]. To turn down the volume, press [▼] or [◀].

INFORMATION

- Pressing [C] while receiving a call stops the operation of the ring tone and vibrator.
- When ***Ascending*** is set for the ring volume and if you adjust the ring volume while receiving a call, the change begins with ***Level6***.

Adjusting in stand-by

Example Adjusting the ring volume for calls

1 Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [1 あ/@] [2 かABC] [1 あ/@] on the stand-by display.

■ **Adjusting the ring volume for mail**

① **Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [1 あ/@] [2 かABC] [2 かABC] on the stand-by display.**

2 Press [▲▼].

- When the volume is ***Level6***, pressing [▲] or [▶] sets ***Ascending***. When the volume is ***Level1***, pressing [▼] or [◀] sets ***Silent***.

3 Press [▲].

INFORMATION

- S is indicated on the stand-by display when the ring volume for calls is set to ***Silent***. If the vibrator for voice call is set at the same time, is indicated.
- Even when the ring volume is set to ***Silent***, incoming calls and mail reception can be notified by vibrator operation or lighting/flashing of the call indicator, in addition to message display on the screen. ☛P130

Menu 8222 / Menu 8224

Setting operations when receiving voice/video-phone calls

Incoming Call Setting/Video-phone Receiving Setting

- The settings of this function are also reflected to the voice/video-phone call in Sound Setting and Vibrator Setting and the incoming voice/video-phone call in Alert Lighting Setting.

Default Ring alert: Melody/ パターン 1（Incoming Call Setting） Melody/ 電話・メロディ A（Video-phone Receiving Setting）
Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting : Flash/Ocean

Example Setting operations when receiving a voice call

1 Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [6 はMNO] [2 かABC] on the stand-by display.

■ **Setting operations when receiving a video-phone call.**

① **Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [8 TUV] [2 かABC] on the stand-by display.**

2 Select each item to set.

Ring alert : Sets a ring tone for an incoming call.
- When you select ***OFF***, no ring tone emits.
- When you select ***Melody*** or ***Movie ringtone***, select a melody or video/i-motion.

Show image : Sets an image displayed for an incoming call.
- When ***Select image*** is selected, select ***Select image*** in ***List images*** field to set an image.
- When i***motion*** is selected, select a video/i-motion from the video list.

Vibrator : Sets operation of the vibrator for an incoming call.

Lighting : Sets the lighting pattern and color of the call indicator.
- When the lighting pattern is set to ***Sync melody***, the lighting color lights/flashes by ***Rainbow***.

• Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion when selecting. ☛P112

3 Press [Select].

INFORMATION

- Setting Create animation or continuous shots for ***Select image*** displays the first frame.
- When the video/i-motion with sound only (i-motion without image such as singer's voices) is set for the ring alert, if the incoming image is reset to the video/i-motion with image only or Flash movie, the ring alert sounds by *パターン1* (for voice call) or *電話・メロディA* (for video-phone call).
- If the video/i-motion with sound and image is set for ***Movie ringtone***, ***Show image*** is switched to ***Sync ring alert*** and the image cannot be selected List images.
- Some video/i-motion may be unable to be set as an image. Also, the video/i-motion with sound cannot be set.
- When the video/i-motion with sound only is set for the ring alert, even if an animation (except for the standard image) is set for the image, it does not play and the first frame is displayed on the incoming screen.
- When there is an incoming call during a call, if the video/i-motion with sound and image is set for the ring alert or the video/i-motion is set for the incoming image, the first frame is displayed on the incoming screen.
- The image for Incoming Call Setting or Video-phone Receiving Setting is set to other than ***Sync ring alert***, the ring alert sounds by *パターン1* (for voice call) or *電話・メロディA* (for video-phone call).
- The image is switched to ***Standard image*** when the video/i-motion with sound only (i-motion without image such as singer's voices) is set for ***Movie ringtone*** in ***Ring alert*** and when Flash movie or video/i-motion is set for ***Show image***, but the image can be changed by selecting ***Select image*** in ***Show image*** field.
- If no image is registered in a phonebook entry, the image set in ***Show image*** field is displayed regardless of the setting of Contact Image. However, the image set in Group Setting, if any, is displayed.

Setting priority screen displayed for incoming calls during a call or packet communication Priority Comm Mode

This function allows you to select the voice call or packet communication screen to be given priority when a packet communication (or voice) call is received during a voice (or packet communication) call.

• A screen change caused by this function does not interrupt the call or packet communication.

Default No Set Up

1 Press [Menu] [8 やTUV] [6 はMNO] [9 らWXYZ] on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 あ/@ to 3 さ DEF.

No Set Up : Displays the last incoming screen received without giving display priority.
Voice call : Displays the a voice call screen by priority.
Packet : Displays the packet communication screen by priority.

- While receiving an i-mode packet communication, the voice call screen is displayed by priority regardless of this setting.

Screen display

The following screen is displayed depending on the settings for Priority Comm Mode.

- During voice call

Setting	Incoming packet call other than i-mode
No Set Up	Screen displayed during a voice call
Voice call	
Packet	Screen displayed during incoming packet call

Note1: The screen displayed during incoming calls depends on Arrival Call Act. ☛P428
Note2: Packet communication in modes other than i-mode does not include receiving of i-mode Mail, SMS and Message R/F.

- During packet communication

Setting	Incoming voice call
No Set Up	Screen displayed during receiving a voice call
Voice call	
Packet	Screen displayed during i-mode communication

Note: Packet communications in modes other than i-mode cannot be received during i-mode communications. ☛P488

Putting incoming calls on hold when you cannot answer right away Response and Hold

- The caller will be charged for the time spent on hold.

1 Press PWR while receiving a call.

FOMA terminal is put on hold (Response and Hold). The other party hears a response hold guidance.
When a video-phone call is received, the video-phone response hold image is displayed on your and the other party's terminal.

An incoming voice call is on hold

An incoming video-phone call is on hold

2 Press 2 ABC when you are ready to answer the call.

- In case of a voice call, you can answer the call also by opening FOMA terminal. ☛P59
- Press Video for a video-phone call. Press 2 ABC instead of Video to send a substitute image to the other party. ☛P83
- If PWR is pressed or the other party hangs up during Response and Hold, the call is ended.

INFORMATION

- When you use the Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, you can switch to Voice Mail or Call Forwarding by selecting ***Voice mail/Call forwarding*** from the submenu while receiving a call.
- The video-phone response hold image can be changed. ☛P84

Setting a response hold guidance

Status Message

You can record your own voice as a response hold guidance.

- One guidance up to 10 seconds long can be recorded.
- While a voice or video-phone call is during Response and Hold, the guidance set by this function is played.

Default On-hold tone: Standard

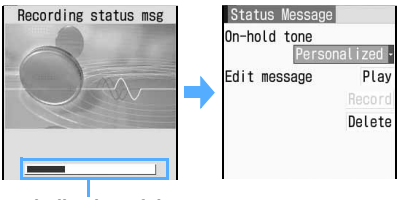
Example Setting a recorded data for guidance

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 6 MNO 7 PQRS on the stand-by display.

2 Select *On-hold tone* field and press 2 ABC.

- To reset to the default guidance, press 1 and go to Step 4.

3 Select *Record* in *Edit message* field and speak a response hold guidance after a dial tone.



An indication of the allowable recording time.

Recording will start after a message is displayed.

- An end tone (beep) sounds in approximately 10 seconds from the start of recording.
- Press ● to stop in the middle of the recording.
- ***Record*** cannot be selected when a recorded data has already been registered. Select ***Delete***, select ***Yes*** and record after deleting the recorded data.
- Select ***Play*** to check the recorded guidance.

4 Press ▭.

INFORMATION

- If ***Standard*** is set for ***On-hold tone***, the guidance “I cannot answer to the phone right now. Please wait or call back later (in Japanese)” is played for the other party during Response and Hold.
- If you delete the recorded guidance, the default guidance is returned.

Setting an on-hold tone

On-hold Tone

- You can set not only the default melody registered in FOMA terminal but the melody saved from i-mode sites or mail as an on-hold tone.
- While a voice or video-phone call is during On-hold, the melody set by this function is played.
- The setting of this function is also reflected to the on-hold tone in Sound Setting.

Default On-hold tone: Default tone

1 **Press Menu 8 TUV 7 PQRS 3 DEF on the stand-by display.**

2 **Select *On-hold tone* field and press 1 あ/@.**

・To reset to the default melody, press 2 か ABC and go to Step 4.

3 **Select *On-hold melody* field and select a melody.**

・Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion when selecting. ☛P112

4 **Press ▶.**

INFORMATION

● The volume of the on-hold tone cannot be changed.
● If you set a melody other than ***Preinstalled*** folder as the on-hold melody, the default melody is played while PIM Lock is on.

Setting not to receive calls during driving

Driving Mode

Driving Mode is an automatic answering service considering safety driving. With Driving Mode set, the caller hears a guidance informing that you are driving and cannot answer the call and the call is disconnected.

・Calls can be made even in Driving Mode.
・The following sounds do not sound. In addition, the vibrator or call indicator does not operate. It is also the same as when the display light is turned off.
  ・Ring tone of phone and 64K data communication
  ・Ring tone of mail or Message R/F
  ・Sound of alarm or schedule alarm
  ・Sound of i-αppli
・Even if mail or Message R/F is received, the receiving screen or reception result screen is not displayed. Note that, when Check i-mode Message is performed, the receiving screen or reception result screen is displayed. In addition, if mail or Message R/F is received at this time, the receiving screen is displayed and the reception result is updated when receiving is completed.
・When FOMA terminal is turned off or you are outside the service area, the caller hears a guidance for out-of-range and the guidance for Driving Mode is not played.
・The following sounds are played even in Driving Mode:
  ・Keypad sound
  ・Open slide/close slide sound when opening/closing FOMA terminal
  ・Shutter sound when shooting with the camera
・Driving Mode can be set or canceled even when 圏外 is indicated.
・You do not need to apply to use Driving Mode. No monthly fee is required.
・For details, see “Network Services User’s Guide”.

Activating Driving Mode

1 **Hold down i-mode for over a second on the stand-by display.**

is indicated.

■ Canceling

① Hold down i-mode for over a second on the stand-by display in Driving Mode.

INFORMATION

- If there is an incoming call while Driving Mode is being set in stand-by, the following takes place:
  - In case of voice calls, the other party receives a guidance for Driving Mode and the call is disconnected. In case of video-phone calls, a message indicating that Driving Mode is being set is displayed on the other party's terminal and the call is disconnected. In any case, your FOMA terminal does not process the incoming call. The stand-by display shows with the number of missed calls, which is recorded in the received call history.
- Even in Silent Mode, Driving Mode takes precedence.
- When Driving Mode and Network Service are used at the same time, the following operations are applied. Priority is given to network services depending on the setting status or the way of calling of the other party and neither operation in Driving Mode nor recording incoming calls (displaying the icon which shows the number of missed calls and recording in the received call history) is performed.

Service	Receiving voice calls	Receiving video-phone calls
Voice Mail Service	The other party receives a Driving Mode guidance and the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.*1	The call is disconnected without connecting to the Voice Mail Service Center.
Call Forwarding Service	The other party receives a Driving Mode guidance and the call is forwarded to the specified destination.*1	The other party does not receive a message indicating that Driving Mode is being set and then the call is forwarded to the specified destination.*2
Call Waiting Service	• During voice calls, the other party receives a Driving Mode guidance and then the call is disconnected. • During video-phone calls, the terminal of the other party receives busy signals.	The other party receives a message indicating that the call was not connected and then the call is disconnected.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	If the other party is registered as the nuisance caller, the other party receives a call reject guidance and the call is disconnected. *3	The other party does not receive a message indicating that the call cannot be connected and then the call is disconnected.*3
Caller ID Request Service	• If the other party does not notify the caller ID, the other party receives a guidance requesting to notify the caller ID and then the call is disconnected. • If the other party notifies the caller ID, the other party receives a Driving Mode guidance and then the call is disconnected.	• If the other party does not send the caller ID, the other party receives a message indicating that the call cannot be connected and then the call is disconnected. • If the other party notifies the caller ID, the other party receives a message indicating that Driving Mode is being set is displayed and then the call is disconnected.

*1 If the ringing time of Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is set to ***0 sec***, a Driving Mode guidance is not played and also the incoming call is not recorded.

*2 If the ringing time of Call Forwarding Service is set to ***0 sec***, the incoming call is not recorded.

*3 The incoming call is not recorded.

- Even in Driving Mode, a call from a phone number set for the sender in Remote Lock is counted as an incoming call and Remote Lock is activated.
- This function cannot be set during data communication.
- If a call is received while using i-mode in Driving Mode, the call is ended after the following operations. The call is recorded in the received call history.
  - In case of voice calls, the other party receives the guidance for Driving Mode.*
  - In case of video-phone calls, the message indicating that it is while talking is displayed.*
    - * When Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is used, the incoming voice call operates according to each setting.
- Making emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) in Driving Mode cancels Driving Mode.
- In Driving Mode, even if Call Cost Limit is set to ***ON*** and an alarm is set, the message is not displayed and also the alarm does not sound.

Allowing the caller to leave message when you cannot answer the call Answer Machine

By setting Answer Machine, a greeting will be played and the caller can leave a recorded message when you cannot answer the call.

- You can record up to 4 voice and video-phone calls in total, a maximum of approximately 30 seconds for each call.
- The date and time and the phone number of message are also recorded. However, when the date and time have not been set or the phone number is not notified, they are not recorded.
- Answer Machine can respond a video-phone call, but it records only voice messages as when answering a voice call and the image is not recorded.
- You can set the time interval between the reception of the call and the start of the greeting.
- The greeting in your own voice can be created.
- It is advisable that the contents of recorded messages be separately written down in a notebook, etc. Recorded data may be lost due to failure, repair, change of model or other handlings of FOMA terminal. If the data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

Menu 4611

Setting Answer Machine

Default Deactivate

1 Press [📷] [1あ] [1あ] on the stand-by display.

is indicated.

Canceling

① Press [📷] [1あ] [2か] on the stand-by display while Answer Machine is set.

Replying with Quick Record Message

When Answer Machine has not been set to start, you can activate the function only once by holding down [📷] for over a second while the phone is ringing. This operation does not set Answer Machine to start.

INFORMATION

- When the total recorded numbers of the recorded message become 4, is indicated on the stand-by display. The icon does not disappear even if Answer Machine is canceled.
- If there are already 4 record messages, Answer Machine cannot be set. If you attempt to activate Quick Record Message by holding down [📷] while the phone is ringing, a warning tone (bleep) sounds and the ring tone keeps sounding. Delete unnecessary recorded messages and set again.

Receiving a call while Answer Machine is set

1 A call is received.

After the ring tone sounds according to Greeting Response Time, the greeting screen is displayed and the Answer Machine automatically answers the call.

- When the greeting is set to ***Preinstalled***, the caller hears the guidance “I cannot answer the phone right now, please leave your name and message after the beep (in Japanese)”. Set ***Personalized*** to play the recorded guidance.

2 The other party's message is recorded.

An indication of the allowable recording time

Recording the message of the voice call

Recording the message of video-phone call

- A beep announces the other party the start and end of the recording. And when about 25 seconds have elapsed since the start of recording, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of recording is approaching.

3 When the recording is completed, the call is disconnected.

1 with the number of recorded messages is indicated.

INFORMATION

- You can answer a call even while playing the greeting or recording a message. Pressing answers the call as a normal voice or video-phone call (substitute image is sent to the other party) and pressing sends your image and answers the call as a video-phone. In case of a voice call, you can also answer the call by opening FOMA terminal. ☛P59
  If the message is on recording at this time, the contents before receiving the call will not be recorded.
- When 圏外 is indicated, Answer Machine does not operate. Use Voice Mail Service (paid service).
- Answer Machine cannot be started and the ring tone keeps sounding when 4 messages have already been recorded. If Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is set to start, each service starts its operation.
- Driving Mode has priority over Answer Machine and does not operate in Driving Mode.
- The recording may be disrupted if the signal conditions are poor.
- Calls replied by Answer Machine are recorded in the received call history.
- Another call received while recording a message is rejected and recording continues. In this case, the rejected incoming calls are recorded in the received call history.
- When video-phone is answered with Answer Machine, a video-phone answer machine image is displayed to the other party. The video-phone answer machine image can be changed. ☛P84
- When the indicator light is set to ***ON*** in Alert Lighting Setting, the call indicator flashes until the recorded message is played.

Menu 4613

Setting the response time until the greeting starts

Greeting Response Time

Default 008 Sec

1 Press [1あ] [3さ] on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the response time (between 0 and 120 seconds).

- You can also increase or decrease the entered values by pressing .

INFORMATION

- When Auto Answer (when a flat type earphone/microphone set with a switch (optional) is connected), Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service and this function are set simultaneously, those priorities change with the ringing times set for each service and function. To give priority to Answer Machine, the response time set for this function should be shorter than the ringing times set for Auto Answer, Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service. Note that Answer Machine may not be given priority depending on the signal conditions. In this case, respond a call with Quick Record Message.
- The same time period cannot be set for both the delayed time for Auto Answer and the response time for Answer Machine.

Setting a greeting message

Greeting Setting

You can record your own voice as a greeting message.
• One greeting up to about 10 seconds long can be recorded.

Default Set Greeting: Preinstalled

Example Setting a recorded data for a greeting

1 Press [●] [1あ@] [4た GHI] on the stand-by display.

2 Select *Set Greeting* field and press [2か ABC].
• To reset to the default greeting, press [1あ@] and go to Step 4.

3 Select *Record* in *Edit greeting* field and speak a greeting message after a dial tone.
• The operation procedure is the same as when recording a response hold guidance. ☛P66

4 Press [📖].

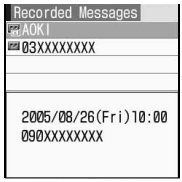
INFORMATION

● If you delete the recorded greeting, the default greeting is returned.

Playing recorded messages

You can play or delete recorded messages from the list.
• Unplayed recorded messages, if any, can be played quickly from the stand-by display. ☛P32

1 Press [●] [2か ABC] on the stand-by display.



On the recorded message list screen, the date and time of recording and the other party's phone number appear.
: Unplayed recorded message of a voice call
: Unplayed recorded message of a video-phone call
: Played recorded message of a voice call
: Played recorded message of a video-phone call
• When the caller's phone number is notified, the phone number is displayed and when the caller's phone number is not notified, the reason for no caller ID is displayed. When the caller is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.

2 Select a recorded message to play.

An indication of the playing time

The recorded message is played back.
• During playback, the following operations are enabled:
[▲▼] : Adjust volume
[▼] : Stop

■ **Deleting**

① **Place the cursor at the recorded message to delete and press Menu 2 1.**

- To delete all, press Menu 2 2.

② **Select *Yes*.**

■ **Registering an entry into the phonebook**

① **Place the cursor at the recorded message to register and press Menu 4.**

- To add to the registered phonebook data, press Menu 5.

② **Register a name or an address by pressing 1 or 2. ☛P94, P97**

- To add to the registered phonebook data, press 1 or 2 to select the phonebook data to be registered. ☛P104

3 Select whether to delete the played recorded message.

- Select *Yes* to delete the recorded message.

INFORMATION

- When *Indicator light* is set to *ON* in Alert Lighting Setting, the call indicator flashes until unplayed message is played.
- Place the cursor at the entry in the recorded message list and press to make a voice call or press to make a video-phone call. Customized Call can be used from the submenu to make voice or video-phone calls with showing/hiding the caller ID set or to make video-phone calls with the communication speed specified.
- When Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), entry of the terminal security code is required.

Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls

Video-phone 74
Making video-phone calls 74
Receiving video-phone calls 78
Using Chara-den 79
Setting images to be sent to the other party 80
Customizing the display settings during a video-phone call 86
Changing the video-phone settings ..... Video-phone Settings 87
Setting of switching between a voice call and a video-phone call ..... Indicate V-phone 88
Using the video-phone by connecting with the external device ..... External Device 89

Video-phone

The video-phone function is available between terminals that support DoCoMo's video-phone. By using the video-phone, you can talk on the phone while looking each other images. It is also possible to display a still image, substitute image, Chara-den, etc. instead of your self image.

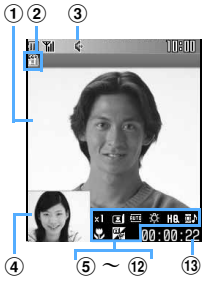
DoCoMo video-phone specifications are compliant with "3G-324M*1 that has been standardized by the international standard 3GPP*2". Note that the connection with the video-phones of different specifications can not be established.

*1 3G-324M···An international standard for the 3rd generation mobile video-phone

*2 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)···Area standardization organization established to develop the standard technology specification for 3rd generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).

- The following two communication speeds are provided for the video-phone:
  - 64K: Connects at communication speed of 64 kbps. - 32K: Connects at communication speed of 32 kbps.

Screen display during a video-phone call



①	**Main screen**	Image of the other party is displayed by default.
②	**Communication speed**	64K : 64K 32K : 32K
③	**Speakerphone function**	No icon: Normal video-phone call : With the speakerphone function operating
④	**Sub screen**	Your self image is displayed by default.
⑤	**Zoom**	×1 to ×16: Standard to 16 x (out-camera) ×1 to ×2: Standard to 2 x (in-camera)
⑥	**Status**	: Sending your self image. : Sending a substitute image : Sending Chara-den : Sending a frame : Sending a still image : On-hold : On Response and Hold. : Recording a message : Recording a voice memo
	Action mode	ACTION: Action PARTS: Action of parts
⑦	**Camera effects**	AUTO: Full auto, etc. The icons for other camera effects ☛P82
⑧	**Compact light**	No icon: Turn light off : Turn light on
⑨	**Quality of outgoing image**	No icon: Standard HQ: Prefer image quality : Prefer motion speed
⑩	**Channel establishment**	: Sound channel established : Image channel established : Sound/image channel established
⑪	**Macro mode (Close-up mode)**	No icon: Normal mode : Macro mode (out-camera)
⑫	**Switch to V-phone**	No icons: Switching is not available. : Switching is available.
⑬	**Call duration**	Displayed in the HH:MM:SS format

Making video-phone calls

- If you make a video-phone call while viewing the face of other party, use a speakerphone function or connect to a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional).
- International video-phone calls are available by using the DoCoMo's international call service "WORLD CALL". ☛P53
- If the message indicating that the call cannot be connected is displayed when making a video-phone call, set Caller ID Notification and dial again.

1 Enter a phone number on the stand-by display.

- Entering method is the same as for the voice calls.
- You can make a video-phone call by specifying the communication speed (64K or 32K) from Customized Call if you enter a phone number and press Menu 3 DEF.

2 Press Aa/.

Your image is displayed during a video-phone call.

- If the phone of the other party is busy, you will hear busy signals. The message, ***Busy.*** or ***Failed to connect.*** is displayed on the screen. Press PWR to cancel the call and dial again after for a while. You can call back quickly by using Redial.
- When the substitute image is Chara-den, Chara-den may not be displayed. If this happens, the standard image set for the substitute image is sent to the other party. ☛P83
- The charging begins when ***Connected video-phone*** is displayed on the screen.

3 Talk with the other party.

The image of the other party is displayed on the screen.

- Putting the call on hold sends a video-phone on-hold image. The video-phone on-hold image can be changed.
- Depending on the other party's settings, the substitute image may be displayed.
- You can switch to the call using the speakerphone function by pressing Hands-free or .
- While talking, the image to be sent to the other party is switched between your self image and the substitute image every time Aa/. is pressed. ☛P81

4 When you finish a call, press PWR.

- To end the video-phone call by closing FOMA terminal, change the settings in Close Setting.

Operations during video-phone calls

• The following operations can be performed from the submenu:

Submenu item	Description	Page
1 ***Change to voice***	Switches from a video-phone call to a voice call.	P77
2 ***Switch cameras***	Switches between the in-camera/out-camera.	P85
3 ***Compact light ON***	Switches between the compact light on/off.	P87
4 ***Camera settings***	Applies effects on images to be displayed, sets the brightness and color density for the camera images to be sent during video-phone calls and switches to Macro Mode.	P82, P86
5 ***Receive quality***	Sets the quality of received images. This setting may not be enabled depending on the function of the other party's terminal.	P87
6 ***V-phone settings***	Changes settings for the screen to be displayed during video-phone calls.	P87
7 ***Chara-den settings***	Changes the Chara-den character, switches between full and semi motion and selects actions. In addition, the still image set for the substitute image of Image Setting is displayed.	P337
8 ***Play file***	Sends frames and still images to the other party.	P81, P83
9 ***Send DTMF***	Transmits tone signals (DTMF) during video-phone calls.	P86
0 ***Volume***	Adjusts earpiece volume.	P62

• You can record the other party's voice by holding down Camera for over a second (Talking Voice Memo).

INFORMATION

- You can make a video-phone call even by performing in order of Steps 2, Step 1. When [video] is pressed and the phone number is entered, the video-phone call can be made automatically after 5 seconds.
- You may not be able to make a video-phone call while executing another function. ☛P490
- Please note that the communication charges for video-phone calls are based on the rate for digital communication rather than the voice calls even if the substitute image or Chara-den is used.
- If a video-phone call cannot be made, the following message (text information) is displayed on the screen and the screen returns to the stand-by display. Note that the displayed messages may not reflect the status on the other party's terminal correctly, depending on the type of the terminal and/or conditions of using the network service of the other party.

Message	Description
Check the number and retry.	You dialed the phone number not used.
Busy.	The other party is busy or during a packet communication.
Disconnected due to outside of service/power off.	The other party is outside the service area or the other party's terminal is turned off.
Select on for Call ID Notification.	This message is displayed in case connecting without notifying the caller ID (when accessing to the V live or visual site).
Please redial phone call.	This message is displayed when the other party sets Voice Mail Service or sets Call Forwarding Service and the forwarding destination is the terminal which is not compatible with video-phone.
Failed to connect.	Set Caller ID Notification to ***Notify*** and dial again. • The message may be also displayed for cases other than the above.

- While a video-phone call is being forwarded, the message ***Your call is being forwarded.*** is displayed.
- Video-phone via 32K line is intended for connection with devices such as PHS with which video-phone calls via 64K line may not be available depending on the network condition. When a video-phone call is made via 64K line, the call type is automatically switched to via 32K for redialing if the communication environment of the other party is found to be 32K area. When ***ON*** is set for ***Voice call auto switch***, redialing via 32K line is also given priority. ☛P87
  Note: If a call is made via 32K line, the charge is the same as the digital communication charge via 64K.
- If a video-phone call made is not connected, redialing is automatically performed as described below:

Call type	Voice call auto switch setting	Switching operation
64K	**ON**	64K → 32K → Voice call
	OFF	64K → 32K → Disconnection
32K	**ON**	32K → Voice call
	OFF	32K → Disconnection

- If you preset the communication speed (64K or 32K) in the phonebook, you can change the communication speed depending on the other party you are making a video-phone call.
- If you specify the communication speed in Customized Call from the submenu after entering the phone number to make a call, the specification for Customized Call is effective. If nothing has been specified for the communication speed, 64K connection is attempted.
- When ***ON*** is set for ***Voice call auto switch***, the call type is automatically switched to voice call for redialing if the other party's terminal does not support the video-phone function or uses the mova service through Dual Network Service, hence, making the more certain connection to the other party. ☛P87
  Note: If you redial as a voice call, the charge is committed as a voice call.
- If the video-phone call is made to emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) from FOMA terminal while ***Voice call auto switch*** is set to ***ON***, the call automatically switches to a voice call.
- New voice or video-phone calls cannot be made during video-phone calls. The message indicating that the call cannot be made is displayed. i-mode connection or sending/receiving i-mode Mail, Message R/F or SMS is not available, either.

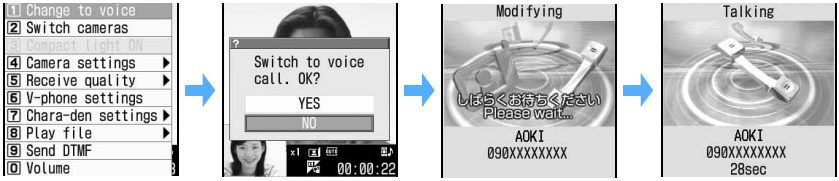
- A video-phone call is not available to the terminals not supporting the video-phone function, or to the terminals that are turned off or located outside the service area. If you set ***Voice call auto switch*** to ***ON*** and attempt to make a video-phone call with an unsupported device, the other party will abort the communications before connected. For this case, voice call redialing will automatically begin. The redialing function cannot work as written above if you attempt the video-phone calls with inapplicable conditions such as at ISDN-sync 64kbps or via PIAFS access points, with ISDN video-phones incompatible with 3G-324M (as of May, 2005), or with the wrong phone number. Note that some calls may require the call charge.
- You can switch to show/hide the caller ID when making a video-phone call. ☛P52
- If a pause or timed pause is entered, dialing before the pause and the timed pause is made and all the phone numbers entered after the pause or timed pause are ignored.
- When there is an incoming call during dialing or redialing a video-phone call, the dialing may be interrupted and the ring tone may sound.
- Incoming calls during a video-phone call ☛P488
- Even if sending/receiving the voice or image is aborted and (only voice) or (only image) is displayed during a video-phone call, the call may be continued as it is.
- If the radio wave conditions are poor during a video-phone call, the image may be displayed as mosaic.

Switching from a video-phone call to a voice call

You can switch to a voice call by operating from the submenu during a video-phone call when the other terminal is compatible with switching a call. Switching can be performed only from the terminal which made the video-phone call. (for 901iS series only as of May, 2005)

• To switch to a voice call, the other party needs to set ***Indication ON*** of Indicate V-phone in advance. ☛P88

1 Press Menu 1 あ during a video-phone call, select *YES*.



- The guidance notifying that the call is switched is played while switching the call.
- Select ***NO*** to return to the video-phone talking screen.
- You can switch to the call using the speakerphone function by pressing or while switching the call.

INFORMATION

- It takes about 5 seconds to switch. Note that it might take time to switch depending on radio wave conditions.
- A voice call cannot be switched to a video-phone call and the connection may be interrupted due to radio wave conditions.
- The call is not charged while ***Modifying*** is displayed.
- Switching from a voice call to a video-phone call ☛P49
- The call cannot be switched to a voice call while the other terminal is during Response and Hold or recording a message or voice memo.
- The second call received during switching a call is rejected and recorded in the received call history.
- The call using the speakerphone function continues even if a voice call and a video-phone call are switched.
- The settings (such as switching the camera or selecting the frame) during a video-phone call are canceled when a voice call and a video-phone call are switched.
- According to the call duration of a video-phone call and a voice call, the call charges are added, respectively.

Receiving video-phone calls

- You cannot receive a video-phone call by pressing the keys except for [TV], [PHONE] (Any Key Answer is unavailable).

1 Receive a call.

The ring alert sounds, the display light turns on and the call indicator lights flashes.

- The other party's phone number, name or still image, video/i-motion may be displayed on the screen according to the terminal condition of the caller or FOMA terminal settings. ☛P56
- Press [PHONE] to put your answer on hold and a video-phone response hold image is displayed on the screen of the other party's terminal.

2 Press [TV].

Your self image is displayed while on the video-phone call.

■ Receiving a video-phone call with the substitute image

① Press [PHONE].

The substitute image is sent to the other party when the video-phone call is connected.

- When Chara-den is set as the substitute image, Chara-den may not be displayed. If this happens, the standard image set for the substitute image is sent to the other party.

3 Talk with the other party.

The image of the other party is displayed on the screen.

- Putting calls on hold displays a video-phone on-hold image. The video-phone on-hold image can be changed.
- Depending on the other party's settings, the substitute image may be displayed.
- You can switch to the call using the speakerphone function by pressing [PHONE] or [MAIL].
- While talking, the image to be sent to the other party is switched between your self image and the substitute image every time [TV] is pressed. ☛P81

4 When you finish a call, press [PHONE].

- To end the video-phone call by closing FOMA terminal, change the settings in Close Setting.

Operations while receiving calls

- You can perform the following operations from the submenu:

Submenu item	Description
1 *Call forwarding**	Makes incoming calls transferred to the forwarding phone number.
2 *Call rejection*	A call is disconnected. Caller does not pay for calling.

* Valid when you use Call Forwarding Service and the phone numbers for forwarding have been set.

- You can respond a call with Answer Machine by holding down [CAMERA] for over a second (Quick Record Message).
- You can also adjust the ring volume or stop the vibrator. ☛P63

INFORMATION

- When a video-phone call arrives while a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) is connected, holding down the headset switch for over a second allows you to answer the call with the substitute image. In addition, when you set Auto Answer, you can respond by sending the substitute image to the caller automatically.
- Voice Mail Service does not support video-phone calls.
- When a video-phone call arrives, it is not connected if the forwarding destination is not set to the video-phone possible terminal which is compatible with the 3G-324M even if Call Forwarding Service is activated. Check the specifications of the forwarding destination when setting it.
- If a video-phone call from a phone number registered in Nuisance Call Blocking Service arrives, the message indicating that the call could not be connected to the other party and the call is ended.
- Even if sending/receiving the voice or image is aborted and (only voice) or (only image) is displayed during a video-phone call, the call may be continued as it is.
- Any video-phone call that arrives during Software Update is rejected and recorded in the received call history.
- When you end a video-phone call, the image while disconnecting may not appear depending on your terminal condition.
- Call Waiting Service is unavailable during a video-phone call.
- Changing the operation when a video-phone call arrives ☛P63

Receiving a call by switching from a video-phone call to a voice call

- The operation for switching can be performed only from the side which made the video-phone call. It cannot be performed from the side which received the video-phone call.
- To receive the request of switching to a voice call, set ***Indication ON*** of Indicate V-phone in advance. ☛P88

1 Receive the request of switching to a voice call during a video-phone call.

A video-phone call is switched to a voice call automatically.

- The guidance notifying that the call is switched is played while switching the call.

Menu 54

Using Chara-den

A character can be sent instead of your image when making a video-phone call. The character can be moved by pressing dial keys during a video-phone call. Some characters move their mouth in time with the sounds picked up by the microphone.

1 Press 4 on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Select Chara-den and press .

3 Enter a phone number and press .

Chara-den
©BVIG

A video-phone call is made with Chara-den set as the substitute image.

- The parties to make video-phone calls can be selected from the phonebook by pressing .
- If you press dial keys while sending Chara-den as the substitute image, the character performs the action in accordance with the number of the keys. The following operations can also be performed:
  - : Cancel action
  - : Display the action list (Selecting action activates characters.)
  - for over a second: Switch actions (full motion/semi motion)
- The action list of Chara-den set by default ☛P339

Setting as a video-phone substitute image

Chara-den can be set as a substitute image for a video-phone call beforehand.

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at Chara-den and press .

INFORMATION

- Holding down for over a second while Chara-den is displayed also sets Chara-den as the video-phone substitute image.
- You can also change Chara-den to set as the substitute image in the substitute image setting for video-phone.

Setting images to be sent to the other party

- The following items can be set:

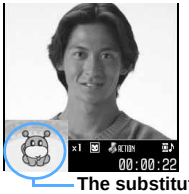
Item	Page	Item	Page
Switching the outgoing image between your self image and the substitute image	P80	**Changing the image to be displayed during video-phone calls**	P83
Setting the quality of outgoing images	P80	**Switching display magnifications**	P85
Setting a frame on the outgoing image	P81	**Switching the in-camera/out-camera**	P85
Applying special effects to outgoing images	P82	**Switching the camera to Macro Mode**	P86
Adjusting the brightness and color density of outgoing images*	P82	**Transmitting tone signals (DTMF)**	P86
Sending still images	P83		

* The settings are retained after the call.

Switching the outgoing image between your self image and the substitute image

Default Me

1 Press [Aヲa] during a call.



The substitute image

©BVIG

- Each press switches the image between your self image( ) and the substitute image (or). ☛P84
- When Chara-den is set as the substitute image, Chara-den may not be displayed. If this happens, the standard image in the substitute image setting is sent to the other party. ☛P84
- Operations while sending Chara-den as the substitute image ☛P80

Setting the quality of outgoing images

- Setting the image quality by priority makes motions a little slower in a higher-definition image.
- Setting the motion speed by priority makes motions smoother in a little lower-definition image.

Default Standard

1 Press [▽] during a call.

- Each press of [▽] switches as follows. Pressing [▽] switches in the reverse order.
  Standard (no icon) → Prefer image quality (HQ) → Prefer motion speed ( ) → Standard (no icon) →…

Setting a frame on the outgoing image

Select Frame

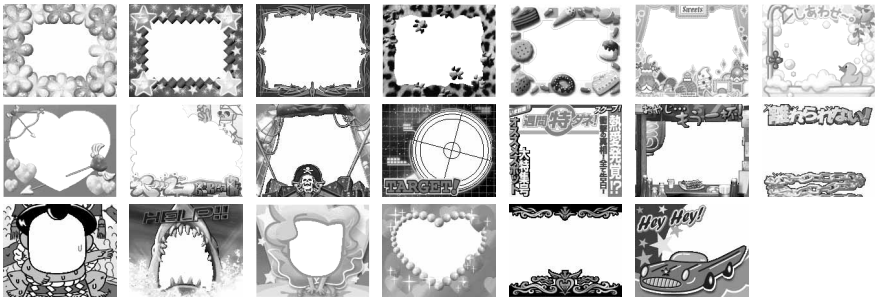
- The frame can be set only when sending your self image.
- Only the frame with the display size of 176 x 144 (QCIF) or smaller can be selected. As for the downloaded frames, only the frame with the display size of 176 x 144 (QCIF) can be selected.

1 Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [1 あ@] during a call.

2 Select a frame.

- While the in-camera is used, the mirror image (left-right reversed image) is displayed on the screen and the normal image (right directed image) is sent to the other party. While the out-camera is used, the same image as displayed on the screen is sent also to the other party.
- Press [▽] while sending your self image to cancel sending the frame.

Frames set by default



- You can download the default frames from the i-mode site “My D-style”, if you have deleted them. ☛P294

Applying special effects to outgoing images

Camera Effects

You can apply the following effects to the outgoing images. These settings can be changed only when sending your self image.

Item	Icon	Item	Icon	Item	Icon	Item	Icon
Full auto		*Night*		*Letter*		*Soft touch*	
Sensitivity up		*Twilight*		*Color reversal*		*Mono tone (red)*	
Super sensitivity up		*Surf&Snow*		*Painting*		*Mono tone (green)*	
Adjust backlight		*Sport*		*Woodcut*		*Mono tone (blue)*	
Spot photometry		*Pet*		*Whiten*		*Monochrome*	
Scenery		*Gourmet*		*Suntan*		*Sepia*	

- For details ☛P172

Default Full auto

1 Press Menu 4 GHI 1 あ/@ during a call.

2 Press 2 か ABC to 9 わ WXYZ.

- To cancel the effect, press 1 あ/@.
- Press ▶□◀ to switch pages.

The effect currently applied

Adjusting the brightness and color density of outgoing images

- You can adjust the brightness and color density at 5 levels.
- This setting can be changed only when sending your self image.
- The brightness and color density may be unable to be changed depending on the setting for Camera Effects.

Default Brightness: Level 3 Density: Level 3

1 Press Menu 4 GHI 2 ABC during a call.

2 Press ▼ to select *Brightness* slider and press ●.

Your self image is displayed on the main screen while adjusting the brightness. You can check the changing of the brightness as you shift the slider's position.

3 Press ▼ to select *Density* slider and press ●.

Your self image is displayed on the main screen while adjusting the color density. You can check the changing of the color density as you shift the slider's position.

4 Press 📖.

- If you do nothing on the terminal for some time after adjusting, the settings are not changed and return to the talking screen.

Sending still images

Select Image

Select an image to be sent from the still images.

- This setting is not available while the frame is being sent (☛P81).
- Only the still image that is 176 x 144 (QCIF) or smaller and permitted to output from FOMA terminal can be set. Outputting still images from FOMA terminal (File restriction) ☛P361

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 2 ABC during a call.

2 Select a folder and select a still image.

- You can display the still image by placing the cursor at it and pressing 📖.
- If you press ▼ while sending still images, the previous image is displayed.

Changing the image to be displayed during video-phone calls

Image Setting

Change the images to be sent to the other party during a video-phone call such as the substitute image, video-phone answer machine image, video-phone response hold image and video-phone on-hold image.

- You cannot set the following still images:
  - Still image with a size of more than 176 x 144 (QCIF)
  - Animation, Create animation and continuous shots
  - Still image in the format other than JPEG and GIF formats
  - Still image that is prohibited from being output from FOMA terminal (File restriction) ☛P361

Changing the substitute image

Default Default Chara-den

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 8 TUV 4 GHI on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 あ and select *image* field.

Chara-den
©BVIG

■ **Setting the standard Chara-den**
① **Press 1 あ.**
Default Chara-den (Dimo) is set.

■ **Setting the standard still image**
① **Press 2 か.**
Default image (Camera off) is set.

■ **Setting other Chara-den**
① **Press 3 さ.**
② **Select *Select image*.**
③ **Select a folder and select Chara-den.**
- Place the cursor at Chara-den to set and press ▶ to display Chara-den.

■ **Setting other still image**
① **Press 4 た.**
② **Select *Select image*.**
③ **Select a folder and select a still image.**
- Place the cursor at the still image to set and press ▶ to display the still image.

3 Press ▶.

INFORMATION

- If Chara-den set as the substitute image is deleted, the substitute image is reset to the standard Chara-den. If the still image or the standard Chara-den is deleted, the substitute image is reset to ***Default image***.
- After you change the substitute image by selecting ***Selected image*** in ***image*** field, if you activate PIM Lock or Privacy Mode (***Authorized access*** set for ***My picture***), the standard image is sent.

Changing the answer machine/response hold/on-hold images

Default Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image: Default

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 8 TUV 4 GHI on the stand-by display.

2 Press 2 か to 4 た.

3 Select *image* field and press 2 か.

In case of an answer machine image

- To reset to the default image, press 1 あ and go to Step 5.

4 Select *Select image* in *List images* field to select an image.

- The operation procedure is the same as when setting ***Selected image*** in ***image*** field in the substitute image setting.

5 Press [Menu].

INFORMATION

- The selected image overlapped with text messages is displayed on the other terminal.
- After you change the answer machine/response hold/on-hold image by selecting ***Select image*** in ***image*** field, if you activate PIM Lock or Privacy Mode (***Authorized access*** set for ***My picture***), the standard image is sent.

Switching display magnifications

Zoom

- Available only while your self image is being sent.

Default Standard

1 Press [Zoom] during a call.

- Each time you press [Zoom], the magnification of outgoing image switches as follows. Pressing [Zoom] switches in the reverse order.

Out-camera: Standard (×1) → 2 x (×2) → 4 x (×4) → 6 x (×6) → 8 x (×8) → 10 x (×10) → 12 x (×12) → 16 x (×16)

In-camera : Standard (×1) → 2 x (×2)

INFORMATION

- Zooming will be canceled if you switch between the in-camera and out-camera.

Switching the in-camera/out-camera

- Available only while your self image is being sent.

Default In-camera

1 Press [Menu] [2 かABC] during a call.

The image is displayed through the switched camera.

When the in-camera is selected

When the out-camera is selected

- Each press switches between the in-camera and out-camera.
- Even if you switch the camera, the settings of the frame and the brightness/color density of outgoing image are kept.
- Open the lens cover when you switch to the out-camera. If you close the lens cover while using the out-camera, the substitute image is sent to the other party. If you open the lens cover while ***Open lens cover.*** is being displayed, your self image is sent as usual.

Switching the camera to Macro Mode

You can switch over to Macro Mode and adjust the focus of the image when sending the image of objects about 7 to 11 cm away.

• You can switch the camera to Macro Mode only when the out-camera is being used.

Default Normal mode

1 Press Menu 4 GHI 3 DEF during a call.

■ **Resetting to the standard mode.**

① **Press Menu 4 GHI 3 DEF.**

INFORMATION

● If you switch the camera to the in-camera during Macro Mode, the camera returns to the standard mode.

Transmitting tone signals (DTMF)

Send DTMF

• The signals may not be received depending on the device of receiver side.

• The input of tone signals (DTMF) is available only while your self image ( ), the substitute image ( ) or Chara-den ( ) is being sent during a video-phone call.

1 Press Menu 9 WXYZ during a video-phone call and press the dial keys.

The number you pressed is displayed and the tone signal is transmitted.

• To cancel transmitting tone signals (DTMF), press クリア.

• The tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted only by pressing dial keys even without pressing Menu 9 WXYZ while your self image is being sent.

• If the tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted, the frame selection and image selection are canceled.

Customizing the display settings during a video-phone call

Switching between the main screen and sub screen

• The settings are retained after the call is finished.

Default Main Screen Image: Other Sub Screen Image: Me

1 Press 📖 during a call.

• Each press switches the main screen and sub screen by turns.

Main screen : Other party's image /Sub screen: Your self image ⟷ Main screen: Your self image /Sub screen : Other party's image

Changing the main screen size

• The settings are retained after the call is finished.

Default Large

1 Hold down 📖 for over a second during a call.

• Each press switches the screen size in the following order: Large → Standard → Small → Large → … .

Turning the compact light on

- You can switch the compact light on/off only when the out-camera is being used.
- The compact light may go out temporarily depending on the setting operation while talking.

1 Press Menu 3 DEF during a call.

The compact light is turned on. If the light has been turned on, it goes out.

- Each press switches the compact light between on (☼) and off (no icon).

Setting the quality of the images sent from the other party

- The setting may not be enabled depending on the function of the other party's terminal.

Default Standard

1 Press Menu 5 JKL during a call.

2 Press 1 /@ to 3 DEF.

- Setting ***Prefer motion spd*** makes motions smoother in a little lower-definition image and setting ***Prefer img qual*** makes motions a little slower in a higher-definition image.

Setting the screen to be displayed during a call Video-phone Settings during a call

- The settings are retained after the call.

Default Display setting: Both Sub Screen: Me Display screen size: Large Display light: Always on (normal)

1 Press Menu 6 MNO during a call.

2 Select each item to set.

- For the set items, refer to Step 2 in "Changing the video-phone settings". ☛P88

3 Press ▣.

Changing the video-phone settings Video-phone Settings

Sets the operation to be performed when a video-phone call is not connected and the image to be displayed during a video-phone call.

- The voice call auto switch function is provided to make the access to the other party for sure. Setting this function on switches the call type to voice call by redialing automatically when the other party's terminal does not support the video-phone function or cannot receive a video-phone call while using the mova service through Dual Network Service.

Default Voice call auto switch: OFF Display setting: Both Sub screen: Me Display screen size : Large Send camera image: ON Sending image quality: Normal Display light: Always on (normal)

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 8 TUV 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Voice call auto switch : Sets whether to redial a voice call automatically when a video-phone call is not connected.

Display setting : Specifies whether to display either your self image or the other party's image or both of images during a video-phone call.

- If you set other than ***Both***, ***Sub screen*** cannot be set.

Sub screen : Specifies whether to display your self image or the other party's image on the sub screen during a video-phone call.

Display screen size : Sets the main screen view size.

Send camera image : Specifies whether to send your self image to the other party.

Sending image quality : Sets the image quality on the other party's screen.

Display light : Sets the display light during a video-phone call.

- If you set ***Terminal settings***, it operates according to the setting for Display Light Setting (☛P127).

3 Press [📖].

INFORMATION

- Even when the voice call auto switch function is set to ***ON***, redialing may not be performed depending on the situation of the other party or network.
- When the voice call auto switch function is set to ***ON***, If you make a video-phone call during a packet communication connected to a PC, the call is redialed without connecting to a video-phone call and connected to a voice call. During a voice call or 64K data communication, the call is not connected to a video-phone call and redialing is not performed, either.
- If you redial voice calls with the voice call auto switch function set to ***ON***, the voice call charge is applied instead of digital communication charge.
- If a video-phone call is connected, redialing to a voice call is not performed.

Setting of switching between a voice call and a video-phone call

Indicate V-phone

Set whether to notify that your terminal can switch between a voice call and a video-phone call to the other party's terminal.

- You cannot change the setting during a voice/video-phone call.
- The setting cannot be operated in a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate the terminal in locations with good radio wave condition.

Default Activate

1 Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [8 TUV] [6 MNO] [1 あ] on the stand-by display.

■ Deactivating

① Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [8 TUV] [6 MNO] [2 ABC] on the stand-by display.

■ Checking the current setting

① Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [8 TUV] [6 MNO] [3 DEF] on the stand-by display.

2 Select *Yes*.

Indication ON is set.

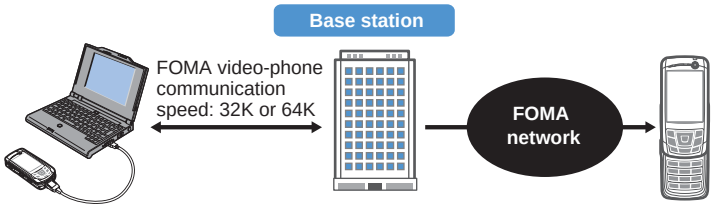
Using the video-phone by connecting with the external device External Device

FOMA terminal can be connected to the external devices such as PCs by the FOMA USB cable (optional) and can accept the video-phone calls with the external devices.
If you want to use this function, install a video-phone application in a dedicated external device or in a PC, and prepare devices such as an earphone/microphone (optional) or USB-compatible Web camera.

- This function is not available when FOMA terminal is not connected to the external device.
- Refer to the instruction manual of external devices for hardware requirements or setting/operating instructions of video-phone applications.

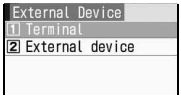
Note: This function is an optional function that will be available when a supporting application and equipment are released. However, the supporting application and equipment have not been released as of May, 2005.

Default Terminal



1 Press Menu 8 TUV 8 TUV 5 JKL on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 あ /@ or 2 か ABC.



INFORMATION

- A video-phone call cannot be made through an external device during a voice call.
- If you subscribe to Call Waiting Service, any incoming video-phone call during a voice call from an external device is recorded as a missed call in the received call history. The same rule applies when received a voice call, video-phone call or 64K data communication during the video-phone call from the external device.

MEMO

Phonebook

Phonebooks supported by FOMA terminal 92
Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook
..... Phonebook New Entry 93
Registering entries into the UIM phonebook
..... Register Entries into UIM Phonebook 97
Setting group names and incoming/outgoing actions..... Group Setting 98
Making calls from the phonebook..... Phonebook Search 99
Editing phonebook entries ..... Edit Phonebook 104
Copying phonebook entries 105
Deleting phonebook entries ..... Delete Phonebook 106
Setting functions for phonebook entries 107
Protecting the secret phonebook entries..... Secret Attribute 108
Checking the number of registered phonebook entries
..... Check No. of Items 110
Using simple dialing to make calls ..... Quick Dial 110

Phonebooks supported by FOMA terminal

FOMA D901iS supports the FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook.

• The items that can be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook are as follows:

○ : Available　× : Not available

Item	FOMA terminal phonebook	UIM phonebook
The number of entries	Up to 700*1	Up to 50
Entry items		
Name/reading	Up to 32 one-byte (16 two-byte) characters for name and up to 32 one-byte characters for reading can be set.	Up to 21 one-byte (10 two-byte) characters for name and up to 25 one-byte (12 two-byte) characters for reading can be set.
Image	1entry per person	×
Group	Entries can be classified into 30 groups and グループなし (No group).	Entries can be classified into 10 groups and グループなし (No group).
Phone number/icon	Up to 5 phone numbers per person, 2,105 in total of the phonebook can be set. An icon can be set for each.	Only one phone number can be set per person. Icons cannot be set.
Mail address/icon	Up to 5 mail addresses per person, 2,105 in total of the phonebook can be set. An icon can be set for each.	Only one mail address can be set per person. Icons cannot be set.
Setting for incoming phone calls*2 *3	○	×
Settings for receiving mail*2	○	×
Other settings*4	○	×
Phonebook No.	○	×
Phonebook Search		
Show All Names	○	○
Group Search	○	○
Name Search	○	○
Ranking Search	○	×
Ph Book No. Search	○	×
Number Search	○	○
Secrecy Search	○	×
Various settings		
Caller ID Setting	○	×
Secret Code Setting	○	×
Secret Attribute	○	×
Reject/Accept Call	○	×
Video-phone Rate Setting	○	×
Others		
Changing order of phone numbers or mail addresses/ switching phonebook Nos.	○	×
Quick Dial	○	×
Quick Mail	○	×
Site display	○	×
Send Ir Data	○	○

*1 The number of items that can be registered in the phonebook may be decreased depending on the type of data registered.

*2 Ring alert, incoming vibrator, lighting pattern and lighting color can be set. In addition, the settings for incoming calls by groups are available.

*3 The substitute image for video-phone can also be set.

*4 The settings for URL, note, postal code, address, company name, job title and birthday.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Name displays

If a call is made/received to a party registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook is displayed on the screen displayed during making/receiving a call or talking. In addition, the name registered in the phonebook is also displayed in the redial data, received call history, recorded messages, senders of received mail, addresses of sent/unsent mail, custom menu or others.

- When phonebook entries of different names with the same phone number/mail address are registered in both phonebooks, when you enter the phone number or mail address without searching the phonebook, the name registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook is displayed.
- When a mail is received, if the mail address including "@docomo.ne.jp" exactly matches a mail address registered in the phonebook, the settings of phonebook take precedence and the name registered in the phonebook is displayed. Note that when the mail address is "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp", the settings of phonebook take precedence only when the mail address excluding "@docomo.ne.jp" is registered and the name registered in the phonebook is displayed.
- When SMS is received and the phone number exactly matches a phone number registered in the phonebook, the settings of phonebook take precedence.

INFORMATION

- When Secret Attribute is set in the FOMA terminal phonebook data, names are displayed only in Secret Mode. The same applies when the phonebook data with Secret Attribute set are displayed in the redial data, received call history, recorded messages and voice memo while talking.
- Calls or mail received from a party for whom Secret Attribute is set in Secret Mode use ring tone, incoming vibrator and incoming lighting set in the phonebook data. When not in Secret Mode, the terminal operates as in the settings made in Sound Setting, Vibrator Setting and Alert Lighting Setting.
- If PIM Lock or Privacy Mode (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***) is on, the other party's name is not displayed on logs and only phone number and mail address is displayed when a call is made or received. Canceling these restrictions displays the other party's name.
- If mail is received from the other party saved in the phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook is displayed as ticker in the information line. Note that if mail is received from the other party with Secret Attribute set while not in Secret Mode, the mail address is displayed in the information line.
- Setting can be made to hide phone numbers or names when receiving calls or mails/messages. ☛P126, P133

Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook

Phonebook New Entry

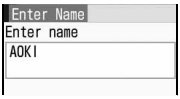
- The maximum number of items that can be registered ☛P92
- You can register phonebook entries even when you are out of the service area.
- It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of all the information you register in the phonebook.
  You can use a miniSD memory card to register phonebook entries (☛P350). If you have a PC, you can use data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional) to send the data to the PC.
- The phonebook data that is saved in FOMA terminal can be backed up to a miniSD memory card.
- Registered data may be lost due to failure, repair, change of model or other handlings of FOMA terminal. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased data.
- Phonebook data registered while in Secret Mode are set as the data with Secret Attribute.
- In Privacy Mode (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***), the entry of the terminal security code is required.

・Please be informed that if you copy the data registered in FOMA terminal to a new terminal at a DoCoMo Shop when switching to a new model, etc., the specifications of some new models may not allow copying of the data.

Registering the phonebook data to FOMA terminal

1 Press Menu 4 た GHI 2 か ABC on the stand-by display.

2 Enter a name. (Up to 32 one-byte or 16 two-byte characters)



- Kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic and numeric characters, symbols and pictograms can be entered. However, symbols and pictograms entered may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication, etc.
- If a name is not entered, the entry cannot be registered.

3 Press 📖.

Name and reading

Check the name and reading on ***New*** screen.

■ **Correcting the name**

① **Select the name field, correct the name and press 📖.**

■ **Correcting the reading**

① **Select the reading field, correct the reading (up to 32 one-byte characters).**

- If you correct the name, the reading of the name will not automatically reflect changes made to the name.

4 Press ● to select and enter necessary items.

- If settings of each item have already been made, the setting is displayed.

Image : Set a still image or video/i-motion that is displayed when a call is made/received or the phonebook data is checked.

- To restore the default setting, press 5 な JKL.
- The set image is displayed only when the registered party notifies the phone number.

■ **Setting a still image**

① **Press 1 あ /@ to select a still image from the list.**

- If a still image with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 is selected, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the reduced image. If you select ***Yes*** and set the still image, the still image of which size is reduced to 96 x 72 (phonebook) is saved.
- When a call is made or received or the phonebook data is checked, for animation, the playing image is displayed and for Create animation and continuous shots, the first image is displayed.

■ **Shooting a still image with Camera**

① **Press 2 か ABC to shoot and save the still image.**

- The size of a still image to be shot is set to 96 x 72 (phonebook) automatically.

■ **Setting video/i-motion**

① **Press 3 DEF to select video/i-motion from the i-motion folder list.**

- You can set video/i-motion with only images when the size is set to Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) or QCIF (176 x 144).
- Playing and checking a video/i-motion when selecting. ☛P112

■ **Recording video with Movie Camera**

① **Press 4 GHI to shoot and save videos.**

- The size of a video to be recorded is set to QCIF (176 x 144) automatically. Sounds are not recorded.

Group : Select a group from *グループ1* (group 1) to *グループ30* (group 30) and *グループなし* (No group). *グループなし* is set by default.
Group Setting ☛P98

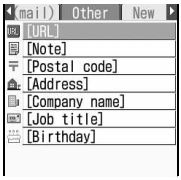
Phone number : Enter the phone number including the area code (up to 26 digits) and select an icon.

- Up to 5 phone numbers per person can be registered. If the first phone number is registered, items to add are displayed.
- Pause (P), timed pause (T), “＋”, “＃” and sub-address delimiter (⚹) can be registered.

Mail address : Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered. Select an icon.

- Up to 5 addresses per person can be registered. Saving the first mail address displays items to be added.
- Please register a mail address with the domain name after @ included correctly. Note that when the mail address is “mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp”, register only the mobile phone number.
- When the other party has registered a secret code ☛P108

5 Press ● to display *Other* screen and select each item to set.



URL : Up to 256 one-byte characters can be entered.

Note : Up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters can be entered.

Postal code : Up to 7 digits can be entered.

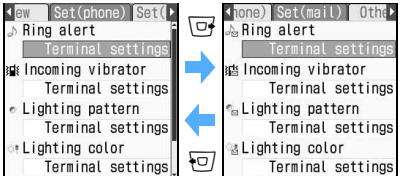
Address : Up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters can be entered.

Company name : Up to 100 one-byte or 50 two-byte characters can be entered.

Job title : Up to 100 one-byte or 50 two-byte characters can be entered.

Birthday : Set ***Set birthday*** to ***ON*** and enter the birthday in ***Birthday*** field.

6 Press ● and switch *Set* screen (*phone/mail*) and select each item to set.



***Set (phone)* screen** ***Set (mail)* screen**

- In case the entry is saved by *グループなし*, all the items are set to ***Terminal settings***. If you select a group, the video-phone substitute image is set to ***Terminal settings*** and the other items are set to ***Group settings***.
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion when selecting. ☛P112

Ring alert : Select ***Movie ringtone*** or ***Melody*** to select a video/i-motion or melody.
- Only videos/i-motion with the ring alert setting of the detail information specified to ***Available*** can be set as ring alert.
- To operate as set in the setting for phone/video-phone of Sound Setting, select ***Terminal Settings***.

Incoming vibrator
: Select ***Yes*** to set the vibration for receiving a call or mail.
- To operate as set in Vibrator Setting, select ***Terminal Settings***.

Lighting pattern
: Select ***Yes*** to set the lighting pattern of the call indicator.
- If ***Sync melody*** or ***OFF*** is set, the lighting color cannot be set.
- To operate as set in Alert Lighting Setting, select ***Terminal Settings***.

Lighting color : Select ***Yes*** to set the lighting color of the call indicator.
- The lighting pattern is set to ***Sync melody***, the lighting color lights/flashes by ***Rainbow***.
- To operate as set in Alert Lighting Setting, select ***Terminal Settings***.

Substitute image **(display only on *Set (phone)* screen)**
: Select ***Yes*** to set Chara-den (☛P337) displayed during a call.
- To operate as set in Image Setting, select ***Terminal Settings***.

7 Press .

The lowest available phonebook No. is assigned automatically.

Entering the phonebook No. to register

① Enter a number between 0 and 699.
- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook No. can be omitted.
- When a phonebook No. that has already been used to save information is specified, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite. Select ***New entry*** not to overwrite and specify another phonebook No.

8 Press .

INFORMATION

- Setting can be made to hide image for outgoing/incoming calls even when the image is set in ***Image***. ☛P125
- A phone number saved in the phonebook with preceding 184 or 186 does not allow sending of SMS even if it is selected as the address. In addition, if a party whose mail address is “mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp” is saved in the phonebook with preceding 184 or 186, no i-mode Mail can be sent to the address.
- For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals, the @ and the following domain name (“@docomo.ne.jp”) of the addresses can be omitted, however, it is recommended to save the whole addresses including “@docomo.ne.jp”.
  - For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals as chat members, save the whole addresses including “@docomo.ne.jp”.
  - When sending/receiving mail, if a mail address of outgoing or incoming mail including “@docomo.ne.jp” does not match a mail address registered in the phonebook exactly, the ring alert set for the phonebook or group is not used.
- When a call is made to a party with a video/i-motion set in Image, the first image of the video/i-motion is shown on the display while the call is being dialed. When a call arrives from such a party, the video/i-motion is played on the display and the ring alert set in the phonebook data sounds while the call is being received.

- If video/i-motion is set for the ring alert for phone of the phonebook data or the ring alert for phone/video-phone of Sound Setting, the video/i-motion with sound and image set for the ring alert is played regardless of the settings of ***Image***. However, if the video/i-motion set as the ring alert only contains sounds (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers), the image set as the call image is shown on the display while a call is being received.
- When Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***), the name registered in the phonebook data is not displayed and the ring tone or vibrator set in the phonebook data does not operate. The ring tone or vibrator is set according to the setting of FOMA terminal.
- Even if ***Substitute image*** is set for data of the FOMA terminal phonebook with Secret Attribute, while in Privacy Mode (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***), the substitute image for receiving calls is displayed according to the FOMA terminal settings.

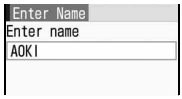
Registering entries into the UIM phonebook

Register Entries into UIM Phonebook

• The maximum number of items that can be registered ☛P92

1 Press Menu 4 た GHI 3 さ DEF on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the name (up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters).



- Kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic and numeric characters, symbols and pictograms can be entered. However, symbols and pictograms may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication, etc.
- When both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used, only to 10 characters can be registered.
- If a name is not entered, the entry cannot be registered.

3 Press 📖.

Name and reading

You can confirm the name and reading on ***Save To UIM*** screen.

■ Correcting the name

① Select the name field, correct the name and press 📖.

■ Correcting the reading

① Select the reading field, correct the reading (up to 25 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters).

- Two-byte katakana and one-byte alphanumeric characters can be used to enter the reading.
- When both one- and two-byte characters are used, only to 12 characters can be registered.
- If you correct the name, the reading of the name will not automatically reflect changes made to the name.

4 Select each item to enter.

- If the settings of each item have already been made, the settings are displayed.

Group : Select a group from *グループ1* (group 1) to *グループ10* (group 10) and *グループなし* (No group). *グループなし* is set by default.

- Group Setting ☛P98

Phone number : Enter phone numbers including the area codes. You can enter up to 26 digits (up to 20 digits depending on the UIM type).

- Only 1 phone number can be registered. No icon can be set.
- Pause (P), “＋”, “＃” and sub-address delimiter (⁜) can be registered. Timed pause (T) can be entered but cannot be registered. Also, if you enter “＋” except for at the first digit of the phone number, digits after “＋” cannot be registered.

Mail address : Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

- Only 1 mail address can be registered. No icon can be set.

5 Press [Phonebook].

INFORMATION

- For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals, the @ and the following domain name (“@docomo.ne.jp”) of the addresses can be omitted, however, it is recommended to save the whole addresses including “@docomo.ne.jp”. For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals as chat members, save the whole addresses including “@docomo.ne.jp”.
- When Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***), entry of the terminal security code is required.

Setting group names and incoming/outgoing actions

Group Setting

You can change the group name of the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook and set the ring tone by Group.

- In the settings by group of the UIM phonebook, only the group name can be modified.
- As for *グループなし*, the group name cannot be changed or the incoming/outgoing action cannot be set.

1 Press [Menu] [4 た GHI] [1 あ /@] [2 か ABC] on the stand-by display.

- Press [Menu] [4 た GHI] [1 あ /@] [2 か ABC] [Phonebook] to change the UIM phonebook group names.

2 Place the cursor at the group to set and press [Menu].

3 Set the group name.

- In case of the UIM phonebook, go to Step 5.
- You can enter up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for group names in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- You can enter up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for group names in the UIM phonebook. Note that when both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used, only to 10 characters can be registered.

4 Select each item to set.

- The operation procedure is the same as Step 6 of “Registering the phonebook data to FOMA terminal” ☛P95.

Ring alert settings : Sets the ring alert, vibrator, lighting pattern and lighting color for incoming calls and the call image and press [m].

- When ***Movie ringtone*** is selected for the ring tone, the call image is set to ***Sync ring alert***. Note that when the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) is set to ***Movie ringtone***, ***Select image***, ***Shoot still image*** or ***Back to default*** can be selected.

Mail alert settings : Sets the ring alert, vibrator, lighting pattern and lighting color for incoming mails and press [m].

5 Press [m].

Menu 41

Making calls from the phonebook

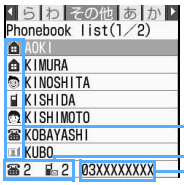
Phonebook Search

You can make a call easily by calling the other party’s phonebook data from the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook.

- The phonebook data can be called by specifying the following search procedure:
  - Show All Names ☛P100
  - Group Search ☛P100
  - Name Search ☛P101
  - Ranking Search* ☛P101
  - Ph book No. Search* ☛P102
  - Number Search ☛P102
  - Column Search ☛P102
  - Secrecy Search* ☛P109

  * Cannot be used in the UIM phonebook.
- By the searching method also available in the UIM phonebook list, each press [m] switches the FOMA terminal phonebook list and the UIM phonebook list.
- To search for phonebook entries including the entries with Secret Attribute set, set Secret Mode and then search the entries.
- The UIM phonebook list indicates [UIM] in front of each entry name.
- When Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***), entry of the terminal security code is required.

1 Press [m] on the stand-by display.



Show all names

The first time you use the search method, the phonebook list by showing all names (phonebook entries with readings starting with あ (a) line characters in order of Japanese syllabary) is displayed. After that, the phonebook list showed by the search method you selected in the last use of phonebook is displayed.

Icon set for the first phone number

Number of phone numbers and mail addresses registered in the selected entry

The first phone number registered in the selected entry (The part that cannot be displayed will be omitted.)

2 Place the cursor to the party you make a call to and press [ﾌｧｸｼﾐﾘ].

- When making a video-phone call, place the cursor to the party you make a video-phone call and press [ﾋﾞﾃﾞｵﾌｫﾝ].
- When several phone numbers are registered, ***Call to*** screen is displayed. Select the phone number to dial.

■ **Composing i-mode Mail**

① **Place the cursor at the party to send a mail and press ✉.**

- When multiple mail addresses have been registered, select a mail address on ***Select Address*** screen.
- Composing and sending i-mode Mail ☛P225
- When only the phone number is registered in the selected phonebook data, pressing ✉ on the phonebook list or details screen displays the SMS composition screen.
- Pressing ✉ on the Own Number details screen can compose i-mode Mail.

■ **Composing SMS**

① **Place the cursor at the party to send SMS and hold down ✉ for over a second.**

- When multiple phone numbers have been registered, select a phone number on ***Select Address*** screen.
- Composing and sending SMS ☛P276
- If a phone numbers is registered in the selected phonebook data, pressing ✉ on the details screen can also compose SMS. You can operate in the same way also on the Own Number details screen.

■ **Displaying sites**

① **Select the target entry and press ▶ to display *その他* (other) screen.**

② **Place the cursor at the URL and press Menu 1 3.**

- You can operate in the same way also on the Own Number details screen.

INFORMATION

- You can make a call by switching to show/hide the caller ID and adding the prefix. ☛P52
- You can change search method by pressing Menu 5 from the phonebook list.

Displaying the phonebook data in order of Japanese syllabary

Show All Names

The phonebook data is displayed in the order of Japanese syllabary (line a → line ka → line sa →⋯→ others (alphabets, numbers, readings which start with blank, symbols and no reading)).

1 Press Menu 4 1 1 on the stand-by display.

2 Press ▶ to select the line to display.

- Pressing 0 to 9, ✱ or # instead of ▶ displays the line to which the dial key is assigned. For example, pressing 1 displays line a. To display *その他* (other) line, press ✱ or #.

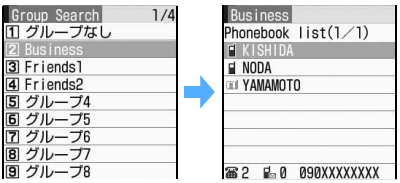
Searching by group

Group Search

- Phonebook entries registered without specifying group are saved under *グループなし*.

1 Press Menu 4 1 2 on the stand-by display.

2 Select a group to search.



- The entries in the group are displayed in the following order:
  1. Japanese syllabrary order
  2. Alphabetical order
  3. Numbers
  4. Entries starting with blank
  5. Symbols

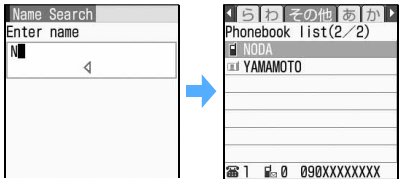
Searching by name

Name Search

Enter a name to search for the entries that start with the first character of the entered name.

1 Press Menu 4 1 3 on the stand-by display.

2 Enter a name.



- You can search the name by entering the first part of the name even if you do not enter the entire reading.

Searching the party frequently talked with or sent mail to/received mail from

Ranking Search

The phonebook data saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook can be sorted by the number of calls that took place (Call frequency rank) or by the number of i-mode Mail sent or received (Mail frequency rank).

- The total number of calls and messages are displayed up to 9999.

Example When displaying call frequency ranks

1 Press Menu 4 1 4 1 on the stand-by display.

Total number of calls

- The total number of calls is the number of calls made or received up to the present after the purchase or the last reset. Counting is started with the call made or received after the phonebook data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

When displaying mail frequency ranks

① **Press Menu 4 1 4 2 on the stand-by display.**

- The total number of mails is the number of mails sent or received up to the present after the purchase or the last reset. Counting is started with the i-mode Mail sent or received after the phonebook data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

INFORMATION

- When the total number of calls and mails of multiple entries are the same, the entries are displayed in the following order:
  1. Japanese syllabrary order
  2. Alphabetical order
  3. Numbers
  4. Entries starting with blanks
  5. Symbols
- Set Secret Mode and then operate to display the frequency ranks including entries with Secret Attribute set.

Resetting the number of calls/mails

1 Search the phonebook, place the cursor at the entry to reset and press Menu 9 3.

2 Select *Yes*.

- The total number of calls, date and time of the last call, total number of mails, and date and time of the last mail for each phonebook entry are reset.

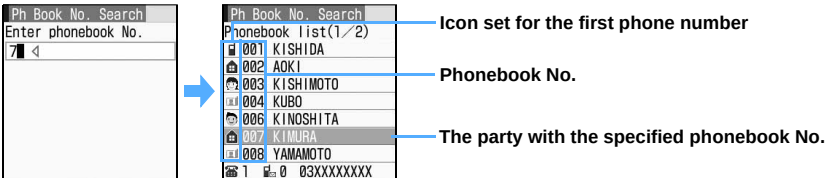
Searching by phonebook No.

Ph Book No. Search

Enter a phonebook No. from the FOMA terminal phonebook to search for the entry with the specified phonebook No. You can search the entries even if you enter nothing.

1 Press Menu 4 GHI 1 /@ 5 JKL on the stand-by display.

2 Enter a phonebook No.



- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook No. can be omitted.

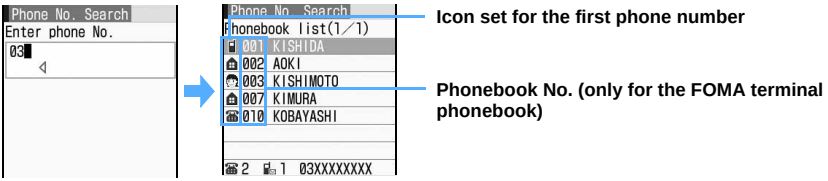
Searching by phone number

Number Search

Enter only a part of phone number to search for the phone numbers that contain it. You can search the entries even if you enter nothing.

1 Press Menu 4 GHI 1 /@ 6 MNO on the stand-by display.

2 Enter a part of phone number.



INFORMATION

- When multiple phonebook entries are available with Number Search, the phonebook entries in FOMA terminal are displayed in the order of the phonebook No. The entries in the UIM phonebook are displayed in the following order:
  1. Japanese syllabary order
  2. Alphabetical order
  3. Numbers
  4. Entries starting with blanks
  5. Symbols

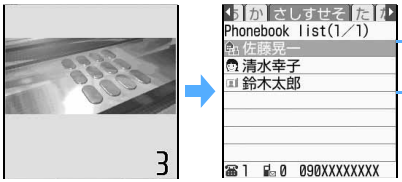
Searching by Column Search quickly

Search for the phonebook data by the characters assigned to the dial key ロ わん 1 to 9 わ WXYZ.

- The previously used phonebook (the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook) is searched.

Example Searching for “佐藤” (Sato)

1 **Press 3 DEF (さ) (四) on the stand-by display.**



The phonebook list with readings starting with a kana character in the " さ (sa)" line

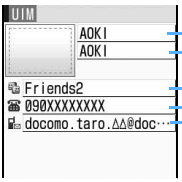
- In the search result screen, pressing 0 (わ) to 9 WXYZ, ＊ (ﾀｸﾞ), # (ｽﾍﾟｰｽ), ＊ (ﾓｰﾄﾞ), ▶ switches lines.

Checking phonebook entries

1 **Search the phonebook and select the phonebook data to display details.**

- You can display the details screen for the previous/next phonebook entry by pressing ▶.
- When Reject/Accept Call, Caller ID Setting or Secret Code is set, ! is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No.

Phonebook No.
Name and reading
Group name
First phone number, icon, type and number of registered phone numbers
First mail address, icon, type and number of registered mail addresses
FOMA terminal phonebook
Images (If a video/i-motion is set for *Image*, the video/i-motion is played)

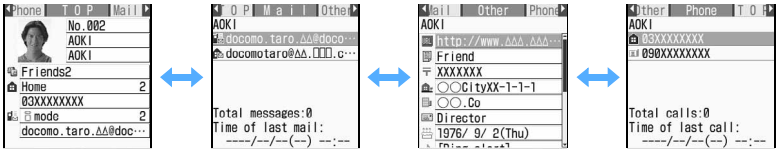


Name and reading
Group name
Phone number
Mail address
UIM phonebook

Displaying detailes of registered information (only for the FOMA terminal phonebook)

① **Press ▶.**

- Each time you press ▶, the details screen switches as follows: ***Mail***, ***Other*** and ***Phone*** from ***TOP***. Press ◀ to switch the screen in the reverse order.



- ***Mail*** screen displays the total number of mails sent/received and the date and time of the last mail.
- ***Phone*** screen displays the total number of calls made/received and the date and time of the last call.

Displaying all registered information of the details screen

① **Press (四).**

- Pressing (四) returns to the previous screen.

INFORMATION

● The total numbers of calls/mails and the date and time of the last call/mail apply to both incoming and outgoing calls/mails. Note that uncompleted calls/mails due to no reply of the other party or the radio wave conditions are not counted.

Editing phonebook entries

Edit Phonebook

You can edit or copy the phonebook data and change the order of the phone numbers and mail addresses in the data. In addition, the phonebook Nos. for the phonebook data can be switched.

Editing saved phonebook entries

1 Search the phonebook, place the cursor at the entry to correct and press Menu 3 DEF.

2 Edit phonebook entries.

- For details:
  ☛P93 From Step 3 in “Registering entries into FOMA terminal”, ☛P97 from Step 3 in “Registering entries into the UIM phonebook”.

3 Press 回.

- If the phonebook data of the FOMA terminal phonebook are edited, the phonebook No. entry screen is displayed. Select ***Overwrite*** or ***New entry*** according to the message displayed after entering the phonebook No.
  When ***Overwrite*** is selected, even if the number is changed in the phonebook No. entry screen, the previous phonebook data are discarded. When ***New entry*** is selected, the phonebook No. entry screen is displayed again. Enter the number (0 to 699) if needed.
- When the phonebook data in the UIM phonebook are edited, a confirmation screen selecting registering method appears. Select ***Overwrite*** or ***New entry***.

INFORMATION

- The data may not be overwritten when registering if “☆” is included in the phonebook data in the UIM phonebook. In that case, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to make a new entry. Select ***YES*** to register as a new entry.
- The phonebook data with Secret Attribute set cannot be edited unless Secret Mode is set.
- When multiple phone numbers and mail addresses are registered, if the first registered phone number or mail address is deleted, the second or after that are moved up and registered.

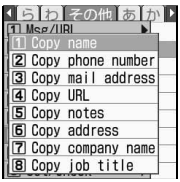
Copying registered information

You can copy items in phonebook entries. Copied items can be pasted into the entry field on the screen such as the mail composition and phonebook registration screens.

- Copied items remain recorded in FOMA terminal until the power is turned off. They can be pasted any number of times while the power is on.
- Only one item can be recorded. Copying new items overwrites the retained item.

1 Search the phonebook, place the cursor at the entry to copy and press Menu 7 PQRS.

2 Press 1 あ to 8 TUV.



The data of appropriate items is recorded temporarily.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

3 Display the character entry screen to be pasted and paste the characters.

INFORMATION

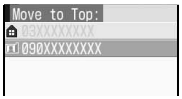
- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, the UIM phonebook list/details screen or Own Number details screen, press [Menu] and select ***Copy***.
- ***Copy phone number/Copy mail address*** copies the mail address registered as the first item. To copy the second or after phone number or mail address, select the phone number or mail address to copy on the FOMA terminal phonebook or Own Number details screen.

Replacing the orders of phone numbers, mail addresses and phonebook Nos.

When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are registered in the phonebook data, the orders of the phone numbers and mail addresses can be replaced on the search result screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook. In addition, the phonebook Nos. for 2 phonebook entries can be replaced.

1 Search the phonebook and replace the order.

■ Switching the order of phone numbers



① Place the cursor at the entry to replace and press [Menu] [9 らWXYZ] [2 かABC] [1 あ/@].

① Select a phone number to register as the first phone number.
The positions of the selected phone number and the first phone number are replaced.

■ Replacing the order of mail addresses

① Place the cursor at the entry to replace and press [Menu] [9 らWXYZ] [2 かABC] [2 かABC].

② Select a mail address to register as the first mail address.
The positions of the selected mail address and the first mail address are replaced.

■ Replacing the phonebook Nos.

① Place the cursor at the entry to replace and press [Menu] [9 らWXYZ] [2 かABC] [3 さDEF].

② Select the entry to replace the phonebook No.
The phonebook Nos. are replaced.

INFORMATION

- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press [Menu] and select ***Set/Check*** → ***Switch order*** → ***Phone numbers***, ***Mail addresses*** or ***Phonebook Nos***.

Copying phonebook entries

Copy phonebook entries from the FOMA terminal phonebook to the UIM phonebook or from the UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal. In addition, one entry in the FOMA terminal phonebook can be copied or backed up (or all entries can be copied) to the miniSD memory card.

- If the group in the phonebook data to copy has the same name as the group in the target phonebook, the data is copied to that group.

■ **Items copied from the FOMA terminal phonebook to UIM phonebook**

Name	Copies the name (up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters. Note that, up to 10 characters can be copied when both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used).
Reading	Copies the reading (up to 25 one-byte characters). One-byte katakana changes to two-byte katakana.
Phone number	Copies the first registered phone number (up to 26 digits (20 digits depending on the UIM types) ☛P36. If a timed pause (T) is registered, only the timed pause (T) is deleted. In addition, when "＋" is entered in addition to the beginning of the phone number, the number after "＋" is deleted. For all icons, ☎ is set.
Mail address	Copies the first registered mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters). In the UIM phonebook, for all icons, ✉ is set.

* Note that if the number of characters exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be saved in the UIM phonebook, the exceeding part is deleted.

■ **Items copied from the UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal phonebook**

Name	Copies the name.
Reading	Copies the reading. Two-byte katakana are changed to one-byte katakana.
Phone number	Copies the phone number. For the icon, ☎ is set.
Mail address	Copies the mail address. For the icon, ✉ is set.

1 Search the phonebook and press Menu 8 TUV 3 DEF.

2 Select an entry to copy.

When the FOMA terminal phonebook is used

・You can select/cancel all the phonebook data by pressing Menu.

3 Press ▭.

INFORMATION

● On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press Menu and select ***IrDA/miniSD/UIM*** → ***Copy to UIM.*** On the UIM phonebook details screen, press Menu and select ***IrDA/Phone mem*** → ***Copy to phone***.

Deleting phonebook entries

Delete Phonebook

Delete one phonebook entry.

1 Search the phonebook, place the cursor at the entry to delete and press Menu 4 GHI.

2 Select *Yes*.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

INFORMATION

● On the details screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook, press Menu and select ***Delete***.

Setting functions for phonebook entries

You can set to show/hide caller ID or the video-phone communication speed for each phone number in the phonebook data saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook. In addition, a secret code can be set for each mail address.

・The function described here cannot be set in the UIM phonebook.

Setting to show/hide caller ID for each phone number

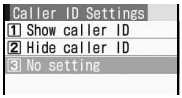
Caller ID Setting

Default No setting

1 Search the phonebook, place the cursor at the entry to be set and press Menu 9 1 2.

2 Enter the terminal security code and select a phone number.

3 Press 1 or 2.



・To cancel the setting, press 3.

INFORMATION

● On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press Menu and select ***Set/Check*** → ***Settings*** → ***Caller ID settings***.

● When ***No setting*** is set, the terminal operates according to the setting for Caller ID Notification.

● For the entry with the caller ID set, ! is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. on ***TOP*** screen.

● When you set to show/hide caller ID for every call you make, that setting takes precedence over Caller ID Setting for each phone number. ☛P51

Setting the communication speed when making video-phone calls for each phone number

Video-phone Rate Setting

Default 64K

1 Search the phonebook, place the cursor at the entry to be set and press Menu 9 1 5.

2 Select a phone number.

3 Press 1 or 2.

・To make a video-phone call to FOMA terminal, select 1.

INFORMATION

- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press [Menu] and select ***Set/Check*** → ***Settings*** → ***V-phone settings***.
- When you specify the communication speed of the video-phone for each call you make, that setting takes precedence over the communication speed setting for each phone number. ☛P52

Setting a secret code for the mail address

Secret Code Setting

When the other party has registered a secret code for its mail address (mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp), if you set the secret code as the mail address in the phonebook data, the secret code is automatically added to i-mode Mail composed by searching the phonebook.

1 Search the phonebook, place the cursor at the entry to be set and press [Menu] [9 wxyz] [1 あ] [4 た].

2 Enter the terminal security code and select a mail address.

3 Enter a secret code of 4 digits.

- To cancel Secret Code Setting, hold down [クリア] for over a second to delete the secret code.

INFORMATION

- The set secret code is not displayed on the phonebook data details screen or the address set when composing i-mode Mail. You can check it by the same operation as the setting of a secret code.
- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press [Menu] and select ***Set/Check*** → ***Settings*** → ***Secret code***.
- For the entry with a secret code set, ! is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. on ***TOP*** screen.
- If a mail address is saved in the phonebook as “mobile phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp”, you cannot reply to mail from the party. In addition, when a mail address is saved in the phonebook as “mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp”, you cannot reply to mail from the party even if the secret code is set. Delete “@docomo.ne.jp” in the phonebook data before setting.
- You cannot set a secret code for your own number.

Protecting the secret phonebook entries

Secret Attribute

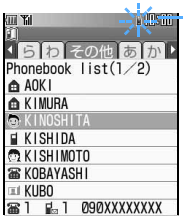
The phonebook entry is set as the data having a secret attribute that is called only when you enter the terminal security code. To set Secret Attribute, perform the setting operation in Secret Mode.

Setting Secret Attribute for the phonebook entry

- You cannot set Secret Attribute for the entries in the UIM phonebook.
- Secret Attribute cannot be set/canceled when Secret Mode is not set.

1 Set Secret Mode.

2 Search the phonebook, place the cursor at the entry to set and press Menu 9 1 1.



Flashes when Secret Attribute is set for the selected entry.

Canceling

① Place the cursor at the phonebook data for which Secret Attribute is set and press Menu 9 1 1.

INFORMATION

- In the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press Menu and select ***Set/Check*** → ***Settings*** → ***Secrecy ON***. To release Secret Attribute, press Menu and select ***Set/Check*** → ***Settings*** → ***Secrecy OFF***.
- If the phonebook entry is registered and edited while Secret Mode is on, Secret Attribute is set for the phonebook entry.
- When Secret Mode is not set, the names of the phonebook data and registered images or video/i-motion for which Secret Attribute has been set are not displayed in the incoming screen, redial data, received call history and received mail list and other screens. In addition, the ring tone or vibrator set for the phonebook data is not operated.
  Name displays ☛P93
- The set secret code is not displayed on the phonebook data detail screen or the address when composing i-mode messages. The secret code can be displayed by the same operation as Secret Code Setting.

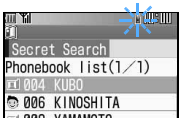
Searching the phonebook data with Secret Attribute set

Secrecy Search

- You can search only the phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set.
- You cannot search the phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set unless Secret Mode is set.

1 Set Secret Mode.

2 Press Menu 4 1 7 on the stand-by display.



- The subsequent steps are the same as for the normal searching method. ☛P99

INFORMATION

- The phonebook data with Secret Attribute set cannot be searched unless Secret Mode is set. In addition, Quick Dial or Quick Mail is also disabled.
- When the search other than Secrecy Search is performed in Secret Mode, the phonebook data with and without Secret Attribute set are both searched.
- When the phonebook list is displayed after Secrecy Search was performed last time, the same phonebook list of Secrecy Search as last time is displayed when Secret Mode is set. The phonebook No. search screen is displayed unless Secret Mode is set.

Checking the number of registered phonebook entries

Check No. of Items

You can display the number of registered phonebook entries or phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

1 Search the phonebook and press Menu 9 wxyz 4 ghi.

INFORMATION

- In the details screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook, press Menu and select ***Set/Check*** → ***No. of items***.
- When checking from the UIM phonebook, press Menu in the phonebook list screen or details screen and select ***No. of items***.
- ***No. of items*** includes the number of phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set.

Using simple dialing to make calls

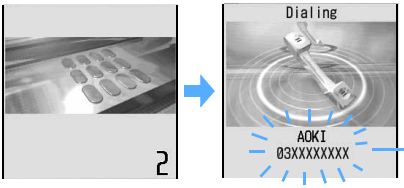
Quick Dial

Calls can be made by simple operation to the parties with the phonebook No. 0 to 99 in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

• The first phone number in the phonebook data is the number to be dialed.

Example Calling the phone number with phonebook No.2

1 Enter the phonebook No. (in this case 2 abc) on the standby display and press 発信.



- Enter the phonebook No. without prefixing it with 0, etc. If you enter an initial zero, etc., the call is not made.
- You can make a video-phone call by pressing ビデオ通話 instead of 発信.

The first phone number registered in the phonebook

INFORMATION

- In case no phone number is registered in the phonebook data of entered phonebook No. or no phonebook data is registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook, when you press 発信 or ビデオ通話, the message which tells that there is no applicable data is displayed.

Sounds/Displays/Lights Settings

Sound Setting

Changing the FOMA terminal ring tone ..... Sound Setting 112
Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms ..... Vibrator Setting 115
Selecting a sound heard when a keypad is pressed ..... Keypad Sound 115
Setting a sound for charging ..... Charge Alert 116
Setting an alarm announcing that the call is about to be cut off ..... Quality Alarm 116
Making FOMA terminal silent ..... Silent Mode 117
Customizing Silent Mode ..... Customize Silent Mode 117

Displays/Lights Settings

Changing the stand-by display ..... Stand-by Display Setting 118
Changing images to be displayed for incoming/outgoing calls/mails ..... Mail/Call Image Setting 125
Setting display and key light ..... Display Light Setting 127
Changing display colors ..... Color Scheme 128
Setting the menu display format/the menu design ..... Menu Setting 128
Changing the battery level icon ..... Battery Icon 130
Setting the color and lighting pattern for the call indicator ..... Alert Lighting Setting 130
Changing the font size ..... Font 131
Setting clock display ..... Clock Display Format 132
Setting the display of the information line ..... Information Line Setting 133

Changing the FOMA terminal ring tone

Set melodies as ring tones to announce the reception of call, mail, Message R/F, etc. In addition, the sound played while on hold or when opening/closing FOMA terminal can be set. If video/i-motion is set as a ring tone, a video and/or sound is played for incoming call or mail (Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion)).

- The settings in this function are reflected to the ring tones set in Incoming Call Setting, Video-phone Receiving Setting, Incoming Msg. Setting, Incoming Chat Mail Setting and Incoming Msg. Alert, and also to the on-hold tone set in On-hold Tone.

Default Phone: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1) Mail: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1) Chat mail: Sync msg alert
Message Request: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1) Message Free: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1)
On-hold tone: Default tone/Preinstalled (保留音・ボイス)
Video-phone: Melody/ 電話・メロディ A (Phone・Melody A)
Open slide: Melody/ スライド・オープン音 1(open slide sound 1)
Close slide: Melody/ スライド・クローズ音 1(close slide sound 1)

1 Press Menu 日や TUV 1 あ /@ 1 あ /@ on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Setting ring tones of phone call, video-phone call, mail, chat mail, or Message R/F

① **Press 1 あ /@ to 3 さ DEF (1 あ /@ to 4 た GHI for chat mail).**

- When ***Melody*** is selected, select ***Melody*** field and select a melody.
  Reading the melody list ☛P344
- When ***Movie ringtone*** is selected, select ***Melody*** field and select video/i-motion.
  Reading the video/i-motion list ☛P329
- When ***OFF*** is selected, the ring tone does not sound.
- If the ring tone for chat mail is set to ***Sync msg alert***, the setting for the mail ring tone is used.

Setting an on-hold tone

① **Press 1 あ /@ or 2 か ABC.**

- When ***Select tone*** is selected, select ***Melody*** field and select a melody.
  Reading the melody list ☛P344
- When ***Default tone*** is selected, the message (Preinstalled *保留音・ボイス*) is played while a call is on hold.

Setting a beep sound of open slide/close slide

① **Press 1 あ /@ or 2 か ABC.**

- When ***Melody*** is selected, select ***Melody*** field and select a melody.
  Reading the melody list ☛P344
- When ***OFF*** is selected, the beep sound does not sound.

3 Press 📖.

For playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion

● Place the cursor at the melody in the melody list and press 📖 to play it. Press ● to set. The following operations can be performed during playing.
- Adjust volume: ▲▼ • Play previous/next melody: ●

● Place the cursor at the video/i-motion in the video/i-motion list and press 📖 to play it. Press 戻る クリア, go back to the list screen and press ● to set. The following operations can be performed during playing.
- Adjust volume: ▲▼ • Pause/restart: ● • Stop: 📖 • Play at fast speed: ▲

3D Sound

The 3D sound function allows to create sounds, that is 3-dimensional or special sounds, using the stereo speakers (or the flat type stereo earphones (optional), etc.). Very realistic i-αppli games, ring alerts and i-motion can be enjoyed.
This function will become the most realistic when you have FOMA terminal in the front approximately 20 to 30 cm away (the distance may be different between individuals).
Note that 3D sound will become less realistic when FOMA terminal is positioned off the center rightward or leftward or at a distance more or less than 20 to 30 cm from the face.

- By setting ***Stereo/3D sound*** on in Settings for melody, 3D sound can be replayed with the stereophonic effect from the stereo speakers. It is set to ***ON*** by default. ☛P345
- The stereophonic effect may be felt differently between individuals. If you felt it uncomfortable, set ***Stereo/3D sound*** to off.

INFORMATION

- The sound recorded with Sound Recorder can be set for ***Movie ringtone***. In this case, only the sound is played and the image set as the incoming image is displayed on the screen.
- When the video/i-motion with sound and image is set for the ring alert, the incoming image is set for ***Sync ring alert*** and then reset the ring alert to ***OFF***, Movie ringtone will be replayed but the ring alert volume becomes silent.
- If the video/i-motion with only sound, (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) or a melody is set for the ring alert when the incoming image is set to ***Sync ring alert***, the standard image is displayed for the incoming image.
- If the video/i-motion with only sound is set for the ring alert even when the video/i-motion or Flash movie with only image is set for the incoming image, the standard image is displayed for the incoming image.
- The video/i-motion that is set to ***Unavailable*** for the ring alert of View/Edit Detail Info (☛P360) cannot be set to ***Movie ringtone***.
- When the video/i-motion with only sound is set for the ring alert, even if the animation (other than the standard image) Create animation or continuous shot is set for the incoming image, it does not move and the first frame is displayed on the incoming screen.
- When the video/i-motion with image and sound is set for the ring alert or the video/i-motion is set for the incoming image in case that there is an incoming voice call during a voice call, the first frame of the video/i-motion is displayed on the incoming screen.
- If you open/close FOMA terminal rapidly, the open slide/close slide sound may not be heard. During the following operations, there will be no beep sounds even when opening/closing FOMA terminal.
  - While dialing
  - On Response and Hold
  - During Silent Mode
  - While the melody is sounding
  - While shooting video
  - While playing recorded messages/voice memos
  - While i-αppli is activated
  - While the alarm for Call Cost Limit is sounding
  - While receiving
  - While talking
  - While the alarm is sounding
  - While the video/i-motion is playing
  - While recording Chara-den
  - While the greeting message is playing
  - While recording with Sound Recorder
- The volume of open slide/close slide sound cannot be changed. The 3D sound compatible melody can be set for beep sounds, but 3D sound becomes unavailable.

■ Ring tone priority

Ring tones for voice call or video-phone set in multiple functions sound according to the following prioritization:
①FOMA terminal phonebook settings
②Settings by groups in the FOMA terminal phonebook
③Sound Setting/Incoming Call Setting/Video-phone Receiving Setting

- When the other party did not notify the caller ID, the ring tone for incoming voice calls operates as set in Anonymous Caller. The ring tone for incoming video-phone calls operates as set in Sound Setting or Video-phone Receiving Setting.
- When the sounds or images set in Anonymous Caller are deleted, the settings are changed. In this case, the sounds played or images displayed in reality may differ from the sounds played or images displayed on the setting screen.
- When the video/i-motion with sound and image is set to ***Movie ringtone*** for the ring alert, the setting for ***Movie ringtone*** is given priority for the ring tone and incoming image even if the images are set in the phonebook.
- When the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) is set to ***Movie ringtone*** for the ring alert and the images are set in the phonebook, the video/i-motion with only sound set to ***Movie ringtone*** is used for the ring tone and the image set in the phonebook is used for the incoming image.

Melody list

The following melodies are provided in the ***Preinstalled*** folder by default.

- ☐ indicates that the melody is compatible with 3D sound.
- Melody names that are too long to be shown on the display are partially omitted.

Title (In [ ], is the composer)	Title (In [ ], is the composer)	Title (In [ ], is the composer)
*パターン**1** ～**5*** (Pattern 1 to 5)	*アラーム・アナログ時計* (Alarm・analog clock)	*凱旋行進曲* (Triumphal March) [VERDI GIUSEPPE]
*電話・メロディ**A*** (Phone・Melody A)	*アラーム・**SuperBell"Z*** (Alarm・SuperBell"Z)	***Rhapsody in Blue*** [GERSHWIN GEORGE]
*電話・メロディ**B*** (Phone・Melody B)	*アラーム・女性ボイス* (Alarm・Female voice)	*四季～冬～* (The Four Seasons "Winter") [VIVALDI ANTONIO LUCIO]
電話・黒電話 (Phone・Phone retro)	*スライド・オープン音**1** ～**3*** (Slide opening sounds 1 to 3)	*ツァラトゥストラはかく語りき* (Also Sprach Zarathustra) [STRAUSS RICHARD]
*電話・**SuperBell"Z*** (Phone・SuperBell"Z)	*スライド・クローズ音**1** ～**3*** (Slide closing sounds 1 to 3)	
電話・女性ボイス (Phone・Female voice)	*保留音・ボイス* (On hold tone・Voice)	***SUMMERTIME*** [GERSHWIN GEORGE]
*メール・メロディ**A*** (Mail・Melody A)	*ヴァーチャルトレイン* (Virtual Train)	*ジムノペディ第１番* (1 ere Gymnopedie) [SATIE ERIK ALFRED LESLIE]
*メール・メロディ**B*** (Mail・Melody B)	（惑星から）*火星* (The Planets, Mars) [HOLST GUSTAV]	***Bomb A Head! Returns!*** [Akio Togashi]
*メール・**SuperBell"Z*** (Mail・SuperBell"Z)	*おもちゃの兵隊のマーチ* (Parade of the wooden soldiers) [JESSEL LEON]	***Heaven Is A Place On Earth*** [NOWELS RICHARD W JR] [SHIPLEY ELLEN]
メール・女性ボイス (Mail・Female voice)		
メール・英語ボイス (Mail・English voice)	*森のくまさん* [アメリカ民謡] (The Bear) [American folk song]	

License number: T-0520095

Note: The composers are described in accordance with the JASRAC home page.

Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms

Vibrator Setting

The reception of voice or video-phone call, mail, Message R/F, etc. or the schedule alarm notice is indicated by vibration.

- Note that if FOMA terminal is placed on a desk, etc. with Vibrator Setting on, the vibrations of the vibrator operation may cause it to fall off.
- The settings in this function are reflected to the vibrator set in Incoming Call Setting, Video-phone Receiving Setting, Incoming Msg.Setting, Incoming Chat Mail Setting and Incoming Msg. Alert.

Default all OFF

1 Press Menu B TUV 1 7 PQRS on the stand-by display.

2 Select the item to set.

- When Chat Mail is selected and if the incoming setting for Incoming Chat Mail Setting is set to ***Same : Msg setting***, ***ChatMail*** cannot be selected.
- As for a schedule alarm, the terminal vibrates as set in the ***Phone*** setting.

3 Press 1 to 5 JKL.

Pattern A : Vibrates as follows: 0.5 second vibration → 0.5 second pause → 0.5 second vibration → 1.5 seconds pause (repeated)

Pattern B : Vibrates as follows: 1 second vibration → 2 second pause (repeated)

Pattern C : Vibrates as follows: 0.25 second vibration → 0.25 second pause (repeated)

Sync melody : Vibrates along with the melody selected in Sound Setting.

- Vibration may not synchronize depending on melodies. In addition, vibration may not synchronize with the theme.

OFF : No vibration.

- If you press ○, the vibrator operates by the pattern at the cursor position. Note that the vibrator does not operate when ***Sync melody*** and ***OFF*** is selected.

4 Press ▭.

- When the vibrator for calls is set, is indicated on the stand-by display. (Note that when the ring volume for calls is set to ***Silent***, is indicated.)

INFORMATION

- The vibrator does not operate when a call is received during another call.
- When the vibrator for incoming calls or mails of the phonebook have been set, the settings for the phonebook have priority and then each group setting is given priority.
- Even when ***OFF*** is set, the vibrator may be activated while some Flash movies are being played.

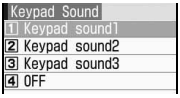
Selecting a sound heard when a keypad is pressed

Keypad Sound

Default Keypad sound1

1 Press Menu B TUV 1 4 GHI on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 to 3.



- Press ▲ to hear the keypad sound of the cursor position. The keypad sound does not sound when ***OFF*** is selected.
- To disable the keypad sound, press 4.

INFORMATION

- When ***OFF*** is set, the following sounds are not heard.
  - Confirmation sounds when the battery level is indicated
  - End alert for infrared communication and data transfer
- Keypad sound volume is set according to the setting for Volume Setting.
- In the following cases, the keypad sound is not heard even if this function is set to other than ***OFF***.
  - In Silent Mode, however, in the personalized silent mode and when keypad sound of Customize Silent Mode is set to other than ***OFF***, the keypad sound is heard.
  - When i-αppli is running (Press ◇ to hear the keypad sound.)
  - When the keylock switch is slided
  - When ● is pressed
- Even when ***OFF*** is set, if you press the dial keys while on call, tone signals (DTMF) can be sent to the other party. At this time, you will hear the touch-tone from the earpiece.

Setting a sound for charging

Charge Alert

Ring alert is set for the start and end of charging.

Default ON

1 Press Menu 8 1 9 on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 or 2.

INFORMATION

- Even when ***ON*** is set, the charge alert sound is not played in the following cases.
  - In Silent Mode
  - In Driving Mode
  - During a voice call
  - During a video-phone call
  - During 64K data communication
  - During i-mode communication
  - During packet communication

Setting an alarm announcing that the call is about to be cut off

Quality Alarm

When signal conditions deteriorate, an alarm sounds before the call is cut off.

- If signal conditions deteriorate rapidly, the call may be cut off before the alarm sounds.
- This function applies only to voice calls.

Default High alarm

1 Press Menu 8 7 4 on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 or 2.

- Not to sound the alarm, press 3.

Making FOMA terminal silent

Silent Mode

Disable the sounds from FOMA terminal in order to prevent disturbance to the people around you by enabling the vibrator for incoming calls or muting the keypad sound.

Default not set

1 Hold down Menu or #/ for over a second on the stand-by display.

Silent Mode that is specified in the Silent Mode selection is set, (in Silent Mode) or (in personalized silent mode) is displayed on the stand-by display.

- When Key Lock is on, Silent Mode cannot be set or released by holding down Menu for over a second.

Canceling

① **Hold down Menu or #/ for over a second on the stand-by display.**

When the general silent mode is set

Incoming call or mail is notified with vibrator by muting all sounds heard from FOMA terminal such as ring tone, keypad sound and alarm. Microphone is sensitized so that a call can be made in a small voice.

- The operations of the vibrator when receiving calls or messages change to ***Pattern A*** regardless of the setting in Vibrator Setting.
- The operations of the vibrator when an alarm is active are as set in Alarm Clock.
- The operation of the vibrator when a schedule alarm is active are as set in Silent Mode.
- Melodies are not played automatically even if received mail or Message R/F is displayed with ***Auto play*** set for Message Attachment.
- When starting play-back of a melody or video/i-motion with sound, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether you want to play it back.

INFORMATION

- The following sounds are played even in Silent Mode.
  - The shutter sound during shooting with the camera and Movie Camera
  - The shutter sound during recording by Sound Recorder
- In Silent Mode, even if Call Cost Limit is set to ***ON*** and the setting notified by alarm is made, only a message is displayed. In Customize Silent Mode, the alarm sounds according to Customize Silent Mode.

Customizing Silent Mode

Customize Silent Mode

The setting for Silent Mode can be changed (Personalized silent mode). Which Silent Mode is set can be selected.

Default General

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 1 あ 6 MNO on the stand-by display.

2 Press 2 か ABC.

General : Notifies the arrival of a call or mail by muting the sounds heard from FOMA terminal and by vibrating FOMA terminal itself.

Personalized : The settings can be changed.

- Pressing 1 あ sets the general silent mode and the previous screen reappears.

3 Select each item to set.

Vibrator : Sets the operation of vibrator when receiving a call or mail.
- When ***ON*** is set, an incoming call or mail is informed by vibration according to Vibrator Setting. Note that ***OFF*** is set in Vibrator Setting, the vibrator operates by ***Pattern A***.
- When ***OFF*** is set, the vibrator does not operate.

Keypad sound : Sets keypad sounds.

Ring alert volume : Sets the ring volume for incoming call or i-αppli. Note that when ***Step tone*** is set, the i-αppli volume is ***Level4***.

Msg. alert volume : Sets the ring volume for incoming mail.

Low Battery Alert : Specifies whether to activate the alarm when the battery becomes low.

Alarm/Schedule sound : Sets whether to sound an alarm or schedule alarm.
- When ***ON*** is set, the alarm or schedule alarm sounds according to each setting. The setting of ***Ring alert volume*** in Customize Silent Mode applies to the volume of schedule alarm.
- When ***OFF*** is set, the alarm or schedule alarm does not sound.

Sensitize microphone : Sets whether to sensitize the microphone.

4 Press [Mail].

Personalized silent mode is set.

Changing the stand-by display

Stand-by Display Setting

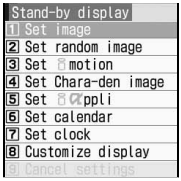
You can change the stand-by display to your favorite image.
- Depending on the image, video/i-motion, Chara-den or i-αppli, settings for the stand-by display will be disabled if you do not insert the same UIM as used when downloading the data.
- While All Lock or PIM Lock is on (when the data which is subject to PIM Lock is set to the stand-by display), the set stand-by image is canceled and the image of the default setting is displayed temporarily. The set stand-by image reappears when lock is canceled. However, if the data in ***Preinstalled*** folder is set, the set data is displayed even when PIM Lock is on.
- Setting the clock display ☛P132

Setting image, video/i-motion or Chara-den as the stand-by display

The image, video/i-motion or Chara-den saved from an i-mode site or the mail or the still image or video shot with FOMA terminal can be set as the stand-by display. Animation, Create animation and continuous shots can also be set.

1 Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [2 ABC] [1 あ] on the stand-by display.

2 Press [1 あ], [3 DEF] or [4 GHI].



3 Select a folder and select the image, video/i-motion or Chara-den to be set as the stand-by display.

- To check the image, place the cursor at the image in the image list and press [Image]. Press [Set] to set. The following operations can be performed on the image display:
  - Display the previous/next screen: [Navi]
  - Return to the image list: [Clear]
- To check Chara-den, place the cursor at Chara-den in the Chara-den list and press [Image]. Press [Set] to return to the Chara-den list screen, press [Set] to set. The following operations can be performed on the Chara-den display screen:
  - Switch between action and action of parts: [Action/Parts]
  - Display the action list: [Mail]
  - Switch between large size and same size: [Navi]
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion ☛P112

Setting action of Chara-den

① Place the cursor at the Chara-den in the Chara-den list and press [Menu].

② Select an action type from *Stand-by* field and select an action.

- Set action for missed call or unread mail in the same way.
- When ***Action*** or ***Action of Parts*** is selected, select an action from the action list.
- When ***Input*** is selected, enter the number corresponding to the action. ☛P339
- When ***OFF*** is set, the preset action is played and another action cannot be set.

③ Select an interval (1 to 5 seconds) to repeat the action from *Interval* field.

- When ***OFF*** is set, the selected action of Chara-den is played only the first time.

④ Press [Image].

4 Select *YES*.

- When you set video/i-motion as the stand-by display, the first image is displayed.
- If the selected image, video/i-motion or Chara-den can be zoomed, a confirmation screen asking whether to display at the same size or large size is displayed. Select ***YES (Same size)*** to maintain the image size or select ***YES (Large size)*** to enlarge the image to the screen size.
- If the i-αppli stand-by display is set, a confirmation screen is additionally displayed asking whether to cancel it. If ***YES*** is selected, the i-αppli stand-by display is canceled.

INFORMATION

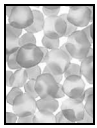
- When the action is set for multiple items for Chara-den, the action is played according to the following prioritization.
  ①Missed calls or unread mail
  ②Standard
  - When both missed calls and unread mail are set and there are both missed calls and unread mail, the action set for each item is played repeatedly by turns.

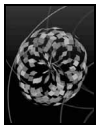
Playing the video/i-motion or animation set as the stand-by display

- The following operations are available for video/i-motion.
  - Play: [Clear]/open FOMA terminal.
  - Stop: [Clear]/close FOMA terminal/[Power]
  - Adjust volume: [Set]
- The following operations are available for animation, Create animation, continuous shot or Flash movie.
  - Play: [Clear]/[Power]/open FOMA terminal/return to the stand-by display/turn the power on
  - Pause/replay: [Clear].
  - Stop/play from the beginning: [Power].
  - Stop: Close FOMA terminal
- The following operations are available for Chara-den.
  Play (When the interval for the action is set, the action is played repeatedly at the set interval):
  [Clear]/open FOMA terminal
  Stop: [Clear]/close FOMA terminal/[Power]
- Playing/stopping by opening/closing FOMA terminal can be performed while Key Lock is on. Playing is stopped by Any Key Answer keys.

Images/i-motion/Chara-den for the stand-by display screen size preinstalled by default

■ **Image**





(Default) **©BVIG**

■ **i-motion**

■ **Chara-den** ☛P338

INFORMATION

- Animation is played up to 16 times repeatedly.
- When Flash movie or Chara-den is set as the stand-by display, playing is brought to a pause after a certain period of time. The melody for Flash movie set on the stand-by display is not played.
- If zoom display is set for animation, the display may be distorted.
- You cannot set the video/i-motion which restrictions for the number of replay or playback period are set for the stand-by display.
- Even if Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions are set as links in tickers of video/i-motion, these links cannot be available from the stand-by display.
- When a video/i-motion or Chara-den is set for the stand-by display, the clock is displayed small on the upper part. Even when the clock design is set to ***Analog*** in Clock Display Format, the clock is displayed by ***Digital 1***.

Displaying images in a random order

Random Display Image

Images can be displayed in a random order on the stand-by display every fixed time or when opening FOMA terminal.

1 Press MENU **8** TUV **2** ABC **1** **2** ABC **on the stand-by display.**

2 Select each item to set.

Folder : Selects a folder in which the images are saved from the folders in ***Image***.
- The folder with no image which can be displayed cannot be selected.

Change image
: Sets the timing that the image is switched.
- When ***Every 15 seconds*** is set, images are switched every 15 seconds after returning to the stand-by display.
- When ***Every minute***, ***Every 15 minutes*** or ***Every hour*** is set, the image is switched according to the clock (For example, ***Every minute*** is set, the image is switched per minute 0 second).
- When ***Every day*** is set, images are switched at 0:00 a.m. every day.
- When ***Open slide*** is set, images are switched each time you open FOMA terminal.

3 Press [i-αppli] and select *YES*.

・If the i-αppli stand-by display is set, a confirmation screen is displayed additionally asking whether to cancel it. If ***YES*** is selected, the i-αppli stand-by display is canceled.

INFORMATION

- The following images cannot be displayed.
  ・Create animation ・Continuous shot ・Animation ・Flash movie ・Video
- If the date and time have not been set and the timing to switch is set to other than ***Open slide***, the image is not switched.
- Even if the still image currently displayed on the stand-by display is moved or Create animation is composed, the image is displayed until it switches to the next image. After that, it is not displayed.
- When there is no still image that can be displayed as the result of deleting the selected folder, moving or deleting still images in the folder or composing Create animation, the default image is displayed on the stand-by display and Random Display Image returns to the default setting (if the still image is moved or Create animation is composed, the image is displayed until it switches to the next image).
- Even when the setting for switching is set to ***Open slide***, if you repeat opening/closing FOMA terminal quickly, the image may not be switched.

Setting the i-αppli stand-by display

・Multiple i-αppli applications cannot be set on the i-αppli stand-by display.
・The following i-αppli provided at manufacture can be set as the i-αppli stand-by display:
・ウゴクフォトミラクル ・珍さん計画 DX おこづかい帖プラス

1 Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [2 ABC] [1 あ] [5 な JKL] on the stand-by display.

A list of i-αppli compatible with the i-αppli stand-by display appears.

2 Select i-αppli and select *YES*.

The i-αppli stand-by display is set and [ON] or [OFF] is indicated on the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

- Operating i-αppli Stand-by Display ☛P302
- When you set i-αppli that performs communication by connecting to the network for the i-αppli stand-by display, it may not operate correctly depending on radio wave conditions, etc. Some i-αppli and settings communicate automatically depending on the settings.
- When the i-αppli stand-by display is canceled, the stand-by display is set back to the previous one.
- If you set the i-αppli stand-by display during Privacy Mode (***Authorized access*** set for ***i-αppli***), the setting is not activated. Note that when Privacy Mode is turned on after the i-αppli stand-by display is set, the i-αppli stand-by display is not displayed, but the stand-by image which has been set before is displayed. If Privacy Mode is canceled, the i-αppli stand-by display reappears.
- In PIM Lock on, the i-αppli stand-by display is not displayed but a stand-by image set previously is displayed. Note that the default stand-by display is displayed when the data which is subject to PIM Lock has been set.
- When i-αppli is set for the stand-by display, the clock is displayed small on the upper part. Even when the clock design is set to ***Analog*** in Clock Display Format, the clock is displayed by ***Digital 1***.

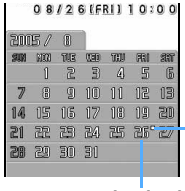
Setting a calendar on the stand-by display

1 Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [2 ABC] [1 あ] [6 は MNO] on the stand-by display.

2 Select *YES*.

- If the i-αppli stand-by display is set, a confirmation screen is displayed additionally asking whether to cancel it. If ***YES*** is selected, the i-αppli stand-by display is canceled.

When a calendar is set



- The days-off and holidays are displayed in red. The settings for the days-off and holidays follow Day Off Setting or the setting for holidays for Scheduler. Note that when Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Schedule***), PIM Lock or All Lock is on, the day set as day-off in Day Off Setting is not displayed in red and reset to the default display.
- When a schedule is set, a dot is displayed on the upper right of the date. Note that all schedules with Secret Attribute set are displayed only when Secret Mode is on. In addition, they are not displayed when Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Schedule***) or PIM Lock is on.

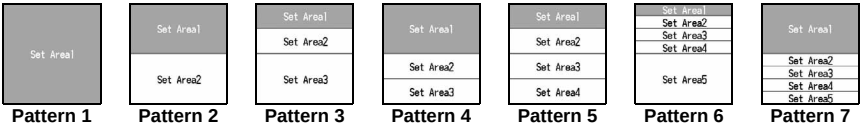
INFORMATION

- If the date and time have not been set, the calendar is not displayed on the stand-by display.
- As for the clock display in case the calendar is set for the stand-by display, the clock is displayed small on the upper part. Even when the clock design is set to ***Analog*** in Clock Display Format, the clock is displayed by ***Digital 1***.
- An image and a calendar can be set simultaneously. However, if an animation, Create animation, continuous shot or Flash movie is set, the calendar is displayed when the playback is stopped or paused.

Customizing the stand-by display

Custom Stand-by

The stand-by display can be divided into several areas to display the latest information such as unread mail or missed calls, notes, calendar or schedule for each area. The pattern of dividing areas can be selected from the following 7 types:



1 Press Menu 8 TUV 2 ABC 1 あ 8 TUV on the stand-by display.

2 Press ▶□◀ to switch patterns.

3 Select an area and press 1 あ to 5 な.

- If the pattern including multiple areas is selected, repeat Step 3.
- The calendar cannot be set in an area smaller than half of the screen. (e.g. Set Area1 of Pattern 3)

Setting New arrival

① **Press 2 ABC.**

② **Select information to display.**

- Press ● to switch selecting/canceling, press Menu to select or cancel all items.

③ **Press ▭.**

Setting Notes

① **Press 3 DEF.**

A list of recorded notes is displayed.

② **Select a note to display.**

- Press ▭ to display the content of the note. Press クリア to return to the note list. Press ● on the notepad view screen to set.

4 Press ▭ and select *YES*.

- If the i-αppli stand-by display is set, a confirmation screen is displayed additionally asking whether to cancel it. If ***YES*** is selected, the i-αppli stand-by display is canceled.

INFORMATION

- When the area that the content should be displayed overlaps with the clock display position on the stand-by display, the clock is displayed small on the upper part. Even when the clock design is set to ***Analog*** in Clock Display Format, the clock is displayed by ***Digital 1***.

Checking information on the custom stand-by display

1 Press ● on the stand-by display.

The top area is displayed with a red cursor frame.

- Press ● to move the cursor frame.

2 Select an area.

INFORMATION

- If you set animation, Create animation, continuous shot or Flash movie as a stand-by image, the information is displayed when the playback is stopped or paused.

Displayed information

The custom stand-by display and various information appear as follows:

- The numbers of information entries and lines displayed depending on the area size.
- For each information entry, the time is displayed for the current day and date is displayed for other days.

New arrival

Selected items of unread mail, Message R, Message F, missed calls and recorded messages are listed starting with the most recent item. If this area is selected, the list screen of the first item is displayed.

Unread messages

：The reception date and time and the first part of subject are displayed. Selecting the area when this item is displayed at the beginning displays the Inbox folder list.

MessageR/ MessageF

：The reception date and time and the first part of titlte are displayed. Selecting the area when this item is displayed at the beginning display the Message R/F list.

Missed calls ：The date and time of incoming calls and the phone number of the other party (or name when registered in the phonebook) are displayed. Selecting the area when this item is displayed at the beginning, display the received call list.

Recorded messages

：The date and time of recording and the phone number of the other party (or name when registered in the phonebook) are displayed. Selecting the area when this item is displayed at the beginning displays the recorded message list.

■ Notes

The beginning of the contents recorded in notepad is displayed. Select this area to display the details of notes.

■ Schedule

Scheduled entries of which the start time has not come yet are displayed starting from the earliest date and time. Select this area to display the details of the first schedule.

- The icon, date and time and the beginning of the contents are displayed.
- The date-straddled long-term schedule is displayed until the end date/time has elapsed. If the start time has exceeded the current time, " start date from" is displayed instead of the registered icon and it is displayed next to the scheduled entries of which the start time has not come yet for the day (in order of start time).
- If any schedule for all day is set on the current day, ***AllDay*** is displayed instead of the start time.

■ Calendar

The current calendar is displayed. Select this area to display the schedule calendar screen of Scheduler.

- Viewing the calendar ☛P122

INFORMATION

- The area with no content to be displayed is not displayed.
- When Secret Mode is not set, schedules with Secret Attribute set are not displayed on the custom stand-by display. If there is any incoming call or message recording from a party with Secret Attribute set, the phone number is displayed without the name on ***New arrival*** area with ***Missed calls*** or ***Recorded messages*** set.
- When Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***, ***Mail*** or ***Schedule***), all unread mail, missed calls, recorded messages or schedules are not displayed on the area of ***New arrival*** or ***Schedule***.
- When Privacy Mode is on (***Hide secret fldrs*** set for ***Mail***), unread mail other than the folders with the privacy set to ***ON*** in the folder settings are displayed.
- When PIM Lock is activated, ***PIM lock.*** is displayed and the contents are not displayed on the area of notepad or schedule. In addition, only missed calls after PIM Lock is set are displayed on the area of ***New arrival***.

Canceling the setting items other than images

Cancel the settings for the video/i-motion, Chara-den, the i-αppli stand-by display, the calendar for stand-by and the custom stand-by display and display an image on the stand-by display.
• Random Display Image is not canceled.

1 **Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [2 ABC] [1 あ] [9 WXYZ] on the stand-by display.**

2 **Select *Yes*.**
• If an image has been previously set before the image is canceled, the image is displayed. Otherwise, the default image is displayed on the stand-by display.

Changing images to be displayed for incoming/outgoing calls/mails Mail/Call Image Setting

Set images to be displayed for outgoing calls, incoming/outgoing mails or for message retrieval.
• Setting images to be displayed when receiving calls ☛P63

Changing images for outgoing calls Outgoing Call Image/Video-phone Dialing Image

Menu 861 / Menu 881

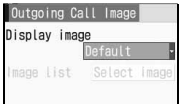
Set images to be displayed for outgoing voice calls or video-phone calls.

Default Default

1 **Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [2 ABC] [2 ABC] on the stand-by display.**

2 **Press [1 あ] or [3 DEF].**
• Press [1 あ] to set an image for making a voice call.
• Press [3 DEF] to set an image for making a video-phone call.

3 **Select *Display image* field and press [2 ABC].**



• To set the default image, press [1 あ].

4 **Select *Select image* in *Image list* field to select an image.**

5 **Press [Mail].**

INFORMATION
● Setting Create animation or continuous shots displays the first frame.

Displaying images saved in the phonebook for incoming/outgoing calls/mails Contact Image

When a call from/to the other party registered in the phonebook is received/made, the portrait image saved in the phonebook can be displayed.

Default ON

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 2 ABC 2 ABC 5 JKL on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 .

・Not to display a portrait image, press 2 ABC.

■ **Call image priority**

The call images set in multiple functions are displayed by priorities given below:

①FOMA terminal phonebook settings*

②FOMA terminal phonebook settings by the groups

③Sound Setting/Outgoing Call Image/Incoming Call Setting/Video-phone Dialing Image/Video-phone Receiving Setting

* When Contact Image is set to ***ON***, the setting is available.

・When the other party does not notify the caller ID, the incoming image for the voice call operates according to Anonymous Caller. For the incoming image for the video-phone call, it operates according to Sound Setting/Video-phone Receiving Setting.

・When the sounds or images set in Anonymous Caller are deleted, the settings are changed. In this case, the sounds played or images displayed on the setting screen after deleting may differ from the sounds played or images displayed in reality may differ from the sounds played or images displayed on the setting screen.

Changing images for incoming/outgoing mails and message retrieval

Outgoing Msg. Image/Incoming Msg. Image/Retrieving Image

・You cannot set Flash movie for the retrieving image.

Default **Default**

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 2 ABC 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

2 Press 6 MNO to 8 TUV.

・Press 6 MNO to set an image to be displayed when sending the i-mode mail or SMS.

・Press 7 PQRS to set an image to be displayed when receiving the i-mode mail, SMS or Message R/F.

・Press 8 TUV to set an image to be displayed when retrieving the i-mode message or SMS.

3 Select the image to register.

・Follow the procedure from Step 3 in “Changing images for outgoing calls”. ☛P125

Displaying the other party’s name and phone number when receiving calls

Receive Display

Set whether to display the name and phone number when a call is received as well as setting the character sizes for the name. In addition, whether to display the reception result as ticker in the information line when receiving a i-mode mail, SMS or Message R/F can be set.

・Name displays ☛P93

・The setting for ***Receive mail/message*** of this function is also reflected to the setting for ***Receive mail/message*** of Information Line Setting.

Default **Caller’s phone number: Display Caller’s name: Standard Receive mail/message: Display**

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 2 ABC 2 ABC 9 WXYZ on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Caller’s phone number

：Sets whether to display the phone number when a call is received.

Caller's name : Sets whether to display the name or not as well as setting the size of characters when a call is received.

Receive mail/message

: Sets whether to display the reception result as ticker in the information line when receiving a i-mode mail, SMS or Message R/F.

3 Press [Menu].

Setting display and key light

Display Light Setting

Default Lighting method: Turn light ON Turn light on: 10 seconds Range: Display + Key Brightness: Normal AC adapter connected: Terminal settings

1 Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [2 ABC] [5 JKL] on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Lighting method : Sets whether to turn the lighting on or off.

- Setting ***Turn light ON*** maintains lighting for the time set in ***Turn light on***.
- Setting ***Turn light OFF*** does not turn the lighting on. ***Turn light on***, ***Range*** and ***Brightness*** cannot be set.

Turn light on : Sets the lighting time.

Range : Sets whether to light only the display or both the display and keys.

- When the range is set as ***Display + key***, the keys that will be lit are as follows: [マナー], [ON/OFF], [ｍ], [クリア], [0 わ], to [9 WXYZ], [*], [#].

Brightness : Sets the brightness of the display when lit.

AC adapter connected

: Sets how to light the display when connecting to the AC adapter (desktop holder) or to the DC adapter.

- Setting ***Terminal settings*** lights the display according to the settings of the above items.
- Setting ***Always on*** lights the display at ***High***.

3 Press [Menu].

INFORMATION

- If you do not press any keys of FOMA terminal for approximately 90 seconds when ***Turn light on*** is set to other than ***Always***, the display light is turned off automatically (except for shooting with the camera). However, the display light is turned on again if there is any key operation or incoming call.
- Even when ***Lighting method*** is set to ***Turn light ON***, the display or keys do not light by pressing the keys while Key Lock is on. However, the display light is turned on if you press [ON/OFF].

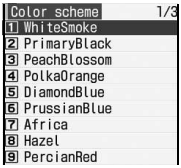
Changing display colors

Color Scheme

Default WhiteSmoke

1 Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [2 ABC] [3 DEF] on the stand-by display.

2 Press [1] to [9].



- You can select a color from 24 colors.
- Press [Navi] to switch pages.
- Press [Navi] to place the cursor at a type of the color, so the screen is displayed in that color.
- The color name is an image.

INFORMATION

● Changing Color Scheme does not affect the color of the website.

Setting the menu display format/the menu design

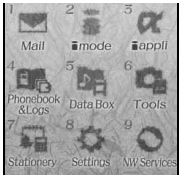
Menu Setting

The menu display format for the normal menu and the custom menu can be changed. Whether to display the function description when a menu item is selected can be set as well.

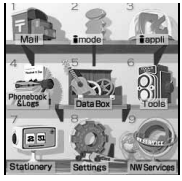
- The icon design for the normal menu in tile display can be selected from 4 types. The selected icon design applies to the first-level menu that appears first when you press [Menu].

Type1

Type2



Type3

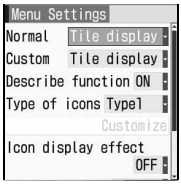


Type4

Default Normal: Tile display Custom: Tile display Describe function: ON Type of icons: Type1 Icon display effect: OFF Default MENU: Normal Active shortcut: Custom

1 Press [Menu] [Navi] on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.



Normal	: Sets the display format for the normal menu.
Custom	: Sets the display format for the custom menu.
Describe function	: Sets whether to display the function description.
Type of icons	: Sets the design of icons displayed in tile display of the normal menu.
Icon display effect	: Sets whether to magnify an icon when it is selected.
Default MENU	: Sets the menu which is displayed when pressing Menu on the stand-by display.
Active shortcut	: Sets the shortcut operations to be used for the custom menu. • ***Normal***: the same item numbers as the normal menu can be used for shortcut operations. • ***Custom***: the item numbers for the positions of the respective functions on the custom menu can be used for shortcut operations.

3 Press [Book].

Changing the menu design

Two patterns of the design of the menu screen can be created by changing the icons or background images of the menu.

• When the image size exceeds 96 x 96 for icons and 240 x 240 for background images, they are reduced to be displayed.

1 Press Menu A1a, on the stand-by display, select *Custom1* or *Custom2* in *Type of icons* field and select *Customize*.

2 Select a function to change icons and select an image from the image folder list.

■ **Canceling a menu icon**

① **Place the cursor at the icon to be canceled, press Menu 1 and select *Yes*.**

• To cancel all, press Menu 2 and select *Yes*.

3 Press [Mail] to select a background image for the menu screen from the image folder list.

■ **Canceling a background**

① **Press Menu 4 and select *Yes*.**

4 Press [Book] twice.

INFORMATION

● Create animations, Flash movies or images in ***Item*** folder cannot be set. Also, if an animation is set, the first frame is displayed.

● The current settings for ***Custom1*** and ***Custom2*** of the type of icons cannot be changed while PIM Lock is on.

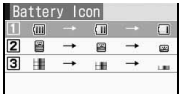
Changing the battery level icon

Battery Icon

Default

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 2 ABC 4 GHI on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 to 3 DEF.



Setting the color and lighting pattern for the call indicator

Alert Lighting Setting

Set whether to flash the call indicator or not when there is the latest information such as missed calls or unread mail or whether to light the call indicator when the FeliCa mark is help up to the reader/writer. It also sets the lighting pattern and color for the call indicator during a call or when receiving a call/mail or opening/closing FOMA terminal.

- The settings in this function are reflected to the lighting set in Incoming Call Setting, Video-phone Receiving Setting, Incoming Msg. Setting, Incoming Chat Mail Setting or Incoming Msg. Alert.

Default Indicator light: OFF During call: OFF Incoming Video-phone: Blink/Ocean Incoming call: Blink/Ocean Incoming Mail: Blink/Ocean Incoming Message R: Blink/Ocean Incoming Message F: Blink/Ocean Incoming Chat Mail: Blink/Ocean Alarm: OFF Schedule: OFF Play melody: Sync melody/Rainbow Open slide: Glimmer/Ocean Close slide: Glimmer/Ocean IC card: ON

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 2 ABC 6 MNO on the stand-by display.

2 Select *Indicator light* field and press 1 or 2 ABC.

- If ***ON*** is set, the call indicator flashes at a 6-second interval in the lighting color for ***Incoming call*** when there is a missed call (voice call/video-phone call/recorded message), in the lighting color for ***Incoming Mail*** when there is unread information (mail/Chat mail/SMS) or in the lighting color for ***Incoming Message R/F*** when there is unread information (Message R/F). If the new arrival information is confirmed, the call indicator stops to flash.
- When ***OFF*** is set, the call indicator does not flash even if there is new arrival information.

3 Select *Pattern* field of the item to be set and press 1 to 5 JKL.

- ***Sync melody*** cannot be set in ***During call***.
- Press ● to make the call indicator to light/flash by the pattern at the cursor position. The call indicator flashes when ***Sync melody*** is selected. Note that the call indicator does not light/flash when ***OFF*** is selected.
- When ***Sync melody*** or ***OFF*** is set, the lighting color cannot be set.
- When ***Sync melody*** is set, the lighting color lights/flashes by ***Rainbow***.
- When ***Incoming Chat Mail*** is selected and if the incoming setting for Incoming Chat Mail Setting is set to ***Same : Mrg setting***, ***Incoming Chat Mail*** cannot be selected.

4 **Select *Color* field of the item to be set and press [1あ/@] to [9らwxyz].**

- The color name is an image.
- Press [▷] to switch the pages.
- If you press [●], the call indicator lights/flashes by the color of the cursor position.
- When ***Incoming Chat Mail*** is selected and if the incoming setting for Incoming Chat Mail Setting is set to ***Same : Mrg setting***, ***Incoming Chat Mail*** cannot be selected.

5 **Select *IC card* field and press [1あ] or [2かABC].**

- When ***ON*** is set, the call indicator lights when holding up the FeliCa mark to the reader/writer.

6 **Press [決].**

INFORMATION

- If there are multiple newly-arrived information, the call indicator flashes in the following priority when ***Indicator light*** is set to ***ON***.
  ①Missed calls (voice call/video-phone call/recorded message)
  ②Unread messages (mail/Chat mail/SMS)
  ③Unread messages (Message R)
  ④Unread messages (Message F)
- Even when ***Indicator light*** is set to ***ON***, if there have been no newly-arrived information for about 6 hours since there was the first arrival or if [1] [1] (with the number of newly-arrived information) on the display are deleted, the call indicator stops to flash even if the information are not confirmed.
- Even if ***Sync melody*** is set for the lighting pattern, it may not be synchronized depending on the melodies.
- If a video/i-motion is set for the alarm sound in Alarm Clock or Scheduler or ***Movie ringtone*** or ***OFF*** is set as the following ring tones in Sound Setting, the call indicator flashes by the color set for the lighting color even when the lighting pattern is set to ***Sync melody***.
  - Phone
  - Mail
  - Chat mail
  - Message Request
  - Message Free
  - Video-phone
  - Open slide
  - Close slide
- The call indicator flashes by ***Lime*** while on-hold even when the lighting color during a call is set.
- When a call or mail is received from a party registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the operation depends on the FOMA terminal phonebook setting.
- Even when the IC card is set to ***ON***, the call indicator may not light while Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli is activated.
- Even when the IC card is set to ***ON***, if the power is turned off, the call indicator does not light.
- When the IC card is set to ***ON***, the call indicator also lights when the IC card is held over the reader/writer that Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli is not registered.

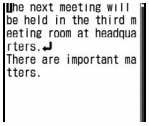
Changing the font size

Font

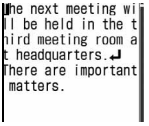
The character size can be changed from 5 types for entering characters by full-screen entry.

***Minimum*: 12 dots**

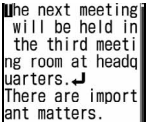
***Small*: 16 dots**



***Standard*: 20 dots**



***Large*: 24 dots**

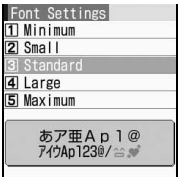


***Maximum*: 28 dots**

Default Standard

1 **Press [メニュー] [8TUV] [2ABC] [7PQRS] on the stand-by display.**

2 Press 1 あ/@ to 5 な/JKL.



- Press ● to display the example in the character size at the cursor position.

INFORMATION

- The font size of mail message to be entered cannot be changed.
- The character size is not changed for in-line entry.
- The character size is changed for displaying a site screen and Message R/F. However, if a character is set to ***Minimum***, the ***Small*** character size is set. If set to ***Maximum***, the ***Large*** character size is set.

Setting clock display

Clock Display Format

Set whether to display the clock on the stand by display. The design, display format (24 hour/12 hour) and the language used to display the day of the week can also be set.

Default Clock size: Degital1/Large/Top/Terminal settings Time format: 24 hour

Displaying *Digital 1* by 12 hour format in a large size at the center

Displaying *Digital 2* by 24 hour format in a large size at the top

Displaying *Digital 3* by 12 hour format in a small size at the bottom

Displaying *Analog* at the center

1 Press Menu 8 や/TUV 5 な/JKL 4 た/GHI on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Clock size : Sets the clock design, clock size, layout and the day of week.

- When the clock design is set to ***Analog***, the clock size cannot be set.
- When the clock design is set to ***No clock***, the clock is not displayed.
- If ***Terminal settings*** is set for the day of week, the display depends on the setting for Select Language.

Time format : Specifies 24 hour or 12 hour format to display the clock.

- When the analog clock is set for the stand-by clock, the clock is displayed by 12 hour format regardless of the setting of the time format.

3 Press ●.

INFORMATION

- Press Menu 8 TUV 2 ABC 1 あ/@ 7 PQRS on the stand-by display to set the clock display in Stand-by Display Setting.
- On the screen other than the stand-by screen, the clock is displayed on the upper right of the screen. 24 hour/12 hour format follows this function's setting.
- When the display areas are overlapped with the clock as in the following cases, the clock is displayed in a small size on the upper part, regardless of settings in this function. Even when the clock design is set to ***Analog***, the clock is displayed by ***Digital 1***.
  - When video/i-motion, Chara-den or calendar is set on the stand-by display
  - When the i-αppli stand-by display is displayed
  - When the set area that the content should be displayed overlaps with the clock display position on the custom stand-by display
- During ALL Lock, the clock is displayed on the upper part regardless of this function's setting.
- The direction of hands of an analog clock is displayed as a guide.

Setting the display of the information line

Information Line Setting

On the information line, you can display not only a calendar, note or schedule but also the reception result as ticker when i-mode mail, SMS or Message R/F is received. In addition, even when the display light is turned off, icons or date and time can be displayed.

- Icons or date and time displayed when setting ***Partial display*** on ☛P26
- The setting for ***Receive mail/message*** of this function is also reflected to the setting for ***Receive mail/message*** in Receive Display.

Default Normal display: 1week calendar Partial display: ON Receive mail/message: Display

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 2 ABC 9 WXYZ on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Normal display : Selects the information to be displayed while the display light is turned on from ***1week calendar***, ***Notepad*** or ***Schedule***.

Partial display : Sets whether to display the information even while the display light is turned off.

Receive mail/message : Sets whether to display the reception result as ticker when receiving i-mode mail, SMS or Message R/F.

3 Press ▣.

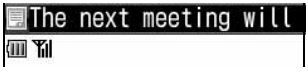
Setting to display a 1 week calendar

- The 1 week calendar including the current day is displayed. According to the setting for ***Display mode*** in Calendar View Mode of Scheduler, whether the 1 week calendar starts on Sunday or Monday is switched.

- A dot is displayed on the lower right of the date on the day which has the schedule registered. As for the date-straddled long-term schedule or the schedule with repeat setting, a dot is displayed for all the corresponding date. However, a dot is not displayed in the following cases:
  - During PIM Lock
  - When Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Schedule***)
  - During All Lock
  - There are schedules with Secret Attribute set but Secret Mode is off
- The days off and national holidays are displayed in red. The settings for days off and national holidays follow Day Off Setting or Holiday Setting for Scheduler. Note that during Privacy Mode (***Authorized access*** set for ***Schedule***), PIM Lock or All Lock, the date set as holiday in Day Off Setting is not displayed in red and reset to the default display.
- When the date and time have not been set, a message indicating so appears and the calendar is not displayed.

Setting to display a note

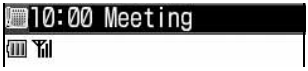
The contents of note registered as the first item of Notepad are displayed.



- When FOMA terminal is opened/closed or the display light is turned on, the contents of note are scrolled to the last.
- When linefeed is included in the contents of note, the linefeed is replaced with tow-byte space.
- When the note is not registered or All Lock is set, a 1 week calendar is displayed.
- While PIM Lock is on, a message indicating so appears and the contents are not displayed.

Setting to display a schedule

When there is a schedule in the day, among the schedule which the start time has not come, the start time and contents of the schedule of which the start time is the closest to the current time are displayed.



- When the current time is earlier than the start time in the date-straddled long-term schedule, if the current time has exceeded the start time and is before the end date, the start date and contents are displayed on the schedule.
- When the calendar for all day is set, ***AllDay*** and the contents are displayed.
- When Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Schedule***), All Lock is on and there is no schedule to be displayed, a 1 week calendar is displayed.
- The schedule with Secret Attribute set is not displayed except when Secret Mode is on.
- When FOMA terminal is opened/closed or the display light is turned on, the contents are scrolled to the last.
- While PIM Lock is on, a message indicating so appears and the contents are not displayed.

Safety settings

Security code

Security codes available with FOMA terminal 136
Changing the terminal security code ..... Change Security Code 137
Setting the PIN code 137
Unblocking PIN lock 139

Restricting Mobile Phone Operations

Various lock functions 140
Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal ..... All Lock 141
Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal by remote access ..... Remote Lock 141
Preventing making/receiving calls ..... Self Mode 143
Preventing display of the phonebook or schedule ..... PIM Lock 143
Prohibiting keypad dial ..... Keypad Dial Lock 144
Preventing unauthorized use for the functions such as phonebook and mail ..... Privacy Mode Setting 145
Preventing inadvertent use of keys ..... Key Lock 147
Displaying the data with Secret Attribute set ..... Secret Mode 147

Restricting outgoing/incoming or sending/receiving

Rejecting/accepting incoming calls from the specified phone numbers ..... Reject/Accept Call 148
Setting the operation for an incoming call that does not notify the caller ID ..... Anonymous Caller 149
Setting not to answer a call from the party not registered in the phonebook ..... Mute Seconds Setting 150
Rejecting calls from phone numbers not registered in the phonebook ..... Reject non-Reg. Caller 151

Other “Safety settings”

Other “Safety settings” 152

Security codes available with FOMA terminal

Some FOMA terminal functions for convenient use require the entry of security codes. There are the network security code for use in network services and DoCoMo e-site, password for i-mode in addition to the terminal security code for various functions. Fully use your FOMA terminal by choosing the security code to suit your needs.

Terminal security code

The default terminal security code is “0000”, which can be changed to a code of your own choice.

- Please be notified that, if you forget the terminal security code, you need to bring FOMA terminal*, the UIM (FOMA card) in use and the identification (driver’s license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.
  * In case the terminal is not purchased by the subscriber, it may not be accepted.

Network security code

Network security code is the 4-digit code that is set when you subscribed to FOMA terminal for usage of network services and various procedures for the DoCoMo e-site.

- If you forgot the network security code, contact “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual. DoCoMo Shops make subscription after confirming the subscriber’s identification based on a certificate such as the driver’s license. If you have “User ID” and “Password”, you can make subscription by accessing to DoCoMo e-site from the PC.
  Note: Please refer to the back of this manual for “DoCoMo e-site”.

PIN1 code/PIN2 code

The PIN1 and PIN2 codes can be set for the UIM. The default PIN1 and PIN2 codes are “0000”, which can be changed to a code of your own choice.
The PIN1 code is the 4 to 8 digits security code entered to confirm the user every time the UIM is inserted to FOMA terminal or the power of FOMA terminal is turned on to protect your FOMA terminal from unauthorized use by the third party. Entering the PIN1 code enables making or receiving calls and FOMA terminal operations. The PIN2 code is the 4 to 8 digits security code required when using or requesting the issue of a user certificate, resetting the total call cost or changing the setting of Reset Call Cost.

i-mode password

A 4-digit i-mode password is required to store/delete sites in My Menu and apply to/cancel message services or i-mode pay sites. The default i-mode password is “0000”, which can be changed to a code of your own choice (in addition, there may be passwords required by individual information providers).

- Please be notified that, if you forget the i-mode password, you need to bring the identification (driver’s license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.

INFORMATION

- To prevent tampering, change the terminal security code, PIN1 code, PIN2 code or i-mode password to a code of your own choice after the completion of the application for subscription. Be sure to remember the set security codes.
- Be sure to avoid recognizable numbers such as the last 4 digits of the phone number and not to be revealed the security codes or password by others.
- If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively , the power is automatically turned off. If the power is turned on again or the correct terminal security code is entered, the number of times of accumulation is cleared.

Changing the terminal security code

Change Security Code

- Enter the 4 to 8 digits number for the terminal security code.
- The entered terminal security code is masked with "✳".

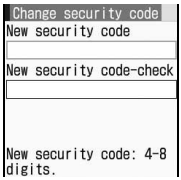
Default 0000

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 3 DEF 5 JKL on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the current terminal security code.

- If the entered terminal security code is not correct, the message indicating that is displayed. Press ● and enter the correct terminal security code.

3 Select *New security code* field and enter a new terminal security code.



4 Select *New security code-check* field and enter the same terminal security code as entered in Step 3.

5 Press ●.

Setting the PIN code

- The PIN1/PIN2 code can be changed.
- Enter the 4 to 8 digits number for the PIN1/PIN2 code
- The entered PIN1/PIN2 code is masked with "✳".

Setting to require the entry of the PIN1 code when turning the power on

PIN1 Code ON/OFF

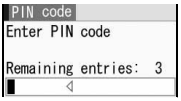
Subscribed to FOMA OFF

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 3 DEF 4 GHI 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 あ/@.

・To cancel the setting, press 2 か ABC.

3 Enter the PIN1 code.



・The PIN1 code is set to “0000” at the time of subscription.

When PIN1 Code ON/OFF is set to *ON*

When FOMA terminal is powered on, the PIN1 code entry screen is displayed. After entering the correct PIN1 code, the stand-by display appears.

・Making/receiving calls or operating the communication functions are unavailable if a wrong PIN1 code is entered.

・If a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN1 code is locked. Press C to cancel the PIN lock.

INFORMATION

● If Alarm Auto Power ON has been set to ***ON***, the alarm sounds before displaying the PIN1 code entry screen when the power is turned on at the set time for an alarm or schedule. When pressing PWR to end the alarm, the PIN1 code entry screen is displayed. At this time, the alarm sounds by the melody preinstalled by default (*アラーム・アナログ時計* (Alarm・analog clock) is for the alarm, *アラーム・女性ボイス* (Alarm・Female voice) is for the schedule alarm) even when the downloaded melody or i-motion is set for the alarm sound.

● The settings of the PIN1/PIN2 codes and PIN1 Code ON/OFF are recorded in the UIM. When using the current UIM to FOMA terminal you newly purchased, the settings of the PIN1/PIN2 codes and PIN1 Code ON/OFF that you set previously can be used likewise.

Changing the PIN1/PIN2 code

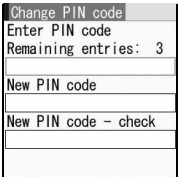
Change PIN1/PIN2 Code

・To change the PIN1 code, set PIN1 Code ON/OFF to ***ON***.

Subscribed to FOMA PIN1 code: 0000 PIN2 code: 0000

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 3 DEF 4 GHI and then press 1 あ/@ or 2 か ABC on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and then the current PIN1/PIN2 code.



3 Select *New PIN/PIN2 code* field and enter the new PIN1/PIN2 code.

4 Select *New PIN/PIN2 code - check* field and enter the same PIN1/PIN2 code as entered in Step 3.

5 Press [Menu].

- If the current PIN1/PIN2 code was not correctly entered, the message indicating that is displayed. Press [Clear] and enter the correct PIN1/PIN2 code. If a wrong PIN1/PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN1/PIN2 code is locked. Press [Clear] to cancel the PIN lock.

INFORMATION

● Even if a wrong PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively and the FOMA terminal lock is activated, making/receiving calls or sending/receiving mail is available, but if a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively and the FOMA terminal lock is activated, those operations become unavailable.

Unblocking PIN lock

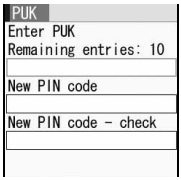
If a wrong PIN1/PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively on the PIN1/PIN2 code entry screen, the PIN code is locked. If this happens, unblock and enter a new PIN code.

- The user is notified of the PUK (PIN Unblocking Key) at the time of purchase.
- Please be notified that, if you forget the PUK or PIN Lock is blocked completely, you need to bring FOMA terminal, the UIM in use, and the identification (driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.
- The PUK or PIN1/PIN2 code entered is masked with "✳".

Example Unblocking PIN1 code's lock

1 Press [Clear] on the confirmation screen of the PIN code's lock.

2 Enter the 8-digit PUK.



3 Select *New PIN code* field and enter a new PIN code.

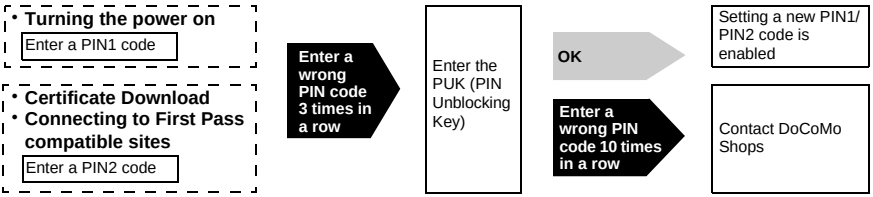
4 Select *New PIN code - check* field and enter the same PIN code as entered in Step 3.

5 Press [Menu].

After PIN lock is canceled, the new PIN1 code is set.

INFORMATION

● If a wrong PUK is entered 10 times consecutively, FOMA terminal is locked.



Various lock functions

A variety of lock functions are available to prevent FOMA terminal from being used by others or to keep your private information and phonebook entries confidential. You can choose the function to suit your needs.

- You can set multiple lock functions at the same time.
- The settings of lock functions other than Key Lock and Secret Mode are retained even if the power is turned off.
- You can make emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) even when the lock functions are set.

Item	Description	Page
All Lock	Disables menu operations to prevent unauthorized use by third parties.	P141
Remote Lock	Any unauthorized use of your FOMA terminal by others is avoided by setting All Lock and IC Card Lock by remote control in case your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen.	P141
Self Mode	Disables communication functions such as making/receiving of calls, sending/receiving of mail and the infrared communication.	P143
PIM Lock	Disables using of private information functions such as Phonebook, Own Number and Scheduler and prevents the display of and tampering with private information. When PIM Lock is on, the name of the other party is not be displayed even if the call is made/received to the party registered in the phonebook or mail is received.	P143
Keypad Dial Lock	Disables pressing dial keys to make calls.	P144
Privacy Mode Setting	If FOMA terminal is left unoperated for a certain period of time, displaying the phonebook and logs, mail, My Picture, i-motion, schedule or i-αppli data automatically becomes unavailable, which prevents unauthorized viewing by any third party.	P145
Key Lock	Disables the key functions to prevent inadvertent operations.	P147
Secret Mode	When you set Secret Attributes for the phonebook or schedule data, the data is displayed only when the terminal security code is entered and Secret Mode is set.	P147
IC Card Lock	Prevents using the IC card function.	P316

Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal All Lock

Menu operations are disabled to prevent unauthorized use by third parties.

> Calls cannot be made or received when All Lock is on.
> To make emergency calls (110,119 or 118) when All Lock is on, enter the emergency call number on the stand-by display and press . The emergency call number is displayed as "＊".

- When All Lock is on, the set stand-by display is canceled and the default image is displayed. When All Lock is canceled, the set stand-by image reappears.
- Even when All Lock is set, IC Card Lock is not set. To set both IC Card Lock and All Lock, set All Lock after setting IC Card Lock.
  Setting IC Card Lock ☛P316

Default not set

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 3 DEF 1 1 on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code.

All locked. is displayed.

■ **Canceling**

① Enter the terminal security code on the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

- You can turn the power on/off. In addition, when Auto Power ON/OFF is set, Auto Power ON/OFF is executed.
- Calls received during All Lock are rejected and the callers hear busy signals.They are recorded in the received call history. When All Lock is canceled, 1 with the number of missed calls is displayed on the stand-by display.
- i-mode Mail, SMS and Message R/F can also be received when All Lock is on, but the receiving screen, icon for the received mail and reception result screen are not displayed. When All Lock is canceled, the icon for the received mail is displayed.
- When All Lock is on, the alarm or schedule alarm does not operate even when the specified date and time arrives.
- If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively when canceling All Lock, the power is automatically turned off.

Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal by remote access Remote Lock

If you make a call to FOMA terminal under the preset operating conditions in case your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen, Auto Lock and IC Card Lock are activated to prevent unauthorized use by others.

Default OFF

Setting Remote Lock operating conditions

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 3 DEF 1 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and select each item to set.

Remote lock : Sets the terminal whether to enable or disable Remote Lock.
- When ***OFF*** is set, the below items cannot be set.

Monitoring period : Sets the time interval from the time of the first incoming call to the time until the specified number of calls will be made (in the 1 to 10 minutes range). Even after the time frame has expired, if the pre-set number of incoming calls are not received, Remote Lock will not be activated. In this case, the number of incoming calls that have been counted is reset.

Received calls : Sets the number of incoming voice calls allowed before Remote Lock is activated (between 3 and 10 times).

Sender 1* to *3 : Sets the original phone numbers that activates Remote Lock. The number of payphone can also be set.

■ Setting the sender's information

① Select *Sender 1* to *3* field.

② Select *Select sender* field and press 1あ/@ or 2か/ABC.
- When ***Sender number*** is set, enter a phone number in the entry field. Press Mail to enter from the phonebook.

③ Press 📖.

3 Press 📖.

INFORMATION
- Even if you set the same phone number to ***Sender 1 to 3***, the operation of Remote Lock is not changed.
- If the phonebook data in which a pause or timed pause has been set is registered to the sender's information, the information registered after the pause and timed pause is deleted.

Setting Remote Lock

Remote Lock is activated by making a call to FOMA terminal under the preset conditions.
- Send your caller ID and make a call to FOMA terminal.
- In the following cases, the counting of incoming calls is not started and Remote Lock is not set.
  - The other party receives a call (including the case that the call is handled by Response and Hold or Answer Machine or received by Auto Answer).
  - FOMA terminal is busy.
  - The call cannot be received because FOMA terminal is outside the service area, the power is turned off or Self Mode is on, etc.
- If the following states occur before making the specified number of calls, the time counting is reset.
  - The other party receives a call (including the case that the call is handled by Response and Hold or Answer Machine or received by Auto Answer).
  - The power of FOMA terminal is turned off.
  - The set monitoring period has passed.
- Even if All Lock or IC Card Lock is set with FOMA terminal, when you make calls by the set conditions, Remote Lock can be set.
- All Lock can be canceled when Remote Lock is set while Key Lock is on, but the emergency call cannot be made.

1 Make a voice call to FOMA terminal under the conditions set by Remote Lock.

The guidance notifying that it is locked is played and Remote Lock is set for FOMA terminal.

■ **Canceling**

Enter the terminal security code in FOMA terminal with Remote Lock set and then release IC Card Lock.

・Canceling IC Card Lock ☛P316

INFORMATION

- The count of incoming calls is only effective for the first call made from the specified sender. After the counting has been initiated, additional received calls from other senders are not counted.
- Even if a call is rejected, or transferred by Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service (excluding when the ringing time is ***0 sec***), that call is counted as an incoming call.
- When there is an incoming call from the phone number of the sender registered in Remote Lock while Answer Machine or Auto Answer is set, Answer Machine or Auto Answer starts in 4 seconds after the response time set by Answer Machine or the delayed time set by Auto Answer has elapsed. End the call before Answer Machine or Auto Answer starts.
- The phone number "186 (✳31#)" or "184 (#31#)" that has been set for the sender does not need to be set as "186 (✳31#)" or "184 (#31#)" when dialing.
- Even if a call arrives while Remote Lock is on, the call is disconnected. If a call arrives from phone numbers that are set as sender, the guidance informing that Remote Lock is on is played and then the call is disconnected.

Menu 894

Preventing making/receiving calls

Self Mode

Disable all functions that require communications such as making or receiving calls or sending or receiving mails. Infrared data communication and infrared remote control are also disabled.

Default OFF

1 Hold down クリア for over a second on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.

Self Mode is set and self is indicated on the stand-by display.

・When you operate from the menu, press 1 あ and select ***Yes***.

■ **Canceling**

① Hold down クリア for over a second when Self Mode is on.

・When you operate from the menu, press 2 か.

INFORMATION

- If you receive a call when Self Mode is on, a guidance is played for the caller that radio waves are hard to reach or the power of your terminal is turned off. You can use Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service.
- i-mode Mail or Message R/F sent when Self Mode is set are stored at the i-mode Center and SMS are stored at the SMS Center. When you receive messages, cancel Self Mode and perform Check i-mode Message or Check SMS.
- Note that if emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) are dialed in Self Mode, Self Mode is canceled.

Preventing display of the phonebook or schedule

PIM Lock

PIM Lock prevents the display of and tampering with private information:

・This function cannot be set when Reject Non-Reg. Caller is set to ***ON***.

・When PIM Lock is set, the previous redial data and received call history are deleted. Note that making or receiving calls after the setting are recorded and dialing from the redial data or received call history can be performed.

Default OFF

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 3 DEF 1 あ 2 か ABC on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and press 1 あ.

PIM Lock is set and is indicated on the stand-by display.

- To cancel the setting, press 2 か ABC.

When PIM Lock is on

- The following all operations or some settings become unavailable.
  - Mail/Chat mail/SMS/Message R/F *1
  - iMenu
  - Bookmark
  - Internet
  - Screen Memo
  - Last Visited URL
  - Check i-mode Message
  - i-αppli
  - Upgrading i-αppli
  - Phonebook
  - Answer Machine/Voice Memo
  - My Picture (***Image***)
  - i-motion
  - Melody
  - Chara-den
  - Camera
  - Movie Camera
  - Sound Recorder
  - Bar Code Reader
  - miniSD card
  - IC card software list
  - Scheduler
  - Call Cost Limit
  - Notepad
  - Handset Quick Dial
  - Alarm Clock
  - Software Update
  - Own Number
  - Virus Scan Function
  - Data transfer in infrared communication
  - Menu Setting (changing the settings for ***Custom1*** or ***Custom2*** of icon designs)

  *1 Messages can be received but the receiving screen, the icon for the received mail or the reception result screen is not displayed.
- If the menu is displayed, the icon is indicated by and the characters are grayed out not to select them.
- Even if a call is received from a caller registered in the phonebook, only phone number is displayed without the caller's name.
- is not displayed on the stand-by display even when Answer Machine is set because Answer Machine does not operate. An icon for a recorded message which has not been played is also not displayed either.

INFORMATION

- When the data which is subject to PIM Lock has been set as the stand-by display or ring tone, the default setting becomes active while PIM Lock is on. The setting you made is restored when PIM Lock is canceled. When data saved in ***Preinstalled*** folder is set, however, the setting becomes the set stand-by display or ring tone even if PIM Lock is on.
- When PIM Lock is on, the alert tone or vibrator does not notify that the number of voice messages of Voice Mail Service is increased.
- You cannot set/cancel PIM Lock from an external device using AT commands.

Prohibiting keypad dial

Keypad Dial Lock

Disable making a call by dialing a phone number (Keypad Dial).

- You can make a call using the phonebook and redial data.
- When this function is set to ***ON***, the previous redial data and received call history are deleted. The numbers dialed from the phonebook entries after the setting is made are stored under the redial data.

Default OFF

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 3 DEF 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

2 Enter the terminal security code and press 1 あ/@.

Keypad Dial Lock is set and is indicated on the stand-by display.

・To cancel the setting, press 2 かABC.

When Keypad Dial Lock is on

・The following operations becomes unavailable:

・Dialing from the received call history
・Editing, adding, deleting the phonebook data
・Editing and resetting your own number
・Phone To (AV Phone To) and Mail To functions
・Phonebook data transfer to/from external devices
・Sending i-mode Mail/SMS (Mail can be sent by specifying addresses using the phonebook or mail from the party registered in the phonebook can be replied.)
・Reading mail template from the mail composition screen
・Using network services by the dial key operation

INFORMATION

● You cannot set/control Keypad Dial Lock from an external device using AT commands.

Preventing unauthorized use for the functions such as phonebook and mail

Privacy Mode Setting

Setting Privacy Mode operation

Set whether to enter the terminal security code when using the phonebook, mail or My Picture data in Privacy Mode. Also, you can set Privacy Mode to manually start or to automatically start when no operation has taken place in a certain period of time.

・To enable Privacy Mode Setting, you need to start Privacy Mode.

Default Phonebook & Logs: Show all Mail: Show all My picture: Show all i-motion: Show all Schedule: Show all i-αppli: Show all Auto start: OFF

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 3 DEF 6 MNO on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and select each item to set.

・When you use the following functions in Privacy Mode, set whether to enter the terminal security code. In addition, set the time period until Privacy Mode starts automatically if you do nothing on FOMA terminal in stand-by.

Phonebook & Logs
: Sets for the display of the phonebook, redials, received calls, recorded messages or voice memos.

Mail : Sets for the display of the mail messages.
・Setting ***Hide secret fldrs*** hides the folders with the privacy set to ***ON***.

My picture : Sets for using My Picture.

i-motion : Sets for using i-motion.

Schedule : Sets for using schedules.

αppli : Sets for using i-αppli.

Auto start : Selects the time period until Privacy Mode is started automatically from ***5 min. after***, ***15 min. after*** or ***30 min. after***.

3 Press [メール].

4 Press [ミュージックプレイヤー].

INFORMATION

● In case Privacy Mode is activated (***Authorized access*** set for ***My picture, i-motion*** and ***i-αppli***), when trying to perform the following operation after the terminal security code is entered, a message indicating that the items set not to be displayed in Privacy Mode Setting are reflected when Privacy Mode is canceled is displayed.

- Outgoing Call Setting
- Incoming Call Setting
- Video-phone Dialing Image
- Video-phone Receiving Setting
- Outgoing Msg. Image
- Incoming Msg. Image
- Retrieving Image
- Image Setting (video-phone)
- Registering new entry/editing data in the phonebook
- Ring alert settings by Group Setting
- Sound Setting
- i-αppli settings of Stand-by Display Setting
- Anonymous Caller
- Incoming Msg. Alert
- Incoming Msg. Setting
- Incoming Chat Mail Setting
- Editing schedule alarm settings
- Editing Own Number

● Images or i-motion set for the stand-by display or for icons or background of the menu screen are usually displayed even in Privacy Mode (***Authorized access*** set for ***My picture*** and ***i-motion***).

● If all items except ***Auto start*** are set to ***Show all***, Privacy Mode is not activated. In addition, when Privacy Mode is activated, it is canceled automatically.

Starting Privacy Mode

1 Hold down [ミュージックプレイヤー] for over a second on the stand-by display.

■ Canceling

① Hold down [ミュージックプレイヤー] for over a second and enter the security code on the stand-by display.

- If ***Hide secret fldrs*** has been set for ***Mail*** and the privacy of Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages has been set to ***ON***, holding down [クリア] for over a second in the applicable folder list screen and entering the terminal security code cancels Privacy Mode temporarily and the folders are displayed.

INFORMATION

● While you use the function restricted by Privacy Mode, once the terminal security code have been entered, further authentication is not required until the stand-by display is displayed by pressing [iモード]. The same rule applies when multiple items are set to ***Authorized access*** in Privacy Mode Setting. Note that when you use the function which is not subject to Privacy Mode and requires the terminal security code entry, you need to enter the terminal security code when activating the function.

Example

- Once you have entered the terminal security code while you are using the phonebook, you do not need to enter it again until you have finished using the phonebook functions.
- In case you try to send the image saved in My Picture by mail when ***My picture*** and ***Phonebook & Logs*** have been set to ***Authorized access***, entry of the terminal security code is not required even when trying to access to the phonebook from the mail composition screen because the terminal security code is already entered in starting My Picture.

● When Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***), you cannot refer to the phonebook while entering the characters.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

- When Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***My picture*** and ***i-motion***), the terminal operates according to Sound Setting, Incoming Call Setting, Video-phone Receiving Setting instead of the setting of the phonebook or phonebook by the group for which the data other than the ***Preinstalled*** folder data is set for the ring alert or image in the FOMA terminal phonebook. Note that when you set the data except for the ***Preinstalled*** folder data in Sound Setting, Incoming Call Setting, Video-phone Receiving Setting, Privacy Mode operates by the default setting.
- When Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***My picture***), in still image shooting or video recording, shooting while setting a frame cannot be performed. In addition, even if entries in the FOMA terminal phonebook are copied/backed up to the miniSD memory card, the still images set in the FOMA terminal phonebook are not copied or backed up.
- When Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***i-motion***), editing tickers directly after recording video cannot be performed.

Preventing inadvertent use of keys

Key Lock

Disable the key operation and prevent from the wrong operation while you carry the terminal around by putting it into the bag.

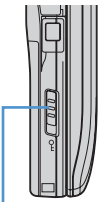
Default not set

1 Slide down the keylock switch on the stand-by display and then take off your finger.

Key Lock is set and is indicated on the stand-by display.

Canceling

① Slide down the keylock switch on the stand-by display and then take off your finger.



Keylock switch

INFORMATION

- Even while Key Lock is on, the following key operations can be performed:
  - Receiving a voice call by or video-phone call by .
  - Putting the incoming call on hold by (Response and Hold).
  - Stopping the alarm sound or mail ring tone by Any Key Answer keys.
  - Quitting the function during operation by .
  - Canceling All Lock while Remote Lock is on.

  Even when a call arrives, an alarm sounds or mail or Message R/F is received, if you detach a keylock switch after making it slide downward, Key Lock can be canceled.
- Key Lock is canceled when the power is turned off by Auto Power OFF while Key Lock is on.
- Even while Key Lock is on, pressing turns the display light on.

Displaying the data with Secret Attribute set

Secret Mode

If Secret Mode is set, the phonebook data and the schedule data with Secret Attribute set can be displayed. When you set/cancel Secret Attribute, you need to set Secret Mode on.

Default not set

1 Press Menu 8 や TUV 3 さ DEF 2 か ABC on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code.

Secret Mode is set and is indicated.

■ Canceling

① Press [Clear] on the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

● Setting Secret Attribute for the phonebook data ☛P108
● Setting Secret Attribute for the schedule data ☛P399

Rejecting/accepting incoming calls from the specified phone numbers Reject/Accept Call

Reject/Accept Call is set for each phone number registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

・To use this function, set Reject/Accept Call for each phone number and then enable Reject/Accept Call. The items to be set and operations of rejecting/accepting calls are as follows.

Reject/Accept Call	Reject/Accept Call setting for each phone number		
	Accept call	*Reject call*	*No setting*
Accept call	Accept	Reject*	Reject*
Reject call	Accept	Reject*	Accept
Cancel settings	Accept	Accept	Accept

* Even if a call is received from the set phone number, the call is cut off without the ring tone sounding and the other party hears busy signals.

・This function is activated only when the other party sends the caller ID.
・Rejected calls are recorded in the received call history.
・If the ringing time is set to “0” for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated and the call is not recorded as a received call.
・Combination with Caller ID Request Service and Anonymous Caller is recommended when used.

Specifying phone numbers to reject/accept

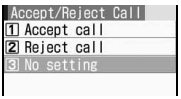
Rejecting/accepting incoming calls is set for phone numbers registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

・Rejecting/accepting incoming calls is not set for phone numbers registered in the UIM phonebook.

1 Search the phonebook and place the cursor at the target to set and press [Menu] [9 らWXYZ] [1 あ/@] [3 さDEF].

2 Enter the terminal security code and select phone numbers.

3 Press [1 あ/@] to [2 かABC].



・ is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. in the details screen of the phonebook data for which Reject/Accept Call is set.
・To cancel the setting, press [3 さDEF].

INFORMATION

- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press Menu and select ***Set/Check*** → ***Settings*** → ***Accept/Reject call***.
- The setting of this function is canceled for the phone number changed or deleted. In that case, set Reject/Accept Call for the phone number changed or registered again.

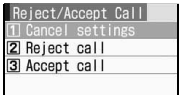
Enabling Reject/Accept Call

- The setting of this function applies to all phone numbers with Reject/Accept Call set.
- Reject Call and Accept Call cannot be enabled simultaneously.

Default Cancel settings

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 6 MNO 5 JKL on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and press 2 ABC or 3 DEF.



- To cancel the setting, press 1.

INFORMATION

- If a call without the caller ID is received from a party that you set Reject Call to, FOMA terminal operates according to Anonymous Caller regardless of the this function's setting.
- i-mode Mail messages and SMS are received regardless of this function's setting.
- You can make a call to the phone numbers with Reject/Accept Call set regardless of this function's setting. In addition, the phonebook data can be edited.

Setting the operation for an incoming call that does not notify the caller ID

Anonymous Caller

The operation for an incoming call that does not notify the caller ID is set for each reason for no caller ID.

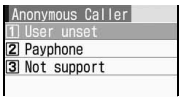
- As for the ring tone and image for an incoming voice call that does not notify the caller ID, this function's setting is prioritized over Incoming Call Setting and Sound Setting.

Default Disable settings

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 6 MNO 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code.

3 Press 1 to 3 DEF.



- Perform Step 3 to 5 repeatedly for every reason to hide caller ID.
- The reason for no caller ID ☛P57

4 Select each item to set.

Incoming setting

：Sets operation for incoming calls that do not notify the caller ID.

- When ***Disable settings*** is set, the ring tone set in ***Phone*** in Sound Setting sounds.
- Setting ***Call Rejection*** rejects an incoming call.
- Set ***Ring alert off*** to make the ring alert to be silent.
- When ***Select ring tone*** or ***Movie ringtone*** is selected, select a melody or video/i-motion file.
- When ***Disable settings*** or ***Call Rejection*** is set, ***Show image*** cannot be set.

Show image：Sets an image displayed for incoming calls that do not notify the caller ID.

- When ***Standard image*** is selected, the default image is set.
- When ***Select image*** (under ***Show image***) is selected, select ***Select image*** (under ***List images***) to select an image.
- When ***motion*** is selected, select ***Select image*** to select a video/i-motion.

- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion when selecting. ☛P112

5 Press .

INFORMATION

- When ***Call Rejection*** has been set, the rejected calls are recorded in the received call history.
- When there is an incoming video-phone call without caller ID notification, this function operates only when ***Call Rejection*** is set for the operation of the corresponding reason for no caller ID. If set otherwise, the ring tone or incoming image operates as set in Sound Setting or Video-phone Receiving Setting.
- i-mode Mail messages and SMS are received regardless of this function.
- If ***Movie ringtone*** is set, ***Sync ring alert*** set in ***Show image*** and i-motion alert are played.
- ***Standard image*** is set when the video/i-motion with only sounds (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) is set for ***Movie ringtone*** in the incoming setting. Note that the image except for Flash movie can be changed by selecting ***Select image*** in ***Show image*** field.
- When you set the incoming setting to ***Movie ringtone*** and reset it to ***Ring alert off***, the video/i-motion set for ***Movie ringtone*** is played, but the ring volume becomes silent.
- When Reject non-Reg. Caller is set and a call without caller ID notification is received, the setting for Reject non-Reg. Caller takes precedence over this function.

Setting not to answer a call from the party not registered in the phonebook

Mute Seconds Setting

The ringer action by a ring tone or vibrator is activated for a voice call or video-phone call from a caller who is not registered in the phonebook or does not notify the phone number after the specified time has elapsed. The function is effective to nuisance calls such as “One-Ring Call”.

- This function cannot be set when Reject non-Reg. Caller is set to ***ON***.

Default OFF

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 1 あ 8 TUV on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Delayed ring alert : Specifies whether to enable Mute Seconds Setting.
- When ***OFF*** is set, the following items cannot be set.

Delay time (sec) : Sets the time between the arrival of calls and the start of ringing (between 1 to 99 seconds).

Missed call : Sets whether to display a missed call which ends in less than the time set in ***Delay time*** in the received call history.

3 Press [Phonebook].

When Mute Seconds Setting is set

When a call is received from a caller who is not registered in the phonebook, the arrival will be notified only on the display for the period of specified time. After the set time has elapsed, normal ringer action will start.

- Before the specified time passes, answering an incoming call or replying by Answer Machine can be performed. In that case, even if ***Missed call*** is set to ***Not display***, incoming calls are recorded in the received call history.
- This function is operated even for incoming calls from the other party saved in the phonebook when PIM Lock or Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***).
- This function also operates in the following case:
  - When the other party makes a call without notifying the caller ID even if the party is registered in the phonebook.
  - While not in Secret Mode, there is an incoming call from the other party of which number is registered in the phonebook as an entry with Secret Attribute set.

INFORMATION

- The following functions are prioritized over the settings of this function:
  - Driving Mode
  - Answer Machine
  - Auto Answer
  - Voice Mail Service
  - Call Forwarding Service
- If you receive a call from a phone number set to be rejected in Reject/Accept Call or Anonymous Caller, that operation takes priority over this function.
- i-mode Mail and SMS messages are received regardless of this function's setting.
- In case ***Delay time*** is set to the same seconds as set for Auto Answer, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, the ring tone may sound.

Rejecting calls from phone numbers not registered in the phonebook

Reject non-Reg. Caller

- Combination with Caller ID Request Service is recommended when used.
- When ***Delayed ring alert*** in Mute Seconds Setting is set to ***ON***, this function cannot be set.

Default OFF

1 Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [6 MNO] [6 MNO] on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and press [1].

- To cancel the setting, press [2 ABC].

When Reject non-Reg. Caller is set

When receiving a call from the party who is not registered in the phonebook, the call is disconnected without activating a ring tone and the caller hears busy signals.

- Rejected calls are recorded in the received call history.
- The phone rejects the call also in the following cases:
  - When the other party makes a call without notifying the caller ID even if the party is registered in the phonebook.
  - While not in Secret Mode, there is an incoming call from the party who is registered in the phonebook as an entry with Secret Attribute set.
- As for the incoming call that does not notify the caller ID, this function is prioritized over Anonymous Caller.
- i-mode Mail and SMS messages are received regardless of this function's settings.

Other "Safety settings"

The following Safety settings can be used.

Purpose	Function or Service	Page
To receive only necessary mail messages out of large-volume messages received	Receive Option Setting	P265
To change mail addresses	Change Mail Address	See "FOMA i-mode User's Manual".
To receive only mail messages sent from the specified domain	Receive Mail from Selected Domains	
To receive/reject mail messages only between i-mode terminals	Receive/Reject only i-mode Mail	
To reject unsolicited AD mail messages	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To reject i-mode Mail messages after 200th messages sent from an i-mode terminal in a day	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To register/check the safety of relatives by using i-mode when a disaster occurs	i-mode Disaster Message Board Service	
To receive/reject only mail messages from the specified addresses	Receive/Reject Selected Mail	
To reject all SMS or SMS with no caller ID	Reject all SMS/SMS with no caller ID	
To stop mail function temporarily	Suspend Mail	
To reject "Nuisance calls" including malicious calls and repeating misdialed calls	Nuisance Call Blocking Service	P425
To enable safe and reliable data communications by using the electronic authentication service, "FirstPass" (FirstPass-compatible sites only)	FirstPass	P187, P213
To prevent use of the IC card function	IC Card Lock	P316
To update FOMA terminal software by using packet communication	Software Update	P507
To protect FOMA terminal from viruses by deleting data that may cause problems or stopping the starting of applications	Virus Scan Function	P511

Camera

Before using the camera 154
Shooting still images with Camera ..... Still Camera 158
Recording videos with Movie Camera ..... Movie Camera 164
Setting the still image/video size or the saving method ..... Still Image Setting/Recording Setting 166
Shooting in various modes 168
Changing the settings for shooting 170
Sending images shot during voice calls ..... One-shot Message 174
Using Bar Code Reader ..... Bar Code Reader 175

Before using the camera

Still images and videos can be shot with your FOMA terminal camera. Still images and videos can be displayed/played on FOMA terminal or saved to the miniSD memory card, or can be sent via i-mode Mail as attachments.

- The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle. If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores.

Using the camera

About the camera

- Note that though the camera is manufactured using extremely accurate technology, some pixels and lines may always be displayed to be lighter or darker than you expect. Noise such as dots and lines may increase especially when you shoot in a place with very low light intensity, but note that such noise is not a malfunction.
- When the lens is exposed to direct sunlight for a long period of time, the inside color filter will become discolored and images may be correspondingly discolored as well.
- When you attempt to shoot a strong light source such as the sun or a lamp or when the battery level is low, the image may become dark or degraded.
- Depending on the characteristics of the lens, displayed images may be distorted.
- Capturing under illumination flickering at high frequencies such as fluorescent lights, mercury vapor lights, or sodium lights may cause stripes to appear on the screen, but this is not a malfunction. Strips may be reduced by changing the distance or the angle of shooting the object or by moving to another position.
- Images taken with the camera may differ from the actual subjects in color and brightness, depending on conditions.
- When you activate Camera or auto focus or switch the in-/out-camera, a motor sound may be heard, but this is not a malfunction.
- The in-camera in FOMA terminal uses CMOS technology. Note that in darker places, a CMOS camera may take a slightly grainier picture compared to one taken by an out-camera (regular CCD camera) and this graininess is not an error.

Points of concern when shooting images

- If the lens is contaminated with fingerprints or skin oil, you cannot shoot clean images. Use a soft cloth to remove any such contaminants before shooting.
- Set brightness depending on the situation of the shooting. ☛P170
  The compact light can be used for shooting in a dark place. ☛P159, P164
- There is a small time lag between taking a picture and pressing [ ] or [ ]. Do not move FOMA terminal for period after pressing [ ] or [ ]. If you shoot a fast moving subject, the shot image might slightly differ from the subject displayed on the screen when you press [ ] or [ ].
- If you shoot the quickly moving subjects in the Movie Camera mode, the image may be blurred.
- When you direct the camera toward yourself by using the in-camera, the screen displays a mirror image, but shot still images and videos are normal. For still images, setting ***Auto save*** of Still Image Setting to ***No*** can be used to save as mirror images.
- When you use the camera from i-αppli, the shot still images and the recorded videos are not saved in ***Image*** or ***i-motion*** folder but saved in i-αppli (some i-αppli versions save them in the ***mode*** folder or "Deco-Mail picture" folder). Shot images and videos may be automatically sent to the server.
- When the miniSD memory card is set as the destination, do not remove the miniSD memory card while using the camera. FOMA terminal may malfunction.

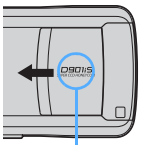
 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

- You may not be able to shoot when the available space in the miniSD memory card is not enough. Before shooting, check that there is enough available space in the miniSD memory card to save images.
- If battery power goes out before saving a shot still image or video, it is not saved.
- Because the camera consumes a lot of battery power, do not leave the camera activated long time or do not keep shot images long time without being saved.
- Some settings may require extra time to show an image on the shooting screen after you start Camera.

Lens cover

It is necessary to open the lens cover to use the out-camera.

- In the stand-by display mode, opening the lens cover activates the out-camera with open cover sound.
- While shooting with the out-camera, closing the lens cover during a shooting stand-by deactivates Camera or Movie Camera with close cover sound. It is not deactivated if the lens cover is closed during a recording/viewing still images or videos, or performing some settings.
- The open cover sound and the close cover sound will not beep in Silent Mode.



Press here and slide to the indicated direction.

About copyrights and portrait rights

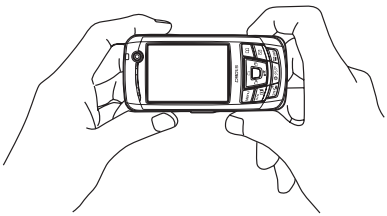
The copyright laws prohibit unauthorized use, such as reproduction, alteration and modification, of photographs or videos and i-mode or Internet web site information obtained by using the FOMA terminal without the permission of the relevant copyright holders except for personal use. Please refrain from unauthorized use of portraits or names of other persons that may infringe on portrait rights. When you release shot or recorded work on Internet web pages, use care not to infringe on copyrights or portrait rights. Note that shooting or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

To shoot clean images

When shooting images, be careful to hold your FOMA terminal firmly as shown in the figure.

- Do not cover the lens with fingers or strap.
- If you use auto timer, the shutter is automatically released, and you can avoid blurring of images due to hand movement.



Viewing the shooting/recording screen

- The indicator, counter and size restrictions are not displayed when the screen is started from i-αppli. You can only switch the in-camera/out-camera, turn on the compact light, start auto timer and zoom in/out can be operated.
- During video recording, when image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA) and horizontal shot is taken place, ■STANDBY (recording stand-by), ●REC (recording) and ❚❚PAUSE (in pause) are indicated instead of the icons below:

Still image shooting screen

Video recording screen

①**Zoom** : Indicates display magnification of the image. ☛P168
②**Brightness** : Indicates the brightness of the image. ☛P173
③**Color density** : Indicates the color density of the image. ☛P174
④**Camera effects** : Indicate the camera effects that are applied to the image. ☛P172
⑤**White balance** : Indicates the current white balance setting. ☛P173
⑥**Frame setting** : Indicates the current frame setting. ☛P171
⑦**Continuous shooting**
: Indicates the current setting for continuous shooting. ☛P162
⑧**Quality** : Indicates the quality of the still image and video. ☛P172
⑨**Size restrictions** : Indicates the size restrictions of the file to be saved. ☛P172
⑩**Image size** : Indicates the size of the still image to shoot and the video to record. ☛P171
⑪**Shooting mode** : Indicates the mode for shooting.
: Still image ☛P158 : Video ☛P164 : Sound ☛P371
⑫**Save to memory** : Indicates the memory to save. ☛P167
: FOMA terminal : miniSD memory card
⑬**Recording type** : Indicates the type of the video to be recorded. ☛P167
⑭**Auto Timer** : Indicates during the setting. ☛P169
Auto Focus : Indicates on/off of auto focus (only for still image shooting). ☛P161
⑮**Macro Mode** : Indicates in the Macro mode. ☛P170
⑯**Compact light** : Indicates when the compact light is ON. ☛P159, P164
⑰**Indicator** : **During stand-by for shooting**
Indicates the available storage space of the memory to save during the normal shooting. During auto timer countdown, indicates the remaining time untill the shutter is released.
- The miniSD memory card storage area usage rate may not become 0 even when no shot images have been saved.

During video recording/pause
Indicates the size rate of the recorded image size to the file size set for the size restrictions.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

⑱**Counter** : **During stand-by for shooting**
During the normal shooting, it indicates the current maximum number (estimates) of still images or the current maximum recording time (estimate) of videos that can be saved to FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card. Indicates the remaining time untill the shutter is released during auto timer count down. Indicates shot number/total shot number (up to 6) during manual continuous shoot of still images.
During video recording/pause
Indicates the elapsed/remaining time (estimated remaining time before the recording stops).

Still image files/video files

Item	Still image file	Video file
File format	JPEG	MP4 (MobileMP4)
Encoding method	—	Video: MPEG-4 Sound: AMR
Extension	jpg	3gp
File name	Automatically set by the shooting date/time. Example: For 12:34:56 on August 26, 2005 → 20050826123456. jpg/.3gp • The display name and file name can be changed after shooting ☛P360. • If the date and time of FOMA terminal are not set, the display name, title (for video only) and file name appear as "----------".	
Mail attachment/ output	Files can be attached to the mail to send and can also be imported to PCs and other terminals by using the miniSD memory card and proprietary data link software.	

Maximum saved number of still images

Number of still images that can be stored in the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card varies depending on the settings of quality, size restrictions and image size or the shooting conditions.
• The quality, image size and size restrictions can be set in Still Image Setting.

■ **Number of still images that can be stored in FOMA terminal (estimates)**

Unit: number of images

Size / Quality	96 x 72	128 x 96	176 x 144	240 x 320	352 x 288	640 x 480	480 x 640	960 x 1280	1200 x 1600	1728 x 2304
Economy	827	827	827	549	424	202	202	78	57	25
Standard	827	827	718	405	321	145	141	48	35	16
Fine	827	718	491	245	202	85	84	27	19	11

■ **Number of still images that can be stored in the miniSD memory card (estimates)**

Unit: number of images

Capacity/ Quality / Size		96 x 72	128 x 96	176 x 144	240 x 320	352 x 288	640 x 480	480 x 640	960 x 1280	1200 x 1600	1728 x 2304
16 MB	**Economy**	2,057	1,600	1,309	847	654	313	313	121	89	39
	Standard	1,800	1,440	1,107	626	496	225	218	74	54	26
	Fine	1,600	1,107	757	378	313	132	130	41	30	17
32 MB	**Economy**	4,246	3,303	2,702	1,748	1,351	646	646	249	184	80
	Standard	3,716	2,972	2,286	1,292	1,025	464	450	154	112	53
	Fine	3,303	2,286	1,564	782	646	272	270	86	62	35

Maximum recording time of videos

The video recording time available varies depending on the quality, recording type, image size and size restriction settings and the recording conditions.
• The quality, recording type, image size and size restrictions can be set in Recording Setting.

■ **Recording time of videos that can be stored in FOMA terminal (estimates)**

Size restrictions	Size	Recording type	Recording time per 1 recording (unit: second)				Maximum recording time on FOMA terminal (unit: minute)			
			Quality				Quality			
			LP	STD	HQ	HQ+	LP	STD	HQ	HQ+
Msg attachment (S) (290 KB)	128 x 96	Video + Voice	112	70	51	21	63	39	29	11
		Video only	190	96	71	24	108	54	40	13
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	87	44	30	11	49	25	17	6
		Video only	128	52	36	12	72	29	20	6
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	32	17	13	6	18	9	7	3
		Video only	36	18	14	6	20	10	7	3
Msg attachment (L) (490 KB)	128 x 96	Video + Voice	189	119	86	36	63	40	28	12
		Video only	321	161	120	41	108	54	40	13
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	148	74	51	19	49	24	17	6
		Video only	217	89	61	21	73	29	20	7
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	54	29	23	10	18	9	7	3
		Video only	61	30	24	10	20	10	8	3

■ **Recording time of videos that can be stored in the miniSD memory card (estimates)**

Unit: minute

Size restrictions	Size	Recording type	Capacity: 16 MB				Capacity: 32 MB			
			Quality				Quality			
			LP	STD	HQ	HQ+	LP	STD	HQ	HQ+
Msg attachment (S) (290 KB)	128 x 96	Video + Voice	91	57	41	17	189	118	86	35
		Video only	155	78	58	19	321	162	120	40
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	71	36	24	9	147	74	50	18
		Video only	104	42	29	9	216	87	60	20
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	26	13	10	4	54	28	21	10
		Video only	29	14	11	4	60	30	23	10
Msg attachment (L) (490 KB)	128 x 96	Video + Voice	91	57	41	17	189	119	86	36
		Video only	155	78	58	19	321	161	120	41
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	71	35	24	9	148	74	51	19
		Video only	105	43	29	10	217	89	61	21
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	26	14	11	4	54	29	23	10
		Video only	29	14	11	4	61	30	24	10
None	128 x 96	Video + Voice	91	57	41	17	189	119	86	36
		Video only	155	78	58	19	321	161	120	41
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	71	35	24	9	148	74	51	19
		Video only	105	43	29	10	217	89	61	21
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	26	14	11	4	54	29	23	10
		Video only	29	14	11	4	61	30	24	10

Shooting still images with Camera

Still Camera

• Shutter sound is heard even when ***Silent*** is set in Ring Volume setting or Silent Mode is active.

Shooting still images

1 In stand-by, open the lens cover.

The call indicator turns on in blue. Camera is activated in the Still Camera mode.

- Also, Camera can be activated by holding down [📷] for over a second.
- During shooting stand-by, the following operations are enabled.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

: Switches the compact light on (☼)/off (no icon).*

: Switches the screen between the full mode/standard mode

- When the full mode is set, the icons and guide row disappear at the bottom of the screen to make an image easy to view.

: Switches the in-camera/out-camera.

(for over a second)

: Switches between the Movie Camera mode/Still Camera mode.

* You can perform this operation only when shooting with the out-camera.

2 Point the camera at the object and press or .

Still image shooting screen

The compact light and the call indicator turn on in red with the shutter sound. A still image is shot and its confirmation screen is displayed.

- If ***Auto save*** of Still Image Setting is set to ***Yes***, the shot still image is saved and the shooting screen reappears. The operations after Step 3 are not needed.
- Still images can be shot with auto focus using . ☛P161

3 View and confirm the still image.

- Go to Step 4 to save the still image immediately.
- Press to retake another image without saving the shot image.
- When the image size is smaller than 240 x 320 (stand-by), you can enlarge the shot still image by pressing . Press to return to the original size.

Sending the shot still image via mail

① **Press .**

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether or not to save the shot still image. Select ***Yes*** to save the image in FOMA terminal, and the mail composition screen is displayed. Depending on the image size or file size setting, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert the image to stand-by size or save it to Data Box. ☛P234

- Even when the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the still image is saved to FOMA terminal.
- A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to adjust the file size of the shot still image depending on the settings of image size and size restrictions. Select ***No limit*** to save the shot still image at the original size and select ***9000 bytes*** to save the shot still image smaller than 9,000 bytes in FOMA terminal.
- If the shot and saved image is smaller than 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether you attach the shot still image to mail text. Select ***Yes*** to attach it to mail text.

Setting the image for the stand-by display

① **Press Menu 2 1 and select *YES*.**

The shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal and set for the stand-by display.

- If the shot still image can be zoomed, select ***YES (Same size)*** to maintain the image size, or select ***YES (Large size)*** to enlarge it to the screen size.
- If the i-αppli stand-by display has been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether or not to cancel it. If you select ***YES***, the i-αppli stand-by display is canceled.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image cannot be set for the stand-by display.

■ **Adding the image to phonebook entries (only when the image size is 96 x 72 (phonebook))**

① **Press Menu 2 か ABC, then press 2 か ABC or 3 さ DEF and select *Yes*.**

The shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal and the phonebook registration screen is displayed.

- To register updating, select the phonebook data to register.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image cannot be added to the phonebook entry.

■ **Changing the title**

① **Press Menu 3 さ DEF 1 あ /@, then enter the title and press 📖 (up to 31 characters (30 characters for continuous shot images) regardless of one-byte or two-byte).**

■ **Adjusting the brightness or color balance**

① **Press 📖.**

This brings you to the image correction mode. For the subsequent steps, ☛P327

- Images can be adjusted only when the size is less than 352 x 288 (CIF).

■ **Saving as mirror image (only when shooting with the in-camera)**

① **Press Menu 4 た GHI 1 あ /@.**

- When a frame is set to the shot image, or shooting date/time of the 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE) sized image is set to ***Date*** or ***Date+Time***, mirror image saving is unavailable.

■ **Switching the normal display/mirror display (only when shooting with the in-camera)**

① **Press Menu 4 た GHI 2 か ABC.**

■ **Switching the memory to save between the FOMA terminal/miniSD memory card**

① **Press Menu 6 は MNO.**

■ **Displaying the list of images stored in FOMA terminal**

① **Press Menu 7 ま PQRS and then press 1 あ /@ or 2 か ABC.**

4 Press 📷 or 📷.

The shot still images are saved in ***Camera*** folder of ***Image***.

- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image is saved in ***My picture*** folder of the miniSD memory card.

■ **Checking the saved still image immediately**

① **Press 📖. Select the still image to check.**

- Press クリア twice to return to the still image shooting screen.
- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, select a folder by pressing 📖 and then select the still image. Press クリア 3 times to return to the still image shooting screen.
- The images cannot be checked when Camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i-αppli.

INFORMATION

- Saving the shot still image may take time depending on the image size, quality or memory to save.
- When the size of a recorded still image file is larger than the value set for the size restrictions, the file automatically degrades the quality or saves the reduced-size file.
- When there is not enough available storage space to save the image, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number of images, still images cannot be shot. According to the confirmation screen, delete unwanted images or change the settings of image size and quality to lower values.
- Shooting still images during a voice call may interrupt the call.
- If there is an incoming call before the shutter sound is heard during stand-by for shooting still image, shooting will stop. When the shutter sound has been heard and a still image has been shot already, the still image is saved automatically if ***Auto save*** is set to ***Yes***. If ***Auto save*** is set to ***No***, a confirmation screen is displayed after the end of the call.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

● If there is an incoming call while saving a still image, the incoming image is displayed though saving continues.
● If there is incoming mail while shooting still images, shooting can be continued as before without stop.
● You cannot use the following functions at the confirmation screen when Camera is started from the phonebook or mail.
- Composing mail
- Stand-by display settings
- Saving images in the phonebook
- Adjustment
- Switching where to save
- Displaying the image list

● Following settings should be set for the out-camera and the in-camera respectively. When you switch between them, the settings also change accordingly.
- Zooming
- Camera effects
- Frame
- Continuous shooting
- Image quality
- Size restrictions
- Image size

● Some functions may not be used at the confirmation screen when the miniSD memory card is not inserted or the miniSD memory card is activated.
● If you shoot image with the image size of 1728 x 2304 (4M), the file size of the shot still image may exceed 500 Kbytes. In this case, you cannot send the still image via infrared communication. You can save, copy or move the still image to the miniSD memory card, but you cannot copy or move it to your FOMA terminal from the miniSD memory card.

Using the auto focus function to shoot

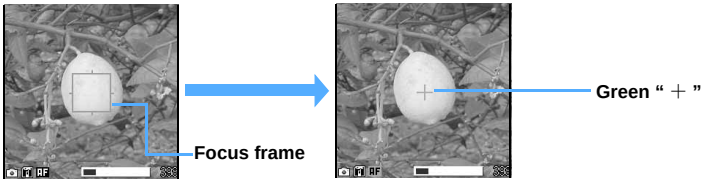
Press [camera] halfway to focus to the object. Keep on pressing fully to shoot the sharper still image.
- The [camera] key has two positions: half press and full press, so the feeling is different from the other keys.
- The distance that auto focus brings the camera into focus is from approx. 30 cm or more for the standard mode, and approx. 7 to 30 cm for the macro mode.
- Auto focus cannot be operated while:
  - The in-camera is used to shoot
  - Auto timer is being used
  - The camera effect is set to ***Night***

1 In stand-by, open the lens cover.

Camera is activated in the Still Camera mode.
- Also, Camera can be activated by holding down [camera] for over a second.

2 Point the camera at the object and press [camera] half way.

The orange focus frame and AF (black) are displayed on the screen. You can hear a confirmation sound when the camera is brought into focus, and the focus frame changes to a green "+", and AF changes to AF (green).
- When the camera does not come into focus, sometimes the focus frame changes to a red " + " and AF (red) is displayed.
- Note that the still image will be shot without focus if you press [camera] fully before the green "+" appears.
- To focus on other than the center of the screen, focus once and then keep on pressing [camera] half way to face the camera to the object you want to shoot.



Press [camera] half way.

When the camera is brought into focus

3 Fully press [●] until you hear a shutter sound.

The compact light and the call indicator turn on in red and a still image is shot.

- You can also shoot by releasing your finger from [●] after the camera comes into focus and then pressing [●].
  - "＋" disappears when you release your finger from [●], but the camera keeps focused on (Focus Lock).
  - To bring another object into focus, point the camera at the object and press [●] half way.
- When ***Auto save*** is set to ***No***, functions available on the confirmation screen, locations to save the shot still image, and operations for saving are the same as in normal shooting.

INFORMATION

- If you shoot with auto focus even though the camera cannot focus because of the distance from the shooting object, images will be shot at the best condition according to the shooting mode.
- If shot with auto focus during continuous shooting, the rest of the images is shot with the same focus as the first image. During manual continuous shooting, you can focus using auto focus each time you shoot.
- In the following cases, the camera may not be automatically focused using auto focus:
  - When shooting an object of which color has no shading
  - When shooting in a dark place
  - When there is light in the shooting area
  - When the shooting object is moving
  - When shooting while moving FOMA terminal
- While the auto focus function is used, the key operations except for [●], [mail] and [i-mode] become invalid and the settings for shooting function cannot be changed.

Shooting continuously

Continuous shooting can be done in two modes: ***Auto*** for continuously and automatically shooting images of the set number and ***Manual*** for continuously and manually shooting them.

- Up to 6 images can be shot continuously. The number of images to be continuously shot can be set in Still Image Setting.
- Continuous shooting is not available when the image size is 96 x 72 (phonebook), 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE), 480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT), 960 x 1280 (SXGA), 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1728 x 2304 (4M). It is also unavailable when Camera has been activated from the phonebook, mail or i-αppli software. Note, however, that continuous shooting is enabled for some types of software.

1 In stand-by, open the lens cover.

Camera is activated in the Still Camera mode.

- Also, Camera can be activated by holding down [●] for over a second.

2 Select a type of continuous shooting.

Icon of continuous shoot

Setting auto continuous shooting

① **Press [Menu] [5 な JKL] [1 あ @.]**

The icon of continuous shoot changes from [1] to [auto].

Setting manual continuous shooting

① **Press [Menu] [5 な JKL] [2 か ABC].**

The icon of continuous shoot changes from [1] to [manual].

- To cancel the setting, press [Menu] [5 な JKL] [3 さ DEF].
- You can also press [7 ま PQRS], select an icon with [▲▼] and press [●] to set.

3 Point the camera at the object and press [●] or [●].

In the auto continuous shoot, the still images are continuously shot at 0.4 sec interval till their count reaches the predefined number, each shooting with the shutter sound for the shoot. In the manual continuous mode, the first of the continuous still images is shot with the shutter sound. To shoot the next ones, press [●] or [●] for each. A confirmation screen of the shot still image is displayed after shooting the predefined number.

- If ***Auto save*** of Still Image Setting is set to ***Yes***, the shooting screen reappears after still images of the predefined number are shot and saved. The operations after Step 4 are not needed.
- To stop manual continuous shooting on the way, press [📖]. When ***Auto save*** is set to ***Yes***, the still images already shot are automatically saved. When ***Auto save*** is set to ***No***, a confirmation screen is displayed.
- During shooting, the compact light turns on in red. Also, the call indicator turns on in red (auto continuous shooting by the in-camera), or in alternating colors (shooting by the out-camera, or manual continuous shooting by the in-camera).

4 View and confirm the still images shot continuously.

- Each time you press [ミュージック], the display switches between one image and thumbnail display (if you have shot two or more images).
- While one image is being displayed, pressing [◁] displays the previous image and pressing [▷] displays the next image.
- Functions available on the confirmation screen are the same as in normal shooting.
- To discard the still images and retake another one, press [クリア].

5 Press [●] or [📷].

The still images shot by the continuous shooting are saved as a single image.

- Saving destination and process are the same as in normal shooting.

■ Saving only one displayed still image (during shooting with the out-camera)

① Hold down [●] for over a second and select *Yes*.

- An image at cursor position is saved during thumbnail display.

■ When saving only one displayed still image by switching the normal/mirror image (during shooting with the in-camera)

① Hold down [●] for over a second and choose *Save normal* or *Save mirror*.

- An image at cursor position is saved during thumbnail display.

■ Saving all still images shot continuously as mirror image (during shooting with the in-camera)

① Press [Menu] [4 た GHI] [1 あ /@].

■ Selecting images to save from still images shot continuously (in thumbnail display)

① Press [Menu] [5 な JKL] [2 か ABC] to select still images.

- Press [●] to select or cancel an image; press [Menu] to select or cancel all.
- Press [✉] to zoom the still image at the cursor position. To return to the thumbnail display, press [●].

② Press [📖] and select *Yes*.

Only the selected still images are saved.

- When shooting with the in-camera, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save as normal images or as mirror images. Select ***Save normal*** or ***Save mirror***.

INFORMATION

- You can break down continuous images into separate ones by canceling Create animation, with numbers "-1" to "-6" assigned at the end of the file name.
- If a call arrives or the alarm or schedule alarm time gets to the setting time during manual continuous shoot, shooting is ended at that point. When ***Auto save*** is set to ***Yes***, the still images already shot are automatically saved. When ***Auto save*** is set to ***No***, a confirmation screen is displayed.
- If a call arrives or the alarm or schedule alarm time gets to the setting time during auto continuous shoot, shooting is continued. When ***Auto save*** is set to ***No***, a confirmation screen is displayed after the end of the call or alarm. Ring alert or alarm sound is disabled while shutter sound is heard.

Recording videos with Movie Camera

You can record video with voice.

- Videos cannot be recorded while talking or recording voice. Exit any other function before starting recording.
- Shutter sound is heard even when ***Silent*** is set in Ring Volume Setting or Silent Mode is active.

1 Hold down [カメラ] for over a second on the stand-by display.

The call indicator turns on in blue, and Movie Camera is activated in the Movie Camera mode.

- During stand-by, the following operations are enabled:

[メール] : Switches the compact light on ( )/off (no icon).*

[ホーム] : Switches the vertical shot/horizontal shot.* (only when the image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA))*

[カメラ] : Switches the in-camera/out-camera.

[カメラ] **(for over a second)**

: Switches between the Still Camera mode/Movie Camera mode.

* You can perform this operation only when shooting with the out-camera.

2 Open the lens cover, point the camera at the object and press [カメラ] or [撮影].

Video recording screen

The shutter sound is heard, the compact light blinks in red, and the call indicator blinks in alternating colors, for every 2 seconds respectively. Recording is started and switches to ●.

- Press [カメラ] to pause while recording. The compact light lit in red and the call indicator lit in green, and ● switches to ❚❚. Press [カメラ], and the recording restarts.

3 Press [ブック] or [撮影].

The shutter sound is heard and the video recording is finished. A confirmation screen for the video shot is displayed.

- If ***Auto save*** of Recording Setting is set to ***Yes***, the shooting screen reappears after saving the video shot. The operations after Step 4 are not needed.
- If the size of video file reaches the limit while recording, recording is stopped and video recorded up to that point is saved.
- If [ブック] is pressed to end the recording while in pause, the video recorded up to that point is saved.

4 View and confirm the video shot.

- Go to Step 5 to save the still image immediately.
- Press [クリア] to retake another image without saving the shot image.
- Press [ブック] to play the video. When ***Auto play*** in Recording Setting is set to ***Yes***, the recorded video is played automatically.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

■ **Sending the recorded video via mail**

① **Press [✉].**

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the recorded video. Select ***Yes*** to save the recorded video in FOMA terminal, and the mail composition screen is displayed.

- Even when the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the video is saved to FOMA terminal.
- If the file size of the recorded video exceeds 500 Kbytes, the video cannot be attached.
- When the image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA), the image cannot be attached.
- When the quality of video is set to ***HQ+***, the video cannot be attached.

■ **Setting the image for the stand-by display**

① **Press [Menu] [2 か ABC] [1 あ /@] and select *Yes*.**

The recorded video is saved to FOMA terminal and set for the stand-by display.

- If Zoom is available for the shot video, select ***YES (Same size)*** to maintain the image size or select ***YES (Large size)*** to enlarge it to the screen size.
- If the i-αppli stand-by display has been set, a confirmation screen appears asking whether or not to cancel it. If you select ***YES***, the i-αppli stand-by display is canceled.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image cannot be set for the stand-by display.

■ **Adding the image to phonebook entries**

① **Press [Menu] [2 か ABC], then press [2 か ABC] or [3 さ DEF] and select *Yes*.**

The recorded video is saved to FOMA terminal and the phonebook registration screen is displayed.

- To register updating, select the phonebook data to register.
- Images can be added to the phonebook entry only when the image size is set to 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF) or 176 x 144 (QCIF) and the recording type is set to ***Video only***.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image cannot be added to the phonebook entry.

■ **Changing the title**

① **Press [Menu] [3 さ DEF] [1 あ /@], then enter the title and press [ⓜ] (up to 31 characters regardless of one-byte or two-byte).**

- The changed title will be valid after the video is saved.

■ **Inserting a ticker**

① **Press [Menu] [3 さ DEF] [2 か ABC] and select *Yes*.**

The recorded video is saved to FOMA terminal and the ticker setting screen is displayed. Follow the procedure from Step 3 in “Inserting the sticker”. ☛P335

- When the image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA), a ticker cannot be inserted.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, a ticker cannot be inserted.

■ **Switching the memory to save between the FOMA terminal/miniSD memory card**

① **Press [Menu] [5 な JKL].**

- If the file size of the recorded video exceeds 490 Kbytes, the saving destination cannot be switched.

■ **Displaying the list of videos stored in FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card**

① **Press [Menu] [6 は MNO] and press [1 あ /@] or [2 か ABC].**

5 Press [●] or [📷].

The recorded video is saved in ***Camera*** folder of ***i-motion***.

- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, the image is saved in ***Movie*** folder of the miniSD memory card.

■ **Checking the saved video immediately**

① **Press [📖] and select a video to check.**

- After the confirmation, press [クリア] twice to return to the video recording screen.
- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, select a folder by pressing [📖] and then select the video. Press [クリア] 3 times to return to the video shooting screen.
- The check is not available when Movie Camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i-αppli software.

INFORMATION

- When key operation is made or recharging is started during recording, operation tone may be recorded.
- During recording, updating of the indicator and counter displays may be delayed.
- Recording may be stopped before the file size reaches the limit set for the size restrictions, depending on data you record.
- If you set the size restrictions to ***None***, data may not be saved when battery power goes out during recording.
- When there is not enough memory for video/sound or the saved data exceeds the maximum number, videos cannot be recorded. According to the confirmation screen, delete unwanted videos or sounds or change settings of the size restrictions.
- You should avoid a continuous shooting of video/sound that lasts 10 hours or more, because you may fail to display or replay the video/sound if it is stored in the miniSD memory card.
- When a call arrives or the alarm or schedule alarm time gets to the setting time during video recording, the recording is stopped at that point. The data recorded before the stop is saved automatically when ***Auto save*** is set to ***Yes***. When ***Auto save*** is set to ***No***, a confirmation screen is displayed.
- If there is an incoming call while saving a video, the incoming image is displayed though saving continues.
- If the battery is almost exhausted during shooting/recording, the low battery message appears and the shooting/recording process stops. If ***Auto save*** is set to ***Yes***, the data that has been shot/recorded till then is automatically stored; pressing [📷] returns you to the shooting/recording screen. If ***Auto save*** is set to ***No***, pressing [📷] displays a confirmation screen. Even after you return to the shooting/recording screen, you cannot operate it while you see a message indicating that the battery level is too low for shooting/recording.
- If an alarm or battery alarm interrupts shooting/recording, you may hear the alarm or battery alarm recorded at the end of the saved video/sound.
- You cannot use the following functions at the confirmation screen when Movie Camera is started from the phonebook or mail.
  - Composing mail
  - Stand-by display settings
  - Saving images in the phonebook
  - Creating a ticker
  - Switching where to save
  - Displaying the video list
- The following should be set for the out-camera and the in-camera separately. When you switch between the cameras, the settings are also switched accordingly.
  - Zooming
  - Camera effects
  - Frame
  - Image quality
  - Size restrictions
  - Image size
  - Recording type
- Some functions may not be used at the confirmation screen when the miniSD memory card is not inserted or the miniSD memory card is activated.

Setting the still image/video size or the saving method

Still Image Setting/Recording Setting

- Images cannot be set when Still Camera or Movie Camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i-αppli software. In this case, ***Camera time-out*** is automatically reset to ***1 min***.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Default ● Still Image Setting
Image size: 240 × 320 (stand-by) Quality: Standard Shooting date/time: None Size restrictions: None
Auto-timer duration: 10 sec. Continuous shot photos: 6 Auto save: No Save to: Phone
Camera time-out: 1 min. Shutter sound: Shutter sound 1 Open cover sound: Open cover sound 1
Close cover sound: Close cover sound 1 Set lighting: Always on
● Recording Setting
Quality: STD Recording Type: Video + Voice Size restrictions: Msg attach (S) Size: 176 × 144 (QCIF)
Auto-timer duration: 10 sec. Auto Play: No Auto save: No Save to: Phone Camera time-out: 1 min.
Shutter sound: Shutter sound 1 Set lighting: Always on

Example When changing Still Image Setting

1 In stand-by, open the lens cover and press Menu 8TUV.

■ **When changing Recording Setting**

① **Hold down ● for over a second on the stand-by display and press Menu 7PQRS.**

2 Select each item to set.

3 Press ▤.

Details on the set items

○ : Setting Available × : Setting not available

Item	Setting		Description
	Still image	Video/sound	
Image size*	○	×	Sets the image size for still images to be shot. ☛P171 • The image size cannot be set to 480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT), 960 x 1280 (SXGA), 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1728 x 2304 (4M) during shooting with the in-camera.
Quality*	○	×	Sets the quality for the still image files to be saved. ☛P172
Shooting date/ time	○	×	Sets whether to insert shooting date and time at the lower right of the still image.
Quality* **(video)**	×	○	Sets the quality of video, sound files to be saved. ☛P172
Recording Type*	×	○	Sets the type of video/sound to be recorded. : ***Video + Voice*** : ***Video only*** : ***Voice only*** (Sound Recorder)
Size restrictions*	○	○	Sets the size restrictions of files to be saved. ☛P172
Size* **(video)**	×	○	Sets the image size for videos to be recorded. ☛P171
Auto-timer duration	○	○	Sets the duration of time until the shutter is released while using auto timer (2 to 15 seconds.)
Continuous shot photos	○	×	Sets the number of images shot continuously (2 to 6 images).
Auto play	×	○	Sets whether to play the video/sound automatically when a confirmation screen is displayed.
Auto save	○	○	Select ***Yes*** to save the shot still images or video/sounds automatically in the specified destination. Selecting ***No*** displays a confirmation screen after recording.
Save to	○	○	Sets the memory to save the shot still image/video.
Camera time-out	○	○	Sets the duration of time until Still Camera/Movie Camera/Sound Recorder turns off when no operation is made.
Shutter sound	○	○	Select the shooting confirmation sound from shutter sounds 1 to 5. • Press ● to play the sound indicated by the cursor.

Item	Setting		Description
	Still image	Video/sound	
Open cover sound	○	×	The sound played when the lens cover is opened to activate Camera should be selected from any of the open cover sounds 1 to 3 and ***OFF***. • Press [▲▼] to play the sound indicated by the cursor (not played if set to ***OFF***).
Close cover sound	○	×	The sound played when the lens cover is closed to deactivate Camera/ Movie Camera should be selected from any of the close cover sounds 1 to 3 and ***OFF***. This setting should be done in Still Image Setting, while it also changes the sound for deactivating Movie Camera. • Press [▲▼] to play the sound indicated by the cursor (not played if set to ***OFF***).
Set lighting	○	○	When ***Always on*** is set, the lighting of the display stays on while the still image shooting/video recording screen is displayed. Setting ***Phone settings*** applies the settings of Display Light Setting (☛P127).

* Items that are separately set by an out-camera and in-camera. The out-camera setting while using the out-camera and the in-camera setting while using the in-camera will be changed when the item is set.

INFORMATION

- ***Shooting date/time*** cannot be set when ***Image size*** is set to 96 x 72 (phonebook) in Still Image Setting.
- In Still Image Setting, 352 x 288 (CIF), 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE), 480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT), 960 x 1280 (SXGA), 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1728 x 2304 (4M) for ***Image size*** and ***9000 bytes*** for ***Size restrictions*** cannot be set simultaneously. In addition, 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1728 x 2304 (4M) for ***Image size*** and ***500K bytes*** for ***Size restrictions*** cannot be set simultaneously.
- In Recording Setting, ***LP*** or ***HQ+*** for ***Quality*** and ***Voice only*** for ***Recording Type*** cannot be set at the same time. When ***Phone*** is set for ***Save to, None*** cannot be set for ***Size restrictions***.
- Resetting does not restore the default settings for Still Image Setting and Recording Setting.

Shooting in various modes

Zooming

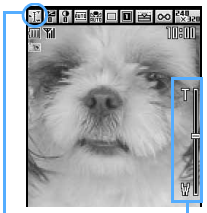
The available magnifications depend on the size of the image, which are as shown below:

Type of camera	Size	Zoom scale		Max. display magnification
		still image shooting	video recording	
Out-camera	96 x 72 (phonebook)	65 scales	—	28 times
	128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	65 scales	9 scales	28 times*
	176 x 144 (QCIF)	65 scales	8 scales	16 times
	240 x 320 (stand-by)	65 scales	—	8 times
	320 x 240 (V-QVGA movie)	—	3 scales	4 times
	320 x 240 (H-QVGA movie)	—	5 scales	8 times
	352 x 288 (CIF)	65 scales	—	6 times
	640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE)	65 scales	—	3 times
	480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT)	65 scales	—	4 times
	960 x 1280 (SXGA)	65 scales	—	3 times
	1200 x 1600 (UXGA)	6 scales	—	2 times
	1728 x 2304 (4M)	—	—	N/A

Type of camera	Size	Zoom scale		Max. display magnification
		still image shooting	video recording	
In-camera	96 x 72 (phonebook)	2 scales	—	2 times
	128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	2 scales	2 scales	
	176 x 144 (QCIF)	2 scales	2 scales	
	240 x 320 (stand-by)	2 scales	—	
	320 x 240 (V-QVGA movie)	—	2 scales	
	352 x 288 (CIF)	2 scales	—	
	640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE)	2 scales	—	

* 20 times for video recording

1 Press [Navi] on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen.



Slider

Icon of zoom

Each time you press, the slider shifts.

- You can also press [1], then shift the slider with [Navi] and press [Navi].
- Shooting procedures for still images and videos are the same as in normal shooting.

During still image shooting

With the out-camera:

Normal ↔ Maximum

With the in-camera:

x1: Normal x2: 2 times

During video recording

x1: Normal x2: 2 times x4: 4 times x6: 6 times x8: 8 times

x10: 10 times x12: 12 times x16: 16 times x20: 20 times

Using auto timer

Since the shutter is automatically released after the specified time has elapsed, you can take your own picture and avoid blurring of images due to hand movement.

- The time until the shutter is released can be set in Still image Setting or Recording Setting.

1 Press [Menu] [4] on the still image shooting screen or [Menu] [3] on the video recording screen.

Auto timer is set and ⏲ is indicated.

- To cancel the setting, press [Menu] [4] or [Menu] [3] again.

2 Point the camera at the object and press [Navi] or [Camera].

Icon of Auto Timer

The countdown sound is heard, the compact light flashes in red and the call indicator flashes in green. The indicator and counter show an estimate of the remaining time before shooting and the remaining number of seconds. The intervals of flashing become shorter as the time. After the specified time has elapsed, the shutter sound is heard and shooting is started.

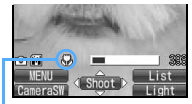
- To stop the auto timer on the way, press [C].
- Note that shooting is stopped if the alarm or alarm schedule time gets to the setting time or [Mail] is pressed during auto timer countdown.

Shooting nearby object

Macro Mode

When shooting a subject with auto focus from a very short distance of about 7 to 30 cm, setting Macro Mode enables the camera to bring the subject into focus. When not using auto focus, the subject can be brought into focus at about 7 to 11 cm. Macro Mode is unavailable for shooting with the in-camera.

1 Press [#] on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen.



Icon of Macro Mode

Switches to the macro mode and is displayed.

- To cancel the setting, press [#] again.
- Shooting procedures for still images and videos are the same as in normal shooting.

Changing the settings for shooting

Frames, image size, quality, size restrictions, effects, white balance, brightness or color density can be set.

- The following settings will be kept even if you finish using Camera or Movie camera.
  - Image size ・Quality ・Size restrictions ・Brightness ・Color density
- When ***Voice only*** is set for ***Recording Type*** in Recording Setting, the settings cannot be changed except for quality and size restrictions.

Default Frame: not set Size: (Still image)240 × 320 (Video)176 × 144
Quality: (Still image)Standard (Video)STD Size Limit: (Still image)None (Video)Msg attach S
Effect: Full auto WhiteBalance: Auto Brightness: ± 0 ColorDensity: ± 0

Example Setting a frame

1 Press [●] on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen and place the cursor at the icon of frame.

Name for icons
Icon of Frame
Current setting

- Similarly, to change other settings than a frame, put the cursor on each icon.
- Keys [1あ/@] to [9らWXYZ] and [0わん記号] are assigned to the icon in order from the left. The cursor also moves by pressing the following keys:

[1あ/@] : ***Zoom*** ☛P168
[2かABC] : ***Brightness***
[3さDEF] : ***ColorDensity***
[4たGHI] : ***Effect***
[5なJKL] : ***WhiteBalance***
[6はMNO] : ***Frame***
[7まPQRS] : ***Continuous*** ☛P162
[8やTUV] : ***Quality***
[9らWXYZ] : ***Size Limit***
[0わん記号] : ***Size***

2 Press [▼] to select a frame and press [●].

- As in the case of changing other settings, change the value with [▼] and press [●].
- For ***Effect***, ***WhiteBalance***, ***Frame***, ***Continuous***, ***Quality***, ***Size Limit*** and ***Size***, you can also set the value by pressing the corresponding keys ([4たGHI] to [9らWXYZ], [0わん記号]) and then pressing [●].

Frames

You can select frames saved in FOMA terminal or frame images downloaded from sites.
: Frame is set : Frame is canceled

- The frames saved in FOMA terminal by default are applicable to image sizes of 176 x 144 (QCIF) and 240 x 320 (stand-by). ☛P325
- Frames cannot be set when 96 x 72 (phonebook), 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE), 480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT), 960 x 1280 (SXGA), 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1728 x 2304 (4M) for image size of still image, or 320 x 240 (QVGA) for image size of video is set.
- Frames cannot be applied when Camera is started from the phonebook, i-αppli software or mail.
- To cancel the setting, hold down 6 for over a second.

INFORMATION

- You can also select frames from the list by pressing Menu 7 1 during still image shooting or Menu 5 1 during video recording.
- If you select a frame that is opposite in horizontal and vertical values to the image size, the frame is displayed after rotating 90 degrees clockwise; for example, suppose that you have selected a 144 x 176 frame when the image size is 176 x 144 (QCIF). In this case, the frame rotates 180 degrees by pressing Menu 7 3 during still image shooting or Menu 5 3 during video recording. Note that your frame cannot be rotated if it is the same as the image size in terms of horizontal and vertical values.
- If the frame is downloaded from a site during shooting, the added frame becomes selectable by pressing Menu 7 4 during still image shooting or Menu 5 4 during video recording.
- Frames can be added to shot still images even after saving them.

Image size

You can set the following image size:

Shooting mode	Size	Icon	Sending mail available/not available
Still Camera	96 x 72 (phonebook)	96×72	Images can be attached to i-mode Mail or Deco-mail to send to an i-mode terminal or PC.
	128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	128×96	
	176 x 144 (QCIF)	176×144	
	240 x 320 (stand-by)	240×320	
	352 x 288 (CIF)	352×288	Images can be attached to i-mode Mail to send to an i-mode terminal or PC. A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert to 240 x 320 (stand-by) when attaching files to mail.
	640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE)	640×480	
	480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT)*	480×640	
	960 x 1280 (SXGA)*	960×1280	
	1200 x 1600 (UXGA)*	1200×1600	
	1728 x 2304 (4M)*	1728×2304	
Movie Camera	128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	128×96	Images can be attached to i-mode Mail to send to an i-mode terminal or PC.
	176 x 144 (QCIF)	176×144	
	320 x 240 (QVGA)	320×240	Images cannot be attached to i-mode Mail.

* This is a valid image size only when shooting with the out-camera

- The maximum size of an image file that can be sent to the i-mode terminal is 500 Kbytes.
- The image size best suited for viewing on the i-mode terminal is 240 x 320 (stand-by).
- The size restriction setting may be changed automatically depending on the image size setting.
- 1728 x 2304 (4M) may not be available while performing other functions. Accordingly, when the camera is activated while other function is ongoing, the 1728 x 2304 (4M) image size setting may be changed to 1200 x 1600 (UXGA).

Quality of still images/videos

■ **During still image shooting**

Economy : Provides the lowest quality. File size is reduced.

Standard : Standard image quality

Fine : Provides the highest quality. File size becomes large.

■ **During video recording**

LP : Provides the lowest quality. File size is small and maximum duration of recording becomes longest.

STD : Standard quality

HQ : The video motion becomes smooth.

HQ+ : Provides the highest quality. File size is large and maximum duration of recording becomes shortest.

Size restrictions

■ **During still image shooting**

When the size of a shot still image file is larger than the limit value, the file automatically degrades the quality or saves the reduced-size file.

9000 bytes : This file size is suited for being attached to i-mode Mail.

500K bytes : You can attach to i-mode Mail without changing file size.

None : No restriction for file size

- When you attach a shot still image to i-mode Mail and send it to an i-mode terminal, set the size restrictions to other than ***None***.
- This setting cannot be changed for 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) and 1728 x 2304 (4M) sized images.
- This setting may be changed automatically depending on the image size setting.

■ **During video recording**

When file size exceeds the limit value during video recording, recording ends automatically.

Msg attach S : Restricts file size to 290 Kbytes. Images of this file size can be attached to i-mode Mail and sent to the terminal which does not support large message.

Msg attach L : Restricts file size to 490 Kbytes. Images of this file size can be sent to the terminal which supports large message.

None : No restriction for file size. In Recording Setting, when the memory to save is set to ***Phone***, you cannot select this.

- When you attach a video shot to i-mode Mail and send it to an i-mode terminal, set the size restrictions to other than ***None***.

Camera effects

24 setting types are available according to color tone and shooting situation.

Full auto : Standard shooting mode. Use this mode normally.

Sensitivity up : Enhances the camera sensitivity for shooting in the dark.

Super sensitivity up : Shoots a black-and-white picture even in a dim light situation.

Adjust backlight : Compensates backlight images by adjusting brightness of the darkened part such as face.

Spot photometry : Brightness of the whole image is set based on its central part.

Scenery : Suitable for shooting nature or cityscape vividly. Intensity and sharpness are set rather high.

Night : Slows shutter speed for night shooting. Hold the mobile firmly to prevent blurring.

Twilight : Suitable for shooting the beautiful sunset scenery. With high intensity, images tend to look rather cyan.

Surf & Snow : Enhances the blue of the sky and sea, and the white of snow.

Sport : Shutter speed is set to high, allowing you to shoot fast-moving objects with less jiggling.

Pet : Shutter speed and color intensity are set to high.

Gourmet : Suitable for shooting cuisines and sweets.

Letter : Enhances letter outlines.

Color reversal : Shoots in negative colors. Images look just like negative prints.

Painting : Shot images will look like oil paintings.

Woodcut : Enables you to shoot a woodprint-like images, taking advantage of black-and-white contrast.

Whiten : Skin-color looks brighter and whiter. Recommended for indoor shooting.

Suntan : Skin-color looks sun-tanned. Recommended for outdoor shooting situation.

Soft touch : Blurs the outlines to soften the image.

Mono tone (red) : Shoots in monotone of red gradation.

Mono tone (green) : Shoots in monotone of green gradation.

Mono tone (blue) : Shoots in monotone of blue gradation.

Monochrome : Shoots images like black-and-white photographs.

Sepia : Shoots in sepia colors.

- ***Super sensitivity up***, ***Color reversal***, ***Painting***, and ***Woodcut*** settings are unavailable during the in-camera shooting. During the auto continuous shooting, you cannot set ***Night***.
- In the ***Night*** mode, color is captured more precisely; due to the camera characteristics, there may be noise (such as lines) in the image when shootings are done in a low-light situation.
- In the ***Sport*** or ***Pet*** mode, shoot in a sufficient-light situation. There may be noise in the images shot in a room or a low-light situation.
- In the ***Gourmet*** or ***Letter*** mode, switch to Macro Mode when shooting from a close range.

White balance

Natural color tone coordinated with the light source is provided for shooting.

Auto : Adjusts white balance automatically.

Sunlight : Set when shooting outdoor in fine weather.

Cloudy : Set when shooting in cloudy weather, shade or evening.

Fluorescent : Set when shooting under illumination such as a fluorescent lamp.

Bulb light : Set when shooting under illumination such as an electric bulb.

- Unavailable when camera effects are set to ***Super sensitivity up***, ***Scenery***, ***Surf & Snow***, ***Woodcut***, ***Mono tone (red)***, ***Mono tone (green)***, ***Mono tone (blue)***, ***Monochrome***, or ***Sepia***.

Brightness

-2 : -1 : ± 0 : +1 : +2

- Adjusting brightness may not have much effect depending on the image to be shot.
- Unavailable when camera effects are set to ***Super sensitivity up***, ***Twilight***, ***Woodcut***, ***Whiten***, or ***Suntan***.

Color density

-2 -1 ± 0 +1 +2

- Adjusting color density may not have much effect depending on the image to be shot.
- Unavailable when camera effects are set to ***Super sensitivity up***, ***Letter***, ***Woodcut***, ***Whiten***, or ***Suntan***.

Restoring default during Shooting settings

- The following functions are reset to the default settings:
  - Camera effects
  - White balance
  - Zoom
  - Brightness
  - Color density
  - Macro Mode
- For the camera effects and zoom functions, only the out-camera setting is reset during the out-camera shooting; only the in-camera setting is reset during the in-camera shooting.

1 Press Menu 6 7 on the still image shooting screen or Menu 4 7 on the video recording screen.

2 Select *Yes*.

Sending images shot during voice calls

One-shot Message

When you shoot a still image during a voice call, you can attach it to i-mode Mail and then send it to the other party.

- Set the memory to save to ***Phone*** in Still Image Setting to use this function.
- If Record Chara-den is activated directly before the call, you may not be able to use this function.

1 Press during a call.

2 Shoot the still image.

- When ***Yes*** is set for ***Auto save*** in Still Image Setting, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to attach the shot image to mail. If ***Yes*** is selected, the shot image can be checked.
- The still images shot continuously are displayed as thumbnails. Press to place the cursor at the still image to send.

3 Press and select *Yes*.

The shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal and the mail composition screen is displayed. If a mail address of the other party of current call has been stored in the phonebook, the other party's address is inserted in the receiver field automatically. The mail address is not be inserted when Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***).

- Depending on the settings of image size and file size of the shot image, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert the image to stand-by size or save it to Data Box. ☛P234
- A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to adjust the shot still image depending on the settings of image size and size restrictions. Select ***No limit*** to save the shot still image at the original size and select ***9000 bytes*** to save the shot still image smaller than 9,000 bytes in FOMA terminal.
- If the shot and saved image is smaller than 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether or not to paste the shot still image to mail text. Select ***Yes*** to paste it to mail text.
- Press クリア to return to the shooting screen without composing i-mode Mail. To cancel shooting, press クリア on the shooting screen.

4 Compose and send the i-mode Mail.

Using Bar Code Reader

Bar Code Reader

Data such as text and number contained in the JAN code or QR code can be read using the camera. The scanned data can be saved as the phonebook and bookmark data. Also, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions are available from the data.

- You can save up to 5 scanned data.
- Bar Code Reader can be used only with the out-camera.
- The bar codes and 2 dimensional codes other than JAN and QR codes cannot be read.
- Bar codes may not be scanned depending on the types and sizes.
- Scratches, dirt, damages, low print quality, the strong reflection of light or some QR code versions may prevent the codes from being read.
- You can activate Bar Code Reader on the character entry screen and enter the scanned data directly. ☛P469

JAN Code

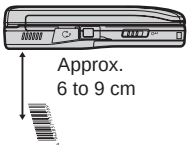
The JAN code is a bar code indicating a number with the vertical lines (bars) of different width. The bar codes of 8 digits (JAN8) or 13 digits (JAN13) can be read.
The left JAN code shows the numeral data “4942857119176”.

QR Code

The QR code is one of the two-dimensional codes indicating a string of alphanumeric and other characters (kanji/kana and pictograms) or data such as Melody and image with the vertical and horizontal patterns.
The left QR code shows the text data “FOMA D901iS”.

Scanning the code

When Bar Code Reader is started, Camera automatically switches to Macro Mode. Place the out-camera 6 to 9 cm away from the code to scan.



1 Press Menu 6 MNO 4 GHI on the stand-by display.

Bar Code Reader is started.

2 Open the lens cover.

- During bar code scanning, the following operations are enabled:
  - : Switches the compact light on ( )/off (no icon).
  - : Switches between the standard mode (no icon)/macro mode ( ).
    - Switch to the standard mode before scanning large size codes.

3 Scan the code.

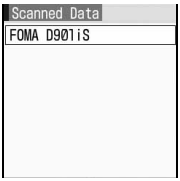
When you point the out-camera toward the code, it is scanned automatically. If scanned correctly, a confirmation sound is played and the scanned data is displayed.

- If data exceeds 11,000 one-byte or 5,500 two-byte characters, exceeded characters are not displayed, but can be saved.
- When you pause scanning such as while a submenu is displayed, the icon displayed at the upper right corner changes to .

Re-scanning the code

① **Press [□] or [Menu] [2 かABC].**

4 Press [Menu] [4 たGHI].



The scanned data is saved to FOMA terminal.

- When the 5 data has already saved or the memory for data is not enough, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved data. Select ***Yes*** to delete the saved data.

Copying text in scanned data

① **Press [Menu] [1 あ].**

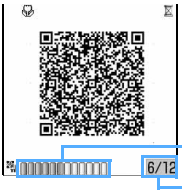
② **Select the start position to copy.**

- To copy the entire text data, press [Menu] and [●].

③ **Select the end position to copy.**

Scanning divided QR codes

When data is divided into multiple parts (up to 16), scan them one by one according to messages appearing on the screen.



- Press [クリア] to cancel scanning of the divided QR codes. Select ***Yes*** when a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to discard the scanned QR codes data.

These squares indicate the number of QR codes.
Green: last scanned Blue: scan completed Gray: yet unscanned
Remaining number of QR codes/total number of QR codes

INFORMATION

- Also, if you press [Menu] on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen and select ***Switch modes*** → ***Bar code reader***, the bar code reader can be used.
- Press [Menu] [3 さDEF] on the bar code reading screen and press [1 あ] or [2 かABC] to switch to the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen. When Bar Code Reader is started from other than the stand-by display, the switching is not available.
- Bar Code Reader can be activated from the i-αppli software that supports Bar Code Reader. When Bar Code Reader is activated from i-αppli software, the scanned data is saved and used by the software.
- The scanned data is given a file name made up of the scanned date and time + serial number + .jan or .qr (".jan" is for JAN code and ".qr" for QR code). The file name "20050826123400.jan", for example, means JAN code scanned at August 26, 2005 12:34. When there are any previously saved data in the same date and time, 1 is added to the serial file number. Note that the date and time part of the file name appears as "----------" if the date and time of FOMA terminal is not set. The file name cannot be changed.

Using scanned data

• The available operations vary depending on the scanned data.

Example Adding data to the phonebook

1 Press Menu 6MNO 4GHI on the stand-by display and open the lens cover.

2 Press 📖 and select scanned data to use.

■ **Deleting scanned data**

① **Place the cursor at the scanned data to delete, press Menu 3DEF 1 and select *Yes*.**

• To delete all, press Menu 3DEF 2ABC, enter the terminal security code and select ***Yes***.

3 Place the cursor at the data to add, press Menu 3DEF 1 (Add new data) or Menu 3DEF 2ABC (Update) and press 1 or 2ABC.

The phonebook registration screen is displayed with the selected data entered.

• To register updating, select the phonebook data to register.

■ **Adding all data to the phonebook at one time**

① **Select *Add to phonebook* and press 1 or 2ABC.**

The phonebook registration screen is displayed. Depending on the data, the name and the reading for it are entered.

■ **Sending mail**

① **Select a mail address or *Compose message*.**

The mail composition screen is displayed.

• When ***Compose message*** is selected, the subject and the text are entered depending on the data.

■ **Connecting i-mode or Internet web sites**

① **Select URL and select *Yes*.**

■ **Saving URL as bookmarks**

① **Place the cursor at the URL and press Menu 3DEF 3DEF. Or select *Add bookmark*.**

② **Select a folder where the URL is saved to.**

• When ***Add bookmark*** is selected, the site name is saved depending on the data.

■ **Starting i-αppli software**

① **Select *Start i-αppli*.**

■ **Making a voice call or a video-phone call**

① **Select the phone number to call, select items of Customized Call, and then set the call conditions.** ☛P52

② **Press Menu and select *Yes*.**

■ **Saving still image**

① **Select a file name of a still image and select *Save*.**

• Selecting ***Display*** displays the still image.

② **Select the items to set and press 📖.** ☛P361

③ **Select a folder to save the still image.**

■ **Saving Melody**

① **Select a file name of Melody and select *Save*.**

• Selecting ***Play*** plays the Melody.

② **Enter the display name and press 📖.**

The Melody is saved in ***Data transfer*** folder of ***Melody*** of Data Box.

MEMO

i-mode

What's i-mode? 180

Displaying sites

Displaying sites 186
Reading and operating sites 188
Using My Menu ..... My Menu 191
Changing your current i-mode password into another number
..... Change i-mode Password 191
Displaying Internet websites ..... Internet Connection 192
Registering websites and i-mode sites for quick browsing .... Bookmark 193
Saving site contents..... Screen Memo 196

Downloading images and melodies from sites

Downloading images from sites and messages..... Save Image 198
Downloading melodies from sites ..... i-melody 199
Downloading PDF data from sites 200
Downloading Chara-den from sites 201

Useful functions of i-mode

Useful functions of i-mode 201

Making i-mode settings

Making i-mode settings..... i-mode Setting 204

Using Message Service

When Message R/F is received ..... Receive Message R/F 207
Displaying Message R/F in FOMA terminal..... Message R/Message F 209

Using certificate

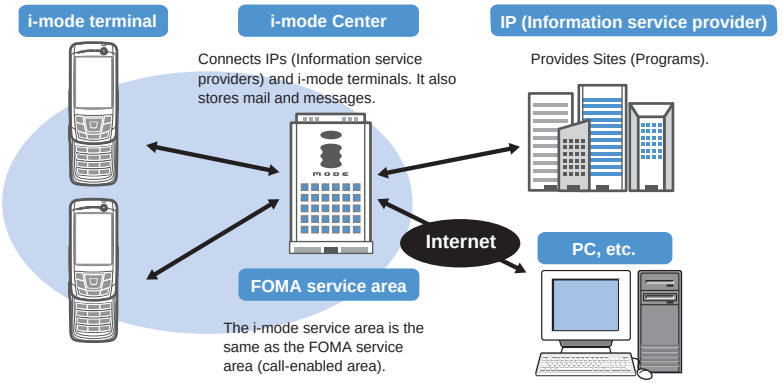
Operating certificates 212

What's i-mode?

With i-mode, you can use online services such as connecting to Sites (Programs) or Internet websites, or sending and receiving i-mode Mail by using i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter called as i-mode terminal).

- Sites (Programs) connection
  You can access various online services such as weather information or news provided by IPs (Information service providers) from Menu List of iMenu. You can also download and enjoy games and stand-by images, etc.
- Internet connection
  You can view a wide variety of i-mode compatible websites by directly entering the URLs into your i-mode terminal.
- i-mode Mail
  You can exchange e-mail (of up to 5,000 two-byte characters) with other i-mode terminals and with anyone with Internet mail address. You can also transmit Deco-mail, mail with still image and video.

Service schematic



- i-mode is an optional service to be charged requiring subscription. Please refer to the back of this manual for further information on subscription.

INFORMATION

- When you newly subscribe to the FOMA service, all services are available as of the first day.
- My Menu is carried over as it is when you change the mova service (i-mode subscription) to the FOMA service. However, some sites are not carried over to My Menu of the FOMA service. In that case, register them again. You can check the sites that can be carried over to My Menu in " お知らせ&ヘルプ " of iMenu. ☛P181
- i-mode service is charged based on sent/received information volume (packet count). This manual does not include fee-related information. For details of usage fees, see "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" you received when you subscribed to i-mode.
- i-mode service contents are subject to change; for details, see the latest "FOMA i-mode User's Manual".

Sites (Programs) connection

You can access sites using a simple key sequence and use various online services provided by IPs (Information service providers).
For example, you can check your bank balance, make wire transfers, reserve tickets, watch news, search dictionaries, download melodies, etc.

Displaying sites

When you are connected to the i-mode Center, iMenu is displayed first. From this menu, you can access Sites (Programs) or "週刊ｉガイド", etc.

・Sites displaying procedure ☛P186

Note: The display shown here is an example. The appearance may differ depending on the settings.

Menu name	Description
1 マイメニュー (My Menu)	You can register your favorite sites and quickly access the sites later. ☛P191 Pay sites in iMenu are automatically registered; a total of 45 sites can be registered.
2 週刊 i ガイド	The latest site information including new and recommended sites is released and updated every day from Monday to Friday every week.
3 メニューリスト (Menu List)	Lists all sites by categories or regions. You can access the desired site from here.
4 とくするメニュー	Includes enjoyable information on campaigns, gifts, and discount coupons. The information is updated every week (provided by D2 Communications).
5 i エリア	You can check weather, map and town information in your place or vicinity.
6 かんたん検索	You can search sites easily by keyword from categories such as game and stand-by display.
i アプリサーチ	Introduces i-αppli based on usage purposes, e.g. free of charge, game, etc.
便利サイトサーチ	Introduces useful sites in Menu List that can be used daily according to usage scenarios.
7 マイボックス	This is a service for members to access more conveniently to certain shop information and sites through advance registration.
8 オプション設定 (Options)	Used to set i-mode Mail and change i-mode password, etc.
9 お知らせ&ヘルプ	Includes information from DoCoMo, i-mode operation procedure and rules.
■料金&お申込	You can confirm fees and payment, change subscriptions, or apply for services.
ENGLISH	iMenu changes to English mode.

INFORMATION

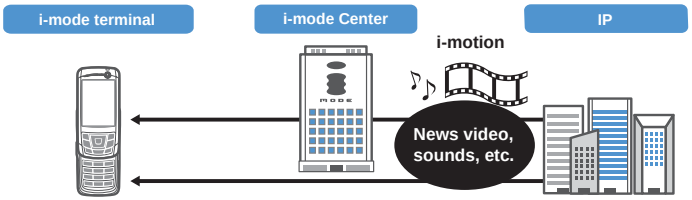
- You may need to pay information fee to access certain sites (i-mode pay sites).
- You may need to subscribe to use some services provided by IPs (Information service providers).
- You will not be charged for packet communication unless the i-mode Center is accessed, even if the i-mode icon flashes.
- The screen such as iMenu appears different for Dual Network Service subscribers.

Other convenient functions

■ i-motion

You can download videos and sounds from sites to your i-mode terminal and play or set them for the stand-by display.

- Downloading i-motion ☛P310
- Playing i-motion ☛P328
- Setting auto play of i-motion ☛P312



■ Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion)/Chaku-Uta®

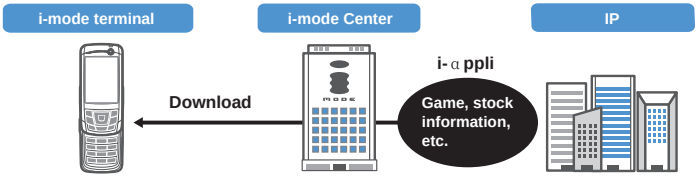
i-motion can be downloaded from i-mode sites to your i-mode terminal and set as ring tone or incoming image. The vocals of your favorite singers can be used as ring tone as well as melodies (some i-motion may not be set for Movie ringtone).

- Setting Movie ringtone ☛P112, P331
- Chaku-Uta is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

■ i-αppli

You can conveniently use your i-mode terminal by downloading i-αppli from sites. For example, you can download games to play or i-αppli stock software to automatically check stock prices periodically. Furthermore, because map-related i-αppli downloads only necessary data, smooth scrolling can be performed.

- Downloading i-αppli ☛P288
- Starting i-αppli ☛P290
- Automatically starting i-αppli ☛P300



■ i-αppli stand-by display

On the i-αppli stand-by display, i-αppli can be used as the stand-by display, which also allows directly receiving mail and making phone calls. The function of the stand-by display can be enhanced by setting it to display news and weather forecast update or by using your favorite character to inform you of incoming mail and alarms, etc.

- Setting the i-αppli stand-by display ☛P121

■ i-αppli DX

i-αppli DX is more convenient and enjoyable i-αppli. In conjunction with the i-mode terminal data (such as mail, call log or phonebook data), i-αppli DX allows you to compose a message on your favorite character screen and to inform you of the caller of incoming call by character's comments. Also, i-αppli DX updates stock price information, game status, or other information in real time in conjunction with mail.

- i-αppli DX ☛P286

■ 3D sound

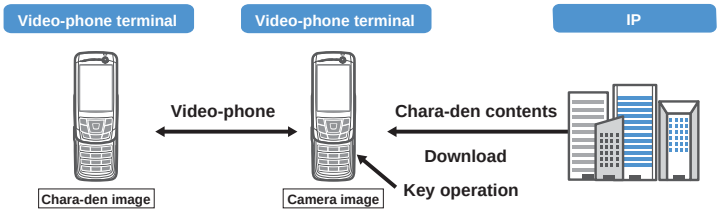
The 3D sound compatible i-mode terminal, using stereo speakers (or a flat type stereo earphone set (optional)), allows you to create 3-dimensional sound that moves around in space and to enjoy realistic i-αppli games, i-motion and ring tone (for contents that support 3D sound).

• 3D sound ☛P113

■ Chara-den

When using video-phone, you can have a character displayed on the other party's video-phone terminal instead of your image, move its mouth in response to sounds, and make motions by key operation. You can download your favorite character to set for the stand-by display. The recorded image/video of Chara-den can also be set for the stand-by display and be attached to mail to send (you cannot send image/video files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).

- Downloading Chara-den ☛P201
- Setting Chara-den ☛P83, P338
- Recording Chara-den ☛P340
- Displaying Chara-den ☛P338
- Operating Chara-den ☛P339



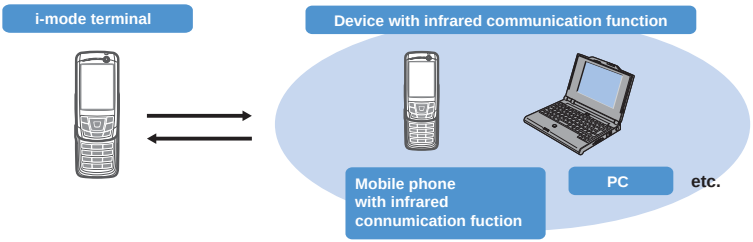
■ Infrared communication function

Phonebook data, mail, bookmarks, etc. can be exchanged with mobile phones, PCs, etc. that are provided with the infrared communication function.*

In addition, using infrared communication with i-αppli, you can use your terminal in a wide range of ways in conjunction with other devices provided with the infrared communication function. For example, a mobile phone with this function can be used as a TV remote control or member card, etc.

* Some types of data may not be exchanged depending on the other party's device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

• Using infrared communication ☛P364, P308



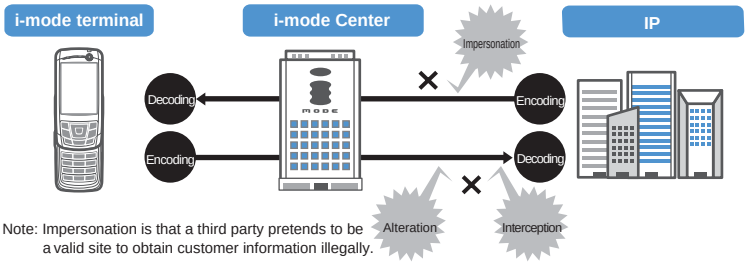
■ SSL communication

SSL is a safer data communication method that uses certification/encryption technology to protect privacy. On SSL pages, data is encrypted and sent/received to prevent information interception, impersonation or alteration, thus allowing personal information such as credit card numbers and street addresses to be exchanged safely.

There are 2 types of SSL communication: one is to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) using the CA certificate and the other is to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) using the user certificate downloaded from the FirstPass center. The certificates used to display the sites differ depending on the site. ☛P212

- You cannot send/receive mail or receive Message R/F while being connected to the FirstPass center.
- Using the CA certificate stored in i-mode terminal ☛P212

・Using the user certificate of FirstPass ☛P213



Note: Impersonation is that a third party pretends to be a valid site to obtain customer information illegally.

■ UIM operation restriction function

When the UIM containing user information (phone numbers, part of phonebook data, etc.) is inserted in your i-mode terminal, this function restricts operations of melodies, still images and i-motion downloaded from sites or received by mail. When the terminal is turned on with another UIM or no UIM inserted, playing or displaying of the obtained files will be disabled. ☛P35

Note1: This function does not apply to still images or videos you shot with the camera, or files saved to your i-mode terminal from external memory.

Note2: This function resets the ring tone, stand-by display or other settings, if any, made in your i-mode terminal.

■ i-melody

You can download your favorite music to your i-mode terminal and use it as ring tone. ☛P199

■ i-anime

You can download your favorite animation to your i-mode terminal and use it as the stand-by display or incoming image. ☛P198

■ Message Service

Message Service is a service that automatically delivers desired information (messages) to your i-mode terminal. There are 2 types of Message Service: Message R (request) and Message F (free).

Message Request (Message R)	Information is delivered automatically after subscribing to a site that provides Message Service.
Message Free (Message F)	Messages are delivered free of packet communication fee.

・Receiving Message R/F ☛P207, P243

・If you apply to the i-mode service at the same time as new subscription to FOMA on or after October 1, 2004, the initial Message F (free) setting is *受信する* (Receive). Please note that, if you do not like to receive Message F, you have to change the setting to *受信しない* (Not receive) by yourself.

Note: If you like to use Message F in cases other than above, you have to make the setting from “*オプション設定*” of iMenu in advance. The initial setting is *受信しない*.

For details, see “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual” you received when you subscribed to i-mode.

・Message R/F is stored in the i-mode Center when i-mode terminal is off or outside the service area.

・The maximum number of Message R/Fs and the period they are stored at the i-mode Center are as follows. Message R/F will be deleted after the maximum storage period expires. When the maximum number of messages that can be stored is exceeded, Message R/F is deleted beginning with the chronologically oldest message.

Message type	Maximum number of items	Maximum storage period
Message R	300	72 hours
Message F	300	72 hours

・You can use Check i-mode Message (☛P243) to receive Message R/F stored in the i-mode Center.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

■ **トクだねニュース便 (Convenient News)**

This service is provided by DoCoMo and delivers information such as news and weather forecasts to your i-mode terminal using Message R (request).

Separate application (pay) is required. After application, the site for this service is automatically registered in My Menu, and you can access the site from My Menu.

・Reading the Message R screen ☛P210

■ **i-mode password**

You need an i-mode password to subscribe to pay sites, register and cancel sites in My Menu, or make i-mode Mail settings. By default, the i-mode password is set to “0000”. Be sure to change it to a unique 4-digit number. ☛P191

Be careful never to reveal your i-mode password to others.

Internet connection

You can connect to i-mode compatible websites via the Internet by entering the addresses (URLs).

・Displaying Internet websites ☛P192

INFORMATION

- Internet websites not compatible with i-mode may not be displayed correctly. i-mode compatible sites refer to websites created using i-mode compatible tags.
- Sites may be displayed differently on a PC.
- Internet websites with the URLs longer than 512 characters may not be displayed.

Before using i-mode

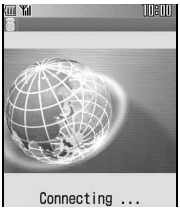
- The contents of Sites (Programs) and Internet websites are usually protected by copyright laws. All or any portion of text, image or other data imported to your i-mode terminal from a Site (Program) or Internet website cannot be altered except for personal use, and cannot be sold or redistributed in any form without the express permission of the copyright holder.
- Data saved/registered in your i-mode terminal (mail, Message R/F, screen memo, i-αppli and i-motion) may be erased due to failure, repair, or other handling of i-mode terminal. It is recommended that you maintain a separate record of the data you registered in your i-mode terminal. We are not responsible for any lost data.
- When i-mode terminal is sent for repair etc., the data you downloaded using i-mode, i-αppli or i-motion (except some data) is not transferred to the new mobile terminal in accordance with copyright laws. You cannot display still images/i-motion/melodies downloaded from sites, files attached to sent/received mail, screen memos and Message R/Fs when the terminal is turned on with another UIM or no UIM inserted.
- When data with the UIM operation restriction enabled is set for the stand-by display or ring tone, the settings return to default if another UIM other than yours or no UIM is inserted. It returns to the previous settings when the UIM that was used during receiving/downloading the data is inserted.

INFORMATION

- Data such as mail and bookmarks can be saved to the miniSD memory card.
  If you have a PC, data such as mail and bookmarks can be transferred and saved to the PC by using the FOMA D series data link software in the attached CD-ROM and FOMA USB cable (optional).

Displaying sites

1 Press [1] on the stand-by display and select *ENGLISH*.



- Press [C] on the i-mode connection screen to stop connection.
- Hold down [ー] for over a second during site display to disconnect i-mode.
- Items with numbers such as [1] and [2] can be selected by pressing the corresponding numbers (Direct Key function). You may not be able to select them on some sites.

2 Select [3] *Menu List*.

- Press [C] while accessing the page to stop it.

3 Select an item to view.

You are connected to a site. You can display the target page by repeating this operation.

4 When you finish viewing the site, press [PWR] and select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

- To return to iMenu during site display, press [Menu] and select *Menu*.
- When the site requests your “FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number”, a confirmation screen is displayed. When you select *Yes*, your “FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number” is sent. The IP (Information service provider) uses “FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number” that has been sent to identify you for providing the information and determining whether your FOMA terminal supports the site contents provided by the IP (Information service provider). Since your “FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number” is sent to the IP (Information service provider) via the Internet, there is a possibility the information could be intercepted by third parties. However, your information such as FOMA terminal’s phone number, your address, age, and gender will never be disclosed to the IP (Information service provider) with this operation.
- When the site requests entry of the user name and password, the entry screen is displayed. Enter the user name and password of the site and press [C].
- When you display a site containing an image, the following icons may be displayed instead of the image:
  - : When Image & Effect Setting is set not to display images or when FOMA terminal is out of service area while receiving the image
  - : When the image data is invalid or cannot be found
  - : When the image cannot be downloaded for incorrect URL
- i-mode requires online connection and cannot be used outside the service area.

Connecting to SSL pages

You can display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) using the same operation as for ordinary sites.

- Some SSL pages may not allow connection unless the date and time is set.
- To connect to a FirstPass compatible site, you need to download a user certificate for the site from the FirstPass center and save it on the green UIM. You cannot connect to the FirstPass center if the blue UIM is inserted.

Connecting to an SSL page

A screen informing SSL session is started is displayed. SSL appears in the upper-right corner of the screen when the SSL page is displayed.

Displaying certificate during SSL page display

① **Press** Menu 9 5 WXYZ 2 ABC.

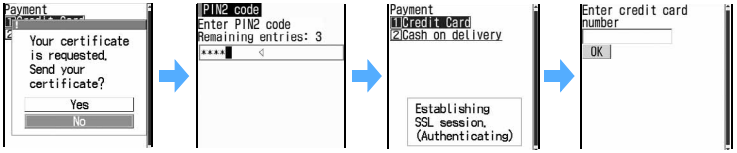
- Certificates ☛P212

Displaying an ordinary page from an SSL page

A confirmation screen is displayed. Select ***Yes*** to display an ordinary page and SSL disappears from the upper-right corner of the screen.

Connecting to a FirstPass compatible page

The following screens are displayed:



① **Select *Yes*.**

② **Enter the PIN2 code.**

The user certificate is sent and the FirstPass compatible page is displayed.

INFORMATION

- If site communication safety cannot be confirmed, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to connect. Select ***Yes*** to connect or ***No*** to cancel.
- Establishment of SSL session requires electronic information called “certificate” for the connected site and FOMA terminal issued by the same certifier. ☛P212
- Packet communication fee while being connected to FirstPass compatible sites will not be included in the Pake-Houdai service.

Menu 25

Reconnecting to the last page displayed

Last Visited URL

Last Visited URL allows you to quickly reconnect to the page displayed last.

- Some pages may not be displayed. Pages different from the last visited one may be displayed.

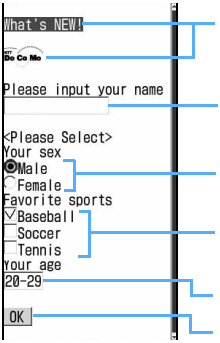
1 Press ▼ 5 JKL on the stand-by display.

- When no last visited URL is recorded, the message informing you that there is no record appears.

2 Press ▼.

Selecting links and items

During i-mode connection, the following operations are available depending on sites.



Link
Select to jump to a related page from the currently displayed page. A link is highlighted when the cursor is placed over.

Character entry field (the character types and maximum number of characters that can be entered depend on the character entry field)

Radio button (: Unselected : Selected)
You can select one from selections.

Check box (: Unselected : Selected)
You can select multiple items from selections.

Pulldown menu

Button (name differs depending on the site)
You can send page settings to a site or cancel the page settings.

■ Displaying links

① Press to place the cursor at an item and press .

- Links may be set in some images. Place the cursor at an image (surrounded with a frame) and press to display the linked page.
- Items with numbers such as 1 and 2 can be selected by pressing the corresponding numbers (Direct Key function). You may not be able to select them on some sites.

■ Entering characters

① Press to place the cursor at a character entry field and press .

② Enter characters.

- The entered i-mode password may be masked with "✳".
- The content read by Bar Code Reader can be entered by pressing Menu B TUV 2 ABC on the character entry screen.

■ Selecting radio button

① Press to place the cursor at a radio button and press .

■ Selecting check box

① Press to place the cursor at a check box and press .

- Selecting returns the box to .

■ Selecting pulldown menu

① Press to place the cursor at a pulldown menu and press .

② Select a menu item.

- On some sites, multiple items can be selected by repeating the operation of pressing to place the cursor at a menu item and pressing . Press after selecting items.

■ Selecting button

① Press to place the cursor at a button (surrounded with a solid frame) and press .

INFORMATION

● The information entered/set using radio buttons, check boxes, pulldown menus, and character entry fields does not replace the contents of registered bookmarks, screen memos, etc.

Flash function

Flash is an animation technology that uses images and sounds, which makes colorful animations and expressive sites be displayed. Images using Flash (Flash movie) can be downloaded to an i-mode terminal and set as the stand-by display or incoming image.

- Some Flash movies use the information of your i-mode terminal. To use the terminal information, set ***Use saved data*** to ***Yes*** in Image & Effect Setting. It is set to ***Yes*** by default. The information to be used by Flash movie is listed below:
  - ・Battery level
  - ・Received signal level
  - ・Time information
  - ・Ring Volume Setting
  - ・Select Language
  - ・Model information

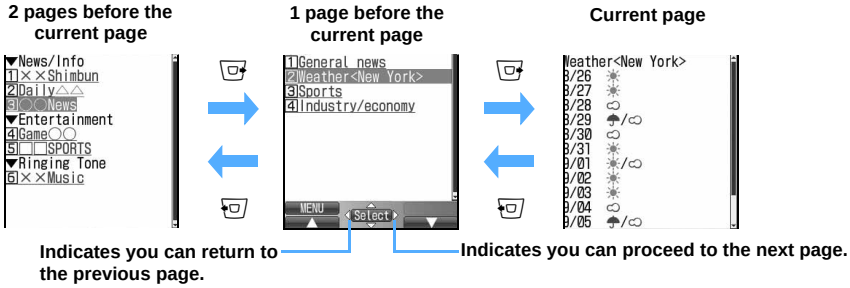
Flash movie

- Flash movie is not displayed when ***Not display*** is set for the image in Image & Effect Setting.
- On sites that use Flash movie, the operations are the same but the indications may be different.
- When saved as image or screen memo, some Flash movies may appear different from those displayed on sites because part of the image is not saved.
- The melody of Flash movie set for the stand-by display or incoming image is not played.
- Even if Flash movie is displayed, it may not operate correctly. Also, you may not be able to save Flash movie that does not operate correctly.
- If an error occurs while playing Flash movie, the image cannot be saved.
- Even if ◆ is indicated in the guide row, some Flash movies may not be operated.
- To play Flash movie again, press Menu 9wxyz 6mno.
- Some Flash movies may have sound effects. The volume conforms to the ring alert volume for calls. To disable sound effects during site display, press Menu 9wxyz 3def and set the sound effect setting to ***OFF***.
- Some Flash movies may vibrate FOMA terminal during play. Note that even if the vibrator is off, FOMA terminal vibrates.
- Sound effects or the vibrator is activated when you play Flash movie saved in FOMA terminal from Data Box. However, you cannot activate sound effects or the vibrator by selecting an item in the Flash movie displayed.
- If no operation is performed for 30 seconds or longer while playing Flash movie, it is brought to a pause. To replay, press 0わん to 9wxyz, *http:, #, 8, 1, ✉, 📖 or ●.
- If the screen is switched to another and redisplayed while playing Flash movie, the play starts from the beginning.

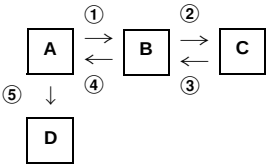
Displaying previous or next pages

FOMA terminal keeps a record of the last 20 pages displayed in a cache, which allows you to display previous or next pages.

- Cache is a storage space in FOMA terminal that temporarily records the displayed pages. You can display the recorded pages by pressing ● without establishing communication. When the cache is full or displaying a page that is set by the site to load the latest page, FOMA terminal starts communication.
- This function is unavailable while being connected to the FirstPass center (☛P213).

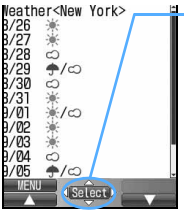


INFORMATION



- When you display page A → page B → page C in this order (①, ②), return to page A (③, ④), and proceed to page D (⑤), the display record of page A → page B → page C is deleted. You can return to page A from page D but you cannot then return to page B.
- Records in the cache may be deleted when it is full. Pressing may not return to previous pages.
- When displaying a page again which is deleted from the record or when displaying a page set to read the latest information, a new page downloaded appears by establishing communication again. However, some pages may establish communication even if the page is recorded.
- Information such as entered characters or settings is not recorded.
- When you terminate i-mode, all records in the cache are deleted.
- The operation may differ when Flash movie is displayed.

Scrolling the screen



When there are additional lines or selectable link items, ▲ or ▼ is indicated.

- Press to scroll the screen. Hold down the button to scroll continuously.
- Press or to scroll the screen by a page. Hold down the button to scroll the screen continuously by a page.

Reloading data

When sites are not displayed because of connection interruption etc., you may be able to display the sites by reload.

1 Press Menu 5 JKL during site display.

Displaying the URL of current site

1 Press Menu 9 WXYZ 1 during site display.

INFORMATION

- In the list of URL history, bookmark, i-mode shortcut, or screen memo, press .

Using My Menu

My Menu

You can register i-mode sites in My Menu, which allows you to quickly access the sites later.

- Up to 45 sites can be registered.
- You need the i-mode password to register sites. The i-mode password is set to “0000” by default.
- My Menu is carried over as it is when you change the mova service (i-mode subscription) to the FOMA service. However, some sites are not carried over to My Menu. In this case, you need to register these sites in My Menu again. You can check the sites that can be carried over to My Menu in “お知らせ&ヘルプ” of iMenu. ☛P181
- When you submit an application to a pay site registered in Menu List of iMenu, the site is automatically registered in My Menu.
- Only the sites registered in Menu List of iMenu can be registered in My Menu. However, some sites cannot be registered in My Menu. To register Internet websites, use Bookmark.

Registering sites in My Menu

1 Display a site and select *マイメニュー登録* (Register).

- Since the page structure differs depending on the site, press the applicable number or select the applicable item.

2 Select the i-mode password field and enter the i-mode password.

- The entered i-mode password is masked with “*”.

3 Select *決定* (OK).

Displaying sites from My Menu

1 Select 1 *My Menu* in iMenu (English).

2 Select a site to display.

Changing your current i-mode password into another number

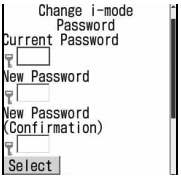
Change i-mode Password

You need your i-mode password to register/delete sites in/from My Menu, subscribe to/cancel Message Service or i-mode pay sites, or make the mail settings. The i-mode password is set to “0000” by default; be sure to change it to another unique number (4 digits). Be careful never to reveal your i-mode password to others.

- The entered i-mode password is masked with “*”.
- Please be notified that, if you forget the i-mode password, you need to bring the identification (driver’s license etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.

1 Select 4 *Options* in iMenu (English) and select 2 *Change i-mode Password*.

2 Select *Current Password* field and enter the i-mode password.



3 Select *New Password* field and enter a new password.

4 Select *New Password (Confirmation)* field and re-enter the password entered in Step 3.

5 Select *Select*.

- When there is an error or omission in the entered contents, an error screen is displayed. Select ***Re-enter*** and operate again.

Menu 231

Displaying Internet websites

Internet Connection

- Internet websites not compatible with i-mode may not be displayed correctly.

1 Press [▽] [3 さ DEF] [1 あ /@] on the stand-by display.

- From the next time, the last URL you connected to appears.

2 Enter a URL (up to 256 one-byte characters) and press [●].

- Press [1 あ /@] in the alphabet input mode to enter symbols such as " / ", " . " and " - ". In addition, "http://www.", ".co.jp", ".ne.jp", ".com" and ".html" can be entered by pressing [* ←http:// P] in the alphabet input mode.

INFORMATION

- In the site display, press [Menu] and select ***Go to location*** → ***Enter URL***.
- The available operations on Internet website displays are the same as on i-mode site displays.
- A message is displayed when received data exceeds the maximum size for a page. Press [C] to clear the message and display the received data.

Menu 232

Displaying sites using URL history

URL History

FOMA terminal keeps a record of the last 20 URLs you connected to. You can use URL History to connect to Internet websites.

1 Press [▽] [3 さ DEF] [2 か ABC] on the stand-by display.

2 Select the URL of Internet website to display.

- When a full URL is not displayed, place the cursor at the URL and press [●].

■ Deleting URL history

① Place the cursor at the URL to delete and press [Menu] [4 た GHI] [1 あ /@].

- To delete all, press [Menu] [4 た GHI] [2 か ABC] and enter the terminal security code.

② Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

- In the site display, press Menu and select ***Go to location*** → ***URL history***.
- When the number of recorded URLs exceeds 20, the oldest URL will be overwritten.

Displaying characters correctly

Character Encode

When characters are not displayed correctly on i-mode or Internet web sites, they may be displayed correctly by changing the character encode. Character encode is a generic term for encoding schemes and structure developed for making characters available on computers.

1 While an i-mode or Internet web site is displayed, press Menu 9 WXYZ 5 JKL 1 .@.

- Each press of these keys switches the character encode in the following order: auto switch → SJIS → EUC → JIS → UTF8. If you repeat this operation 5 times, the original display reappears.
- When you display an i-mode or Internet web site, auto switch is set.

INFORMATION

- Some characters may not be displayed correctly even if the above operation is repeated.
- Changing the character encode when characters are displayed correctly may not display the characters correctly.

Registering websites and i-mode sites for quick browsing

Bookmark

If you frequently browse the same pages of sites, you can register them in Bookmark for convenient access later. You can quickly display the pages by only selecting bookmarks.

- Maximum number of bookmarks that can be registered ☛P33
- You cannot register URLs longer than 256 one-byte characters in Bookmark.
- Some sites may not be registered in Bookmark.

Registering in Bookmark

- Sites are registered in one of 20 bookmark folders.

1 Display the site to register and press Menu 2 ABC 1 .@.

2 Select a folder to save the bookmark to.

INFORMATION

- In the screen memo list, screen memo display, or URL history list, press Menu and select ***Add bookmark***. You can also perform the same operation after displaying the URL history list by pressing Menu during site display and selecting ***Go to location*** → ***URL history***.
- When the number of bookmarks exceeds the maximum number, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite registered bookmarks. To register, select the bookmark to overwrite.
- If the same URL exists, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite. Select ***Yes*** to overwrite.

Displaying websites or i-mode sites from Bookmark

1 Press [2 ABC] on the stand-by display.

2 Select a folder.

: No bookmark : Bookmark present

3 Select the bookmark to display.

■ **Checking the URL**

① Place the cursor at the bookmark to check and press [Open].

INFORMATION

● In the site display, press [Menu] and select ***Bookmark*** → ***Display***.

Renaming bookmark folders

1 Press [2 ABC] on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the folder to rename and press [Menu] [3 DEF].

3 Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) and press [Open].

Renaming bookmark titles

• This operation does not change the URL of registered bookmarks.

1 Press [2 ABC] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the bookmark to rename and press [Aa].

3 Enter a title (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters) and press [Open].

- If you save the bookmark without entering a title, the URL is displayed in the bookmark list.
- When the title or URL is longer than 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters, 19 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters followed by "…" are displayed in the bookmark list.

Connecting to sites using simple key sequence

i-mode Shortcut

When you register bookmarks as i-mode shortcut, you can quickly display i-mode or Internet web sites from the stand-by display.

1 Press [2 ABC] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the bookmark to register and press [Menu] [2 ABC].

- To cancel i-mode shortcut, place the cursor at the bookmark to cancel and press [Menu] [2 ABC].

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

3 Select the registration destination.

• The icon number (0 - 9) corresponds to the dial key (0わをん to 9らWXYZ) used to display the site.

INFORMATION

● In the bookmark list, the icon changes from to 0 - 9 when registered.

● You can display the i-mode shortcut list by pressing ▽ 8やTUV 1あ on the stand-by display. To cancel i-mode shortcut, place the cursor at a bookmark, press Menu 1あ, and select *Yes*.

Displaying a site using i-mode shortcut key

1 Press the dial key (0わをん to 9らWXYZ) for an i-mode shortcut number on the stand-by display and press ▽.

■ **Displaying a site from the i-mode shortcut list**

① **Press ▽ 8やTUV 1あ on the stand-by display.**

② **Select a bookmark.**

Deleting bookmarks

• Bookmark folders cannot be deleted.

1 Press ▽ 2かABC on the stand-by display and select a folder.

■ **Deleting all bookmarks**

① **Press Menu 2かABC on the folder list and enter the terminal security code. Go to Step 3.**

■ **Deleting all bookmarks in folder**

① **Place the cursor at a folder, press Menu 1あ, and enter the terminal security code. Go to Step 3.**

2 Place the cursor at the bookmark to delete and press Menu 3さDEF 1あ.

■ **Deleting selected bookmarks**

① **Press Menu 3さDEF 2かABC and select bookmarks.**

• Press ● to select or cancel a bookmark and press Menu to select or cancel all.

② **Press ⊡.**

■ **Deleting all bookmarks in folder**

① **Press Menu 3さDEF 3さDEF and enter the terminal security code.**

3 Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

● If you delete an i-mode shortcut bookmark, the i-mode shortcut registration is canceled.

Moving/copying bookmarks

Bookmarks can be moved to other folders or copied to the miniSD memory card.

Example Moving a bookmark

1 Press ▽ 2かABC on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the bookmark to move and press Menu 6 1.

■ **Moving selected bookmarks**

① **Press Menu 6 2 and select bookmarks.**

• Press ● to select or cancel a bookmark and press Menu to select or cancel all.

② **Press 回.**

■ **Copying a bookmark to miniSD memory card**

① **Press Menu 6 3 1 and select *Yes*.**

■ **Copying all bookmarks to miniSD memory card (backup)**

① **Press Menu 6 3 2.**

② **Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.**

3 Select a folder to move the bookmark to.

Sorting bookmarks

Sort

The bookmark list is temporally sorted. All folders are the target of sorting.

• You can select from ***By access date***, ***By title***, ***By URL***, or ***By access frequency***.

Default By access date

1 Press ▽ 2 on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Press Menu 7 and press 1 to 4.

INFORMATION

● Closing the Bookmark display returns the sorting order to ***By access date***.

● When ***By title*** is set, if one-byte, two-byte, alphabetic, and kanji characters and URL displays without title are mixed in titles, the result may not be in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

Saving site contents

Screen Memo

Saving screen memos

• Maximum number of screen memos that can be saved ☛P33

• The maximum size of a screen memo that can be saved is 100 Kbytes including images etc.

1 Display the site to save as a screen memo and press Menu 4 1.

• The site title is automatically saved. If a site has no title, the screen memo is saved as ***No title***.

INFORMATION

● When the memory for screen memos is not enough or the maximum number of screen memos is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite screen memos saved in FOMA terminal. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the screen memos in FOMA terminal until an available space required for saving is recovered. Protected screen memos are not overwritten.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Displaying screen memos

1 Press 4 on the stand-by display.

2 Select the screen memo to display.

: Ordinary screen memo : Protected screen memo

- The available operations are the same as on site displays with a few exceptions. ☛P188

INFORMATION

- In the site display, press Menu and select ***Screen memo*** → ***Display***.
- To play Flash movie again, press Menu during screen memo display and select ***Display*** → ***Retry***.

Renaming screen memo titles

1 Press 4 on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the screen memo to rename and press .

3 Enter a title (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters) and press .

- When you save the screen memo without entering a title, ***No title*** is displayed in the screen memo list.

INFORMATION

- In the screen memo display, press Menu and select ***Rename title***.

Protecting screen memos

- Maximum number of screen memos that can be protected ☛P33

Example Protecting a screen memo

1 Press 4 on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the screen memo to protect and press Menu 1 1.

The screen memo is protected and the icon changes from to .

- To cancel protection, place the cursor at the screen memo to cancel and press Menu 1 3.

■ Protecting selected screen memos

① Press Menu 1 2 and select screen memos.

- Press to select or cancel a screen memo and press Menu to select or cancel all. You cannot select all screen memos when the maximum number of protected items is exceeded.

② Press .

■ Canceling protection of selected screen memos

① Press Menu 1 4 and select screen memos.

- Press to select or cancel a screen memo and press Menu to select or cancel all.

② Press .

■ Canceling protection of all screen memos

① Press Menu 1 5.

INFORMATION

● All of the protected screen memos are deleted when Delete All Data is performed. ☛P416
● In the screen memo display, press [Menu] and select ***Protect*** or ***Release***.

Deleting screen memos

• Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. When you delete all screen memos, protected ones remain undeleted. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

Example Deleting a screen memo

1 Press [▽] [4 GHI] on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the screen memo to delete and press [Menu] [2 ABC] [1].

■ **Deleting selected screen memos**

① Press [Menu] [2 ABC] [2 ABC] and select screen memos.

• Press [●] to select or cancel a screen memo and press [Menu] to select or cancel all.

② Press [📖].

■ **Deleting all screen memos**

① Press [Menu] [2 ABC] [3 DEF] and enter the terminal security code.

3 Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

● In the screen memo display, press [Menu] and select ***Delete***.

Downloading images from sites and messages

Save Image

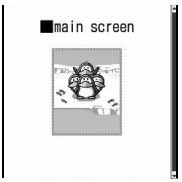
Images or frames can be downloaded and saved from sites, Message R/F or i-αppli. Saved images can be viewed from ***Image*** (My Picture) or set for the stand-by display.

• Maximum number of images that can be saved ☛P33
• The maximum size of an image that can be saved is 100 Kbytes.
• Images in GIF, JPEG or Flash format can be saved.

Example Downloading an image from site

1 Display a site containing an image and press [Menu] [6 MNO].

2 Select the image.



• Image is surrounded with a frame.

3 Select each item to set.

- You cannot change file restrictions for image files downloaded from sites.
- For an image that is prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal (***File restricted*** is displayed), you can change the display name only.
- Display name can contain up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters.
- File name can contain up to 36 characters including one-byte alphanumerics, " . ", " - " and " _ ". However, " . " cannot be used as the first character of file name.
- Comment can contain up to 100 one-byte or two-byte characters.
- To use the image as frame or stamp, select an item to set and press 1 あ/@ or 2 か ABC.

4 Press [Image] and select the folder to save the image to.

- Press [Menu] to display the menu list for setting images for the stand-by display etc. ☛P319

INFORMATION

- You can save an image with the same display name and file name as the saved image file.
- Some items may not be available for setting depending on the image file.
- Some images may not be displayed correctly.
- When displaying a site containing an image wider than the display, the image will be reduced.
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 in GIF format or 1728 x 2304 in JPEG format cannot be saved. Some JPEG images may not be saved.
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 352 x 288 cannot be used as frame. Images with the sizes exceeding 240 x 320 cannot be used as stamp.
- When the memory for images is not enough or the maximum number of images is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete images saved in FOMA terminal. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the images in FOMA terminal until an available space required for saving is recovered.
  - Before deletion, an image can be displayed by pressing [Image] on the image list and detail information on the image can be displayed by pressing [Menu].

Downloading melodies from sites

i-melody

You can download melodies (compatible with i-melody) from sites and play and save them. Saved melodies can be played from ***Melody*** or used as ring tone.

- Maximum number of melodies that can be saved ☛P33
- The maximum size of a melody that can be saved is 100 Kbytes.
- Melodies in SMF or MFi format can be saved.

1 Display a site containing a melody and select the melody.

- You can stop downloading by pressing [Image].

2 Select *Save*.

- To play the melody, select ***Play***.
- To cancel saving, select ***Back***. When a confirmation screen is displayed, select ***No***.

3 Press [Image].

The melody is saved in ***mode*** folder of ***Melody***. ☛P344

- Display name can contain up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters.

INFORMATION

- Some melodies may not play correctly.
- In Silent Mode, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to play the melody. Select ***Yes*** to play at the ring volume for calls set in Ring Volume Setting.
- When the memory for melodies is not enough or the maximum number of melodies is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete melodies saved in FOMA terminal. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the melodies in FOMA terminal until an available space required for saving is recovered.
  - Before deletion, you can play a melody by pressing [📖] on the melody list and view detail information on the melody by pressing [Menu].

Downloading PDF data from sites

You can download PDF data from sites and display and save them. Saved PDF data can be displayed from ***My Documents***.

- Maximum number of PDF data files that can be saved ☛P33
- The maximum size of a PDF data file that can be saved is 2 Mbytes.
- Note that downloading large PDF data may incur high packet communication fees.

1 Display a site containing PDF data and select the data.

The data is downloaded and then displayed on the PDF compatible viewer. ☛P375

- If the same PDF data exists, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite it depending on the data. Select ***Yes*** to overwrite.
- You can stop downloading by pressing [⏻].
- When a password is set for the PDF data, enter the password and press [📖].

2 Press [Menu] [2 かABC].

3 Press [📖] and select the folder to save the PDF data to.

- Display name can contain up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters.
- When ***miniSD*** is displayed in the guide row, press [Mail] to save the data to the miniSD memory card.
- If not all pages are downloaded, the downloaded part is saved.

INFORMATION

- When you download the following PDF data, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to download:
  - The data size exceeds 500 Kbytes
  - Whether the data is displayed correctly is unknown
- When you download PDF data exceeding 2 Mbytes, the download fails and a message appears indicating that the data exceeds the download size limit. If the data size is unknown, up to 2 Mbytes will be downloaded and displayed.
- When the PDF data is downloaded partly, you can download the rest of it by pressing [Menu] [8 TUV] on the data display.
- When a different bookmark or mark is set for the PDF data that you are downloading again, a new bookmark or mark is added. However, when the number of registered bookmarks or marks reaches 10 respectively, a message appears indicating that the limit is reached. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete bookmarks or marks until the number is below the limit.
- If you save the PDF data for which download stopped in the middle due to your pressing [⏻] or communication interruption, you can download it again by selecting the saved data from ***My Documents***. Some PDF data may not be downloaded again.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

● When the memory for PDF data is not enough or the maximum number of PDF data items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete PDF data saved in FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the data in FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card until an available space required for saving is recovered. The network will be disconnected when you delete the PDF data on the miniSD memory card.
・Before deletion, you can view detail information on the data by pressing Menu on the data list.

Downloading Chara-den from sites

Chara-den can be downloaded and saved from sites.
・Maximum number of Chara-den that can be saved ☛P33
・The maximum size of a Chara-den image that can be saved is 100 Kbytes.

1 Display a site containing Chara-den and select the Chara-den.

・You can stop downloading by pressing 📖.

2 Select *Save*.

・To check the Chara-den, select ***Display***.
・To cancel saving, select ***Back***. When a confirmation screen is displayed, select ***No***.

3 Press 📖.

The Chara-den is saved in 📁 ***mode*** folder of ***Chara-den***. ☛P338
・Display name can contain up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters.
・Comment can contain up to 100 one-byte or two-byte characters.

INFORMATION

● When the memory for Chara-den is not enough or the maximum number of Chara-den is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete Chara-den saved in FOMA terminal. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete Chara-den in FOMA terminal until an available space required for saving is recovered.
・Before deletion, Chara-den can be displayed by pressing 📖 on the Chara-den deletion screen and detail information can be viewed by pressing Menu.
・While recording Chara-den, you can download another Chara-den using Multitask but cannot save it. Stop the recording to save the downloaded Chara-den.
● If preinstalled Chara-den has been deleted, it can be downloaded from the i-mode site, “My D-style”. ☛P294

Useful functions of i-mode

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

When phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs are displayed on a screen (site, screen memo, Message R/F, etc.), select them to make voice calls (Phone To) or video-phone calls (AV Phone To), compose i-mode Mail (Mail To), or connect to sites (Web To).
・Some functions may not be available on certain sites.

1 Display a site and select a phone number, mail address, or URL.

・Phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs can be selected only when the cursor can be placed over.

■ **Phone To (AV Phone To)**

The screen for setting Customized Call is displayed.

① **Select each item for Customized Call and set.**

② **Press [Menu] and select *Yes*.**

- Phone numbers of up to 26 digits (or 27 digits for the number beginning with "+") can be selected.

■ **Mail To**

The mail composition screen with the selected mail address set as the receiver is displayed.

① **Compose and send i-mode Mail.**

- SMS cannot be composed.
- When multiple addresses are listed with no space in between, the Mail To function may not be available.
- Mail addresses of up to 50 characters can be selected.

■ **Web To**

You are connected to the selected site.

- URLs of up to about 2,000 characters can be selected.

Copying the URL

Copy the URL of the site or screen memo currently displayed. Copied text can be pasted in entry fields in the mail composition screen, phonebook registration screen, etc.

- Copied text is recorded until FOMA terminal is turned off. You can paste it in other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be saved. When you copy a new item, it overwrites the previously copied text.

Example Copying the URL of current site

1 Display the URL of a site and press [Menu] [1 あ].

2 Select the start position of the copying range and select the end position.

- Press [Menu] before specifying the start position to select all the text.
- Press [クリア] to specify the start position again.
- Press [Menu] or [📖] after specifying the start position to move the cursor to beginning or end of the text.

3 Display a character entry screen and paste the copied text.

INFORMATION

- In the list of URL history, i-mode shortcut, or screen memo, press [Menu] and select ***Copy URL***. In the bookmark list, press [Menu] and select ***Enter URL/Copy URL*** → ***Copy URL***. When you operate from any of these screens, the whole URL is copied.
- To copy the URL of current site to mail, press [Menu] during site display and select ***Compose message***. The mail composition screen is displayed with the URL of the site pasted in the message text.

Registering phone numbers and mail addresses in phonebook

Add to Phonebook

When phone numbers or mail addresses are displayed on a screen (site, screen memo, Message R/F, etc.), you can register them in the phonebook. You can register a new entry or add data to an existing entry.

・You may be able to register the data other than displayed item on certain sites.
・The registered data may be changed when you update an existing entry. Confirm the data in the phonebook edit screen.

Example Registering a phone number or mail address displayed on site

1 Display a site containing a phone number or mail address.
・You can register only highlighted phone numbers or mail addresses.

2 Place the cursor at the phone number or mail address and press Menu 8 TUV 1 あ /@ to register a new entry or Menu 8 TUV 2 か ABC to add to an existing entry.

3 Press 1 あ /@ to register in the FOMA terminal phonebook or 2 か ABC to register in the UIM phonebook.

4 Enter the phonebook data.

■ **New entry**
The selected phone number or mail address is entered.
① **Set the name etc. and save the item.**
・Registering entries in the phonebook ☛P93, P97

■ **Existing entry**
① **Select the phonebook entry to update.**
② **Confirm the data and save the item.**
・Registering entries in the phonebook ☛P93, P97

INFORMATION
● In the screen memo display, press Menu and select ***Phonebook*** → ***Add to phonebook*** or ***Update phonebook***, and in the Message R/F view screen, press Menu and select ***Record*** → ***Add to phonebook*** or ***Update phonebook***.
● To use the phonebook when Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***), entry of the terminal security code is required.

Registering URLs in phonebook

Add URLs to the phonebook from the bookmark list or screen memo list. You can register a new entry or add data to an existing entry.
・The registered data may be changed when you update an existing entry. Confirm the data in the phonebook edit screen.

Example Registering a URL from the bookmark list

1 Press ▽ 2 か ABC on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at a bookmark and press Menu 8 TUV 1 あ /@ to register a new entry or Menu 8 TUV 2 か ABC to add to an existing entry.

3 Enter the phonebook data.

■ **New entry**
① **Set the name etc. and save the item.**
・To check the URL, display ***Other*** screen by pressing ▽.
・Registering entries in the phonebook ☛P93

■ **Existing entry**

① Select the phonebook entry to update.

② Confirm the data and save the item.

- To check the URL, display ***Other*** screen by pressing [▷].
- Registering entries in the phonebook ☛P93

INFORMATION

- In the screen memo list, press [Menu] and select ***Phonebook*** → ***Add to phonebook*** or ***Update phonebook***.
- When displayed from a site display, the URL cannot be saved.
- To use the phonebook when Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***), entry of the terminal security code is required.

Making i-mode settings

i-mode Setting

Menu 282

Setting the connection time out

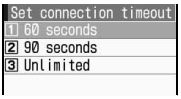
Connection Timeout Setting

Set the timeout for connection to the i-mode Center. If a connection is not established correctly, it is automatically interrupted after the set period of time and you do not need to perform any key operation.

Default 60 seconds

1 Press [▷] [8 TUV や] [2 ABC か] on the stand-by display.

2 Press [1 あ] to [3 DEF さ].



INFORMATION

- Even if you set the connection timeout to ***Unlimited***, a connection with the i-mode Center may be interrupted due to poor signal conditions etc.

Menu 283

Changing the i-mode host

ISP Connection Communication

You do not have to change the settings when using DoCoMo i-mode service.

Default mode(FOMA Card)

■ **About ISP connection communication**

You can connect to various providers (ISP) by changing the host of i-mode terminal of DoCoMo. Packet communication fee is charged for the ISP connection communication.

- Please note that packet communication fee for connection to the ISP will not be included in the Pake-Houdai service.

Note: You do not need to additionally subscribe to DoCoMo.

■ **About provider subscription**

- You need to separately subscribe to a provider to use the ISP connection communication. Contact the provider for details on services (site, Internet connection, mail function, etc.) and subscription.
- Information fee may be charged for some services, but DoCoMo will never charge you for it.
- Your phone number may be notified to the provider for some sites you visit.
- Up to 10 hosts can be registered.
- You cannot make or change the host settings during communication.

1 Press ▽ 8 TUV 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the user host to edit, press Menu, and enter the terminal security code.

■ **Restoring settings for using i-mode**

① **Select *mode (FOMA Card)* and go to Step 5.**

■ **Changing to the previously set host**

① **Select the host and go to Step 5.**

3 Select each item to set and press ▷.

- Host name can contain up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters.
- Access point can contain up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters.
- Host address can contain up to 30 one-byte alphanumeric characters.
- You can delete all contents entered by pressing Menu.

4 Select the edited host.

5 Press ▷.

Menu 291

Setting image display, lighting and sound effects

Image & Effect Setting

You can set image display, lighting and sound effects (when playing Flash movie) on a site, screen memo, Message R/F, etc.

Default Image: Display Animation: Display Use saved data: Yes Set lighting: Terminal settings Sound effect setting: ON

1 Press ▽ 9 WXYZ 1 .@ on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Image : Specifies whether to display images.
- When ***Not display*** is set, ***Animation*** and ***Use saved data*** cannot be set.

Animation : Specifies whether to display animation.

Use saved data : Specifies whether to use the data saved in FOMA terminal for displaying Flash movie.

Set lighting : Sets how the display is illuminated.
- When ***Terminal settings*** is set, Display Light Setting (☛P127) applies.
- When ***Always on*** is set, the display lights up while a site etc. is displayed.

Sound effect setting : Specifies whether to play Flash sounds.

3 Press ▷.

INFORMATION

- In the site display, press [Menu] and select ***Display*** → ***Set image& effect***.
- Images may not be displayed correctly even when you set ***Display*** for ***Image***.
- When ***Not display*** is set for ***Image***, no image or Flash movie is displayed. is indicated in the position of the image.
- When ***Not display*** is set for ***Image***, the images attached to i-mode Mail using the Web To function are not displayed or saved.
- When ***Not display*** is set for ***Animation***, the first image of animation is displayed. Also, Flash movie plays.
- For Message R/F, the image setting applies to images inserted in the message. This setting does not apply to images attached as attachment. The sound effect setting does not have effect on Message R/F, either.
- When ***Yes*** is set for ***Use saved data***, information such as the battery level, received signal level, time, Ring Volume Setting, Select Language, and terminal model may be sent to IPs (Information service providers) via the Internet, which may give the information to third parties.

Menu 292

Setting colors on displayed sites

Display Color Setting

Default Font/BG color: Default Link color: Default

1 Press [▽] [9 WXYZ] [2 ABC] on the stand-by display.

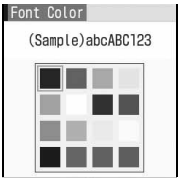
2 Select *Font/BG color* field and press [1 あ].

- To choose not to specify the font/background color, press [2 ABC] and go to Step 5.

Font/BG color : Sets the color of font/background.
- Setting ***Default*** disables ***Font color*** and ***Background color*** settings.

Link color : Sets the link color.
- Setting ***Default*** disables ***Non-visited links***, ***Visited link,*** and ***Cursor Over Item*** settings.

3 Select *Font color* field and select a color.



- Sample is displayed in the selected color.
- Default setting for the font color is black. Select from 16 colors.

4 Select *Background color* field and select a color.

- Default setting for the background color is white. Select from 16 colors.

5 Follow Step 2 to 4 to set the link color.

- Default setting for the link color is blue for ***Non-visited links***, red for ***Visited link***, and white for ***Cursor Over Item***.

6 Press [▭].

INFORMATION

- The link color (for ***Visited link***) is effective when the linked page is recorded. When the record is deleted, the link color (for ***Non-visited links***) applies.
- Depending on the set color, characters may become difficult or impossible to see on some sites. In that case, change the color setting.

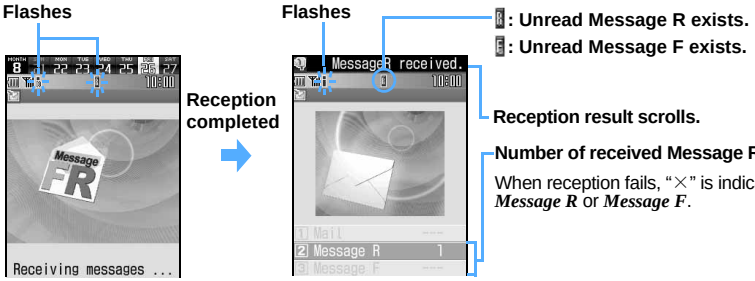
When Message R/F is received

Receive Message R/F

When Message R/F is received, you are informed by the screen display, ring alert, vibrator, and/or call indicator. The received Message R/F is saved in FOMA terminal.

• Maximum number of Message R/Fs that can be saved ☛P33

1 Receive a Message R/F.



R and R or F flash and ***Receiving messages...*** is displayed.

The Message R/F ring alert sounds, the call indicator lights/flashes, and the reception result screen is displayed.

- You can stop reception by pressing [●] on the receiving screen.
- If you do not press any key for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen is displayed or until the ring alert stops, the screen displayed prior to reception automatically reappears. When Auto Display is set, the contents of received Message R/F are displayed before the display returns to the previously displayed screen.
- To return to the previous screen immediately, press [クリア].

INFORMATION

- The receiving screen or reception result screen may not be displayed depending on Display Priority.
- Incoming Message R/F is stored in the i-mode Center in the following cases. To retrieve the stored Message R/F, perform Check i-mode Message.
  - When the power is off
  - During a video-phone call
  - In Self Mode
  - When reception fails
  - While being out of service area
  - While receiving SMS
  - During infrared communication
  - When the storage is filled with unread Message R/F and protected Message R/F
- When the incoming mail/message is set not to be displayed in Information Line Setting or Receive Display, the reception result is not scrolled.
- When the indicator light is set to ***ON*** in Alert Lighting Setting, the call indicator flashes while unread Message R/F exists.

● When FOMA terminal receives Message R/F, the Message R/F in the i-mode Center is deleted.
● When there is not enough space available for Message R/F or the maximum number of Message R/Fs is exceeded, the oldest Message R/F is overwritten. However, unread Message R/F and protected Message R/F are not overwritten. Be sure to protect Message R/F you want to keep.
・If the message cannot be overwritten because storage is filled with unread Message R/F and protected Message R/F, Message R/F reception is stopped. (red) or (red) is indicated on the screen. ☛P25
● If there are remaining Message R/Fs in the i-mode Center, , or (☛P24) is indicated. Note that, sometimes it is not indicated even when there are Message R/Fs. When the maximum number of Message R/Fs that can be stored in the i-mode Center is reached, the icon changes to , or .
The number of messages stored in the i-mode Center ☛P184
● To retry receiving Message R/F that failed to be received in the process, perform Check i-mode Message for Message R/F. When the maximum number of Message R/Fs is exceeded, however, display unread Message R/F, delete unnecessary Message R/F, cancel protection, etc. before retrieval.

Displaying newly-received Message R/F

1 Press 2 か ABC or 3 さ DEF on the reception result screen.

・The received Message R is saved in ***Message R*** and the received Message F is saved in ***Message F***.

2 Select a folder, and select a Message R/F.
・When a melody is attached, it plays automatically. Auto play can be turned off. ☛P268
・Reading the Message R/F screen ☛P210

Menu 2731

Displaying Message R/F automatically

Auto Display

Message R/F contents can be displayed automatically upon reception.
You can set which message takes precedence over others when both Message R and Message F are received.

Default MessageR preferred

Example Displaying only Message R

1 Press ▽ 7 まPQRS 3 さDEF 1 あ@ on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 あ@.
・To display only Message F, press 2 か ABC.
・To display Message R first, press 3 さ DEF.
・To display Message F first, press 4 た GHI.
・To cancel auto display, press 5 な JKL.

INFORMATION

- When Auto Display is set, the contents of received Message R/F are automatically displayed when the Message R/F reception result screen returns to the screen that was displayed prior to reception.
- The contents of Message R/F are displayed for about 15 seconds. If you do not press any key during auto display, the Message R/F is saved as unread.
- Auto display is available only from the stand-by display. When you display a mail or Message R/F from the reception result screen or when you receive a Message R/F using Check i-mode Message, auto display is not performed.
- During Multitask, auto display is unavailable.

Menu 2734

Setting operations for incoming Message R/F

Incoming Msg. Alert

Default Select ring alert: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1) Incoming msg. lighting: Flash/Ocean
Set vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10

1 Press ▽ 7 PQRS 3 DEF 4 GHI on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 for Message R or 2 ABC for Message F.

3 Select each item to set.

Select ring alert : Select ***Melody*** or ***movie ringtone*** and then select a melody or video/i-motion. To disable the ring alert, select ***OFF***.

- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion ☛P112

Incoming msg. lighting

: Sets the lighting pattern and color of the call indicator.

- When you set the lighting pattern to ***Sync melody***, the lighting/flashing color will be ***Rainbow***.

Set vibrate alert : Sets the operation of vibrator.

Ring time (sec) : Sets the duration of ring alert (1 to 30 seconds).

4 Press ▭.

INFORMATION

- Even if you set ***Sync melody*** for ***Incoming msg. lighting*** or ***Set vibrate alert***, synchronization may not occur depending on the melody.
- Incoming Msg. Alert and Sound Setting are interlocked. When the ring alert is changed in Incoming Msg. Alert, Sound Setting is changed similarly.

Menu 271 / Menu 272

Displaying Message R/F in FOMA terminal

Message R/Message F

- If unread Message R/F exists, R or F is displayed on the stand-by display.

Example Displaying a Message R

1 Press ▽ 7 PQRS 1 on the stand-by display.

- To display Message F, press ▽ 7 PQRS 2 ABC.

2 Select the Message R to display.

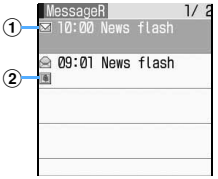
INFORMATION

- When ***Auto play*** is set in Message Attachment, displaying Message R/F with a melody attached plays the melody automatically at the ring volume for calls set in Ring Volume Setting. Press クリア to stop playback.
- When an image is inserted in the message, the image is displayed.
  - The image can be downloaded and saved in FOMA terminal. The operation procedure is the same as for saving images from sites.
  - If you could not receive the image, you can try again. ☛P211
  - If you could not receive the image, an icon is displayed. The icon is the same as when you cannot display images on a site. ☛P186
  - You cannot delete the image in the message.

Reading the Message R/F list/view screen

- Reading Message F is the same as that of Message R.

■ Reading the Message R/F list screen



Page number/total page count is displayed at the top of the Message R/F list screen. Reception date/time and subject are displayed in the message list field.

① : Unread : Read : Protected
② : Image attached : Image + melody attached
: Melody attached : Attachment error

- In the reception date/time column, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.

■ Reading the Message R/F view screen

Status icon, attachment icon, and Message R/F number are displayed at the top of the Message R/F view screen.

: Reception date and time : Subject

- You can display the previous/next Message R/F by pressing .

INFORMATION

- When a file is attached, its icon, file name, file size, etc. are displayed on the view screen.
  - Handling of attachments is the same as for i-mode Mail.

Type	Icon	
Image (☛P245)	: Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal : Cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal	: Image data error
Melody (☛P248)	: Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal : Cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal	: Melody data error

- You can select phone numbers or mail addresses on the view screen to register in the phonebook. In addition, you can select URLs to register in Bookmark. ☛P202, P193
- You can make calls, send i-mode Mail, or display sites using the phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs on the view screen. ☛P201

Reloading images in Message R/F

Reload

Unreceived images in the Message R/F text can be reloaded.

- When ***Not display*** is set for the image in Image & Effect Setting, images cannot be received by reload.
- Some images may not be displayed even if reload is attempted.

1 Display the Message R/F list.

2 Select a Message R/F.

- indicates unreceived image data.

3 Press Menu 1 あ .@ .

The image is loaded.

Protecting Message R/F

Protect Message

- Maximum number of Message R/Fs that can be protected ☛P33
- Unread Message R/F cannot be protected.

Example Protecting a Message R/F

1 Display the Message R/F list.

2 Place the cursor at the Message R/F to protect and press Menu 2 か ABC 1 あ .@ .

The Message R/F is protected and the icon changes from to .

- To cancel protection, place the cursor at the Message R/F to cancel and press Menu 2 か ABC 3 さ DEF.

■ Protecting selected messages

① Press Menu 2 か ABC 2 か ABC and select messages.

- Press ● to select or cancel a message and press Menu to select or cancel all. Selecting all is not possible when the number of unprotected Message R/Fs being saved exceeds the maximum number of protected items.

② Press 📖.

■ Canceling protection of selected messages

① Press Menu 2 か ABC 4 た GHI and select messages.

- Press ● to select or cancel a message and press Menu to select or cancel all.

② Press 📖.

■ Canceling protection of all messages

① Press Menu 2 か ABC 5 な JKL.

INFORMATION

- All of the protected Message R/Fs are deleted when Delete All Data is performed.
- In the Message R/F view screen, press Menu and select ***Protect*** or ***Release***.

Deleting Message R/F

Delete Message

- Protected Message R/F cannot be deleted. When you delete all Message R/Fs, protected messages remain undeleted. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

Example Deleting a Message R/F

1 Display the Message R/F list.

2 Place the cursor at the Message R/F to delete and press Menu 1 1.

■ **Deleting only read messages**

① **Press Menu 1 2.**

■ **Deleting selected messages**

① **Press Menu 1 3 and select messages.**

- Press ● to select or cancel a message and press Menu to select or cancel all.

② **Press ▭.**

■ **Deleting all messages**

① **Press Menu 1 4 and enter the terminal security code.**

3 Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

● In the Message R/F view screen, press Menu and select ***Delete***.

Selecting the type of Message R/F to display

Display by Type

- You can select from ***Display all***, ***Display unread only***, ***Display read only***, or ***Display protected***.

1 Display the Message R/F list.

2 Press Menu 3.

3 Press 1 to 4.

INFORMATION

● Closing the Message R/F list returns the display type to ***Display all***.

● Protected Message R/F is not displayed when you select ***Display read only***.

Operating certificates

Perform the operation of certificates required for the SSL communication.

Menu 284

Displaying certificates and setting certificate validity

Certificate Setting

Default CA Certificate1 to 9 Other than the above: use UIM settings

Displaying a certificate

- User certificate is displayed after it has been downloaded.
- When the blue UIM is inserted in FOMA terminal, ***DoCoMo Cert*** or ***User certificate*** is not displayed.

1 Press ● 8 4 on the stand-by display.

2 Select the certificate to display from the list.

INFORMATION

- CA certificate … A certificate issued by the certifier. It is stored in FOMA terminal by default.
- DoCoMo certificate … A certificate required for connecting to the FirstPass center and FirstPass compatible sites, and saved on the green UIM in advance.
- User certificate … A certificate required for connecting to FirstPass compatible sites. You request the FirstPass center to issue the certificate and download. The downloaded certificate will be saved on the green UIM.
- Certificate contents displayed

  User
  - CN= … (Common Name) Server name, administrator name, or discrimination number
  - O= … (Organization) Company name etc.
  - C= … (Country) Country name

  Issued by
  - CN= … (Common Name) Server name, administrator name, or discrimination number
  - OU= … (Organization Unit) Departments or other positions in the company
  - O= … (Organization) Company name etc.

  Expiration date
  Serial number
- When a certificate has no information on the user, issuer and/or expiration date, only the item names are displayed.

Setting certificate validity

1 Press [▽] [8 TUV] [4 GHI] on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the certificate to set and press [Menu].

- Each press switches validity/invalidity of the certificate.

3 Press [●].

The checked certificate is set as valid.

Menu 285

Setting FirstPass

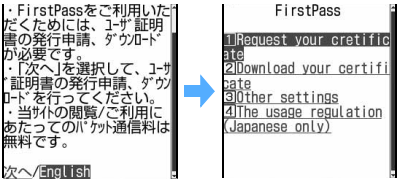
Certificate Download

Connect to the FirstPass center to request and download user certificates.

- Unavailable with the blue UIM.
- Set the date and time before connecting to the FirstPass center.
- The screens and operations displayed by the FirstPass center are subject to change.
- Mail cannot be sent/received and Message R/F cannot be received while being connected to the FirstPass center.

1 Press [▽] [8 TUV] [5 JKL] on the stand-by display.

2 Select *English* and select 1 *Request your certificate*.



Invalidating the issued certificate

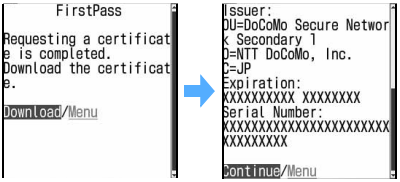
① Select *English* and select 3 *Other settings*.
② Select 1 *Revoke your certificate* and select *Yes*.
③ Enter the PIN2 code and select *Continue*.
④ Select *Continue*.
⑤ Select *Continue*.

3 Select *Continue*.

4 Enter the PIN2 code.

- If the PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the request is canceled.

5 Select *Download* and select *Continue*.



- The downloaded user certificate is added to the certificate list. ☛P212

INFORMATION

- Packet communication fee is not charged for connection to the FirstPass center.
- The user certificate certifies that you have subscribed to the FOMA service. Downloaded user certificate is saved on the green UIM and it can be used in FirstPass compatible sites.
- If you install FirstPass PC software in the attached CD-ROM to your PC, you can connect FOMA terminal to the PC and perform communication using FirstPass. See “FirstPassManual” in the attached CD-ROM for details. To view “FirstPassManual” (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, you can download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website (communication fee is required separately for downloading). See the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.

Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo's electronic authentication service. Using FirstPass allows client authentication, in which a site and the FOMA terminal exchange and verify each other's certificate for authenticating each other.
- FirstPass can be used for Internet communication using FOMA terminal and for Internet communication using the FOMA terminal that is connected to a PC. To use FirstPass with a PC, FirstPass PC software in the attached CD-ROM is needed.
- When requesting a user certificate, be sure to read "FirstPass usage regulation" displayed on the screen and accept the terms and conditions.
- Use of a user certificate requires entry of the PIN2 code.
- All operations made after the entry of the PIN2 code are regarded as operations you made. Use abundance of caution not to let the UIM or PIN2 code used by any third party.
- If the UIM is lost or stolen, you can have the user certificate nullified at a DoCoMo Shop.
- In no circumstances shall DoCoMo have any obligation or held responsible for sites and information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. Any issue that arises must be settled between you and the FirstPass compatible site concerned.
- Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier provides any guarantee for security etc. in use of FirstPass or SSL. Use the services on your own judgment and responsibility.

Menu 286

Changing the certificate host

Certificate Host

If you use services other than FirstPass, set the connection destination. If you change this setting, you cannot connect to the FirstPass center.

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

Default DoCoMo

1 Press [▽] [8 TUV] [6 MNO] on the stand-by display.

2 Select *HOST* field and press [2 ABC].

・To restore settings for connecting to FirstPass, press [1 あ] and go to Step 5.

3 Select *User host* field and enter the connection destination (up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters).

4 Select *User host URL* field and enter the URL (up to 100 one-byte alphanumeric characters).

5 Press [▽].

MEMO

Mail

FOMA terminal mail function 218
Displaying Mail menu ..... Mail Menu 224

Composing i-mode Mail/Deco-mail

Composing and sending i-mode Mail ..... Compose Message 225
Composing and sending Deco-mail ..... Deco-mail 227
Attaching files ..... Attachment 233
Using mail templates 236
Saving i-mode Mail for sending later ..... Save Mail 238
Composing mail quickly ..... Quick Mail 239

Receiving and handling i-mode Mail

Receiving i-mode Mail ..... Mail Auto Receive 240
Selecting i-mode Mail to receive ..... Receive Option 242
Checking for mail ..... Check i-mode Message 243
Replying to received i-mode Mail ..... Reply to Mail 243
Forwarding received i-mode Mail ..... Forward Mail 244
Displaying and saving attached still images ..... Display/Save Image 245
Playing and saving i-motion from i-motion Mail 246
Playing and saving attached melodies ..... Play/Save Melody 248
Deleting attachments ..... Delete Attachment 249

Using the mail box

Displaying mail in Inbox/Outbox ..... Inbox/Outbox 250
Useful functions of mail 259

Setting mail

Setting mail functions of FOMA terminal ..... Mail Setting 261

Using chat mail

Composing and sending chat mail ..... Chat Mail 270

Using SMS (Short Message Service)

Composing and sending SMS ..... Compose SMS 276
When SMS is received ..... Receive SMS 278
Checking for SMS ..... Check SMS 279
Making SMS settings ..... SMS Setting 279
Saving SMS to the UIM ..... Save SMS to UIM 280

FOMA terminal mail function

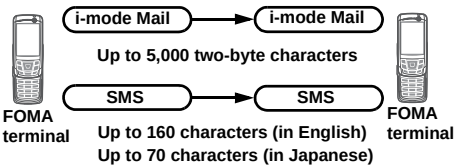
FOMA terminal provides 2 mail functions: i-mode Mail and SMS.

- To use i-mode Mail, an i-mode subscription is required.
- You can use SMS without an i-mode subscription.

Sending and receiving mail

FOMA terminal → FOMA terminal

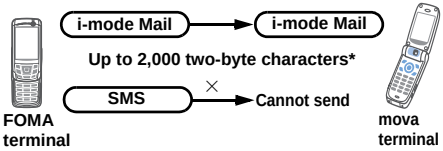
You can use both i-mode Mail and SMS.



FOMA terminal → mova terminal

The i-mode Mail function is used for message transmission from FOMA terminal to mova terminal.

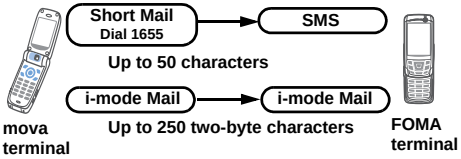
Note: SMS cannot be sent from FOMA terminal to mova terminal.



* The limit differs according to the settings of mova terminal.

mova terminal → FOMA terminal

FOMA terminal can receive i-mode Mail and Short Mail sent from mova terminal. Short Mail is received as SMS.



Note: Short Mail Service allows the exchange of text messages between DoCoMo mobile phones.

- Short Mail cannot be sent from FOMA terminal. Even when you dial 1655, Short Mail cannot be sent.
- FOMA terminal receives Short Mail sent from mova terminal as SMS.

i-mode Mail

i-mode subscribers can send and receive mail to and from other i-mode terminals (including mova) or via Internet e-mail.

The mail address for i-mode subscribers is constructed as follows:

When you newly subscribe to i-mode

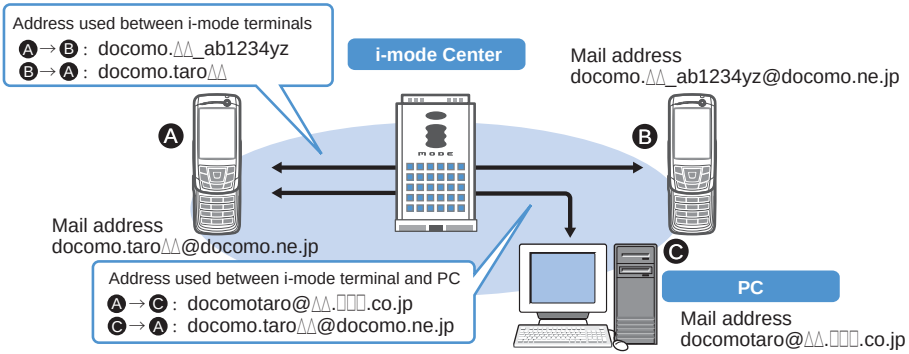
The part of the address preceding the @ symbol is a combination of random alphanumeric characters. Be sure to check your mail address after subscribing to i-mode.

Example: abc1234-789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

- **How to check your mail address (See "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" you received when you subscribed to i-mode for details.)**

  iMenu → *ENGLISH* → 4*Options* → 1*Mail Settings* → *Confirm Mail Address*

- For mail exchange between i-mode terminals (including mova), mail can be sent also with the part preceding the @ symbol in the address.
- For receiving e-mail from a PC, the entire address including @docomo.ne.jp is used.



・Sending mail ☛P225　・Receiving mail ☛P240

■ **Receiving selected mail**

You can check the subject of i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center and select the mail to receive or delete without receiving it. ☛P242

Setting mail

The following settings can be made for mail:

Setting procedure
iMenu → *ENGLISH* → 4*Options* → 1*Mail Settings* → 【Each settings below】

・For details, see "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" you received when you subscribed to i-mode.

■ **Changing the mail address [*Change Mail Address*]**

You can change the part preceding the @ symbol to another address like "docomo.△△_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp".

■ **Registering a secret code [*Mail Address* (*Other Settings*) → *Register a Secret Code*]**

When you use the phone number address, a 4-digit secret code can be registered in addition to the mail address. Since mail with no secret code specified is not received, you can avoid receiving unnecessary mail.

■ **Resetting the mail address [*Mail Address* (*Other Settings*) → *Reset Mail Address*]**

You can set your mail address to "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp".

■ **Checking mail address [*Confirm Mail Address*]**

You can check your current mail address.

■ **Receiving/rejecting specified mail**

You can restrict incoming mail by setting to receive/reject mail in one of the following method:

① **Receiving mail from specified domains**

[*Receiving Mail* (*Reject/Receive Mail Settings*) → *Receive Mail from Selected Domains*]

・You can receive only the mail through the specified carrier(s) out of au, Vodafone, TU-KA, and WILLCOM.

・Of the mail through carriers other than above, those from the specified domain(s) are received.

Note: Mail from NTT DoCoMo's i-mode, i-shot, charge notice service, e-billing charges notification, and M-stage visual net is all received.

② **Receiving/rejecting mail from specified addresses**

[*Receiving Mail* (*Reject/Receive Mail Settings*) → *Receive Selected Mail*, *Reject Selected Mail*]

- Of all received mail, you receive/reject only those from the specified address.

③ **Receiving/rejecting only i-mode Mail**

[*Receiving Mail* (*Reject/Receive Mail Settings*) → *Receive only i-mode mail*, *Reject only i-mode mail*]

- You receive (reject mail via the Internet)/reject mail only between i-mode terminals.

④ **Rejecting mass i-mode Mail senders**

[*Receiving Mail* (*Other Settings*) → *Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders*]

- The 200th and later i-mode Mail messages sent from an i-mode terminal (including mova) in a single day are rejected. The initial setting is ***Reject*** and you do not need to make any settings to reject mail from large-volume senders.

⑤ **Rejecting Unsolicited Ad Mail (mail with 未承諾広告※)**

[*Receiving Mail* (*Other Settings*) → *Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail*]

- Unsolicited mail sent for the purpose of advertising and publicity without receiver's consent that is marked with "未承諾広告※" at the beginning of the subject can be accepted/rejected. The initial setting is ***Reject*** and you do not need to make any settings to reject such mail. (The sender is required by law to add 未承諾広告※ (6 two-byte characters) at the beginning of the subject.)

Note: Only one of ***Receive Mail from Selected Domains***, ***Receive Selected Mail***, ***Reject Selected Mail***, ***Receive only i-mode mail***, and ***Reject only i-mode mail*** can be set at the same time.

⑥ **Rejecting SMS [*Receiving Mail* (*Other Settings*) → *Set/Confirm SMS Rejection Settings*]**

- You can set to reject all SMS or only SMS without caller ID, and confirm the current settings.

■ **Checking current settings [*Confirm Settings*]**

You can check the current settings for receiving/rejecting mail, etc.

■ **Restricting mail size [*Limit Mail Size*]**

You can restrict the i-mode Mail you receive to a specified size.

■ **Suspending i-mode Mail function [*Suspend Mail*]**

If you do not use the mail function, you can stop it in the i-mode Center.

Number of characters that can be sent/received

The number of characters that can be sent and received in i-mode Mail is as follows:

Item	One-byte characters (alphanumeric, katakana, etc.)	Two-byte characters (kanji, hiragana, pictograms, etc.)
Subject	30 characters	15 characters
Mail address	50 characters	—
Message	10,000 characters	5,000 characters

INFORMATION

- The message of i-mode Mail can contain up to 5,000 two-byte characters (10,000 bytes) but the maximum number of characters may be smaller depending on the size of any attachments.
- When the message exceeds the number of characters that can be received, " / " or " // " is inserted at the end and the remainder of the message is deleted automatically.
- When you send i-mode Mail to a mova terminal, the message can contain up to 2,000 two-byte characters. Any attachments are deleted other than still images and videos sent as i-shot Mail and i-motion Mail containing a URL.
- When the subject exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be received, the excessive characters are deleted.
- Except for exchanges between i-mode terminals (including mova), do not use one-byte katakana characters or pictograms. They may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.

When you cannot receive mail

The i-mode Mail received by the i-mode Center is immediately sent to your i-mode terminal. However, when you cannot receive mail because the terminal is turned off or out of the service area, or when Receive Option Setting is on, i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center.
When mail is stored in the i-mode Center, it is resent a maximum of 3 times at a certain interval. You can also set to select i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center and receive.

INFORMATION

- The maximum number of i-mode Mail items and the period they are stored at the i-mode Center are as follows:

Item	Maximum number of items	Maximum storage period
i-mode Mail	207 to 1,000 (up to approx. 2 MB)	720 hours

- i-mode Mail is automatically deleted after the maximum storage period expires.
- The maximum number of items that can be stored depends on the size of i-mode Mail. When the maximum number of items is exceeded, the i-mode Center no longer accepts i-mode Mail and returns it to the sender together with an error message. At this time, or is indicated on your i-mode terminal. When Receive Option Setting is on, however, or is not indicated even if the maximum number is exceeded.
- You can use Check i-mode Message or Receive Option to receive i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center. In addition, if new mail arrives, you can receive it with other stored mail and Message R/F.
- When the i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center is received by your i-mode terminal, the mail is deleted from the i-mode Center. The received mail is stored in your i-mode terminal.
- Extremely large volume i-mode Mail may not be accepted by the i-mode Center.

Other convenient functions

■ Mail with attachments

- **Attaching melodies to mail**

  You can send/receive melody files downloaded from i-mode or Internet web sites by attaching them to i-mode Mail (you cannot send melody files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).

  ・Sending ☛P233　・Receiving ☛P248

- **Attaching images to mail**

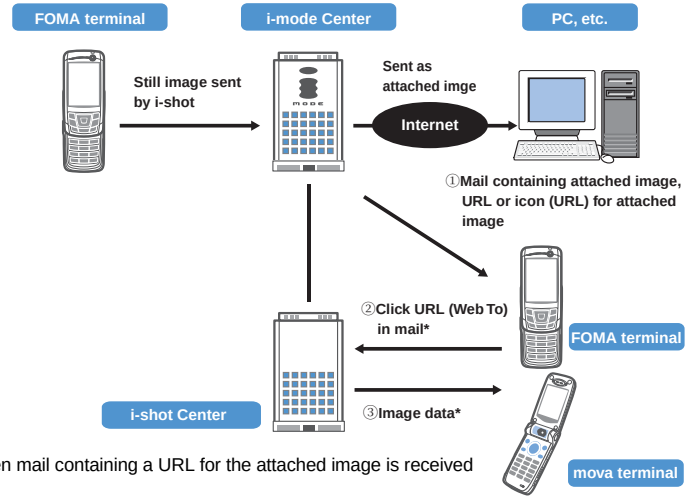
  You can send/receive still image files obtained from i-mode or Internet web sites, or external memory by attaching them to i-mode Mail (you cannot send still image files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).

  ・Sending ☛P233　・Receiving ☛P245

■ i-shot

Still images shot by a terminal with the camera function can be attached to mail and sent/received to/from i-mode terminals (including mova), PCs, or other company's mobile phones. The still images are sent as attachments. Or mail containing a URL (or icon) for viewing the still image is sent with the storage period specified. Click the received URL to download the image.
The maximum number of characters that can be sent to a mova terminal is 184 two-byte characters (369 bytes). If you attach multiple files to mail to a mova terminal, the attachments are deleted from the mail and only the message text is notified.

・Sending ☛P233　・Receiving ☛P245



* When mail containing a URL for the attached image is received

- The i-shot Center stores images for a maximum period of 10 days and deletes the images automatically after that period.
- i-mode terminals can send still image files of up to 500 Kbytes. When you send an image exceeding 20 Kbytes as mail attachment to an i-mode terminal, the image will be automatically reduced and downloaded to the receiver's terminal.

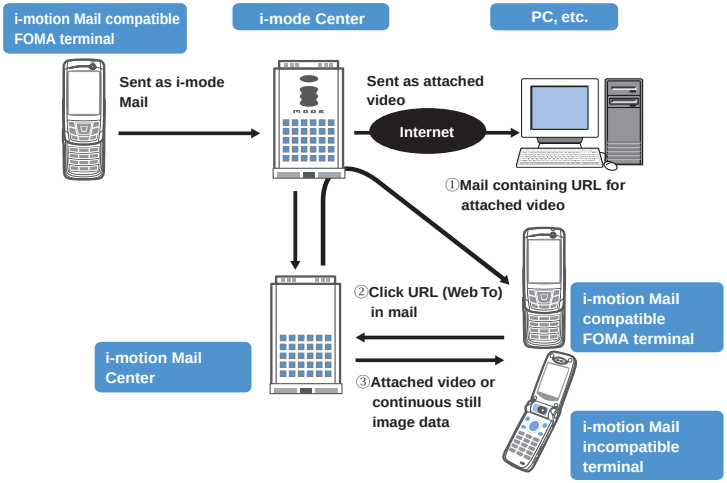
■ i-motion Mail

Videos recorded with an i-motion Mail compatible terminal or downloaded from sites can be sent/received to/from i-motion Mail compatible terminals, PCs, or other company's mobile phones (you cannot send video files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).

・Sending ☛P233 ・Receiving ☛P246

- **Service schematic**

Video files attached to i-motion Mail are sent to the i-motion Mail Center and stored there (if the destination is a PC, the file is directly sent to the PC as an attachment).
When i-motion Mail is received by an i-motion Mail compatible terminal, the video can be downloaded by clicking the URL displayed in the message text.
When received by a non-compatible terminal, the video is converted to continuous still images and received as mail containing a URL. The receiver can download the continuous still images by clicking the displayed URL.



- The i-motion Mail Center stores images for a maximum period of 10 days and deletes the images automatically after that period.
- i-motion Mail compatible terminals can receive video files of up to 500 Kbytes. When attached videos are downloaded, the image sizes are automatically changed to fit the terminal screen.

■ **Deco-mail**

You can compose and send your original i-mode Mail messages by changing the character size and background color and by inserting images in the text, and enjoy receiving decorated mail (when decorated mail is received from a PC, operations may not be the same as on PC because some decorations are not supported by i-mode terminals).

When Deco-mail is sent to a non-compatible terminal, it is received as mail containing a URL. The receiver can view Deco-mail by clicking the displayed URL.

・Editing Deco-mail ☛P227　・Sending Deco-mail ☛P227

・Models supporting Deco-mail: 90Xi series, 70Xi series, F880iES*

* F880iES supports receiving Deco-mail only.

■ **Sending mail to multiple addresses**

You can send i-mode Mail to multiple addresses (up to 5) at one time. ☛P226

- The communication fee is the same as for sending one mail (however, the communication fee increases corresponding to the information volume for additional addresses).

■ **Sending/receiving CC and BCC**

When editing i-mode Mail, you can select the receiver type from TO, CC and BCC in the same way as on PCs. If there is no TO address, however, mail cannot be sent. ☛P226

■ **Chat mail**

Mail can be sent and received to/from multiple addresses like making conversation.

- The communication fee for chat mail to/from multiple addresses is the same as for sending mail to multiple addresses at one time.

SMS

Text messages can be exchanged between FOMA terminals.

・Sending ☛P276　・Receiving ☛P278　・Checking for SMS ☛P279

Address of SMS

The address of SMS is the “subscribing mobile phone number”.

- You can exchange SMS via overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. For more information, please visit the DoCoMo website.

Number of characters that can be sent/received

The maximum number of characters is different depending on the font type setting (☛P279).

Item	English	Japanese
Address	20 characters (numbers only)	
Message	160 one-byte characters*	70 characters regardless of one- or two-byte

* One-byte alphanumerics and symbols (except for 。「」、・゛and °) can be sent. When symbols (| ^ { } [ ] ~ and ¥) are entered, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced.

INFORMATION

● You cannot send a subject via SMS.

● If you use one-byte katakana or pictograms in SMS, the receiver may not be able to display them correctly.

When you cannot receive SMS

SMS sent to your FOMA terminal is received by the SMS Center and sent to your FOMA terminal immediately. When you cannot receive messages because the terminal is turned off or outside the service area, the messages are stored in the SMS Center.

INFORMATION

- The SMS Center stores messages for a maximum of 72 hours. The sender can specify the storage period. ☛P279
- The messages are automatically deleted after the maximum storage period expires.
- You can use Check SMS to receive the messages stored in the SMS Center. ☛P279
- When FOMA terminal receives the messages stored in the SMS Center, the messages are deleted from the Center. Received SMS is stored in FOMA terminal.

Other convenient functions

■ **Delivered report**

You can receive a delivery report that informs whether the other party has received the sent SMS. ☛P279

■ **Saving to the UIM**

You can save received and sent SMS to the UIM. ☛P280

Menu 1

Displaying Mail menu

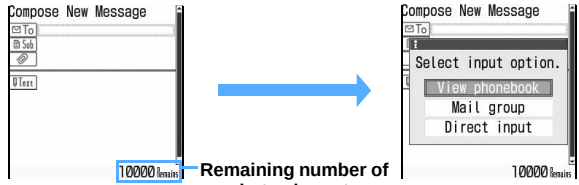
Mail Menu

You can select various mail functions of FOMA terminal from Mail menu. Shortcut operations are available for some functions.

1 Press ✉ on the stand-by display.

Menu	Description	Page
Inbox	Displays received mail.	P250
Compose message	Composes and sends new i-mode Mail.	P225
Chat mail	Mail can be exchanged as if having a conversation with friends.	P270
Unsent messages	Displays the mail saved without sending or that failed to be sent.	P250
Outbox	Displays sent mail.	P250
Check new message	Checks for mail or Message R/F at the i-mode Center or for SMS at the SMS Center. Also sets items of message retrieval from the i-mode Center and Receive Option.	P243, P279
SMS	Composes and sends new SMS, makes SMS settings and displays received/sent SMS in the UIM.	P276
Read templates	Displays templates and composes mail.	P237
Mail setting	Sets various mail functions.	P261

1 Hold down ✉ for over a second on the stand-by display and select To field.



2 Select *Direct input* and enter the address (up to 50 one-byte characters).

- When sending mail to an i-mode terminal, you may omit "@docomo.ne.jp" in the mail address.
- In 5-touch Input Method, press 1 in the alphabet input mode to enter symbols such as "@", " .", and " - " frequently used in addresses. In addition, ".co.jp", ".ne.jp", ".com", etc. can be entered by pressing * in the alphabet input mode.
- When the other party has registered a secret code, enter the other party's i-mode terminal phone number followed by the 4-digit secret code.

■ Searching the phonebook

① **Select *View phonebook*.**

② **Search the phonebook and select a mail address.**

■ Using a mail group

Mail addresses must be registered in a mail group in advance.

① **Select *Mail group*.**

② **Select a mail group to enter mail addresses.**

- If the total of entered addresses exceeds 5, the mail group cannot be added.
- Press Menu to check the mail group details.

3 Select Sub field and enter the subject (up to 30 one-byte or 15 two-byte characters).

4 Select Text and enter the message (up to 10,000 one-byte or 5,000 two-byte characters).

- When a file is attached, the number of characters that can be entered is reduced.
- Line feeds can be inserted in the message. Press # to enter a line feed in 5-touch Input Method. A line feed is counted as a character in the message.
- A space is also counted as a character in the message.
- Text can be decorated. ☛P227

■ Inserting a signature

① **Press Menu 5.**

- Signature must be registered beforehand. ☛P264
- The signature text is counted as characters in the message.

5 Press ✉.

- Press ⏻ on the connection screen to stop connection. Press ✉ on the sending screen to stop sending. Note that the i-mode Mail may be sent depending on the operation timing.

INFORMATION

- You can also compose i-mode Mail by placing the cursor at the phonebook entry containing a mail address and pressing ✉.
- You can use fixed phrases to enter face marks, greetings and replies in the message.
- When mail larger than 10,000 bytes is automatically saved due to conflict with other applications, part of the mail being composed may not be saved.
- Depending on signal conditions, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- Even if i-mode Mail is sent correctly, ***Transmission failed***. may be displayed depending on signal conditions.
- When a phrase including a line feed is inserted in the message text being composed, the line feed is replaced by a one-byte space.
- Except for exchanges between i-mode terminals (including mova), do not use one-byte katakana characters or pictograms. They may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- Depending on the model of the receiver's i-mode terminal, some pictograms may not be displayed correctly.
- When transmission fails, an error message is displayed and the i-mode Mail is saved in Unsent messages. You can edit and send i-mode Mail from Unsent messages.
- When transmission is completed correctly, the i-mode Mail is saved in Outbox. When there is not enough available storage space in Outbox, or the maximum number of sent mail is exceeded, the oldest sent mail is overwritten. However, protected mail is not overwritten. Be sure to protect sent mail you want to keep.
- An error message for address unknown etc. may not be received when mail is sent to addresses other than DoCoMo.
- To use the phonebook when Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- When there is not enough available storage space in Unsent messages, or the maximum number of unsent mail is exceeded, i-mode Mail cannot be composed. Delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and/or SMS from Unsent messages. ☛P259
- You can change TO, CC and BCC of the address. ☛P227
- Mail can be composed quickly using templates. ☛P236
- You can compose and send i-mode Mail easily to the parties saved to the phonebook No. 0 to 99 (Quick Mail).

Adding receivers

Add Address

You can send i-mode Mail to up to 5 addresses at one time (multi-address transmission).

- The receiver can be one of the 3 types: To (TO), Cc (CC) and Bcc (BCC).
  - In To field, enter the main address.
  - In Cc field, enter the address to which you want to send a copy of the mail.
  - In Bcc field, enter the address to which you want to send a copy of the mail but which you do not want to be known to other receivers.
- Mail with no address entered in To field cannot be sent.

1 Place the cursor at the address field on the mail composition screen and press ✉.

Address field is added.

- Repeat operation until the number of fields you want is added.

Adding CC and BCC

① **Press** Menu 6 MNO.

② **Select an input method.**

③ **Select *CC* or *BCC* and enter a mail address.**

- Also ***TO*** can be selected.
- When ***Mail group*** is selected, the registered mail address is displayed for TO, CC and BCC.

■ **Changing TO, CC and BCC**

① **Place the cursor at the address to change and press Menu B.**

② **Select a new address type.**

■ **Deleting the added address field**

① **Place the cursor at the address field to delete and press Menu 7.**

② **Select *Yes*.**

- Only the address is deleted when there is only one address field.

2 Enter the address in the added field and send the mail.

- Operation is the same as when there is only one address field.

INFORMATION

- The mail address entered in To field and Cc field can be seen at the receiver side. However, it may not be displayed depending on the terminal, device, or mailing software.
- When sending of mail to some addresses fails, an error message is displayed. Pressing ● may display a list of mail addresses for which transmission failed.

Composing and sending Deco-mail

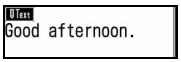
Deco-mail

You can decorate the i-mode Mail message by changing font size, font color, or background color and inserting still images including the ones shot with the camera to compose Deco-mail. Deco-mail can be composed in 2 ways: entering characters after specifying decoration (☛P228) and setting decoration after selecting entered characters (☛P232). The composed Deco-mail can be viewed with the preview function.

■ **Examples of decoration**

❶Changing font color

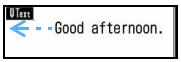
❷Changing font size



❸Inserting images

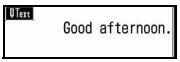
❹Blinking characters

❺Setting ticker

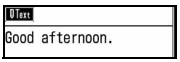


❻Swinging characters right and left

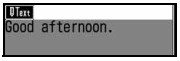
❼Changing word alignment



❽Inserting lines (ruled lines)



❾Changing background color



■ **Flow of Deco-mail composition**

Step 1 Display the message text entry screen

Start composing i-mode Mail and display the message text entry screen.

Step 2 Enter decorated characters and images

Press [✉], select the decoration method and enter characters.

Step 2 Enter characters and decorate

Press [Text] at the start position of decoration range and press [●] at the end position. Select the decoration method.

• Press [Menu] [8 TUV] during editing to check the decoration.

Step 3 Confirm the decoration and send

Check the decoration on the mail composition screen.

INFORMATION

- Even if you delete decorated characters, the decoration data remains and the number of characters to be entered may be fewer. Cancel the decoration first and delete characters. Holding down [クリア] for over a second deletes the characters and decoration at the same time.
- The actions of decoration such as blink, ticker, swing, and animation in the mail composition screen or the preview screen stop automatically after a certain period of time.
- When mail is sent and received from other than Deco-mail compatible FOMA terminal such as PC, the decoration may not be correctly displayed.

Entering characters after specifying decoration method

1 Select [Text] on the mail composition screen.

2 Press [✉].

3 Select the decoration and enter characters.

Decoration selection screen

Place the cursor at an icon on the decoration selection screen and press [●] to select a decoration. You can set more than one decoration by selecting multiple icons. However, ***Ticker***, ***Swing*** and ***Word alignment*** cannot be selected at the same time.

- To set more than one decoration continuously, place the cursor at an icon on the decoration selection screen and press [Menu].
- To cancel a selected decoration and enter characters, place the cursor at the character entry position, press [✉] and press [Text]. Only ***Font color***, ***Font size***, ***Blink***, ***Word alignment*** (in blank line), ***Ticker*** (in blank line) and ***Swing*** (in blank line) can be canceled.

Font color	: Changes the color of characters and lines (ruled lines) inserted.
Font size	: Changes the font size.
Insert image	: Inserts images.
Blink	: Displays characters that blink.
Ticker	: Displays characters in a ticker (ticker display).
Swing	: Displays characters that swing right and left.
Word alignment	: Changes the position of characters or images inserted.
Insert line	: Inserts separating lines (ruled lines).
Background color	: Changes the background color.
Back to original	: Restores the previous condition.

4 Press Menu 8 TUV and check the decoration.

You can check the set decoration and the accurate remaining number of bytes that can be entered.

5 After checking the decoration, press ●.

■ **Changing the decoration**

① **Press Menu 1 あ 8 TUV, move the cursor to the start position and press ●.**

- Follow the procedure from Step 3 in “Decorating characters after specifying range”. ☛P232

■ **Canceling all decorations**

① **Press Menu 1 あ 9 WXYZ.**

6 Press ●.

7 Press 📖.

- You can save the mail as a template without sending. ☛P237

INFORMATION

● You can also select decorations by pressing Menu on the message text entry screen and selecting ***Decorate mail***.

Operations on the decoration selection screen

- The number in parentheses ( ) indicates the example of decoration in P227.

■ **Changing font color (example of decoration ❶)**

① **Select ■.**

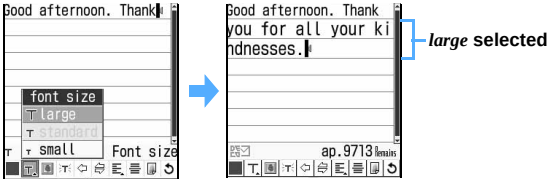
② **Select a color and enter characters.**

- Select from 20 standard colors or 64 colors in ***Other color***.
- The color of pictograms is also changed. To return to the original color, specify the range and select ***Default***. ☛P232

■ **Changing font size (example of decoration ❷)**

① **Select T↑ (or T↓).**

② **Select a size and enter characters.**



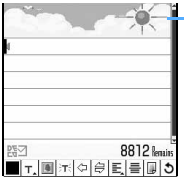
***large* selected**

Inserting images (example of decoration ❸)

① **Select** .

② **Select *Phone memory*, and select a folder and then an image.**

- To insert an image saved in the miniSD memory card, select ***miniSD card***, press 1 あ or 2 かABC, and select a folder and then an image.
- To take and insert a still image, select ***Use still camera*** and shoot. The size of still image is automatically set to 96 x 72 (phonebook).



The image is inserted at the position specified with word alignment ( ).

- You cannot select video/i-motion or an image larger than the attachable data size.

青空 **(Blue sky) in *Deco-Mail picture* folder inserted**

Making characters blink (example of decoration ❹)

① **Select and enter characters.**

The entered characters are blinking.

Making characters into ticker to run from right to left (example of decoration ❺)

① **Select and enter characters.**

- Enter characters between and .

Making characters swing right and left (example of decoration ❻)

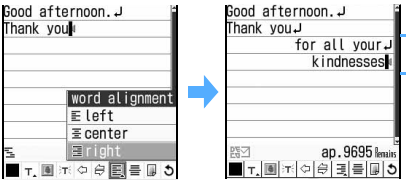
① **Select and enter characters.**

- Enter characters between and .

Changing word alignment (example of decoration ❼)

① **Select (or).**

② **Select the display position of characters and enter characters.**



- When characters are already entered and the cursor is placed between characters, a new blank line is started at the selected position.

***right* selected**

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

■ **Inserting lines (ruled lines) (example of decoration ❽)**

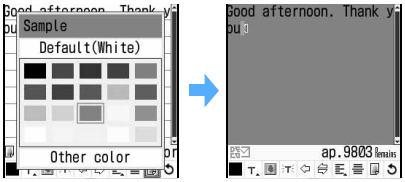
① **Select ☰.**

A line (ruled line) is inserted in the color specified with font color (■).

Line (ruled line)

■ **Changing text background color (example of decoration ❾)**

① **Select and select a color.**



- Select from 20 standard colors or 64 colors in ***Other color***.

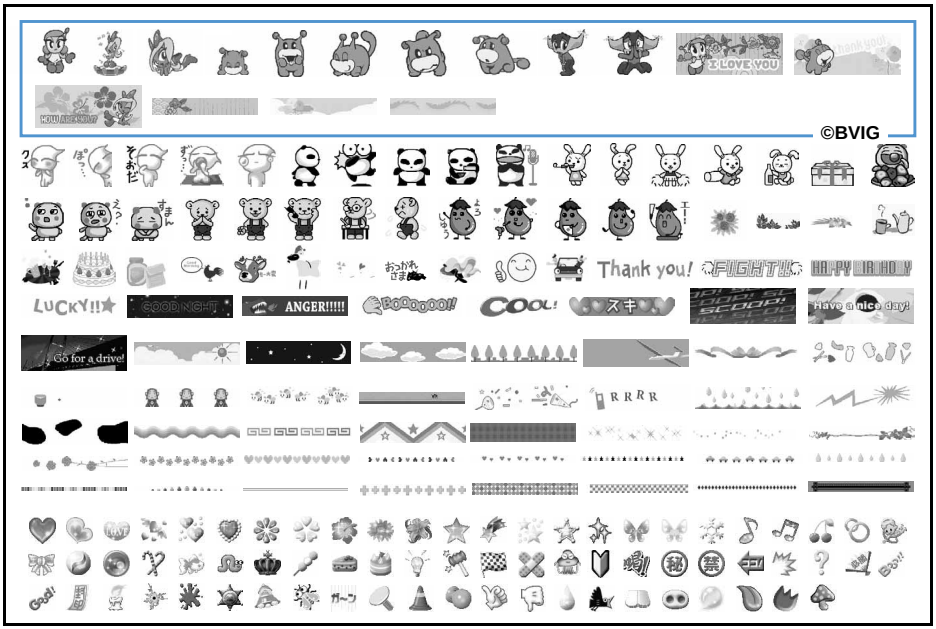
■ **Restoring the previous condition**

① **Select ↺.**

Only the last decoration or characters entered are canceled.

■ **Images in *Deco-Mail picture* folder**

- The following images are saved in ***Deco-Mail picture*** folder by default. If preinstalled images are deleted, they can be downloaded from the i-mode site, “My D-Style”. ☛P294



Decorating characters after specifying range

You can decorate characters or change the decoration of characters in the message text.

- The number in parentheses ( ) in Step 4 indicates the example of decoration in P227.
- You cannot insert lines or images, or change the background color. Specify the decoration first.

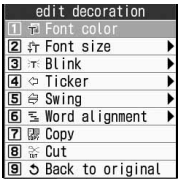
1 Select Text on the mail composition screen.

2 Place the cursor at the start position of character range to decorate and press .

3 Place the cursor at the end position of character range to decorate and press .

- To move the cursor to beginning of the text, press Menu.
- To move the cursor to end of the text, press .
- To select all the text, press .

4 Select the decoration method.



- The procedure for confirming and canceling decorations are the same as when entering characters after specifying decoration. ☛P228
- To change the font color (example of decoration ❶), press 1 あ and select a color.
  The color of lines (ruled lines) is also changed.
- To change the font size (example of decoration ❷), press 2 か and press 1 あ to 3 さ.
- To make characters blink (example of decoration ❹), press 3 さ 1 あ.
  To cancel, press 3 さ 2 か.
- To make characters into ticker to run from right to left (example of decoration ❺), press 4 た 1 あ.
  To cancel, press 4 た 2 か.
- To make characters swing right and left (example of decoration ❻), press 5 な 1 あ.
  To cancel, press 5 な 2 か.
- To change the word alignment (example of decoration ❼), press 6 は and press 1 あ to 3 さ.
  The display position of image is also changed.
- To copy characters, press 7 ま.
- To cut characters, press 8 や.
- To restore the previous condition, press 9 ら.
  The last decoration or characters entered are canceled.
- To decorate characters continuously, press Menu and repeat Step 4.

5 Press to cancel the specified range and press .

6 Press .

- You can save the mail as a template without sending. ☛P237

INFORMATION

- You can also press Menu on the message text entry screen and select ***Decorate mail*** → ***Edit decoration***.
- Press Menu 8 TUV on the message text entry screen to display the accurate remaining number of bytes that can be entered at the lower right of the screen.

Downloading mail template

Mail templates can be downloaded from sites. There are 30 preinstalled templates on FOMA terminal.

• Maximum number of templates that can be saved ☛P33

1 Select a mail template to download during site display.

• You can stop downloading by pressing 📖.

2 Select *Save*.

• To cancel saving, select ***Back***. When a confirmation screen is displayed, select ***No***.

• To check the template, select ***Display***.

3 Press 📖.

The mail template is saved in ***Read templates***.

• You can overwrite a saved template except the preinstalled ones. Press ✉ and select a template to overwrite.

• Display name can contain up to 20 one-byte or two-byte characters.

• File name can contain up to 36 one-byte characters including alphanumerics, " . ", " - " and " _ ". However, " . " cannot be used as the first character of file name.

INFORMATION

- Mail templates downloaded from sites can be edited on the mail composition screen.
- When the memory for templates is not enough or the maximum number of templates is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete unnecessary templates. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the templates in FOMA terminal until an available space required for saving is recovered.

Attaching files

Attachment

You can send i-mode Mail with still images and melodies attached. You can also send i-motion Mail with video recorded by FOMA terminal attached.

• Attachable files are as shown below:

Item	Melody	Still image of up to 10,000 bytes (JPEG, GIF)*1	Still image exceeding 10,000 bytes and up to 500 KB*1	Video/ i-motion of up to 500 KB*2
Maximum number of files attached to one mail	10*3		1	
Condition of attachment	Melodies (MFi) cannot be attached.	Create animation and continuous shots cannot be attached.	Only still image (JPEG) can be attached.	File with playback restriction set cannot be attached.*4

*1 Depending on the receiver's device (terminal, PC, etc.), still images will be received as attachment to mail or mail containing a URL for the images will be received.
*2 Depending on the receiver's model, video may be degraded or displayed as continuous still images. Playing video/i-motion on PC ☛P494
*3 Up to 10 still images and melodies in total can be attached on condition that the total size including the message text is 10,000 bytes or smaller. The number of files that can be attached, however, may be reduced depending on the size of the attachment.
*4 Some files without playback restriction may not be attached.

- When the remaining data amount that can be entered in the message text (after melodies and still images are attached) is less than 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters (400 one-byte or 200 two-byte characters for Deco-mail), you cannot attach video/i-motion or still images exceeding 10,000 bytes.
- Files prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal (except images with file restriction set with your terminal) and files with the UIM operation restriction set cannot be attached.
- When i-mode Mail with a still image (one JPEG still image) is sent to a mova terminal, it is received as mail containing a URL (i-shot Mail).
- A GIF still image exceeding 10,000 bytes cannot be attached to mail.
- Recorded video of up to 500 Kbytes, except the text, can be attached to i-motion Mail. Video cannot be attached to mail regardless of the file size if the image size is other than 176 x 144 (QCIF) or 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF).
- The data recorded with Sound Recorder is saved as i-motion and can be attached to mail.
- When sent to other than FOMA D901i and D901iS, melodies may not play correctly at the receiver side.

1 Select [📎] field on the mail composition screen.

2 Select the attachment type and select a file.

■ Attaching a still image

① **Select *Image*.**

② **Select *Phone memory* and select a folder.**

- To select from the miniSD memory card, select ***miniSD card***, press [1あ] or [2か], and select a folder.
- To take and attach a still image, select ***Use still camera*** and shoot. Go to Step 3. The size of still image is automatically set to 240 x 320 (stand-by).
- Place the cursor at a still image and press [📖] to display the still image. Press [クリア] to return to the list.
- Still images that cannot be attached are not displayed.

③ **Select a still image.**

File name of the selected still image is displayed in the attachment field of the mail composition screen. Image size and file size of the selected still image are checked in this order.

- For JPEG still image with the image size exceeding 320 x 240 (QVGA), a confirmation screen appears asking whether to reduce it to the stand-by size (QVGA). When file size of the reduced image exceeds 10,000 bytes, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to save the image to Data Box.
  When you do not save it to Data Box or a message saying that saving failed appears, the reduced image is not saved. An unsent mail is saved in Unsent messages with no image attached. Also, a sent mail is saved in Outbox with no image attached.
- For JPEG still image exceeding 500 Kbytes, it is automatically reduced to a size that can be attached to mail, and a confirmation screen appears asking whether to save the image to Data Box.
- When you select a still image exceeding 10,000 bytes and up to 500 Kbytes from the miniSD memory card, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to copy the image to FOMA terminal.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

■ **Attaching video/i-motion (i-motion Mail)**

① **Select *i-motion*.**

② **Select *Phone memory* and select a folder.**

- To select from the miniSD memory card, select ***miniSD card*** and select a folder.
- To record and attach video, select ***Use video camera*** and record. Go to Step 3. The size of video image is automatically set to 176 x 144 (QCIF).
- Place the cursor at video/i-motion and press [📖] to play the video/i-motion. Press [クリア] to return to the list.
- Video/i-motion that cannot be attached is not displayed.

③ **Select a video/i-motion file.**

File name of the selected video/i-motion is displayed in the attachment field of the mail composition screen.

- When you select video/i-motion that cannot be attached from the miniSD memory card, a message saying that the file cannot be selected appears.
- When you select video/i-motion of up to 10,000 bytes from the miniSD memory card, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to copy the file to FOMA terminal.

■ **Attaching a melody**

① **Select *Melody*.**

② **Select *Phone memory* and select a folder.**

- To select from the miniSD memory card, select ***miniSD card*** and select a folder.
- Place the cursor at a melody and press [📖] to play the melody. Press [クリア] to return to the list.
- Melodies that cannot be attached are not displayed.

③ **Select a melody.**

File name of the selected melody is displayed in the attachment field of the mail composition screen.

- When you select a melody that cannot be attached from the miniSD memory card, a message saying that the file cannot be selected appears.

3 Press [📖].

INFORMATION

- Still image exceeding 10,000 bytes can be reduced to 240 x 320 (QVGA). ☛P322
  QVGA is the size of the stand-by display and is suited for sending to an i-mode terminal.
- When you send mail with a JPEG still image exceeding 10,000 bytes attached to an i-mode terminal, the image is reduced in the i-shot Center to a size that can be sent to the i-mode terminal.
- When you send mail with melody or GIF still image attached to a mova terminal, the attached file will be deleted and mail with no attachment will be delivered to the receiver.
- When you try to play a melody in Silent Mode, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to play. Select ***Yes*** to play the melody at the volume set in Settings for melody.

Changing/removing attachments

Example Removing an attachment

1 Display the mail composition screen.

2 Place the cursor at the attachment field to remove and press [✉].

■ **Changing the attachment**

① **Place the cursor at the attachment field to change and press [Attach].**

② **Attach a new file.** **☛P233**

3 Select *Yes*.

Using mail templates

You can register the contents of i-mode Mail in mail template for entering the same sentence at the beginning of messages or sending similar messages many times. You can easily compose i-mode Mail by using mail templates; adding and editing the contents. Deco-mail template is a template for Deco-mail that has the layout, decoration, etc. predefined and allows you to easily compose and send Deco-mail. Deco-mail template is read in the same way as a mail template.

• The following Deco-mail templates are registered by default:

I Love You
©BVIG

Thank You!
©BVIG

How Are You?
©BVIG

ありがとう
(Thank you)

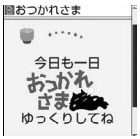
おめでとう！
(Congratulations!)

誕生日おめでとう
(Happy birthday)

元気？
(How are you?)

頑張れ
(Cheer up)

調子はどう？
(How are you doing?)



おつかれさま
(Good job today)

ラッキー！
(Lucky!)

幸せ気分
(I'm happy)

好きです･･･
(I love you)

お願い
(Please!)

電話します
(I'll call you)

お茶しよ～
(Let's have tea)

たまには
(Once in a while...)

旅にでようよ
(Let's take a trip)

遊ぼう
(Let's go out)

ドライブ
(Let's go drive)

おはよ！
(Good morning!)

いい一日を
(Have a nice day)

おやすみ
(Good night)

反省してます
(Sorry)

さみしい
(I miss you)

アッタマきた！
(I'm angry)

忙しい忙しい
(So busy)

モー大変
(It's tough)

飲んでやる！
(I'm gonna get drunk)

ツマンナーイ
(Not funny)

• You can save created templates.

• You cannot use templates for SMS.

Using templates while composing mail

Read Template

You can read templates while composing new i-mode Mail.

• Templates cannot be read while Keypad Dial Lock is set.

1 Press Menu 5 な JKL 1 あ /@ on the mail composition screen.

2 Select the template to read.

: Still image of up to 10,000 bytes : Melody

: Still image of up to 10,000 bytes + melody

- When you read a template on the mail composition screen after entering any text, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite the mail contents. To continue, select ***Read body only*** or ***Read all*** and select a template. Press クリア to stop reading. When ***Read body only*** is selected, only the message text is overwritten with the template. When ***Read all*** is selected, the address, subject, attachment, and message text are all overwritten.
- Multiple templates cannot be read for one mail.

3 Edit and send the mail.

Menu 18

Viewing templates and composing mail

Display a list of registered templates and check the contents to set on the mail composition screen.

- Templates cannot be read while Keypad Dial Lock is set. However, if the mail address entered in the address field of a template is registered in the phonebook, the template can be read.

1 Press ✉ 8 や TUV on the stand-by display.

2 Select the template to display.

- Press ▷ on the template view screen to display the previous or next template.

3 Press 📖.

The contents of the template are set on the mail composition screen.

4 Edit and send the mail.

INFORMATION

- When ***Auto play*** is set in Message Attachment, displaying a template with a melody attached plays the melody automatically at the ring volume for calls set in Ring Volume Setting. Press クリア to stop playing.
- To check or change the template detail information, press Menu on the template list screen and select ***Detail info*** → ***View*** or ***Edit***. The detail information of preinstalled templates cannot be changed.

Saving mail as template

Save Template

Composed mail or received/sent mail can be saved as template.

- Maximum number of templates that can be saved ☛P33
- You can edit and save preinstalled templates as new template.
- Video/i-motion or still images exceeding 10,000 bytes cannot be saved in templates.
- If any of address, subject, attachment or text is not entered, the template cannot be saved.

1 Press Menu 5 な JKL 2 か ABC on the mail composition screen and select *Yes*.

2 Press [Address].

- To overwrite a saved template, press [Mail], select a template, and select ***Yes***. The preinstalled templates cannot be overwritten.
- Display name can contain up to 20 one-byte or two-byte characters.
- File name can contain up to 36 one-byte characters, including alphanumerics, " . ", " - " and " _ ". However, " . " cannot be used for the first character of file name.

INFORMATION

- If you save a template containing an image that cannot be sent, the image may be deleted.
- If the date and time are not set when saving a template, "----------" is set as file name. When the subject is not entered, "----------" is set as display name.
- When the memory for templates is not enough or the maximum number of templates is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete unnecessary templates. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the templates in FOMA terminal until an available space required for saving is recovered.

Deleting templates

- Preinstalled templates cannot be deleted.

Example Deleting a template

1 Press [Mail] [8 TUV] on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the template to delete and press [Menu] [2 ABC] [1].

■ Deleting selected templates

① Press [Menu] [2 ABC] [2 ABC] and select templates.

- Press [Multi] to select or cancel a template and press [Menu] to select or cancel all.

② Press [Address].

■ Deleting all templates

① Press [Menu] [2 ABC] [3 DEF] and enter the terminal security code.

3 Select *Yes*.

Saving i-mode Mail for sending later

Save Mail

Saving unsent i-mode Mail

- Maximum number of unsent mail that can be saved ☛P33

1 Press [Menu] [2 ABC] on the mail composition screen.

i-mode Mail is saved in Unsent messages.

- If any of address, subject, attachment or text is not entered, the mail cannot be saved.

Editing and sending unsent/sent i-mode Mail

Example Editing unsent mail

1 Press [✉] [4 GHI] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

- 5 is displayed for SMS.
- For sent mail, press [✉] [5 JKL] and select a folder.

2 Select the mail to edit.

- To edit sent mail, place the cursor at the mail to edit and press [📖].
- When ***ON*** is set for ***Unsent message*** and ***Outbox*** in Edit by Slide, you can display the edit screen by opening FOMA terminal when the mail is selected or displayed.

3 Edit and send the mail.

INFORMATION

- You can also edit mail by pressing [📖] on the sent mail view screen.
- When ***Auto play*** is set in Message Attachment, displaying sent mail with a melody attached automatically plays the melody at the ring volume for calls set in Ring Volume Setting. Press [クリア] to stop playing.

Composing mail quickly

Quick Mail

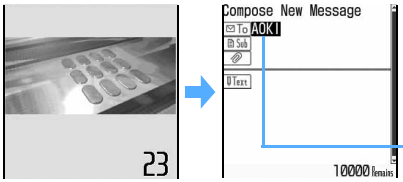
You can compose i-mode Mail and SMS easily to the parties saved to the phonebook No. 0 to 99 in FOMA terminal.

- The first mail address registered in the phonebook entry for the party is set as the address of i-mode Mail and the first phone number as the address of SMS.

Example Sending i-mode Mail to the party of phonebook No. 23

1 Enter the phonebook No. ([2 ABC] [3 DEF] in this case) on the stand-by display and press [✉].

The first mail address registered in the phonebook entry is set as the address.



- Enter the phonebook No. without prefix 0. You cannot compose i-mode Mail if you add 0.
- Composing and sending i-mode Mail ☛P225

First mail address registered in entry

■ Composing SMS

① Enter the phonebook No. on the stand-by display and hold down [✉] for over a second.

- The SMS composition screen is displayed. The first phone number registered in the phonebook entry is set as the address.
- Composing and sending SMS ☛P276

INFORMATION

- If no mail address (or phone number for SMS) is registered in the specified phonebook entry or no entry is registered in the phonebook, a message indicating that no applicable data exists is displayed. Pressing [●] displays the mail (SMS) composition screen with no address set.
- For the phonebook entry with the secret attribute set, activate Secret Mode before operation.

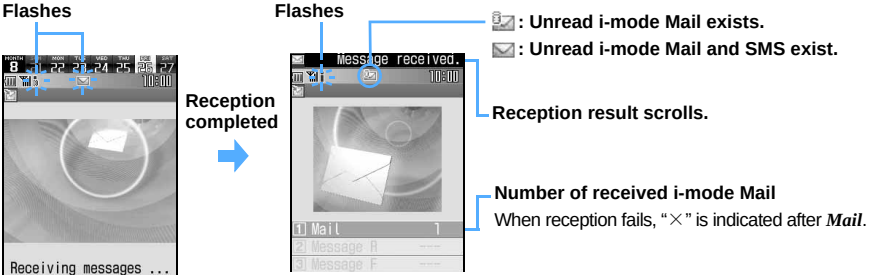
Receiving i-mode Mail

Mail Auto Receive

When there is incoming i-mode Mail, it is automatically received and you are informed by the screen display, ring tone, vibrator and/or call indicator. The received i-mode Mail is saved in Inbox.

• Maximum number of received mail that can be saved ☛P33

1 Receive i-mode Mail.



and flash and ***Receiving messages...*** is displayed.

The mail ring tone sounds, the call indicator lights/flashes, and the reception result screen is displayed.

- You can stop reception by pressing [ ] but depending on the receiving condition, the mail will be received.
- If you do not press any key for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen is displayed or until the ring tone stops, the screen displayed prior to reception automatically reappears. To return to the previous screen immediately, press [クリア].

INFORMATION

- When Display Priority is set to ***Continue operation***, the receiving screen or reception result screen will not be displayed for mail received during FOMA terminal operation. ☛P270
- When Privacy Mode is active (***Hide secret fldrs*** set for ***Mail***), if automatically received mail is all saved in the folder with the privacy set to ***ON*** in the folder settings, the reception result screen is not displayed and the mail ring tone or call indicator is not activated. When Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** set for ***Mail***), the reception result is scrolled but the sender and subject are not displayed.
- When the incoming mail/message is set not to be displayed in Information Line Setting or Receive Display, the reception result is not scrolled.
- When the indicator light is set to ***ON*** in Alert Lighting Setting, the call indicator flashes while unread i-mode Mail exists.
- When Receive Option Setting is on, you can select and receive only the mail you want without automatically receiving all mail.
- When new i-mode Mail is delivered, the i-mode Mail and chat mail stored in the i-mode Center are also received.
- When i-mode Mail is received by FOMA terminal, it is deleted from the i-mode Center.
- FOMA terminal shows which of TO, CC and BCC is specified for you when you receive mail from a party who can specify TO, CC and BCC. ☛P252
- Extremely large i-mode Mail may not be accepted by the i-mode Center and be returned to the sender with an error message.
- You can send/receive i-mode Mail with melody/still image attachments. The i-mode Center will delete attachments not compatible with i-mode Mail. If an attachment has been deleted, ［添付ファイル削除］ (Delete attachment) is inserted under the subject of the mail.
- Attachments larger than the receivable data size (attachable data size) are deleted at the i-mode Center and cannot be received. Attachable data size ☛P233
- If the data size of received mail (number of characters, attachment file size) exceeds the limit (maximum number of characters) set with ***Limit Mail Size*** in "Options", the attachments are deleted at the i-mode Center and cannot be received.

● When i-mode Mail is received from a party with the incoming mail settings made in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the settings apply to the operation. Checking with the phonebook is performed as follows:
  • When the mail address including the symbol @ and the following domain name matches with a mail address in the phonebook, the phonebook settings apply and the name registered in the phonebook is displayed. However, if the mail address is "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp", the phonebook settings apply and the name is displayed only when the phone number part matches with a mail address (registered without "@docomo.ne.jp") in the phonebook.
  • When more than one i-mode Mail is received at the same time, the ring tone, vibrator and call indicator are activated according to the settings made for the party (sender) of the i-mode Mail received last.
  • When the mail is from the party that is registered in the phonebook entry with the secret attribute set, the name is displayed only in Secret Mode. The ring tone, vibrator, etc. operate according to the settings in the phonebook.
  • When Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***), the name is not displayed and the ring tone, vibrator, etc. are not activated.
● Incoming i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center in the following cases and resent a maximum of 3 times at a certain interval:
  • When the power is off • During a video-phone call • In Self Mode • When reception fails
  • While being out of service area • While receiving SMS • When Receive Option Setting is on
  • During infrared communication • When the storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail
● When there is not enough available storage space in Inbox, or the maximum number of received mail is exceeded, the oldest received mail is overwritten. However, unread mail and protected mail are not overwritten. Be sure to protect received mail you want to keep.
● If the mail cannot be overwritten because storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail, reception of i-mode Mail is stopped. or is indicated on the screen. ☛P24
● If i-mode Mail has not been received and is stored in the i-mode Center, or is indicated (☛P24). However, the icon may not be displayed even when i-mode Mail remains in the i-mode Center. When the maximum number of mail that can be stored in the i-mode Center (☛P221) is reached, the icon changes to or .
● To receive i-mode Mail that you have failed to retrieve, perform Check i-mode Message or Receive Option. When the maximum number of received mail is reached, display unread mail, delete unnecessary mail or cancel mail protection before receiving new mail.
● When you send i-mode Mail to your own mail address, the mail may not be received automatically soon after sending. Perform Check i-mode Message.

Displaying newly-received i-mode Mail

1 Press 1 on the reception result screen.

• The received i-mode Mail is saved in ***Inbox*** folder. Note that, when the received mail matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

2 Select a folder and select a mail.

• When a melody is attached, it plays automatically. Auto play can be turned off. ☛P268
• Displaying received mail ☛P250
• Selecting a Message i-αppli folder starts the corresponding i-αppli.

INFORMATION

● To display the folder list when Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** set for ***Mail***), entry of the terminal security code is required. Also, when Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** set for ***i-αppli***), selecting a Message i-αppli folder requires entry of the terminal security code.

Selecting i-mode Mail to receive

Receive Option

You can select and receive i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center without receiving automatically.

When mail arrives

When Receive Option Setting is on, incoming i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center and the message shown on the left appears.

- Even if mail is received, the mail ring tone or vibrator is not activated.
- Press any key other than ◯ to clear the message.

INFORMATION

- During All Lock or PIM Lock, the notification message does not appear for mail stored to the i-mode Center.
- Even if Receive Option Setting is on, all i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center is received when Check i-mode Message is performed. If you do not want to receive unnecessary mail, unselect the mail in Message Retrieval Setting. ☛P265
- SMS and Message R/F are received automatically even if Receive Option Setting is on.

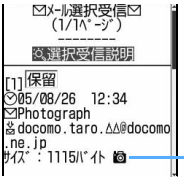
Menu 163

Selecting mail to receive

You can check the subjects of i-mode Mail stored at the i-mode Center and select only necessary mail to receive. You can also delete unnecessary i-mode Mail without receiving it.

- To select mail to receive, set Receive Option Setting to ***ON*** in advance.

1 Press ✉ 6MNO 3DEF on the stand-by display.



You are connected to the i-mode Center and the list of i-mode Mail stored appears.

: Still image file attached
: Melody file attached
: i-motion file attached

2 Select *保留* (Hold) for each mail and select *受信* (Receive), *削除* (Delete) or *保留*.

- When *保留* is selected, the mail is stored at the i-mode Center. It can be received by using Check i-mode Message etc.
- To delete all mail stored at the i-mode Center, select *削除* for *ｉモードセンターから全てのメールを* (All mail from the i-mode Center).
- When the mail list has more than one page, select *前ページ* (Previous page) and *次ページ* (Next page) at the end of the list to view the previous and next pages.

3 Select *受信／削除* (Receive/Delete) and select *決定* (OK).

Menu 161 / Menu 26 / ✉61 / ✦6

Checking for mail

Check i-mode Message

You can check whether i-mode Mail has been delivered to the i-mode Center while FOMA terminal was out of the service area or turned off.
Also checks for Message R/F at the same time if it is set so in Message Retrieval Setting.

- Depending on signal condition, you may not be able to perform Check i-mode Message.

1 Press ✉ twice on the stand-by display.

Check i-mode Message is executed. If stored in the i-mode Center, i-mode Mail is received.

- The operation on the reception result screen is the same as for auto receive. However, the screen does not return to the previous screen after about 15 seconds. Press クリア twice to return to the stand-by display without displaying i-mode Mail.

Replying to received i-mode Mail

Reply to Mail

- You may not be able to reply to some received mail.
- You cannot reply to received SMS for which ***User unset***, ***Payphone*** or ***Not support*** is displayed as sender or to Short Mail sent from mova terminals (i-mode subscription).

1 Press ✉ 1 あ on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the mail to reply and press ▶.

Quote character

The sender's mail address or phone number of the received mail is entered in To field, "RE:" followed by the subject of the received mail in Sub field (for only i-mode Mail), and ">" followed by the received message text in Text field.

- You can set whether to quote the message when replying and select the character to be inserted at the beginning of the quoted message.

When FOMA terminal is closed

When ***ON*** is set for ***Inbox*** in Edit by Slide, you can display the reply screen by opening FOMA terminal when the mail is selected or displayed.

Replying to all addresses of received mail

① **Press Menu 1 あ 2 か.**

- You can reply to the sender and all the receivers except you.

3 Edit and send the mail.

- When the reply is sent, the icon for the received mail changes from ✉ to ↩, or 🔒 to 🔒↩ in the received mail list.

INFORMATION

- In the received mail view screen, press [📖].
- The attachments to received mail are not attached to reply mail.
- The data attached in the message text of received mail (links to start i-αppli or melodies displayed in the message) is not set for reply mail and it is not quoted as characters, either.
- When received Deco-mail is quoted, the text is displayed with the decoration and inserted images quoted. However, if file restriction is set to the images, they are not quoted in reply mail.
- When you reply to the mail that was sent to multiple addresses by pressing [✉] or opening FOMA terminal, the mail addresses displayed in [To] field differ depending on the screen. When you reply from the received mail list, the mail address of the sender is shown. When you reply from the received mail view screen, the mail addresses of the sender and all the receivers except you are displayed.

Forwarding received i-mode Mail

Forward Mail

・You can forward received SMS in the same way. i-mode Mail is forwarded as i-mode Mail and SMS is forwarded as SMS.

1 Press [✉] [1 あ] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the mail to forward and press [✉].

"FW:" followed by the subject of the received mail is entered in [Sub] field (for only i-mode Mail) and the received message text in [Text] field.

・When forwarding received mail with an attachment, the attachment is also set.

3 Edit and send the mail.

・When the forward mail is sent, the icon for the received mail changes from ✉ to ↩, or 🔒✉ to 🔒↩ in the received mail list.

INFORMATION

- In the received mail view screen, press [Menu] and select ***Reply/Forward*** → ***Forward***.
- Even if files are not prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal, some melody files may not be attached depending on the type.
- The data attached in the message text of received mail (links to start i-αppli or melodies displayed in the message) is not set for forward mail and it is not quoted as characters, either.
- Regarding the attachments to received mail (still image and melody), files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal are not attached to forward mail.
- When forwarding the mail with a still image exceeding 10,000 bytes before download attached, the image will not be attached to forward mail.
- When received Deco-mail is quoted, the text is displayed with the decoration and inserted images quoted. When the maximum data size that can be sent is exceeded, the message indicating the mail cannot be sent is displayed when [📖] is pressed.

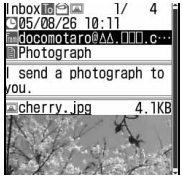
Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Displaying and saving attached still images

Displaying still images

1 Press [✉] [1あ] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Select i-mode Mail with a still image attached.



The still image, file name and file size are displayed under the message.

- : Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal
- : Cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal
- : Attachment of still image exceeding 10,000 bytes/still image exceeding 10,000 bytes before download
- : Still image exceeding 10,000 bytes downloaded
- : Attachment of still image of which download failed
- : Still image data error

■ **Switching between displaying and not displaying still image**

① **Select the file name.**

■ **Checking the title of still image**

① **Place the cursor at the file name of still image to check and press [Menu] [6は] [2か].**

■ **Displaying the URL for still image exceeding 10,000 bytes**

① **Place the cursor at the file name of still image to display the URL and press [Menu] [6は] [3さ].**

- To display the URL before download, place the cursor at *保存期限* (Storage period) in the message and press [Menu] [6は] [2か].

INFORMATION

- You can switch displaying and not displaying a still image on the view screen for sent mail, mail template, or mail in the miniSD memory card in the same way as above.
- To check the image title on the view screen for sent mail, mail template, or mail in the miniSD memory card, place the cursor at the file name of a still image, press [Menu] and select ***Attachment*** → ***Check title***.
- Still images of up to 100 Kbytes in JPEG or GIF format can be downloaded.
- When received mail with a still image attached is displayed, the attached still image is automatically displayed. Note that, the still image inserted in the message text of received Deco-mail is automatically displayed, but the still image attached to Deco-mail is not displayed automatically. Select the file name of still image to display the image.
- The data name of still image inserted in Deco-mail is not displayed in the mail view screen.
- A JPEG image exceeding 10,000 bytes attached to i-mode Mail will be automatically downloaded. The image automatically downloaded is saved in ***mode*** folder of ***Image***. When the image cannot be automatically downloaded because mail reception is interrupted or there is not enough storage space available for images, you can download it by selecting *保存期限* in i-mode Mail.
- When a still image is wider than the display, the reduced image is displayed.
- Some still images may not be displayed correctly.

Saving still images

Saved still images can be viewed from ***Image*** (My Picture) or set for the stand-by display. You can also save as frames or stamps to use for editing still images.

• Maximum number of still images that can be saved ☛P33

1 Press [✉] [1 あ@] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Select i-mode Mail with a still image attached.

3 Place the cursor at the file name of still image to save and press [Menu] [6 MNO] [3 DEF].

• If the still image is prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal (***File restricted*** is displayed), its information cannot be changed. Go to Step 5.

■ Saving an image displayed in Deco-mail

① Press [Menu] [4 GHI] [4 GHI] and select an image.

4 Select each item to set.

• Follow Step 3 in "Downloading images from sites and messages". ☛P199

5 Press [📖] and select the folder to save the image to.

• Saved still images can be set for the stand-by display. ☛P319

INFORMATION

- You can save still images attached to sent mail in the same way as above.
- File name of the downloaded still image can contain up to 36 one-byte characters, including alphanumerics, " . ", " - " and " _ ". However, " . " cannot be used for the first character of file name.
- Still images larger than 352 horizontal x 288 vertical view size cannot be used as frame.
- Still images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 240 x 320 cannot be used as stamp.
- Still images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 in GIF format and 1728 x 2304 in JPEG format cannot be saved. Also, some JPEG images may not be saved.
- When the memory for images is not enough or the maximum number of images is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete images saved in FOMA terminal. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the images in FOMA terminal until an available space required for saving is recovered.
  - Before deletion, an image can be displayed by pressing [📖] on the image list and detail information on the image can be shown by pressing [Menu].

Playing and saving i-motion from i-motion Mail

When video/i-motion attached to mail is sent, it is stored at the i-motion Mail Center and the mail containing a URL to view the i-motion is received. Select the URL to download, play, and save the i-motion. Saved i-motion can be played from ***i-motion*** and set for the stand-by display.

• Maximum number of i-motion files that can be saved ☛P33
• i-motion of up to 500 Kbytes can be downloaded.
• The volume for playing i-motion follows Settings for i-motion.

1 Press [✉] [1 あ@] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

2 Select i-mode Mail containing a URL for i-motion.

3 Select the URL for i-motion and select *Yes*.

FOMA terminal is connected to the i-motion Mail Center and i-motion download/playback begins.

・Playback screen operating procedure ☛P330

Storage period of i-motion at the i-motion Mail Center
URL for i-motion
Indicates that i-motion is attached

4 When the playback ends, select *Save*.

・To play the i-motion, select ***Play***.
・To display information on the i-motion, select ***File property***.

5 Press [📖].

The i-motion is saved in ***mode*** folder of ***i-motion***.
・Display name can contain up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters.

■ Setting for the stand-by display

・Video/i-motion without image, i-motion with playback restrictions set and i-motion with the image size exceeding 320 x 240 cannot be set for the stand-by display.

① Press [Menu] [1 あ] and select *YES*.

・Video/i-motion that can be enlarged can be set to the same size or large size.
・If the i-αppli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it. If ***YES*** is selected, the i-αppli stand-by display is canceled and selected video/i-motion is set as the stand-by display.
・Operation of video/i-motion set for the stand-by display ☛P119

6 Select *Back*.

INFORMATION

● You can play video/i-motion attached to sent mail by selecting the file name. However, you cannot play the video/i-motion if it has been deleted from FOMA terminal.
● When i-motion Mail is sent to an i-mode terminal, i-motion can be downloaded up to 50 times for each URL for viewing i-motion saved at the i-motion Mail Center. When 50 times have been exceeded, i-motion download will be disabled.
● Playing i-motion attached to mail on a PC requires special software. ☛P494
● When displaying mail saved in the miniSD memory card, video/i-motion attached to the mail cannot be displayed.
● When you try to play video/i-motion with sound in Silent Mode, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to play. Select ***Yes*** to play the sound at the volume set in Settings of i-motion.

Playing and saving attached melodies

Play/Save Melody

- If the sender uses a terminal other than FOMA D901i and D901iS, the received melodies may not play correctly.

Playing melodies

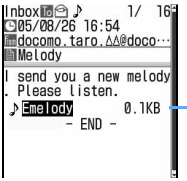
1 Press [✉] [1 あ] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Select i-mode Mail with a melody attached.

- There are 2 types of display formats for attached melodies depending on the file type.

Melody icon, file name and file size

Displayed under message (SMF format)



Melody icon, title and file size

Displayed in message (MFi format)

♪ : Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal

♪© : Cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal

♪× ♪× : Melody data error

3 Select a melody to play.

- Press [クリア] to stop playback.

Checking the title

① **Place the cursor at the melody and press [Menu] [6 MNO] [5 JKL].**

- To check the title of melody displayed in the message, place the cursor at the melody and press [Menu] [6 MNO] [4 GHI].

Displaying data as text (data display)

① **Place the cursor at the melody and press [Menu] [6 MNO] [5 JKL].**

- To return to the title display, place the cursor at the first row of the displayed data and press [Menu] [6 MNO] [5 JKL].
- This function is not available with melodies that appear under the message.

INFORMATION

- To play and save the melody during data display, place the cursor at the first row of the displayed data, press [Menu], and select ***Attachment*** → ***Play*** or ***Save***.
- When an attached melody in MFi format has no title, the mail reception date and time are displayed as the title.
- When ***Auto play*** is set in Message Attachment, displaying received mail with a melody attached automatically plays the melody at the ring volume for calls set in Ring Volume Setting.
- In Silent Mode, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to play the melody. Select ***Yes*** to play at the ring volume for calls set in Ring Volume Setting.
- You can play melodies attached to sent mail, mail templates, and mail in the miniSD memory card in the same way.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Saving melodies

Saved melodies can be played from ***Melody*** or used as a ring tone.

- Maximum number of melodies that can be saved ☛P33

1 Press [✉] [1 あ/@] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Select i-mode Mail with a melody attached.

3 Place the cursor at the melody to save and press [Menu] [6 は/MNO] [2 か/ABC].

- The set display name is displayed. Enter a name (up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters) on the save melody screen to set the display name.

4 Press [📖].

The melody is saved in ***mode*** folder of ***Melody***.

INFORMATION

- In the sent mail view screen, place the cursor at a melody, press [Menu] and select ***Attachment*** → ***Save***.
- When the memory for melodies is not enough or the maximum number of melodies is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete melodies saved in FOMA terminal. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the melodies in FOMA terminal.
  - Before deletion, you can play a melody by pressing [📖] on the melody list and view detail information on the melody by pressing [Menu].

Deleting attachments

Delete Attachment

You can delete still images and melodies attached to received mail.

- Melodies displayed in the message or links to start i-αppli cannot be deleted.
- Still images exceeding 10,000 bytes can be deleted only from ***mode*** folder of ***Image***.

Example Deleting an attached still image

1 Press [✉] [1 あ/@] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Select i-mode Mail with a still image attached.

3 Place the cursor at the file name of still image to delete and press [Menu] [6 は/MNO] [4 た/GHI].

- To delete all attachments, press [Menu] [6 は/MNO] [5 な/JKL].

4 Select *Yes*.

- The file name of the deleted attachment is displayed in a light color and cannot be selected.

INFORMATION

- When you delete a still image exceeding 10,000 bytes attached to received mail, the still image cannot be selected in the mail displayed and the storage period will be dimmed.
- In the sent mail view screen, place the cursor at a still image or melody, press [Menu], and select ***Attachment*** → ***Delete*** or ***Delete all***.

Displaying mail in Inbox/Outbox

Inbox/Outbox

You can check received/sent/unsent i-mode Mail and SMS. The received mail is saved in Inbox and the sent mail is saved in Outbox. Unsent messages contains the mail that was saved without sending or that failed to be sent.

• Maximum number of mail that can be saved ☛P33

Example Displaying received mail

1 Press [✉] [1 あ] on the stand-by display.

- To display sent mail, press [✉] [5 な].
- To display unsent mail, press [✉] [4 た].

2 Select a folder.

The received mail list is displayed.

- Select a Message i-αppli folder to start the corresponding i-αppli. To display mail in a Message i-αppli folder without starting, place the cursor at the folder and press [Menu] [1 あ].

3 Select the mail to display.

- You can make calls, send i-mode Mail, or display sites using phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs. You can also register the phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs in the phonebook and the URLs in Bookmark. In addition, you can copy text. ☛P259

INFORMATION

- When decorated mail is received from PCs, operations may not be the same as on PCs because some decorations are not supported by i-mode terminals.
- When there is more than one data item attached in the message text (links to start i-αppli or melodies displayed in the message), the attached data becomes invalid. In this case, [?] is displayed for the attached data.
- When viewing Deco-mail, URLs for downloading images or i-motion may not be visible depending on the background color of the mail.
- When Privacy Mode is active, the operation differs according to Privacy Mode Setting.
  - When ***Authorized access*** is set for ***Mail***, displaying the folder list requires entry of the terminal security code.
  - When ***Hide secret fldrs*** is set for ***Mail***, the folders with the privacy set to ***ON*** in the folder settings are not displayed. You can cancel Privacy Mode temporarily and display the folders by holding down [クリア] for over a second on the folder list screen and entering the terminal security code.

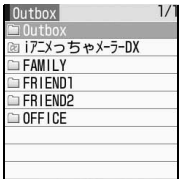
Reading the folder list screen

■ Reading the Inbox folder list screen

Page number/total page count and storage space status bar are displayed at the top of the Inbox folder list screen.

(in gray): No mail　(in yellow): No unread mail
: No unread mail (Privacy on)
: No unread mail (used for Message i-αppli)
: Unread mail exists
: Unread mail exists (Privacy on)
: Unread mail exists (used for Message i-αppli)

■ Reading the Outbox/Unsent messages folder list screen



Page number/total page count is displayed at the top of the Outbox folder list screen.

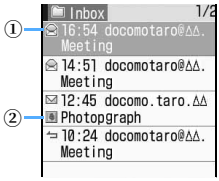
(in gray): No mail　(in yellow): Mail exists
: Privacy on　: Message i-αppli

INFORMATION

- Received mail can be saved into ***Inbox*** folder and folders that you can add (up to 45 including 5 Message i-αppli folders). Newly received i-mode Mail and SMS are saved in ***Inbox*** folder by default. You can set FOMA terminal to automatically sort received mail to specific folders upon reception.
- Sent/unsent mail can be saved into ***Outbox*** folder or ***Unsent messages*** folder, and folders that you can add respectively (up to 15 including 5 Message i-αppli folders). Newly sent i-mode Mail and SMS are saved in ***Outbox*** folder by default. You can set FOMA terminal to automatically sort sent mail to specific folders.
- Even if Message i-αppli has been deleted, the mail can be displayed if the Message i-αppli folder is left undeleted.
- Selecting a Message i-αppli folder starts the corresponding i-αppli.

Reading the mail list/view screen

■ Reading the received mail list screen



Folder name and page number/total page count are displayed at the top of the received mail list screen. Reception date/time, sender and subject (for SMS, beginning of message) are displayed in the mail list.

① : Unread　: Unread (unable to reply)　: Read　: Read (unable to reply)
: Read (replied)　: Read (forwarded)　: Protected　: Protected (unable to reply)
: Protected (replied)　: Protected (forwarded)

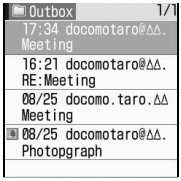
Note: For replied/forwarded mail, icon indication priority is given to the last operation made.

② : Still image of up to 10,000 bytes
: Melody
: Still image of up to 10,000 bytes + melody
: Still image exceeding 10,000 bytes
: Attachment (in 1-row display only)
: SMS
: i-αppli To
: Message i-αppli

Note: When i-motion or a still image exceeding 10,000 bytes is attached, the icons for attached still images of up to 10,000 bytes or melodies are not displayed.

- When the sender is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.
- In the reception date/time column, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
- The subject may not be displayed depending on the received i-mode Mail.
- For SMS which contains an error, is indicated and the reception date/time becomes "--/--" (only on the reception day). The sender is not displayed.
- The mail list display style can be selected.

■ Reading the sent/unsent mail list screen



Folder name and page number/total page count are displayed at the top of the mail list screen. Sent date/time, receiver and subject (for SMS, beginning of message) are displayed in the mail list.

No icon: Unprotected
: Protected
: Still image of up to 10,000 bytes
: Melody
: Still image of up to 10,000 bytes + melody
: i-motion
: Still image exceeding 10,000 bytes
: Attachment (in 1-row display only)
: SMS
: Message i-αppli

Note: When i-motion or a still image exceeding 10,000 bytes is attached, the icons for attached still images of up to 10,000 bytes or melodies are not displayed.

- In the sent date/time column, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
- To display the sent date and time, you need to set the date and time of FOMA terminal.
- When the receiver is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.
- Selecting mail from the unsent mail list displays the mail composition screen.
- The mail list display style can be selected.

■ Reading the received mail view screen

Receiver icon*, status icon, attachment/SMS icon, and mail number/count are displayed at the top of the received mail view screen.
* TO, CC or BCC is indicated (for i-mode Mail).

: Reception date and time
: Sender
: Receiver (TO)
: Receiver (CC) (only i-mode Mail)
: Receiver (BCC) (only i-mode Mail)
: Subject (***Received SMS***, ***Delivered report*** or ***Notify missed call*** for SMS)
: Sender (unable to reply)
: Receiver (To) (unable to reply) (only i-mode Mail)
: Receiver (CC) (unable to reply) (only i-mode Mail)

- You can change the font size.
- For SMS which contains an error, is displayed.

■ Reading the sent mail view screen

Status icon, attachment/SMS icon, and mail number/count are displayed at the top of the sent mail view screen.

: Sent date and time : Receiver (TO)
: Receiver (CC) (only i-mode Mail)
: Receiver (BCC) (only i-mode Mail)
: Subject

- You can change the font size.

INFORMATION

● For i-mode Mail, the mail address of sender or receiver is checked with the mail address field in the phonebook data. For SMS, the phone number of sender or receiver is checked with the phone number field in the phonebook data.
- When the mail address including the symbol @ and the following domain name matches a mail address in the phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook is displayed. However, if the mail address is "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp", the name is displayed only when the phone number part matches with a mail address (registered without "@docomo.ne.jp") or a phone number in the phonebook.
- If the mail address or phone number is registered in the phonebook entry with the secret attribute set, the name is displayed only in Secret Mode.
- When Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***), the name is not displayed.

● The subject and sender of SMS, delivered report, and missed call notification are displayed as shown below:

Item	SMS	Delivered report	Missed call notification
Subject	Received SMS	Delivered report	Notify missed call
Sender	Phone number	SMS Center	DoCoMo SMS

Note1: When the sender's phone number is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed in the sender field in the received mail list.
The name is not displayed when Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***).

Note2: When the caller ID is not notified, the following characters are displayed in the sender field:
User unset (message was sent by setting not to notify the caller ID)
Payphone (message was sent from a payphone)
Not support (message was sent using a procedure that does not provide the caller ID)

● When there are attachments or links to start i-αppli, the icon, file name, etc. are displayed on the view screen.

Type	Icon	Page
Still image	: Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal : Cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal : Attachment of still image exceeding 10,000 bytes/still image exceeding 10,000 bytes before download : Still image exceeding 10,000 bytes downloaded : Attachment of still image of which download failed : Still image data error	P245
Melody	: Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal : Cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal : Melody data error	P248
Link to start i-αppli	α	P302

● You can change the mail status between read and unread. Place the cursor at a mail, and press Menu 5 JKL 1 to change unread mail to read or press Menu 5 JKL 2 ABC to change read mail to unread.
- To change selected unread mails to read, press Menu 5 JKL 3 DEF. To change selected read mails to unread, press Menu 5 JKL 4 GHI. Then select mails to change the status, press 📖 and select ***Yes***.
- To change all unread mail in a folder to read, press Menu 5 JKL 5 JKL and select ***Yes***. To change all read mail in a folder to unread, press Menu 5 JKL 6 MNO and select ***Yes***.
- You cannot change the status of protected mail.

Adding and deleting folders

Adding folders

- In Inbox, you can add up to 40 folders other than ***Inbox*** folder and Message i-αppli folders.
- In Outbox or Unsent messages, you can add up to 10 folders other than ***Outbox*** folder or ***Unsent messages*** folder and Message i-αppli folders respectively.
- Folder settings for ***Inbox***, ***Outbox*** and ***Unsent messages*** folders and Message i-αppli folders cannot be changed.

Example Adding a folder in Inbox

1 Press [✉] [1あ] on the stand-by display.

- Outbox ☛P250
- Unsent messages ☛P250

2 Press [Menu] [1あ].

■ **Changing folder settings**

① **Place the cursor at the folder to change and press [Menu] [3さ].**

3 Select each item to set.

Folder name : Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters).

Privacy : When ***ON*** is set, the folder is not displayed when Privacy Mode is active (***Hide secret fldrs*** set for ***Mail***).

4 Press [📖].

INFORMATION

● When Message i-αppli is downloaded, a folder for Message i-αppli is automatically created in each of Inbox, Outbox, and Unsent messages. The automatically created folder is named with the name of Message i-αppli downloaded, which cannot be changed.

Deleting folders

- ***Inbox***, ***Outbox*** and ***Unsent messages*** folders registered by default cannot be deleted.
- Folders containing protected mail cannot be deleted. Cancel protection and then delete the folders.
- Message i-αppli folders cannot be deleted when the i-αppli for the folder exists.

Example Deleting a folder in Inbox

1 Press [✉] [1あ] on the stand-by display.

- Outbox ☛P250
- Unsent messages ☛P250

2 Place the cursor at the folder to delete and press [Menu] [2か].

3 Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Checking number of mail items

Msgs. in Folder

You can check the number of received, sent or unsent mail saved in each folder.

Example Checking the number of received mail saved

1 Press [✉] [1 あ/@] on the stand-by display.

- Outbox ☛P250
- Unsent messages ☛P250

2 Place the cursor at the folder to check and press [Menu] [5 な JKL].

INFORMATION

● In the mail list screen, press [Menu] and select ***Display*** → ***Check No. of items***.

Checking mail addresses

Display Address

You can view an entire mail address when the whole address is not displayed or the address is registered in the phonebook and only the name is displayed.

1 Display the mail view screen.

- Inbox ☛P250
- Outbox ☛P250
- Mail templates ☛P237

2 Select a sender or receiver to display the address.

INFORMATION

● To check multiple mail addresses at one time, press [Menu] on the mail view screen and select ***Display*** → ***Display address***. In the received/sent/unsent mail list, place the cursor at the mail to display mail address, press [Menu] and select ***Display*** → ***Display address***. All receivers' addresses are displayed for sent/unsent mail, and the addresses of sender and all receivers except you for received mail (***TO***: and ***CC***: are also displayed).

Moving received/sent mail to another folder

Move Mail

Saved mail can be moved or copied to other folders or the miniSD memory card.

Example Moving a received mail to another folder

1 Press [✉] [1 あ/@] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

- Outbox ☛P250
- Unsent messages ☛P250

2 Place the cursor at the received mail to move and press [Menu] [4 た GHI] [1 あ/@] [1 あ/@].

■ **Moving selected mails**

① **Press [Menu] [4 た GHI] [1 あ/@] [2 か ABC] and select mails.**

- Press [●] to select or cancel an item, and press [Menu] to select or cancel all.

② **Press [📖].**

■ **Moving all mail in folder**

① **Press [Menu] [4 た GHI] [1 あ/@] [3 さ DEF].**

■ **Copying a mail to miniSD memory card**

① **Press [Menu] [4 た GHI] [4 た GHI] [1 あ/@] and select *Yes*.**

■ **Copying all mail to miniSD memory card (backup)**

① **Press** Menu 4 4 2.

② **Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.**

3 **Press ● and select the destination folder.**

4 **Select *Yes*.**

INFORMATION

● If mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, ***Unable to display message***. appears and the operation may be canceled.

Sorting received/sent mail

Sort

You can temporarily change the sorting order of the mail list for Inbox and Outbox.

- You can select from ***By date***, ***By sender*** (***By address*** for Outbox), or ***By title***.
- You cannot change the order of mail for Unsent messages, received SMS and sent SMS in the UIM.

Default By date

Example Sorting the received mail list

1 **Press ✉ 1 on the stand-by display and select a folder.**

- Outbox ☛P250

2 **Press Menu 7 4.**

■ **Sorting the sent mail list**

① **Press** Menu 5.

3 **Press 1 to 3.**

INFORMATION

● Closing the received or sent mail list returns the sorting order to ***By date***.

● When ***By sender*** or ***By address*** is set, the mail will be sorted by mail address not by name in the phonebook even if the mail address is registered in the phonebook.

● When ***By title*** is set, if the subject contains both one-byte and two-byte characters, the mail may not be properly sorted in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

● When ***By title*** is set, the mail will not be properly sorted in the order of the Japanese syllabary if any SMS is saved in the same folder and beginning of the message is displayed as subject.

Making calls from received/sent mail

Phone Call

Calls can be made to the sender of received mail or the receiver of sent mail.

- The mail address (except “mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp”) and phone number must be registered in the phonebook.
- When mail addresses are registered in the phonebook entry with the secret attribute set, calls can be made only in Secret Mode.

Example Making a call from received mail

1 **Press ✉ 1 on the stand-by display and select a folder.**

- Outbox ☛P250

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

2 Place the cursor at the mail to make a call to and press Menu 6MNO.

• In the received/sent mail view screen, press Menu 7PQRS.

3 Select each item for Customized Call and set.

4 Press Menu and select *Yes*.

Protecting received/sent mail

Protect Mail

You can protect received, sent and unsent mail to avoid accidental deletion or being overwritten when there is not enough storage space.

• Maximum number of mail that can be protected ☛P33

• Unread mail cannot be protected.

Example Protecting a received mail

1 Press ✉ 1あ/@ on the stand-by display and select a folder.

• Outbox ☛P250 • Unsent messages ☛P250

2 Place the cursor at the received mail to protect and press Menu 3さDEF 1あ/@.

The mail is protected and the icon changes to one of the following:

Received mail : (read) (unable to reply) (replied) (forwarded)

Sent/unsent mail :

• To cancel protection, place the cursor at the mail to cancel and press Menu 3さDEF 4たGHI.

■ Protecting selected mails

① Press Menu 3さDEF 2かABC and select mails.

• Press ● to select or cancel an item, and press Menu to select or cancel all. Selecting all is not possible when the number of unprotected mail being saved exceeds the maximum number of protected items.

② Press 📖.

■ Protecting all mail in folder

① Press Menu 3さDEF 3さDEF.

■ Canceling protection of selected mails

① Press Menu 3さDEF 5なJKL and select mails.

• Press ● to select or cancel an item, and press Menu to select or cancel all.

② Press 📖.

■ Canceling protection of all mail

① Press Menu 3さDEF 6はMNO.

INFORMATION

● All of the protected mail is deleted when Delete All Data is performed.

● In the mail view screen, press Menu and select ***Protect*** or ***Cancel protection***.

● In the sent/unsent mail list, press Menu and select ***Protect*** → ***Protect***, ***Protect selected*** or ***Protect all***. To cancel protection, press Menu and select ***Protect*** → ***Release***, ***Cancel selected*** or ***Cancel all protect***.

● If the maximum number of protected items is exceeded while protecting all mail, mail is protected in the chronological order, most recent first, until the limit is reached.

● If mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, ***Unable to display message***. appears and the operation may be canceled.

Deleting received/sent mail

Delete Mail

Unnecessary mail can be deleted from Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages.

- Protected mail cannot be deleted. When you delete all mail at one time, protected mail remains undeleted even if it matches the specified criteria. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

Deleting received mail

○ : Available × : Unavailable

Deletion method	Mail deleted	Screen for starting operation		
		Folder list	Mail list	Mail view
All messages	All mail (including unread items)	○	×	×
Read msgs. (folder)/ Read msgs. in folder	Read mail in folder	○	○	×
All (folder)/All (in folder)	All mail in folder (including unread items)	○	○	×
7days past (folder)	All mail in folder that has been stored for longer than the specified number of days (including unread items)	○	○	×
14days past (folder)		○	○	×
30days past (folder)		○	○	×
Selected item	A selected mail item	×	○	○
Selected items	Selected mail items	×	○	×

1 Press [✉] [1 あ] on the stand-by display.

■ **Deleting all mail**

① **Press [Menu] [4 た] [6 は] and enter the terminal security code. Go to Step 4.**

2 Select a folder and press [Menu] [2 か].

- To delete one item, place the cursor at the received mail to delete and press [Menu] [2 か].

3 Press [1 あ] to [7 ま].

■ **Deleting selected mails**

① **Press [2 か] and select mails.**

- Press [●] to select or cancel an item, and press [Menu] to select or cancel all.

② **Press [📖].**

■ **Deleting all mail in folder**

① **Press [4 た] and enter the terminal security code.**

4 Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

● If mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, ***Unable to display message***. appears and the operation may be canceled.

Deleting sent/unsent mail

Sent/unsent mail can be deleted in the following method:

○ : Available × : Unavailable

Deletion method	Mail deleted	Screen for starting operation		
		Folder list	Mail list	Mail view
All messages	All mail	○	×	×
All (folder)/All (in folder)	All mail in folder	○	○	×
Selected item	A selected mail item	×	○	○ (sent mail only)
Selected items	Selected mail items	×	○	×

Example Deleting a sent mail

1 Press [✉][5 JKL] on the stand-by display.

■ **Deleting all mail**

① **Press [Menu][4 GHI][2 ABC] and enter the terminal security code. Go to Step 4.**

2 Select a folder.

3 Place the cursor at the sent mail to delete and press [Menu][2 ABC][1].

■ **Deleting selected mails**

① **Press [Menu][2 ABC][2 ABC] and select mails.**

- Press [●] to select or cancel an item, and press [Menu] to select or cancel all.

② **Press [📖].**

■ **Deleting all mail in folder**

① **Press [Menu][2 ABC][3 DEF] and enter the terminal security code.**

4 Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

- Unsent mail can be deleted using the same operation.
- In the folder list, press [Menu] and select ***Delete message***.
- In the mail view screen, press [Menu] and select ***Delete***.

Useful functions of mail

When the message of i-mode Mail or SMS contains phone numbers, mail addresses or URLs, select them to make calls (Phone To/AV Phone To), compose i-mode Mail (Mail To), or connect to sites (Web To). You can also copy characters in the i-mode Mail or SMS and save phone numbers or mail addresses, etc. in the phonebook.

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

- The operation is the same as when performing the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function from sites.
- When mail is received from a PC etc., the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function may not be available.

Copying text

You can copy characters in the i-mode Mail, SMS, or mail template being displayed. Copied text can be pasted in entry fields on the mail composition screen or phonebook registration screen.

- For SMS stored in the UIM, you can copy the message text, receiver and sender.
- For Deco-mail, only the text can be copied.
- Copied text is recorded until FOMA terminal is turned off and it can be pasted into other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be recorded. When you copy a new item, it overwrites the previously copied text.

Example Copying text on the received mail view screen

1 Display the mail containing an item to copy.

- Place the cursor at the item to copy when copying a selected item.

2 Press Menu 2 か ABC.

3 Select the copying method.

Copy text : Copies a specified range of the message text.
Copy title : Copies the subject.
Copy selected item : Copies a selected item (mail address, phone number, etc.).

- For ***Copy text***, specify the copy range. Follow Step 2 in “Copying the URL” ☛P202

4 Display a character entry screen and paste the copied text.

INFORMATION

- In the view screen for sent mail, mail template, or SMS in the UIM, press Menu and select ***Move/Copy*** or ***Copy***.
- When text in the Date To format is included in the message, it needs to be copied and pasted to Notepad before saving as schedule.

Registering phone numbers, addresses and URLs in phonebook

You can register mail addresses, phone numbers and URLs in the i-mode Mail or SMS being displayed in the phonebook. You can register the data as a new entry or add data to an existing entry.

Example Registering data on the received mail view screen

1 Display the mail containing an item to register.

2 Place the cursor at the item to register and press Menu 4 た GHI.

3 Press 1 あ ,@ to register a new entry or 2 か ABC to add to an existing entry.

- Follow the procedure from Step 3 in “Registering phone numbers and mail addresses in phonebook”. ☛P203

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

INFORMATION

- In the view screen for sent mail, SMS in the UIM, or mail in the miniSD memory card, press Menu and select ***Save***.
- If the cursor is not placed on a mail address, phone number or URL in the i-mode Mail or SMS displayed, the item cannot be registered. However, adding to the phonebook is possible by placing the cursor at the sender of received mail or the receiver of sent mail (receiver can be selected if there is more than one).
- Registration may not be made from Deco-mail.
- When multiple addresses are listed with no space in the message text, you may not be able to register them.

Registering URLs in Bookmark

You can register URLs in the message text of the i-mode Mail or SMS being displayed in Bookmark.

Example Registering a bookmark on the received mail view screen

1 Display the mail containing a URL to register.

2 Place the cursor at the URL, press Menu 4 GHI, and press 3 DEF.

3 Select a folder to save the bookmark to.

INFORMATION

- In the view screen for sent mail or SMS in the UIM, press Menu and select ***Save***.
- Registration may not be made from Deco-mail.

Setting mail functions of FOMA terminal

Mail Setting

The following functions can be set:

Function	Description	Page
Sort Criteria	Sorts received/sent mail automatically to designated folders.	P262
Signature	Sets the signature to be inserted in mail.	P264
Message Retrieval Setting	Sets the items to inquire to the i-mode Center.	P265
Receive Option Setting	Sets to receive selected mail without auto receive.	P265
Mail Group Setting	Registers multiple addresses in a group.	P265
Mail Reply Format	Specifies whether to quote received mail when replying.	P267
Mail List Setting	Sets the display format of received/sent mail list.	P267
Incoming Msg. Attach.	Specifies whether to receive attachments.	P267
Message Attachment	Specifies whether to play attached melodies automatically when mail is displayed.	P268
Display Type	Sets the type of mail to display in the received/sent mail list.	P268
Font Size	Sets the font size of mail displayed.	P269
Incoming Msg. Setting	Sets the FOMA terminal operation for incoming mail.	P269
Display Priority	Specifies whether to display the screen for receiving mail during FOMA terminal operation.	P270

Sorting mail automatically into designated folders

Sort Criteria

Received/sent i-mode Mail and SMS can be sorted into the specified folders automatically according to the set criteria.

- Up to 30 criteria can be registered for received mail and sent mail respectively.

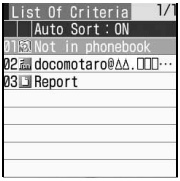
Setting sort criteria

- To activate the set criteria, set auto sort to ***ON*** for received mail and sent mail respectively. It is set to ***ON*** by default. ☛P264
- The criteria are valid for the mail received/sent after setting the criteria. Previously received/sent mail is not resorted.
- You can sort normal mail to Message i-αppli folders. The sort criteria for Message i-αppli take precedence.

Example Sorting received mail

1 Press [✉] [9 wxyz] [3 def] on the stand-by display.

2 Press [1 あ].

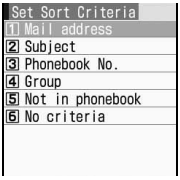


Auto sort on/off is displayed in the first row. From the second row, the registered sort criteria are listed in the order of priority.

To : Receiver mail address / From : Sender mail address / No. : Phonebook No. / Not in phonebook / Subject / Group / No criteria

- To sort sent mail, press [2 かABC].

3 Press [Menu] [1 あ] and set the sort criteria.



Sort criteria setting screen

Specifying a mail address

Sorts mail by sender/receiver mail address. Specify an entire address including characters following the @ symbol (up to 50 one-byte characters). You cannot sort mail by specifying part of the mail address. If you specify a phone number, you can sort SMS as well.

① **Press [1 あ] [2 かABC], enter the mail address, and press [📖].**

- To search the phonebook, press [1 あ] [1 あ], select a phonebook entry, and select a mail address.

Specifying a subject

Sorts mail having a subject that includes the specified characters (up to 15 two-byte characters). You cannot sort SMS by subject.

① **Press [2 かABC], enter the subject, and press [📖].**

Specifying a phonebook No.

Sorts mail that is to/from the mail address or phone number saved to the specified phonebook No. i-mode Mail is sorted by checking the mail address in the phonebook. SMS is sorted by checking the phone number in the phonebook.

① **Press [3 def] and enter the phonebook No.**

② **Select the phonebook entry.**

■ **Specifying a group**

Sorts mail that is to/from the mail address or phone number saved to the specified group.

① **Press 4 GHI.**

② **Press 1 あ to search the FOMA terminal phonebook or 2 カ ABC to search the UIM phonebook.**

③ **Select a group.**

■ **Specifying "Not in phonebook"**

Sorts mail that is to/from the mail address or phone number not saved in the phonebook. i-mode Mail is sorted by checking the mail address in the phonebook. SMS is sorted by checking the phone number in the phonebook.

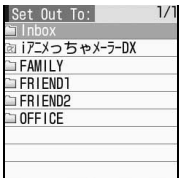
① **Press 5 な JKL.**

■ **Setting no condition**

Sorts all mail without setting criteria.

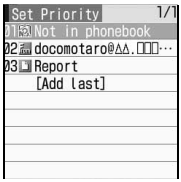
① **Press 6 は MNO.**

4 Select the folder to sort mail to.



- When a Message i-αppli folder is selected, a message indicating that mail in the selected folder is used for i-αppli appears. To sort mail to the folder, select ***Yes***.

5 Specify the priority.



The new criteria is added above the selected row.

- When setting the first criteria in the list, select ***Add last***.
- To add the criteria to the end of the list, select ***Add last*** .
- Criteria are listed in the order of priority.
- When registered criteria are changed, ***Move to last*** is displayed instead of ***Add last***.

INFORMATION

- The criteria are checked in accordance with their priority. For example, when 2 criteria are set, mail is sorted as follows:
  - ① Mail is checked to determine if it matches the criteria of first priority; if so, it is saved in the specified folder. If not, the procedure goes to ②.
  - ② Mail is checked to determine if it matches the criteria of second priority; if so, it is saved in the specified folder. If not, it is saved in ***Inbox*** folder or ***Outbox*** folder.
- To set sort criteria when Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** is set for ***Phonebook & Logs*** or ***Authorized access*** or ***Hide secret fldrs*** is set for ***Mail***), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- If the sender uses an i-mode terminal with its phone number set as the mail address, only the phone number is received as the address. Therefore, no sorting occurs when "mobile phone number @docomo.ne.jp" is specified in the criteria.

Checking and changing sort criteria

1 Press ✉ 9 らWXYZ 3 さDEF on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 or 2.

3 Select the sort criteria to check.

• You can change sort criteria while checking it.

■ **Changing registered sort criteria**

① **Place the cursor at the sort criteria to change and press Menu 2.**

• Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Setting sort criteria". ☛P262

② **Select *Yes*.**

■ **Changing the priority**

① **Place the cursor at the sort criteria to change and press Menu 5.**

② **Select the position to move.**

• The criteria is moved to just above the selected row. To move to the end of the list, select ***Move to last***.

■ **Deleting criteria**

① **Place the cursor at the sort criteria to delete, press Menu 3, and select *Yes*.**

• To delete all criteria, press Menu 4, enter the terminal security code, and select ***Yes***.

Setting auto sort

• Even if ***ON*** is set, no sorting occurs when sort criteria are not set.

Default got mail criteria: ON sent mail criteria: ON

Example Sorting received mail automatically

1 Press ✉ 9 3 on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 and press Menu 6.

• To sort sent mail automatically, press 2 and press Menu 6.

3 Press 1.

• To cancel auto sort, press 2.

Menu 194

Registering signature for mail

Signature

You can register the signature to be inserted in the message of i-mode Mail or SMS. You can also set whether to automatically insert the signature when you compose mail.

• You can enter up to 100 one-byte or 50 two-byte characters.

Default Auto insert: Yes Signature: not set

1 Press ✉ 9 4 on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Auto insert : Sets whether to insert signature automatically.

• To cancel auto insert, select ***No***.

Signature : Enter the signature text.

3 Press ▣.

INFORMATION

- The signature text is counted as characters in the message.
- When you cancel auto insert, you can use the submenu to insert the signature while composing mail.
- When the registered signature includes phone number, mail address or URL and is sent to an i-mode terminal, the receiver can use the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function.
- The signature is not inserted when the font type is set to ***English*** in SMS Setting.

Menu 164 / Menu 2732 / ↓732

Setting items to inquire to i-mode Center

Message Retrieval Setting

• ***Mail***, ***MessageR***, and ***MessageF*** are all selected as ☑ by default. If you do not want to check for any item, change it to ☐.

Default all selected

1 Press [✉] [6 MNO] [4 GHI] on the stand-by display.

2 Select the item to inquire.

• Press [Menu] to select or cancel all. You cannot save the setting with no items selected.

3 Press [📖].

Menu 196

Setting to select and receive only necessary mail

Receive Option Setting

Default OFF

1 Press [✉] [9 WXYZ] [6 MNO] on the stand-by display.

2 Press [1 あ/@].

• To cancel the setting, press [2 ABC].

Menu 198

Registering addresses in a mail group

Mail Group Setting

By registering multiple mail addresses in a mail group, multiple addresses can be set by a simple operation when composing i-mode Mail.

• Up to 20 mail groups can be registered. Up to 5 mail addresses can be saved in each mail group.

1 Press [✉] [9 WXYZ] [8 TUV] on the stand-by display.

2 Press [📖].

■ **Editing a group name**

① **Place the cursor at the mail group to edit and press [Menu] [2 ABC].**

■ **Copying a mail group**

① **Place the cursor at the mail group to copy and press [Menu] [3 DEF].**

■ **Deleting a mail group**

① **Place the cursor at the mail group to delete, press [Menu] [4 GHI] [1 あ/@], and select *Yes*.**

■ **Deleting all mail groups**

① **Press** Menu 4 GHI 2 ABC.

② **Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.**

3 Enter a mail group name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) and press 📖.

• Press 📖 to add another group.

4 Select a mail group to register mail addresses.

■ **Editing a mail address**

① **Place the cursor at the mail address (or name) to edit and press** Menu 1.

② **Edit the mail address and press** 📖.

■ **Deleting a mail address**

① **Place the cursor at the mail address (or name) to delete, press** Menu 2 ABC**, and select *Yes*.**

■ **Displaying mail address details**

① **Press** Menu 3 DEF.

• The name in the phonebook is not displayed when the mail address is not registered in the phonebook or when Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***).

② **After checking the details, press** ⏻.

5 Press ✉ and select each item to set.

Address Type : Sets TO, CC and BCC.

• TO is the main address.

• CC is the address to which you want to send a copy of the mail.

• BCC is the address to which you want to send a copy of the mail but which you do not want to be known to other receivers.

Address : Enter a mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters).

• To search the phonebook, press Mail. ☛P99

6 Press 📖.

• When the mail address is registered in the phonebook, the name in the phonebook is displayed. When the mail address is not registered in the phonebook, the mail address is displayed.

• To add another mail address to the mail group, repeat from Step 5.

7 Press 📖.

The mail addresses are registered in the mail group.

INFORMATION

● When the same address is registered in both the phonebook and the mail group, changing the name in the phonebook changes the name registered in the mail group.

● If there is no TO address entered, mail cannot be sent.

● Using a mail group to enter addresses ☛P225

Menu 195

Setting whether to quote the message when replying

Mail Reply Format

You can set whether to quote the message text when you reply to i-mode Mail or SMS. In addition, you set the quote characters that are added to the quoted message.

Default Quote: Yes Quote characters: > (one-byte character)

1 Press [✉] [9 wxyz] [5 な jkl] on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Quote : Sets whether to quote the message when replying to mail.
- To choose not to quote the message, select ***No.*** Go to Step 3.

Quote characters : Enter a quote character (up to 2 one-byte or 1 two-byte character).
- The quote characters are counted as characters in the message.
- If a character that cannot be sent is specified, the default character is used.

3 Press [📖].

Menu 1991

Setting the display style of the mail list

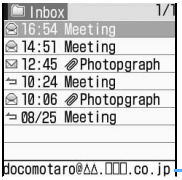
Mail List Setting

The display style of the mail list for Inbox and Outbox can be set.

- The 2-row display applies to Unsent messages, received SMS and sent SMS in the UIM regardless of this setting.

Default Display 2 rows

Display 2 rows



Display 1 row

Sender address of the received mail at cursor (receiver address for sent mail)

1 Press [✉] [9 wxyz] [9 wxyz] [1 あ /@] on the stand-by display.

2 Press [1 あ /@] or [2 か abc].

Menu 197

Setting whether to receive attachments

Incoming Msg. Attach.

You can set whether to receive still images and melodies attached to i-mode Mail.

Default Image: Receive Melody: Receive

1 Press [✉] [9 wxyz] [7 ま pqrs] on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Image : Sets whether to receive images.

Melody : Sets whether to receive melodies.

3 Press [📖].

INFORMATION

- When ***Not receive*** is set for ***Image***, images inserted in Deco-mail cannot be received.
- Note that unreceived attachments are deleted in the i-mode Center and become unavailable.
- Melodies in MFi format pasted in the message are received regardless of this setting.

Menu 1992 / Menu 2733 / ↓733

Setting whether to play melodies automatically

Message Attachment

You can set whether melodies attached to i-mode Mail or Message R/F play automatically when the mail or message is displayed.

Default Auto play

1 Press [✉] [9 wxyz] [9 wxyz] [2 abc] on the stand-by display.

2 Press [1 あ] or [2 か].

INFORMATION

- When ***Auto play*** is set, a melody plays once when you display received mail, sent mail, mail template or Message R/F with melody attached. When more than one melody is attached, the melodies play one after another.

Selecting the type of mail to display

Display Type

Only mail of the specified type is displayed.

- For Inbox, you can select from ***Display all items***, ***Unread item only***, ***Read item only***, or ***Protected item only***.
- For Outbox, you can select ***Display all*** or ***Display protected***.
- You cannot select the display type for Unsent messages, received SMS and sent SMS in the UIM.

Default Display all items/Display all

Example Selecting the display type for received mail

1 Press [✉] [1 あ] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

- Outbox ☛P250

2 Press [Menu] [7 pqrs] [2 abc].

3 Press [1 あ] to [4 ghi].

INFORMATION

- Closing the received or sent mail list returns the setting to ***Display all items/Display all***.
- When ***Read item only*** is set, protected mail is not displayed.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Changing the mail font size

Font Size

You can change the font size of the displayed message for received mail, sent mail, mail template, etc.

- The setting applies to all mail including received mail, sent mail, mail templates, and mail in the miniSD memory card.
- The font size cannot be changed while composing and editing mail.

Default Medium (standard)

Large: 24 dots

Medium (standard): 20 dots

Small: 16 dots

Example Changing on the received mail view screen

1 Press [✉] [1あ/@] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Select a mail and press [Menu] [3さDEF] [1あ/@].

- When a mail template is displayed, press [Menu] [4たGHI] [1あ/@].

3 Press [1あ/@] to [3さDEF].

INFORMATION

- In the view screen for received/sent/unsent mail in the miniSD memory card, press [Menu] and select ***Font size***.
- The new font size is retained until it is changed.

Menu 191

Setting operations for incoming mail

Incoming Msg. Setting

You can set the operations that are performed when i-mode Mail or SMS is received.

Default Select mail ring tone: Melody/ パターン 1 (Pattern 1) Incoming msg. lighting: Flash/Ocean
Set vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10

1 Press [✉] [9らWXYZ] [1あ/@] on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Select mail ring tone : Select ***Melody*** or ***movie ringtone*** and then select a melody or video/i-motion. To disable the ring tone, select ***OFF***.
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion ☛P112

Incoming msg. lighting : Sets the lighting pattern and color of the call indicator.
- When you set the lighting pattern to ***Sync melody***, the lighting/flashing color will be ***Rainbow***.

Set vibrate alert : Sets the operation of vibrator.

Ring time (sec) : Sets the duration of ring tone (1 to 30 seconds).

3 Press [メール].

INFORMATION

- When mail is received from a sender with the incoming mail settings made in the phonebook, the phonebook settings take precedence. ☛P95
- Even if you set ***Sync melody*** for ***Incoming msg. lighting*** or ***Set vibrate alert***, synchronization may not occur depending on the melody.

Menu 1993

Setting mail reception notifications

Display Priority

You can set whether or not to give priority to the display of receiving screen and reception result screen when i-mode Mail, SMS, or Message R/F is received during FOMA terminal operation.

Default: Show message

1 Press [メール] [9 らWXYZ] [9 らWXYZ] [3 さDEF] on the stand-by display.

2 Press [1 あ/@] or [2 かABC].

Continue operation : Displays neither the receiving screen nor reception result screen.

Show message : Displays the receiving screen and reception result screen.

INFORMATION

- Even when ***Show message*** is set, the receiving screen or reception result screen is not displayed and the mail ring tone or call indicator is not activated during a voice call, data communication, camera use, i-αppli operation, streaming type i-motion play, or alarm sounding.
- When ***Continue operation*** is set, the receiving screen or reception result screen is not displayed and the mail ring tone or call indicator is not activated in the following conditions:
  - Not in stand-by (other function is running)
  - During All Lock
  - During Driving Mode
  - During PIM Lock
  - When Camera is activated
  - During alarm sounding

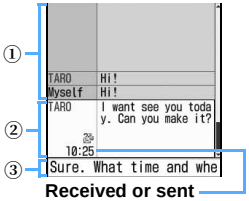
Composing and sending chat mail

Chat Mail

Mail can be sent and received to/from multiple addresses like making conversation. The sent and received mail can be read on the same screen.

- Mail addresses of the receivers must be registered in the member list in advance.
- Chat mail is not available when Receive Option Setting is on or there is no available storage space for received/sent mail.
- When chat mail is sent to a non-compatible terminal, it is delivered as i-mode Mail with the subject “チャットメール (Chat mail)” in one-byte or two-byte characters. When the receiver replies to this i-mode Mail, it will be received as chat mail by FOMA terminal.

Chat mail screen



① Sent/received log

Press ▼ to scroll the log.

- When the sent/received log cannot be displayed on one screen, pressing Menu 5 1 displays the first row and pressing Menu 5 2 displays the last row.

② Details field

Displays details of the latest chat mail or the chat mail at the cursor. Up to 500 one-byte or 250 two-byte characters can be displayed. When ◀▶ is indicated at the lower right and left of the field, pages can be switched using ▼.

: Broadcast address not registered in the member list

③ Text entry field

Menu 13

Adding chat members

Chat Member Setting

- Up to 5 chat members can be registered.

1 Press ✉ 3 on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to add chat members.

- When a member is already registered, the chat mail screen is displayed. To add another member, press Menu 7 and go to Step 3.

2 Select *Yes*.

3 Press ✉.

4 Select *Address* field and enter a mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters).

■ **Searching the phonebook**

① Press Addr.

② Search the phonebook and select a mail address.

- When registering a mail address of i-mode terminal, enter the address including “@docomo.ne.jp”. If the address is “mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp”, omit “@docomo.ne.jp”.
- When registering a mail address for which a secret code is set, register the mail address and set the secret code in the phonebook, and then register only the phone number for chat member.

5 Select *Nickname* field and enter a nickname (up to 8 one-byte or 4 two-byte characters).

- When no nickname is entered, the first 8 characters preceding the @ symbol in the mail address are displayed.

6 Select *Font color* field and select a color.

- The color not used for registered member is displayed in the following priority order: blue, red, green, orange, and black.
- The nickname is displayed in the selected color on the chat mail screen.

7 Press [Phonebook].

- To add another member, press [Mail] and repeat Step 4 to 7.

8 Press [Phonebook].

The member list is displayed.

INFORMATION

- You cannot register the same mail address for multiple members.
- To start chat mail when Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** or ***Hide secret fldrs*** set for ***Mail***), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- To use the phonebook when Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***), entry of the terminal security code is required.

Composing and sending chat mail

- Chat mail is sent to all registered members by default. You can select members when sending, but the setting returns to default when you quit chat mail or change chat member information.
- The sent chat mail is saved in ***Outbox*** folder for i-mode Mail. However, when the sent chat mail matches the criteria set in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

1 Press [Mail][3 さ DEF] on the stand-by display.

- When a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to add members, select ***Yes*** and register.

2 Select the text entry field and enter a message (up to 500 one-byte or 250 two-byte characters).

- When ***ON*** is set for ***Chat mail*** in Edit by Slide, you can display the text entry screen by opening FOMA terminal on the chat mail screen.

■ Copying and pasting text from chat mail log

① Place the cursor at the chat mail to copy text, press [Menu][6 は MNO], and specify the range.

- Specifying the range ☛P470

② Select the text entry field, place the cursor at a paste location, and press [Menu][3 さ DEF].

■ Replying to all broadcast addresses of received mail

① Press [Menu][2 か ABC][2 か ABC].

■ Selecting members to send mail

① Press [Menu][3 さ DEF] and select addresses.

- Press [●] to select or cancel an address, and press [Menu] to select or cancel all.

② Press [Phonebook].

3 Press [Phonebook].

- When the chat mail is sent correctly, it is displayed on the chat mail screen.

INFORMATION

- Chat mail can be displayed by the following operations:
  - In the received mail list, place the cursor at a chat mail and press Menu 7まPQRS 5なJKL.
  - In the sent mail list, place the cursor at a chat mail and press Menu 7まPQRS 4たGHI.
  - In the received/sent mail view screen, press Menu 3さDEF 3さDEF.
- If chat mail fails to be sent or is unsent when quitting chat mail, it is saved in ***Unsent messages*** folder. In this folder, only one chat mail item can be saved. If sending of another chat mail fails, the chat mail saved in ***Unsent messages*** folder is overwritten. In addition, the chat mail saved in ***Unsent messages*** folder is displayed in the text entry field next time chat mail is started. To resend unsent chat mail, start operation from the chat mail screen.
- While receiving i-mode Mail or Message R/F, chat mail cannot be sent. If you send chat mail while receiving i-mode Mail or Message R/F and fail, FOMA terminal will automatically resend it a maximum of 3 times.
- To start chat mail when Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** or ***Hide secret fldrs*** set for ***Mail***), entry of the terminal security code is required.

Receiving chat mail

Receive Chat Mail

When chat mail is received, you are informed of it by the screen display, ring tone, vibrator, or call indicator.

When chat mail has been started

When mail with the subject containing “チャットメール” in one-byte or two-byte characters is received from a registered chat member, a message indicating that the log is updated appears and the received chat mail is added on the chat mail screen.

- When chat mail is received from a sender not registered as a chat member, it is saved in ***Inbox*** folder. Display the mail on the chat mail screen following the procedure in “When chat mail has not been started” below.

When chat mail has not been started

Chat mail is saved in ***Inbox*** folder as i-mode Mail.

- When received chat mail matches the criteria set in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

1 Place the cursor at the mail to display as chat mail in the received mail list and press Menu 7まPQRS 5なJKL.

- In the received mail view screen, press Menu 3さDEF 3さDEF.
- If the sender address of the selected mail is not registered as a chat member, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to register the sender address. Select ***Yes*** and register. ☛P271
- Deco-mail or HTML mail received from PCs cannot be displayed on the chat mail screen.

Receiving chat mail stored in i-mode Center

1 Press Menu 1あ on the chat mail screen.

If there is chat mail stored in the i-mode Center, a message indicating that the log is updated appears and the received chat mail is added on the chat mail screen.

INFORMATION

- When the indicator light is set to ***ON*** in Alert Lighting Setting, the call indicator flashes while unread chat mail exists.
- Chat mail received from a registered chat member while chat mail is not started will be displayed on the chat mail screen next time chat mail is started.
- When chat mail is received using Check i-mode Message, i-mode Mail is also received at the same time.
- You can reply to chat mail as i-mode Mail using the same procedure as for i-mode Mail.
- Even if the message on the chat mail screen contains phone number, mail address or URL, the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function is not available. The i-αppli To function is also unavailable. No attachments are displayed. When you quit chat mail and display the chat mail from Inbox, these functions become available.
- When you delete chat mail from Inbox, the nickname appears as "--------", date/time as "--/--" and text as ***Deleted***. on the chat mail screen.
- The chat mail displayed on the chat mail screen will be marked as read in Inbox.
- When mail is sent or received from Message i-αppli, the mail is displayed on the chat mail screen when received as chat mail.

Displaying broadcast addresses

Broadcast addresses of received mail can be displayed.

1 Place the cursor at the mail to check broadcast addresses on the chat mail screen and press Menu 4 GHI.

- When a broadcast address is not registered as a chat member, ***Not recorded*** appears in the nickname field. When the mail address is registered in the phonebook, the registered name appears instead of the mail address. Press ● to display the mail address for the displayed name.

■ Adding unregistered broadcast address for chat member

① Press 📖.

- Follow the procedure from Step 5 in "Adding chat members". ☛P271

■ Copying broadcast addresses

① Press Menu 2 ABC.

Deleting the chat mail log

All chat mail on the chat mail screen can be deleted.

- The chat mail in Inbox or Outbox is also deleted except for protected mail.

1 Press Menu 9 WXYZ on the chat mail screen and select *Yes*.

Editing chat members

You can edit chat member information, add and delete members. The information on registered members can be checked and all registered members can be replaced.

1 Press ✉ 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

- When a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to add members, select ***Yes*** and register. ☛P271

2 Press Menu 7 PQRS.

3 Place the cursor at the member to edit, press Menu 1, and edit.

■ **Deleting a member**

① **Place the cursor at the member to delete and press Menu 2.**

② **Select *Yes*.**

■ **Displaying member details**

① **Select the member to display details.**

- To check details of all members, press Menu 3.

② **After checking the details, press ●.**

■ **Adding a member**

① **Press Menu 4.**

■ **Replacing all members by mail group**

① **Press Menu 5.**

② **Select a mail group and select *Yes*.**

All members are replaced by those registered in the selected mail group.

4 Press 📖.

Setting personal information

You can set your nickname and text color displayed on the chat mail screen.

1 Press ✉ 3 on the stand-by display.

2 Press Menu 8.

3 Select *Nickname* field and enter a nickname (up to 8 one-byte or 4 two-byte characters).

- When no nickname is entered, ***Myself*** is displayed on the chat mail screen.

4 Select *Text color* field and select a color.

5 Press 📖.

Quitting chat mail

1 Press PWR or クリア on the chat mail screen.

2 Select *No*.

Chat mail quits. The previous chat mail is displayed next time chat mail is started.

- When ***Yes*** is selected, all chat mail is deleted. In this case, the chat mail in Inbox or Outbox is also deleted except for protected mail.

INFORMATION

● Unsent (draft) chat mail is saved in Unsent messages and will be displayed next time chat mail is started. However, such chat mail will not be saved when there is not enough storage space for mail.

Setting operations for incoming chat mail

Incoming Chat Mail Setting

Default Incoming setting: Same: Msg setting

1 Press [✉] [9 らWXYZ] [2 かABC] on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Incoming setting : Specifies whether to set the operations for incoming chat mail or follow Incoming Msg. Setting.

- When ***Customize*** is set, the following items can be set.

Ring tone : Select ***Melody*** or ***movie ringtone*** and then select a melody or video/i-motion. To disable the ring tone, select ***OFF***.

- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion ☛P112

Lighting : Sets the lighting pattern and color of the call indicator.

- When you set the lighting pattern to ***Sync melody***, the lighting/flashing color will be ***Rainbow***.

Vibrate alert : Sets the operation of vibrator.

Ring time (sec) : Sets the duration of ring tone (1 to 30 seconds).

3 Press [📖].

INFORMATION

● When more than one mail is received at the same time, this function setting applies only when the last received mail is chat mail.

Composing and sending SMS

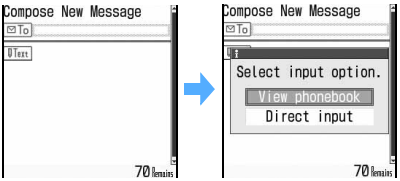
Compose SMS

Compose and send SMS messages. SMS can be saved without sending.

- Maximum number of sent/unsent messages that can be saved ☛P33
- If you use one-byte katakana and pictograms, the receiver may not be able to display them correctly.
- SMS can be sent and received from the parties that use overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. Please visit the DoCoMo website for the countries where the service is provided and oversea carriers available.

Example Composing and sending a SMS message by entering address directly

1 Press [✉] [7 まPQRS] [1 あ/@] on the stand-by display and select [To] field.



2 Select *Direct input* and enter the address (party's phone number).

- When the address is registered in the phonebook, the registered name is displayed in To field.
- To send to a party that uses an overseas carrier other than DoCoMo, enter "+" (by pressing 0 for over a second) and the country code plus the party's mobile phone number. Omit the first 0 of the phone number.

Searching the phonebook

① **Select *View phonebook*.**

② **Search the phonebook and select a phone number.**

3 Select Text and enter the message.

- When the font type is set to ***Japanese*** in SMS Setting, up to 70 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered. A space is counted as a character in the message.
- When the font type is set to ***English*** in SMS Setting, up to 160 one-byte characters can be entered including alphanumerics and symbols (except ゛。「」、・゜ and °). A one-byte space is counted as a character in the message.
- Line feeds can be inserted in the message. Press # to enter a line feed in 5-touch Input Method. A line feed is counted as a character in the message.

Inserting a signature

① **Press Menu 4 GHI.**

- Signature must be registered beforehand.
- The signature text is counted as characters in the message.

4 Press .

Saving without sending

① **Press Menu 2 ABC.**

- If neither the address nor message is entered, the SMS is not saved.
- You can edit and send the unsent SMS. ☛P239

INFORMATION

- You can use fixed phrases to enter face marks, greetings and replies in the message.
- Characters cannot be decorated.
- Depending on signal conditions, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- The font type and whether to receive the delivered report are set in SMS Setting beforehand. You can also change the settings for the delivered report and storage period in the SMS Center while composing SMS.
- When transmission fails, an error message is displayed and SMS is saved in Unsent messages. You can edit and send the SMS from Unsent messages. ☛P239
- When transmission is completed correctly, SMS is saved in Outbox. When there is not enough available storage space in Outbox, or the maximum number of sent mail is exceeded, the oldest sent mail is overwritten. However, protected sent mail is not overwritten. Be sure to protect sent mail you want to keep.
- When you set the delivered report to ***Request*** and send SMS, you will receive a delivered report that notifies you that the message has been received by the other party's FOMA terminal. The delivered report is saved in Inbox.
- Even if ***Not notify*** is set in Caller ID Notification, the caller ID is sent to the receiver when SMS is sent.
- When a fixed phrase including a line feed is inserted in the message being composed, the line feed is replaced by a one-byte space.
- Some characters may not be sent depending on the font type. ☛P223
- The signature is not inserted when the font type is set to ***English*** in SMS Setting.

- If you enter some symbols (| ^ { } [ ] ~ and ¥) when the font type is English, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced. In this case, you may not be able to send the message even if the number of characters is less than the maximum number of characters. Reduce the number of characters and send it again.
- To use the phonebook when Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- When there is not enough available storage space in Unsent messages, or the maximum number of unsent mail is exceeded, SMS cannot be composed. Delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and/or SMS from Unsent messages. ☛P259
- You can compose and send SMS easily to the parties saved to the phonebook No. 0 to 99 (Quick Mail).
- Reading the received/sent/unsent SMS list/view screen ☛P251

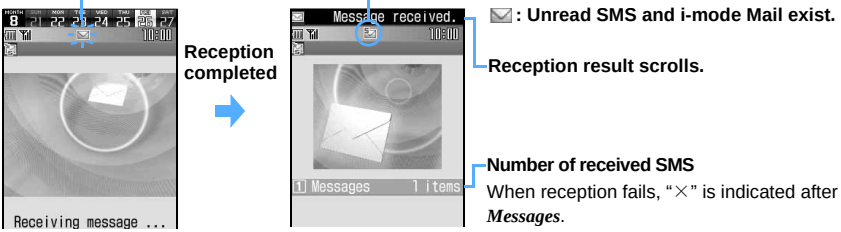
When SMS is received

Receive SMS

When SMS is delivered, it is automatically received and you are informed by the screen display, ring tone, vibrator, and/or call indicator. The received SMS is saved in Inbox.

・Maximum number of received messages that can be saved ☛P33

1 Receive a SMS message.



flashes and ***Receiving message...*** is displayed.

The mail ring tone sounds, the call indicator lights/flashes, and the reception result screen is displayed.

- Press [終了/電源] while receiving the message to stop reception.
- If you do not press any key for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen is displayed or until the ring tone stops, the display returns to the screen displayed prior to reception. To return to the previous screen immediately, press [クリア].

Reading the received SMS immediately

① **Press [▼] or [1 あ] on the reception result screen.**

- You can reply to (☛P243) or forward (☛P244) the received SMS.
  The operation is the same as for i-mode Mail. You cannot reply to the message for which ***User unset***, ***Payphone***, or ***Not support*** is displayed in the sender field.

INFORMATION

- When Display Priority is set to ***Continue operation***, the receiving screen or reception result screen may not be displayed.
- When Privacy Mode is active (***Hide secret fldrs*** set for ***Mail***), if automatically received SMS is all saved in the folder with the privacy set to ***ON*** in the folder settings, the reception result screen is not displayed and the mail ring tone or call indicator is not activated. When Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** set for ***Mail***), the reception result is scrolled but the sender is not displayed.
- When the incoming mail/message is set not to be displayed in Information Line Setting or Receive Display, the reception result is not scrolled.

● When the indicator light is set to ***ON*** in Alert Lighting Setting, the call indicator flashes while unread SMS exists.
● When FOMA terminal receives the SMS stored in the SMS Center, the message is deleted from the Center.
● Short Mail sent from a mova terminal is received by FOMA terminal as SMS.
● When SMS is received from a party with the incoming mail settings made in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the settings apply to the operation. Checking with the phonebook is performed as follows:
  • When more than one SMS message is received at the same time, the ring tone, vibrator and call indicator operate according to the settings of the SMS received last.
  • When the message is from the party that is registered in the phonebook entry with the secret attribute set, the name is displayed only in Secret Mode. The ring tone, vibrator, etc. operate according to the settings in the phonebook.
  • When Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***), the name registered in the phonebook is not displayed and the ring tone, vibrator, etc. are not activated.
● While receiving i-mode Mail or Message R/F, SMS is not automatically received. Perform Check SMS.
● If reception of SMS fails, you can use Check SMS to receive the message again. When the maximum number of received mail is exceeded, display unread mail (☛P250), delete unnecessary mail (☛P258) or cancel mail protection (☛P257) before receiving new messages.
● When there is not enough available storage space in Inbox, or the maximum number of received mail is exceeded, the oldest received mail is overwritten. However, unread mail and protected mail are not overwritten. Be sure to protect received mail you want to keep.
  • When the mail cannot be overwritten because storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail, reception of SMS is stopped. or is indicated on the screen. ☛P24
  • When the UIM already contains 20 messages, SMS may not be received even though there is space available in Inbox. or is indicated on the screen (☛P24). Move to FOMA terminal or delete SMS from the UIM. ☛P282, P283
● When the received SMS has been set to be saved directly to the UIM, it will be saved directly on the UIM. Note that, when the number of messages in the UIM has reached 20, SMS cannot be received. Delete unnecessary messages and perform Check SMS again.

Menu 162

Checking for SMS

Check SMS

You can make inquiry for any SMS delivered while FOMA terminal was out of service area or turned off.
• Depending on signal condition, you may not be able to perform Check SMS.

1 Press 6 MNO 2 ABC on the stand-by display.
If the SMS Center stores any messages, they are received.

INFORMATION
● It may take time to receive SMS.

Menu 174

Making SMS settings

SMS Setting

Usually, you do not need to change ***SMSC***, ***Address*** and ***Type of Number*** settings.

Default Delivered report: Do not request Other than the above: use UIM settings

1 Press [✉][7 PQRS][4 GHI] on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Font type : Select Japanese or English language of messages to be sent. The maximum number of characters that can be sent differs depending on the font type.

Delivered report : Sets whether to request a delivered report when you send SMS.

Keep in SMS center : Sets the storage period of sent SMS in the SMS Center in cases the receiver cannot receive the message.

SMSC : Sets SMSC when you use SMS services other than DoCoMo.

- When ***Others*** is set, select ***Address*** field and enter the address (up to 20 one-byte characters).

Type of Number : Select either ***international*** or ***unknown***.

- When you set ***SMSC*** to ***Others*** and enter only numbers or numbers plus "✳" or "#" in ***Address*** field, select ***unknown***.

3 Press [📖].

INFORMATION

- In the SMS composition screen, press [Menu] and select ***SMS settings***. In this case, only ***Delivered report*** and ***Keep in SMS center*** can be set. The settings are valid only for the SMS being composed.
- You can set to reject all SMS or SMS without caller ID. ☛P220

Saving SMS to the UIM

Save SMS to UIM

You can move or copy sent and received SMS from FOMA terminal to the UIM.

Moving/copying SMS to the UIM

- Maximum number of messages that can be saved in the UIM ☛P33
- SMS in Unsent messages cannot be saved to the UIM.
- When you move or copy sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are moved or copied to Inbox of the UIM together. You cannot move or copy only delivered reports.

Example Moving a received SMS message to the UIM

1 Press [✉][1 あ/@] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

- SMS in Outbox ☛P250

2 Place the cursor at the SMS message to move and press [Menu][4 GHI][2 ABC][1 あ/@].

■ Moving selected messages

① Press [Menu][4 GHI][2 ABC][2 ABC] and select messages.

- Press [●] to select or cancel a message, and press [Menu] to select or cancel all.

② Press [📖].

■ Copying a message

① Place the cursor at the message to copy and press [Menu][4 GHI][3 DEF][1 あ/@].

■ **Copying selected messages**

① **Press [Menu] [4 ㅌ GHI] [3 さ DEF] [2 か ABC] and select messages.**

- Press [●] to select or cancel a message, and press [Menu] to select or cancel all.

② **Press [📖].**

3 Select *Yes*.

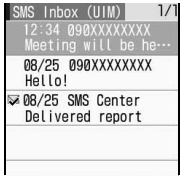
INFORMATION

- In the received/sent mail view screen, press [Menu] and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Move to UIM*** or ***Copy to UIM***.
- When the UIM already contains 20 messages, you cannot move or copy additional messages to the UIM. Delete unnecessary messages from the UIM.

Displaying SMS in the UIM

Example Displaying received SMS

1 Press [✉] [7 ま PQRS] [2 か ABC] on the stand-by display.



Received SMS is displayed in 2 rows in the received SMS (UIM) list screen. The received date/time and the sender or receiver are displayed in the first row, and the beginning of the message or ***Delivered report*** is in the second row.

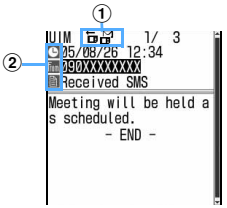
✉: Unread (able to reply)　✉: Unread (unable to reply)

No icon: Read (able to reply)　: Read (unable to reply)

✉: Delivered report

- The read/unread icon in the list indicates whether SMS in the UIM has been displayed. The status of unread/read before moving or copying is also carried over.
- In the reception date/time column, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
- To display sent SMS, press [✉] [7 ま PQRS] [3 さ DEF].

2 Select a SMS message.



Message number/total message count is displayed at the top of the received SMS (UIM) view screen.

① : Received (able to reply)　: Read (unable to reply)

: Sent　: Delivered report

: SMS in the UIM

② : Date and time　: Receiver

: Sender　: Sender (unable to reply)

: Subject (***Received SMS***, ***Sent SMS***, or ***Delivered report***)

- The receiver is displayed in the view screen of the delivered report. ***SMS Center*** is displayed as the sender.
- When sent SMS is moved or copied to the UIM, the sent date and time are cleared from the SMS in the UIM.

INFORMATION

- From SMS in the UIM, you can also reply to or forward received messages, resend messages already sent, change the font size, register in the phonebook, and perform other operations. The operation is the same as for received/sent SMS in FOMA terminal.
- When you reply to/forward or resend SMS in the UIM, the sent SMS is saved in Outbox of FOMA terminal.
- When Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** set for ***Mail***), displaying received or sent SMS in the UIM requires entry of the terminal security code.

Moving/copying SMS from the UIM to FOMA terminal

Move or copy SMS saved on the UIM to Inbox or Outbox of FOMA terminal.

- When you move or copy sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are moved or copied to Inbox together. You cannot move or copy only delivered reports.

Example Moving a received SMS message to FOMA terminal

1 Press [✉] [7 PQRS] [2 ABC] on the stand-by display.

- To move/copy sent SMS, press [✉] [7 PQRS] [3 DEF].

2 Place the cursor at the SMS message to move and press [Menu] [3 DEF] [1].

■ **Moving selected messages**

① **Press [Menu] [3 DEF] [2 ABC] and select messages.**

- Press [●] to select or cancel a message, and press [Menu] to select or cancel all.

② **Press [📖].**

■ **Copying a message**

① **Place the cursor at the message to copy and press [Menu] [3 DEF] [3 DEF].**

■ **Copying selected messages**

① **Press [Menu] [3 DEF] [4 GHI] and select messages.**

- Press [●] to select or cancel a message, and press [Menu] to select or cancel all.

② **Press [📖].**

3 Press [●].

4 Select a folder to move the message to and select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

- In the received/sent SMS (UIM) view screen, press [Menu] and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Move to phone*** or ***Copy to phone***.
- When there is not enough available storage space for mail or the maximum number of mail is exceeded, you cannot move or copy SMS. Also, unprotected i-mode Mail and/or SMS are not overwritten. Delete unnecessary mail/messages.

Deleting SMS from the UIM

• When you delete sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are also deleted from the UIM.

Example Deleting a received SMS message from the UIM

1 Press [✉] [7 まPQRS] [2 かABC] on the stand-by display.

• To delete sent SMS, press [✉] [7 まPQRS] [3 さDEF].

2 Place the cursor at the SMS message to delete and press [Menu] [2 かABC] [1 あ/@].

■ **Deleting selected messages**

① **Press [Menu] [2 かABC] [2 かABC] and select messages.**

• Press [●] to select or cancel a message, and press [Menu] to select or cancel all.

② **Press [📖].**

■ **Deleting all messages**

① **Press [Menu] [2 かABC] [3 さDEF] and enter the terminal security code.**

■ **Deleting all delivered reports**

① **Press [Menu] [2 かABC] [4 たGHI] and enter the terminal security code.**

3 Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

● In the received/sent SMS (UIM) view screen, press [Menu] and select ***Delete***.

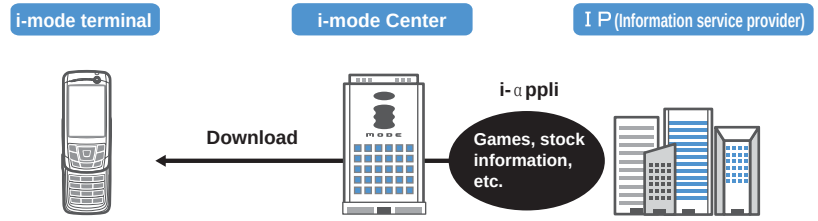
MEMO

i-αppli

i-αppli 286
Downloading i-αppli from sites 288
Starting i-αppli 290
Starting i-αppli with One-touch Button ..... One-touch Button 299
Starting i-αppli with i-αppli Shortcut ..... i-αppli Shortcut 300
Automatically starting i-αppli 300
Starting i-αppli from a site or mail ..... i-αppli To 302
Operating i-αppli Stand-by Display ..... i-αppli Stand-by Display 302
Managing i-αppli 304
Using various functions from i-αppli 308

i-αppli

Downloading i-αppli software from sites allows more convenient use of a FOMA terminal compatible with i-mode (hereinafter called as i-mode terminal). For example, various games can be downloaded to the i-mode terminal for amusement and i-αppli for stock price information can be downloaded for automatically checking stock prices at regular intervals. Map i-αppli downloads only necessary data and allows smooth scrolling. In addition, direct registration to the phonebook and schedule from i-αppli may be made and working with Data Box including saving and obtaining of image may be available with some i-αppli software.



- Downloading i-αppli ☛P288
- Automatically starting i-αppli ☛P300
- Starting i-αppli ☛P290

INFORMATION

- Some i-αppli may use the mobile phone or UIM serial number of your i-mode terminal.
- Some i-αppli may attempt to make connection when running. Such attempts can be disabled by presetting not to make connection. ☛P292

Using saved data

Some i-αppli allows viewing, registering and operating of the data (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedules, images and icons) saved in your i-mode terminal. The following operations can be performed using saved data:

- Register Phonebook entries
- Add bookmarks
- Obtain images from Data Box
- Use icons
- Save schedules
- Save images in Data Box

INFORMATION

- Any image saved by i-αppli is stored in the *mode* or ***Deco-Mail picture*** folder of ***Image*** and/or the i-αppli respectively.
- Some i-αppli software may not be used in Privacy Mode (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***, ***My picture*** or ***Schedule***).

i-αppli DX

i-αppli DX is more convenient and enjoyable i-αppli. In conjunction with i-mode terminal information (such as mail, call log or phonebook data), i-αppli DX allows you to compose a message on your favorite character screen and inform you of a sender of incoming call by character's comments when a call is received. Also, i-αppli DX updates desired information on stock price, game in progress or other information further in real time in conjunction with mail.

Using saved data

Some i-αppli DX allows viewing, registering and operating of saved data such as messages, redials, received calls and ring alerts in addition to the saved data available with standard i-αppli (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedules, images and icons). The following operations can be performed using saved data:

- Register Phonebook entries
- Add bookmarks
- Use mail composition screen
- View latest unread mail
- Obtain images from Data Box
- Save video in Data Box
- View phonebook
- Save schedules
- View latest redial
- Change ring alert (phone, mail, Message R/F)
- Save images in Data Box
- Save ring alert in Data Box
- Use icons
- Use mail menu
- View latest received call
- Change image settings (stand-by display, incoming/outgoing call, incoming/outgoing video-phone call, incoming/outgoing mail, Message R/F reception)

INFORMATION

- With i-αppli DX, communication may be made to confirm the validity of i-αppli regardless of the NW transmission setting of i-αppli. The number of attempts to make communication and the timing depend on i-αppli.
- Activating i-αppli DX requires the date and time setting of FOMA terminal.
- Any image, video and ring alert saved by i-αppli DX is saved in the *mode* or *Deco-Mail picture* folder of *Image*, *mode* folder of *i-motion*/*Melody* or the i-αppli DX respectively.
- Some i-αppli DX can not be used in Privacy Mode (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*, *Mail*, *My picture*, *i-motion* or *Schedule*).

Message i-αppli

Message i-αppli is a type of i-αppli DX that allows more convenient and enjoyable use of i-αppli by providing real-time update of desired information on stock prices, games in progress, etc. through exchanging information by i-mode Mail.

- Messages used in Message i-αppli may not be correctly displayed.

Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli

Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli allows you to read and write the data in the IC card and use convenient functions such as downloading electronic money or tickets or referring to its balance or usage history on FOMA terminal.

- Using Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli sends the information in the IC card to IP (Information service provider) of the service that you subscribe to.
- Mobile Wallet ☛P314

Other convenient functions

■ i-αppli stand-by display

On the i-αppli stand-by display, i-αppli can be used as the stand-by display screen, which also allows directly receiving messages and making phone calls. The function of the stand-by display screen can be enhanced by setting it to display news and weather forecast update or to use your favorite character to inform you of incoming messages and alarms, etc. ☛P302

- This function is available with i-αppli supporting the i-αppli stand-by display.

■ **i-αppli auto start**

i-αppli can be automatically started at the user-specified time, date, day of week, etc. Some i-αppli allows auto start at the time intervals preset with i-αppli. ☛P300

■ **Shooting with camera**

Images can be taken with the FOMA terminal camera from i-αppli.

- This function is available with i-αppli supporting shooting with camera. ☛P308

■ **Infrared communication**

The data can be exchanged with the devices that are provided with the infrared communication function from i-αppli. It allows enhanced use by interacting with devices provided with the infrared communication function. ☛P308

- This function is available with i-αppli supporting infrared communication.
- Some types of data may not be exchanged depending on the other device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

■ **Infrared remote control**

Various devices such as electrical appliances that support infrared remote control can be operated from i-αppli. ☛P370

For example, the preinstalled Gガイド番組表リモコン allows using your terminal as an AV remote controller which works with TV programs. ☛P296

- This function is available with i-αppli supporting infrared remote control. i-αppli that supports the other device is required.

Downloading i-αppli from sites

You can download your favorite i-αppli from sites and store it in FOMA terminal.

- The maximum number of software that can be saved. ☛P33
- If i-αppli download has failed due to poor signal quality, etc., i-αppli will not be saved in FOMA terminal.

1 Display the site containing i-αppli and select i-αppli.

The selected i-αppli is downloaded.

- To cancel downloading, press [ ] and select ***Yes***.

■ **When Software Info Display is on**

i-αppli information is displayed. When you select ***Yes***, i-αppli is downloaded.

- The detail information of i-αppli to be downloaded can be checked by pressing [ ].

■ **When the selected i-αppli is already downloaded with a different UIM**

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite. When you select ***Yes***, the downloaded i-αppli overwrites the existing i-αppli.

■ **When downloading i-αppli that uses saved data or serial number of the mobile phone/UIM**

A confirmation screen is displayed. When you select ***Yes***, i-αppli is downloaded.

- When ***Guide*** is displayed in the guide row, the details of the data to be used by i-αppli can be checked by pressing [ ].

■ **When the selected i-αppli is already downloaded**

Already downloaded is displayed. When the new version of i-αppli is released, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to upgrade. When you select ***Yes***, i-αppli is downloaded to upgrade.

2 Select a folder where to save i-αppli.

3 Select each item to set.

Set* i-αppli *display : For i-αppli which supports i-αppli stand-by display, sets whether to use it for i-αppli stand-by display.

Set NW transmission : Sets whether to allow the communication by i-αppli.

Use icons : Sets whether to allow i-αppli to use icons such as mail and battery level.

- Some items may not be available for setting or operation setting screens may not be displayed depending on i-αppli.

4 Press [Menu] and select *Yes*.

The downloaded i-αppli starts.

- Select ***No*** to return to the site screen.

INFORMATION

- When downloading i-αppli while Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***i-αppli***), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- When the memory for i-αppli is not enough or the number of i-αppli exceeds the maximum number of saved items, follow the instructions on the screen and delete i-αppli saved in FOMA terminal until an free space required for saving i-αppli is recovered. Deleted i-αppli can not be restored even when i-αppli download has failed.
- Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli cannot be downloaded while IC Card Lock is on.
- Depending on the data capacity in the IC card, even if there is the space in the domain to save of i-αppli, Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli may be unable to be downloaded. In this case, download i-αppli again after deleting Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli until the free space which can be saved in the IC card is made according to directions of the screen. Note that some i-αppli applications are not subject to deleting depending on the kind of i-αppli applications to be downloaded. In addition, some i-αppli applications cannot be deleted unless i-αppli is started and the data in the IC card is deleted.
- When ***Use icons*** is set to ***No***, i-αppli may not operate.

Downloading Message i-αppli

When Message i-αppli is downloaded, folders for Message i-αppli is automatically created in the lists of ***Outbox***, ***Inbox*** and ***Unsent messages***. The automatically created folder is named with the name of Message i-αppli downloaded, which cannot be changed.

- Message i-αppli can be saved up to 5 applications (included in the 100 maximum number of i-αppli applications). If the maximum number of Message i-αppli is exceeded, Message i-αppli cannot be downloaded. In that case, delete Message i-αppli before downloading. ☛P306
- If Message i-αppli that uses the same mail folder has already been saved in FOMA terminal, the software cannot be downloaded. However, i-αppli can be updated if a new version is available.

INFORMATION

- If you attempt to download or upgrade Message i-αppli, when Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Mail***), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- If a Message i-αppli application is tried to be downloaded again while only the relevant Message i-αppli folder remains, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to use the folder. When you select ***Yes***, the Message i-αppli is downloaded. If you choose not to use the mail folder, delete the folder before downloading the Message i-αppli.
- If a received mail that supports Message i-αppli to be downloaded has already been saved in FOMA terminal, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to move the received mail to the folder that was created at the time of downloading. When you select ***Yes***, the received mail is sorted. However, when Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** or ***Hide Secret fldrs*** set for ***Mail***), you cannot sort them.

Viewing i-αppli information when downloading

Software Info Display

You set whether to display i-αppli information when downloading.

Default OFF

1 Press Menu 3 DEF 2 ABC 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 あ.

- Not to display i-αppli information, press 2 か ABC.

Menu 31

Starting i-αppli

1 Hold down ▽ for over a second on the stand-by display.

■ **Displaying only i-αppli shortcuts**

① **Press Menu 3 DEF 2 ABC 6 MNO.**

The i-αppli shortcut list is displayed. Go to Step 3.

■ **Displaying only the IC card software (Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli)**

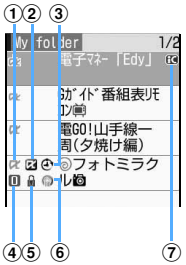
① **Press Menu 6 MNO 7 PQRS.**

The IC card software list is displayed. Go to Step 3.

2 Select a folder.

: No i-αppli : i-αppli present

3 Select an i-αppli application to start.



① : Normal i-αppli : i-αppli DX
: Message i-αppli

② : i-αppli that can be set for i-αppli stand-by display
: i-αppli that is set for i-αppli stand-by display

③ : i-αppli with Auto Start
: i-αppli at stopped condition by IP (Information service provider)

④ 0 to 9 : i-αppli registered as i-mode shortcut

⑤ : Protected i-αppli
SSL : i-αppli downloaded from SSL pages
: Protected i-αppli which was downloaded from SSL pages

⑥ : i-αppli registered in One-touch Button

⑦ : Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli

- To cancel starting i-αppli, press Clear and select ***Ended***.

■ **When i-αppli makes communication**

When ***Confirm every session*** is set for NW transmission of i-αppli to be started, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to connect.

- Setting NW transmission ☛P292

Quitting i-αppli

Quit i-αppli in the procedure specified for each.

- You can also quit i-αppli by pressing Clear and selecting ***Ended***.

INFORMATION

- Because of the 3D polygon* engine loaded, 3 dimensional image can be displayed with i-αppli.
  *By combining polygons (triangles and squares), 3 dimensional image with depth can be displayed.
- Whether the Easy Selector Plus is effective for 4 or 8 directions depends on i-αppli.
- The volume of the sound which sounds during i-αppli operation follows Volume Setting for the ring tone. Note that when ***Ascending*** is set in Volume Setting, the volume is ***Level4***.
- While Drive Mode is on, the vibrator and sound during activating i-αppli do not operate.
- When starting i-αppli while activating Privacy Mode (***Authorized access*** set for ***i-αppli***), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- i-αppli is interrupted in the following cases. If you quit the function being used and run, i-αppli is restarted, but if you press [▭] and select ***i-αppli***, i-αppli can be restarted while the function in progress is continued. Some i-αppli may not return to the state before it was interrupted.
  - When there is an incoming call (except when the ringing time of Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service is set to ***0 sec***)
  - When the time set in the schedule alarm or Alarm Clock has come
  - When you switch to another function
- When you are outside the service area or the saved data cannot be used, i-αppli may not start or not operate correctly.
- Using i-αppli to start another specified i-αppli allows use of i-αppli without returning to the software list. If no i-αppli to be started is set, selection of i-αppli is required. If i-αppli to be started is set but not on the software list, it must be downloaded.
- Images used on i-αppli or your entered data may automatically be sent to the server via Internet. Images used on i-αppli are images shot with the camera while i-αppli is activated, images obtained using the i-αppli infrared communication function, images downloaded by i-αppli from sites or Internet web pages, or images obtained by i-αppli from Data Box.
- For some i-αppli, the IP (Information service provider) may access i-αppli saved in the mobile phone and may change into a use stop state directly. In this case, starting, setting for stand-by or upgrading, etc. of the i-αppli cannot be performed and only deleting and displaying the detailed information of software can be performed. To use again, please ask the IP (Information service provider) since it is necessary to receive communication of canceling to quit i-αppli.
- For some i-αppli, the IP (Information service provider) may send data to i-αppli saved in the mobile phone.
- When the IP (Information service provider) requests to stop/restart i-αppli or send data to i-αppli, FOMA terminal communicates and ▮ flashes. In this case, the communication charge is not required.
- For i-αppli builders:
  If i-αppli does not operate normally while building, trace display may help. Press [Menu] [3 さ DEF] [3 さ DEF] [4 た GHI] on the stand-by display to display the trace. Note that trace information cannot be displayed if i-αppli built to record trace information is not saved.

Displaying history when operation finishes without using saved data

Security Error History

When i-αppli ended because an error that i-αppli cannot use the saved data occurred , the name of i-αppli, date and time, cause of the security error is recorded.

- Latest 20 records of security error history are recorded.

1 Press [Menu] [3 さ DEF] [3 さ DEF] [3 さ DEF] on the stand-by display.

■ **Deleting all the history**

① **Press [▭] and select *Yes*.**

Displaying i-αppli detail information

Detail Info

Detail information such as the name and version of i-αppli can be checked.

1 Hold down ▽ for over a second on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor i-αppli to check and press ●.

3 Check detail information.

- The displayed items differ depending on i-αppli.
- If you press ●, the site certificate can be checked when i-αppli is downloaded from SSL pages.

Setting operating condition of i-αppli

Settings

- Only one i-αppli application can be set for i-αppli Stand-by Display.

1 Hold down ▽ for over a second on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at i-αppli to set and press Menu 7 おPQRS.

3 Select each item to set.

- You cannot select the item not supported by the i-αppli.

Set ▒ αppli display : Used to set whether to set i-αppli which supports the i-αppli stand-by display as your stand-by display.

Set NW transmission during ▒ αppli display : Used to set whether to allow automatic communication while the i-αppli stand-by display is operating.

Set NW transmission : Used to set whether to allow automatic communication while i-αppli is operating. When ***Confirm every session*** is set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to communicate each time i-αppli is activated.

Use icons : Specifies whether to enable i-αppli to use icons for mail, Message R/F, remaining battery level, Silent Mode and reception level.

Start from browser : Used to set whether to start i-αppli from sites (i-αppli To).

Start from mailer : Used to set whether to start i-αppli from mail (i-αppli To).

Start from external : Used to set whether to start i-αppli from external devices (i-αppli To).

Allow ring tone/image changes by software* : Specifies whether to allow i-αppli to change the settings of ring tones or images on the screen such as the stand-by display. If ***Yes*** is set, the ring tone and image of the stand-by display are changed automatically.

Confirm every set-up* : Specifies whether to display a confirmation screen each time the settings of ring tones or images are changed.

Allow access to phonebook/dial record by software* : Specifies whether to allow i-αppli to refer to the phonebook or call log. If ***Yes*** is set, the phonebook or call log is referred automatically.

* This setting is available only for i-αppli DX.

4 Press ●.

- When ***Set ▒ αppli display*** is set to ***Yes***, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel the current stand-by display setting.

INFORMATION

- i-αppli automatically makes connection to networks if a setting is made to allow communication. Note that connection to networks requires communication charges.
- When i-αppli that connects to networks for communication is set as the i-αppli stand-by display, communication may automatically be carried out depending on i-αppli.
- Depending on this setting, network communication from i-αppli and using icon information (unread mail, remaining battery level,etc.) may not be able to be used.
- Note that if you set ***No*** for ***Set NW transmission***, i-αppli may not be started and timely information such as stock prices or weather forecast may not be provided by i-αppli.
- If ***Yes*** is set for ***Use icons*** for the i-αppli stand-by display, information of icons for unread mail, unread Message R/F, remaining battery level, Silent Mode, and icons within service area/outside service area may be sent to IPs (Information service providers) through the Internet, which may give the information to a third party.
- While Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***i-αppli***), the i-αppli stand-by display does not start even if it is set.

Setting the lighting and vibrator during i-αppli running

Light/Vibrate Setting

Setting display light

- The i-αppli stand-by display light operation depends on the settings in Display Light Setting for the display.
- While Driving Mode is on, the light while i-αppli is running does not operate even if ***Use software setting*** is set.

Default Use phone setting

1 Press Menu 3 DEF 2 ABC 4 GHI on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 あ /@ or 2 か ABC.

Use phone setting

: The light is turned on according to the settings in Display Light Setting for the display. ☛P127

Use software setting

: i-αppli controls the lighting on/off.

Setting vibrator

Allow the vibrator operation by i-αppli.

- While Driving Mode is on, the vibrator while i-αppli is running does not operate regardless of this setting.

Default ON

1 Press Menu 3 DEF 2 ABC 5 JKL on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 あ /@.

- Not to allow the vibrator operation, press 2 か ABC.

Using pre-installed i-αppli

The following i-αppli applications are preinstalled by default:

Game software	• 電車で GO！ 3D サウンド 山手線一周（夕焼け編） (Go! by Train 3D Sound: Going round in Yamanoteline)
Other i-αppli	• ウゴクフォトミラクル (Movable Miracle Photo) • ｉ アニメっちゃメーラー DX (i-anime Mailer DX) • G ガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller) • 電子マネー「Edy」(Electronic money “Edy”) • 珍さん計画 DX おこづかい帖プラス (Mr. Chin’s Scheduled Cashbook) • 便利！多機能電卓 (Multifunction Calculator)

Select each i-αppli application from the list to start.

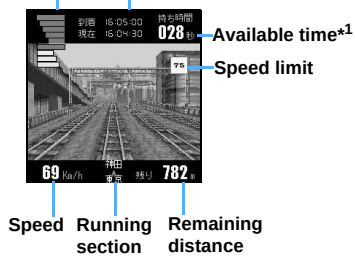
- ウゴクフォトミラクル, 珍さん計画 DX おこづかい帖プラス can be set as the i-αppli stand-by display.
- If you delete i-αppli preloaded by default, you can download it from i-mode site “My D-style”. To access “My D-style”, select 3 *メニューリスト* (Menu list) of the Japanese iMenu → *ケータイ電話メーカー* (Mobile phone manufacturer) (as of May 2005).

電車で GO! 3D サウンド 山手線一周（夕焼け編）
(GO by Train! 3D Sound: Going round in Yamanote line)

You can become an electric train driver who drives the train toward the final destination station as scheduled observing the running rules.

- Driving the electric train in the Yamanote line in counterclockwise direction (departing from and arriving at Tokyo station)

■ Game screen and keys to be used



：Master controller level-down/brake power-up

：Master controller level-up/brake power-down

：Master controller off, brake releasing

：Horn

：Confirm speed limit

FOMA terminal open/close*2

：Close doors

*1 The game ends when the available time goes out.

*2 Open and immediately close FOMA terminal.

■ Playing method

① **Starting** ：When a message *ドアが閉まります ご注意ください* (Attention, please! Doors will be closed) has appeared, once open and close FOMA terminal within 5 seconds. When the cab signal goes lit, release the brake and raise the master controller level for departure.

② **Running** ：While running, observe the speed limit by adjusting the master controller level and brake.

③ **Stopping**：When the train comes close to the station, decelerate it by braking and stop at the specified position in the station.

■ **About game modes**

There are 3 modes available:

Mode	Description
一周モード（はじめから） **(One-circuit mode : from the beginning)**	Go round the Yamanote line departing form Shinagawa station. Halfway results can be saved.*
一周モード（続きから） **(One-circuit mode: continuous)**	Resume the game from the section saved.
エリアモード **(Area mode)**	Play in one of 5 areas comprising the whole section. One area can be selected for playing from those cleared in the one-circuit mode.

* Halfway results can be saved in the following cases:

- When *タイトルに戻る* (Return to title) is selected after pressing [m]
- When the game is over
- When the entire section has been cleared

i アニメっちゃメーラー DX (i-anime Mailer DX)

You can compose a fun mail by adding color or motion effects to the text or adding an animated character.

■ **Starting mail composition**

When you run i アニメっちゃメーラー DX, the top screen is displayed. Select *新規作成* (New) on the top screen to start the mail composition.

Every time you enter an address, another empty address field is added. You can enter up to 5 addresses. From the phonebook, you can also search for the address.

When you select *本文へ* (To message), the preview screen is displayed. Proceed to text composition.

■ **Composing mail text**

Enter text characters in the preview screen. You can also set an effect in this screen.

- Move the cursor and press [●], and enter text characters.
- Use [クリア] when you want to delete characters.Use [#ジャ] to change the line.
- You can send up to 280 one-byte or 140 two-byte characters at a time. If you use an effect, this will decrease the number of characters that can be sent because of the amount of data in the effect.

Number of input characters (including effect)/ Number of characters that can be sent

To use animation or effects, press [m] and select an item:

Item	Description
1. ステージエフェクト **(Stage effect)**	You can select the background color and the background pattern. • If you select the color white, some patterns become invisible.
2. テキストエフェクト **(Text effect)**	You can set the font color and size, and text motion. When you press [●] at the start and the end point, the category list is displayed. Choose a category and select an effect.
3. キモチアニメ **(Emotional animation)**	You can insert an animated character. Put the cursor on the inserted character, press [●] and enter the text you want to have the character say.
4. アニメっちゃ絵文字 **(Animation pictogram)**	You can enter the pictogram of i アニメっちゃメーラー DX.
5. エフェクト解除 **(Clear effect)**	Clear the text effect. Press [●] at the start and end points for clearing it.

■ **Sending mail**

Press [m] on the preview screen and select *送信*(Send).

- If you press [m] and select *途中保存*(***1*** *件のみ可能*) (save unsent), the text being composed is saved. The address, however, is not saved. If any mail has already been saved, it is overwritten.

■ **Other features**

The following functions are available when selected on the top screen:

Item	Description
受信ボックス **(Inbox)**	Displays received messages.
送信ボックス **(Outbox)**	Displays sent messages.
未送信ボックス **(Unsent messages)**	Displays messages that failed to be sent.
制作途中データ **(Draft)**	Displays messages saved before being sent.
センター問い合わせ **(Check new message)**	Shows Mail menu of FOMA terminal. You can perform Check i-mode Message from Mail menu.

- Only the mail received from ｉ アニメっちゃメーラー DX and sent or saved using ｉ アニメっちゃメーラー DX can be shown.
- From the menu of *受信ボックス* , *送信ボックス* or *未送信ボックス* , you can reply, forward or re-send the mail.

INFORMATION

● Other parties also need to support ｉ アニメっちゃメーラー DX to receive the mail composed with this function. The mail composed with ｉ アニメっちゃメーラー DX cannot be shown correctly with the FOMA terminal's mail function or any mail software of PC.

G ガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)

Note: The display shown here represents an example. It differs from the actual display. Programs according to the home area are displayed.

This is a convenient application containing a TV program table and an AV remote controller.

You can download information on TV programs on the requested time anywhere, anytime. You will be informed of the program title, contents, starting and ending times and G code®. By entering your favorite program in the reservation list, it is registered in Scheduler and an alarm can be emitted when the program starts. In addition, you can search for TV program information using keywords such as the program category or your favorite entertainer. You can also operate the TV, video deck and DVD/HD recorder remotely. Recording reservation to the DVD/HD recorder with infrared function is possible as well (some devices do not support this function).

- When you use Ｇ ガイド番組表リモコン for the first time, it is necessary to set initial settings and to consent to the agreement for use.
- Packet communication fee is separately required.
- For more information, see "FOMA i-mode User's Manual".

電子マネー「Edy」(Electronic money "Edy")

電子マネー「Edy」is a simple and useful prepaid type electronic money service that you can make payment by touching the reader/writer.

電子マネー「Edy」is a service provided by bitWallet, Inc. When using this service, make initial setting after checking precautions and the covenant of utilization.

Initial setting/Service register (no charge)

Charge (deposit)
- Charge (deposit) Edy at stores
- Charge (deposit) Edy by i-mode*

Payment
- Payment at stores
- Mobile Edy (payment at online shopping)*

Useful functions
- Checking balance/usage history
- Receiving Edy gift

Support
- Procedure regarding Edy at model change*
- Procedure regarding Edy at failure*

* Advanced registration is required.

See the Internet web page and i-mode site, or contact Edy emergency call for information regarding detail service information of 電子マネー「Edy」or usable stores, and procedures of 電子マネー「Edy」for model change/failure/loss of the terminal.

- For information regarding this service, contact bitWallet, Inc.
- See the following Edy i-mode site or web page for information regarding Edy:
  i-mode site: http://imode.edy.jp Internet web page: http://www.edy.jp
- If you have any problems regarding the procedures of Edy, please contact the following:
  Edy emergency call: 0570-081-999 (PHS is unavailable)
  Office hours: 9:00 to 21:00 (every day)
  Note: Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
- DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the information of Edy set in FOMA terminal.

QR code for accessing i-mode site

INFORMATION

- Packet communication fee is charged when using i-mode communication e.g. during initial setting of 電子マネー「Edy」or use of the *主なメニュー* (Main menu) function.
- When ***Set NW transmission*** is set to ***No*** for Settings for software or when Self Mode is on, i-mode communication cannot be made. Therefore note that you cannot make initial setting of 電子マネー「Edy」or use of the *主なメニュー* (Main menu) function.
- To use Mobile Edy (payment at on-line shopping), you need to receive the payment start message from the Edy Center. When ***Receive Mail from Selected Domains*** is set, register the domain "@bitwallet.co.jp".
- Even when you change model of your FOMA terminal, the Edy compatible FOMA terminal used before model change can be used as an Edy card. Take care when discarding the terminal.

便利！多機能電卓 (Multifunction Calculator)

In addition to basic calculation, this i-αppli provides several useful calculation functions such as calculation for splitting a bill.

■ Basic calculation

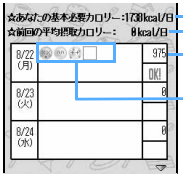
When you select *基本計算* (Basic) from the title screen, the calculator screen is displayed.

The calculation methods are the same as with usual calculators. Use ○ to select "+", " − ", "x" and " ÷ ". Press ● to display the calculated value. To change entered incorrect digits, press クリア. To renew the calculation from the beginning, press #.

- When you press ▭ and select *計算一覧表示* (Details), the details of current calculation are displayed. When you select *過去計算一覧表示* (Last calculations), up to 5 past calculations are displayed.

■ **Useful calculations**

Select a calculation type from the title screen.

Item	Description
ワリカン計算 **(Splitting)**	When you set the rate of splitting the bill (0.1 to 2.0) for each attribute such as male/female and select *ワリカン！* (Split!), the amount of money to be shared is displayed.
ゴチルーレット **(Roulette)**	Determines the amount of money to be paid by a roulette for each person. When you set the total amount of money, number of persons, seriousness (difference of money for each person) and select *開始* (Start), the roulette starts to spin. When you press ●, the amount of money is displayed. Press 中 to have each person start the roulette and press ● to determine his or her share.
時間計算 **(Time duration)**	Calculates the time duration from the start date/time to the end date/time. To set the start date/time and end date/time, press ●, select the position to be changed with ▷◁, change the digits with ▽△ and then press ●. When you select *決定* (Enter) after setting the date and time, the time duration is displayed on the screen. Press 中 to select the units to display the time. Besides, by selecting *あと何日？* (How many days remain?), you can calculate the time from the present to the specified date/time, or selecting *あれから何日？* (How many days past?) enables you to calculate the duration from the specified date/time to the present.
カロリー計算 **(Calories)**	Calculates the total calories of food intake. Enter the sex and age, and the calories calculation screen is displayed.  **Basic required calorie** **The average calorie of the previous week** **Your total calorie intake for today** **Enter icons of the food you have eaten today** Move the cursor to the entry position and press ● to select the food from the list. An icon indicating the calorie level is displayed. Place the cursor at the icon to check the food name. • This calorie calculation gives only rough results and not the precise value. • Whether the calories are insufficient or excessive is determined by referring to the standard reference for calories according to the sex and age.
いろいろ変換 **(Conversion)**	You can convert the units of distance, space, weight, Christian/Japanese year, and the like. Enter the value in the unit you want to convert, and the value in each unit will be displayed.

ウゴクフォトミラクル (Movable Miracle Photo)

This i-αppli displays the image shot with D901iS in time to melody and with various effects (Effect), which is compatible with i-αppli Stand-by Display.

• Select *遊ぶ！* (Start) from the top screen and select the item from the menu screen. After shooting or selecting the still image at *撮影する* (Shoot) or *マイピクチャから選択* (My picture), select *再生する* (Play).

Item	Descriptions
撮影する	Activate Camera and shoot still images. Still images are not saved in ***Image*** of Data Box.
マイピクチャから選択	Select the still picture shot with FOMA terminal from ***Image***. • Images with the size exceeding 480 X 640 (VGA PORTRAIT) can also be selected, however, images with the size of 480 X 640 (VGA PORTRAIT) or less are recommended to be selected.
再生する	Play the shot or selected still image.
待受設定方法 **(Stand-by Setting)**	Display the setting method for i-αppli Stand-by Display. If you set, the image can be played on the stand-by display. The melody does not sound. Press クリア on the stand-by display and display the execution screen to shoot/select the image or play the image with melody.
Q&A (サイトへアクセス **(Accessing to sites)**	Connect the site of *ウゴクフォトミラクル* and display Q&A pages.

珍さん計画 DX おこづかい帖プラス (Mr. Chin's Scheduled Cashbook)

This i-αppli has Scheduler and Cashbook functions, which is compatible with i-αppli Stand-by Display.

Icon for the schedule

Money in hand

To change the display position or to turn off the display, press ●, select *所持金表示設定* (Display setting) and select *右下* (Right down) *左下* (Left down) and *非表示* (No display)

■ Scheduler function

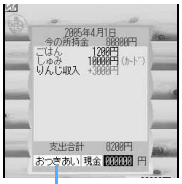
You can register a schedule. If you set the schedule for the i-αppli stand-by display, the icon is displayed on the specified date of registration.

Item	Operations
登録 **(Register)**	Press ●, select *予定設定* (Set schedule), set the contents of schedule and press ●. • The number of the schedules which can be registered in a day is up to 3.
確認 **(Check)**	Press ● and select *予定確認* (Check schedule). Press ● and select *修正* (Edit) or *削除* (Delete) to edit or delete the schedule.

■ Cashbook function

You can record monthly incomes and expenses. The interior of the room of Mr.Chin changes by the amount of money in hand.

Item	Operations
おこづかい設定 (Set pocket-money)	Press ●, select *おこづかい設定* and set the income day, the present money in hand or the monthly amount. Press ● to register. • When the current day is set as the income day, it is not put in until the next month will come. Pay in from money in hand. • If this setting has not been activated for two months or more, pocket-money will be put in for only one month of the previous month.
毎月の支払い設定 (Set fixed payment)	Select *毎月の支払い* from the menu and set the amount of money paid every month such as house rent.
毎日の出費、臨時収入の入力 (Enter daily expense, casual income)	Press ●, select *おこづかい帖* (Cashbook), select the detail of expenses and manner of payment from the write-in field and enter the amount of money (in ￥100 unit). • Select *りんじ収入* (Casual income) to add the entered amount of money to the money in hand. • To display the previous *おこづかい帖*, place the cursor at the detail of expenses in the write-in field and press ●.



A write-in field

Starting i-αppli with One-touch Button

One-touch Button

Registering i-αppli to One-touch Button

• Only one i-αppli can be registered to One-touch ButtonL. 電子マネー「Edy」is registered by default.

1 **Hold down [▽] for over a second on the stand-by display and select a folder.**

2 **Place the cursor at i-αppli to register and press [Menu] [9 wxyz] [1 あ /@].**

- To cancel the setting, place the cursor at i-αppli to cancel and press [Menu] [9 wxyz] [1 あ /@].

Starting i-αppli with One-touch Button

1 **Hold down [▽] for over a second on the stand-by display.**

INFORMATION

● Which i-αppli registered to One-touch Button can be checked. ☛P307

Starting i-αppli with i-αppli Shortcut

i-αppli Shortcut

Registering as i-αppli shortcuts

- Up to 10 i-αppli can be registered as i-αppli shortcuts.

1 **Hold down [▽] for over a second on the stand-by display and select a folder.**

2 **Place the cursor at i-αppli to register and press [Menu] [9 wxyz] [2 か abc].**

- To cancel the setting, place the cursor at i-αppli to cancel and press [Menu] [9 wxyz] [2 か abc].

3 **Select the registration destination.**

- Number [0] to [9] correspond to the dial key [0 わ ん 記号] to [9 wxyz] used to start i-αppli.

Starting i-αppli with i-αppli Shortcut

1 **Press the dial key ([0 わ ん 記号] to [9 wxyz]) on the stand-by display and hold down [▽] for over a second.**

Automatically starting i-αppli

Collective setting for auto starting is made for all i-αppli which different conditions are set to.

- The date and time setting of FOMA terminal is required to start i-αppli automatically.

Specifying whether to start automatically

Auto Start

- When set to ***OFF***, Auto Start is also disabled for i-αppli even if ***User*** of Auto Start Info Setting is set to ***ON***.

Default ON

1 **Press [Menu] [3 さ def] [2 か abc] [2 か abc] on the stand-by display.**

2 **Press [1 あ /@] or [2 か abc].**

Setting the date and time of Auto Start

Auto Start Info Setting

Set Auto Start on/off or the start time for each i-αppli application and display the preset details.

- The conditions that can be set depend on i-αppli.
- Some i-αppli may not be started automatically.
- When Auto Start is set to ***OFF***, this setting is not available.

1 Hold down ▽ for over a second on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at i-αppli to set and press Menu 5JKL.

3 Select each item to set.

User : Select whether to set conditions of Auto Start.
- When ***OFF*** is set, the following items cannot be set.

Time : Enter the time to automatically start i-αppli.

Repeat : Set the condition for repetitive automatic starting of i-αppli.
- When ***OneTime*** is set, set the date for auto starting in ***Date*** field.
- When ***Daily*** is set, i-αppli starts automatically at the time set in ***Time*** field every day.
- When ***Weekly*** is set, set the day of week for auto starting in ***Weekly*** field.

Weekly : Set the day of week for auto starting when ***Weekly*** is set for ***Repeat***.

Date : Set the date for auto starting when ***OneTime*** is set for ***Repeat***.

Software : Specify whether to automatically start at the intervals preset for i-αppli.

i-αppli *1* to *4* : Depending on i-αppli DX, up to 4 conditions of Auto Start can be set while it is operated. Specifies whether to enable the settings.

4 Press ▭.

INFORMATION

- Even when auto starting is set, i-αppli is not started if the time of activation arrives in one of the following situations. If i-αppli is not started for the following reasons (except for the ones marked with *), 🔕 is indicated on the stand-by display and the name of i-αppli, the date and time and the reason for the start failure are recorded in Start Failure History.
  - When FOMA terminal power is off.*
  - UIM operation is restricted (except for pre-installed i-αppli).
  - When UIM cannot be detected (except for pre-installed i-αppli).
  - When Auto Start is ***OFF***.*
  - When the interval of auto start is too short.*
  - During a talk or communication
  - When a screen other than the stand-by display is displayed or i-αppli stand-by display operation is in progress.
  - When any other function is running.
  - In All Lock or PIM Lock
  - When Privacy Mode is on (while ***i-αppli*** is set to ***Authorized access***).
  - While an alarm or schedule alarm is sounding (including when the set time is the same as the setting for Auto Start).
  - When i-αppli usage is stopped by IP (Information service provider).
- Even if you specify to start two or more i-αppli applications automatically at the same date and time, only one i-αppli application is activated. The failed i-αppli information is recorded in Start Failure History, but 🔕 is not displayed on the stand-by display.
- If all of the start time is set before the date and time of FOMA terminal, auto starting will be disabled.

Displaying history when Auto Start of i-αppli fails

Start Failure History

When automatic start of i-αppli fails, name of i-αppli, date and time, causes are recorded.

- Up to 20 start failure histories are recorded. When there are more than 20 histories, 21st history is overwritten on the oldest history.
- When you display start failure histories or when the next automatic start is successful, on the stand-by display disappears.

1 Press Menu 3 DEF 3 DEF 1 on the stand-by display.

■ **Deleting all the history**

① **Press and select *Yes*.**

Starting i-αppli from a site or mail

i-αppli To

i-αppli starts when link item to activate i-αppli contained in a site or i-mode Mail is selected or the FeliCa mark is held over a reader/writer (i-αppli To).

1 Select a link item enabled to start i-αppli from a site or i-mode Mail.

2 Select *Yes*.

The connection to site is terminated and i-αppli is started.

INFORMATION

- If the i-αppli you attempt to start with i-αppli To is not saved in FOMA terminal, the message that there is no specified i-αppli is displayed and i-αppli cannot be started. Note that some i-αppli may start just after downloaded from sites even if it is not saved.
  - For i-αppli that starts just after downloaded from sites, a confirmation screen may be displayed asking whether to make communication while it is activated.
  - When ending i-αppli that started just after downloaded from sites, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save i-αppli. Note that some i-αppli may not be able to be saved in FOMA terminal.
- If the specified i-αppli is set not to start with i-αppli To, a message is displayed and i-αppli is not started. ☛P292
- i-αppli can also be started by using the infrared communication, Bar Code Reader or reader/writer.

Operating i-αppli Stand-by Display

i-αppli Stand-by Display

When i-αppli is set for the stand-by display, you can start i-αppli from the stand-by display to operate. or is indicated when the i-αppli stand-by display is set.

- It is necessary to set i-αppli for the stand-by display beforehand. ☛P121

INFORMATION

- When FOMA terminal is turned on while setting i-αppli Stand-by Display, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to start the i-αppli stand-by display. When you select ***Yes***, the i-αppli stand-by display starts. When you select ***No***, the i-αppli stand-by display settings are canceled. If you operate nothing within 5 seconds after the confirmation screen has appeared, the i-αppli stand-by display starts automatically. When the power is turned on by Auto Power ON, the i-αppli stand-by display automatically starts, without displaying the confirmation screen.
- When you set i-αppli that performs communication, it may not operate correctly depending on radio wave conditions, etc.
- i-αppli stand-by display does not operate while Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***i-αppli***).
- If you activate All Lock or PIM Lock while the i-αppli stand-by display is set, the i-αppli stand-by display is temporarily canceled. When you cancel lock, the i-αppli stand-by display starts again.
- If the use of i-αppli set to the i-αppli stand-by display is stopped by IP (Information service provider), the i-αppli standby display is canceled.
- While the i-αppli stand-by display is activated, if an error occurs that makes it difficult for the i-αppli stand-by display to continue to appear, a confirmation screen is displayed asking if you will cancel or not. When you select ***Yes***, the i-αppli stand-by display settings are canceled. At this time, the name of i-αppli and end date/time are recorded in Abnormal Exit History.
- You cannot connect to a site (Web To) from the i-αppli stand-by display.

Starting i-αppli of the i-αppli stand-by display

To start i-αppli set on the i-αppli stand-by display, switch the i-αppli stand-by display to the i-αppli screen.

1 Press クリア on the i-αppli stand-by display.

The screen is changed to the i-αppli screen and or flashes at the top of the screen.

2 Operate i-αppli.

Ending i-αppli to return to the i-αppli stand-by display

1 Press PWR during operating i-αppli.

2 Select *Ended*.

i-αppli is ended and the i-αppli stand-by display is activated. The icon at the top of the screen switches from to , or from to .

- The procedure to exit i-αppli and return to the i-αppli stand-by display depends on i-αppli. Some types of i-αppli return to the stand-by display by pressing クリア.
- Even if ***Ended*** is selected, i-αppli Stand-by Display is not canceled. To cancel, select ***Terminated***. and at the top of the screen disappears.
- To continue i-αppli, select ***Cancel***.

INFORMATION

- In addition, in the software list, place the cursor at i-αppli set for the i-αppli stand-by display, press Menu and select αppli display to cancel i-αppli.

Displaying the end history of i-αppli stand-by display

Abnormal Exit History

When an error that the i-αppli stand-by display cannot continue occurs, the name of i-αppli, date and time are recorded.

- Up to 20 abnormal exit histories are recorded. When there are more than 20 histories, 21st history is overwritten on the oldest history.

1 Press Menu 3 DEF 3 DEF 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

■ **Deleting all the history**

① **Press ▤ and select *Yes*.**

Managing i-αppli

Upgrading i-αppli

Upgrade

When i-αppli has been updated, it can be upgraded.

- i-αppli whose usage is stopped by IP (Information service provider) cannot be upgraded.

1 Hold down ▽ for over a second on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Press Menu 5 JKL after placing the cursor at i-αppli to upgrade and select *Yes*.

- When upgrade is unnecessary, the message that i-αppli is the newest is displayed.

INFORMATION

- When you upgrade i-αppli, data such as game scores stored by the i-αppli may be erased.
- Some i-αppli may inquire the DoCoMo server about the availability depending on the length of time of use/ number of times of use. If the server gives a notice of i-αppli having been updated, it can be upgraded after confirming whether to upgrade it.
- Some i-αppli may be upgraded automatically when activating i-αppli.

Creating/deleting folders

Folders can be created to sort out i-αppli by the category. Also the order of the folder can be changed.

Creating folders

- Up to 20 folders can be created.

1 Hold down ▽ for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Press Menu 4 GHI.

■ **Changing the folder name**

① **Place the cursor at the folder to change the name and press Menu 1.**

■ **Changing the order of the folder**

① **Place the cursor at the folder to change the order, press Menu and then press 5 JKL or 6 MNO.**

The order of the selected folder changes to one line up or down.

3 Enter a folder name and press ▤ (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters).

Deleting folders

• Deleting a folder with i-αppli stored in it also deletes all i-αppli in that folder. Note that the folder cannot be deleted if it contains the protected i-αppli.

1 Hold down ▽ for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the folder to delete and press Menu 2 1.

• To delete a folder with any i-αppli stored in it, enter the terminal security code.

3 Select *Yes*.

• If there is any Message i-αppli in the folder to be deleted, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the automatically created mail folder at the same time. Select ***Yes*** to delete the mail folder and all messages stored in the folder. Select ***No*** to delete i-αppli only. However, if there is any protected message in the mail folder, you cannot delete the i-αppli or mail folder even when ***Yes*** is selected.

• If there is any Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli that cannot be deleted unless the data in the IC card is not deleted in the folder to delete, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete i-αppli other than that.

INFORMATION

● When only i-αppli has been deleted and the mail folder used for Message i-αppli is left undeleted, the message can be displayed from the submenu of the mail list. ☛P250

● When the mail folder for Message i-αppli to be deleted is being used (including displaying the list), the i-αppli may not be deleted.

● While Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Mail***) and if you delete Message i-αppli, cancel Privacy Mode according to directions of the screen.

Protecting i-αppli

• The maximum number of software that can be protected. ☛P33

1 Hold down ▽ for over a second on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at i-αppli to protect and press Menu 3 1.

i-αppli is protected and 🔒 or S! is indicated on the software list.

• To cancel, place the cursor at i-αppli to cancel the protection and press Menu 3 1.

■ **Switching the protection of selected items on/off**

① Press Menu 3 2 to select i-αppli.

• Press ● to select or cancel i-αppli; press Menu to select or cancel all.

② Press 📖.

■ **Switching the protection of all items in the folder on/off**

① Press Menu 3 3 and enter the terminal security code.

INFORMATION

● All of the protected i-αppli are also deleted when Delete All Data is performed. ☛P416

Deleting i-αppli

- Some i-αppli can also delete the data in the IC card.
- Some i-αppli cannot be deleted unless you start i-αppli and delete the data in the IC card.
- Some Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli may not be deleted.

1 Hold down ▽ for over a second on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at i-αppli to delete and press Menu 2 1.

■ **Deleting the selected items**

① **Press Menu 2 2 to select i-αppli.**

- Press ▽ to select or cancel i-αppli; press Menu to select or cancel all.

② **Press ●.**

■ **Deleting all items in the folder**

① **Press Menu 2 3.**

② **Enter the terminal security code and select *All* or *w/o protect*.**

- All the i-αppli or all the unprotected i-αppli in the folder is deleted.

3 Select *Yes*.

- When you attempt to delete Message i-αppli, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the automatically created mail folder at the same time. Select ***Yes*** to delete the mail folder and all messages stored in it. Select ***No*** to delete i-αppli only. However, if there is any protected message in the mail folder, you cannot delete the i-αppli or mail folder even when ***Yes*** is selected.
- If the i-αppli to be deleted by ***Selected items*** or ***All items*** has Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli that cannot be deleted unless the data in the IC card is deleted, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete i-αppli other than that.

INFORMATION

- When deleting all i-αppli in folder from the folder list, place the cursor at the folder, press Menu and select ***Delete*** → ***Delete software***.
- When only i-αppli has been deleted and the mail folder used for Message i-αppli is left undeleted, the message can be displayed from the submenu of the mail list. ☛P250
- The protected i-αppli cannot be deleted by ***One item*** or ***Selected items***. To delete the protected i-αppli, clear the protection beforehand. Alternatively, select ***All items***, enter the terminal security code, and then delete i-αppli by selecting ***All***.
- If you attempt to delete Message i-αppli when Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Mail***), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- If you have deleted i-αppli preloaded by default, you can download it from i-mode site “My D-style”. ☛P294
- While Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Mail***) and if you delete Message i-αppli, cancel Privacy Mode according to directions of the screen.

Moving i-αppli to another folder

1 Hold down ▽ for over a second on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at i-αppli to move and press Menu 4 1.

■ **Moving the selected items**

① **Press Menu 4 2 to select i-αppli.**

- Press ▽ to select or cancel i-αppli; press Menu to select or cancel all.

② **Press ●.**

■ **Moving all items in folder**

① **Press Menu 4 3.**

3 Select the folder to move to and select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

● When you press Menu 6 MNO 7 PQRS on the stand-by display and only Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli is displayed by the list, i-αppli cannot be moved to other folders.

Sorting i-αppli

Software Sort

Default By download time

1 Press Menu 3 DEF 2 ABC 1 あ/@ on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 あ/@ to 5 JKL.

- For ***By download time*** and ***By access time***, i-αppli is sorted by the time set in Date and Time Setting of FOMA terminal.
- For ***By name***, it may not match the order of the Japanese syllabary if two-byte and one-byte characters/alphabetic characters are included in the name of i-αppli.
- For ***By access frequency***, it does not contain the number of starts as the i-αppli stand-by display. The number of starts is carried over even when i-αppli version is upgraded.
- For ***By software size***, the total of the file size of i-αppli and scratchpad to be used is sorted from large to smallest.

Checking the number of i-αppli in folder

Software in Folder

1 Hold down ▽ for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the folder to check the number of i-αppli and press 📖.

: Normal i-αppli : i-αppli DX

: Message i-αppli : Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli

Checking current settings of i-αppli

Software Information

1 Hold down ▽ for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Press ✉.

Storage : Total size of i-αppli saved is displayed with a bar and value.

Software count : Total number of i-αppli saved is displayed.

αppli display : Name and storage folder of i-αppli set as the i-αppli stand-by display are displayed.

One-key shortcut : Name and storage folder of i-αppli set for One-touch Button are displayed.

Auto start : Name, storage folder and start time of i-αppli set for the next automatic start are displayed.

Using various functions from i-αppli

• Downloading i-αppli that supports individual functions beforehand is required.

Making calls from i-αppli

1 Select setting items for Customized Call and set call conditions.

• Setting for Customized Call ☛P52

2 Press [Menu] and select *Yes*.

A call is made by the settings. When you make a call, i-αppli is interrupted.

• Some i-αppli may need different operation or be unable to make calls.

Connecting to sites from i-αppli

1 Select *Yes* when a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to connect to sites.

i-αppli is ended and the site is displayed.

• Connecting to a site is unavailable from the i-αppli stand-by display.

• Some i-αppli may need different operation or be unable to connect to sites.

Using Camera

1 Operate i-αppli to use Camera.

• Some i-αppli activates Camera automatically.

INFORMATION

● When Camera has been activated from i-αppli, shot images are not saved in the ***Camera*** folder of ***Image*** or ***i-motion*** but saved in the ***mode*** folder, ***Deco-Mail picture*** folder or the i-αppli. Saved images may be automatically sent from i-αppli to the server by communication.

● Some i-αppli can change the image size or shooting size or set the frame, etc.

Using Bar Code Reader from i-αppli

1 Operate i-αppli to scan bar codes.

• A message that scan results are used and saved in the i-αppli is displayed.

Using infrared communication from i-αppli

• Infrared communication may not be made depending on the other device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

1 Operate i-αppli to perform infrared communication.

• i-αppli can also be executed by receiving i-αppli starting data via infrared communication.

• If you perform infrared communication while your terminal is connected to a site or sending / receiving mail, the site connection or mail transmission is stopped.

i-motion

i-motion 310
Downloading i-motion from sites 310
Setting auto play and type of i-motion to be downloaded ..... i-motion Setting 312

i-motion

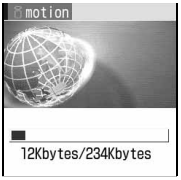
Images and sounds can be downloaded from i-mode or Internet web site and played/stored. Images or sounds saved can be played as “i-motion” or can be set for Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion). The vocals of singers can be used for a ring alert as well as melodies. (Some i-motion may not be set for Movie ringtone.)
Generally, there are 2 types of i-motion as follows. The type of i-motion depends on sites.

i-motion type		Description
Type	Playing action	
Normal type (can be saved*)	**Replay while downloading data (up to 500 KB)**	The i-motion file is played while the data is being downloaded. After downloading data is completed, the i-motion can be operated in the same way as the i-motion replayed after downloading all data.
	Replay after downloading data (up to 500 KB)	The i-motion file is played after downloading all data.
Streaming type (cannot be saved)	**Replay while downloading data (up to 2 MB)**	The i-motion file is played while the data is being downloaded. The i-motion data is deleted after playback is completed and cannot be stored in FOMA terminal.

* Some i-motion cannot be saved.

Downloading i-motion from sites

1 Display the site with i-motion and select i-motion.



The message indicating the completion appears when finishing downloading i-motion.

- When streaming i-motion is selected, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to replay. Select ***Yes*** to replay with downloading i-motion. The message indicating the completion of downloading is displayed when the i-motion finishes playing, but streaming i-motion cannot be saved.
- When trying to download streaming i-motion if the i-motion type setting is ***Normal type***, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to change the setting. Select ***Yes*** and i-motion type is set to ***Norm・Streaming*** to download the streaming i-motion. ☛P312

i-motion replayed while the data is being downloaded

Amount of received data/Amount of total data

i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded. After finishing the replay, the operation is the same as the i-motion replayed after downloading data.

- During playback, the following operations are enabled:
  - : Pause/replay (Only normal type) : Adjust volume
  - : Interrupt (Streaming type)
    Stop (Normal type, Pressing plays back the i-motion from the beginning.)
  - : Display detail information
- Even if you pause or stop playing, the data reception continues.
- When the operation is interrupted, a confirmation screen is displayed. Select ***Yes*** to interrupt.
- When ***Auto replay setting*** for i-motion is set to ***Auto Play OFF***, i-motion is not replayed automatically.

■ **i-motion replayed after downloading data**

i-motion is replayed automatically when downloading is completed.

- During playback, the following operations are enabled:
  - : Pause/replay : Adjust volume : Play at fast speed
  - : Stop (The message is displayed indicating the completion of downloading.)
  - : Display detail information
- When ***Auto replay setting*** for i-motion is set to ***Auto Play OFF***, i-motion is not replayed automatically.

2 Select *Save*.

- Streaming i-motion cannot be saved.
- To replay i-motion again, select ***Play***.
- To display detail information of i-motion, select ***File property***.
- To cancel saving, select ***Back***. In case of Normal type, a confirmation screen appears. Select ***No***.

3 Enter a display name (up to 36 one- or two-byte characters) and press .

The downloaded i-motion is saved in ***mode*** folder of ***i-motion***.

- The i-motion can be set as the stand-by display, ring alert or incoming image by pressing Menu.
☛P331

■ **When a link is set within ticker stream of downloaded i-motion**

If a link such as a phone number (Phone To, AV Phone To), a mail address (Mail To), or a site (Web To) is set in a ticker, a confirmation screen asking whether to connect to the target item is displayed after playback is finished or interrupted. Select ***Yes*** to connect to the target item.

- When the link type is Phone To (AV Phone To), pressing allows you to add phone numbers to the phonebook. Selecting ***Add to phonebook*** allows you to add mail addresses to the phonebook when the link type is Mail To.
- When i-motion is not saved, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save i-motion before connecting to the linked screen.
- When there are two or more i-motion's link items, only one will be effective. The item which is to become effective depends on i-motion data.

■ **Setting as the stand-by display**

① Press Menu 1 and select *Yes*.

- For video/i-motion that can be enlarged, same size or large size can be set.
- When the i-αppli stand-by display has been set, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to cancel it. When ***YES*** is selected, the i-αppli stand-by display is canceled and the selected video/i-motion is set as the stand- by display.

■ **Setting as Movie ringtone**

① Press Menu 2 and press 1 to 6.

■ **Setting as memory ring alert (call, mail)**

① Press Menu 2 and press 7 or 8.
② Select phonebook data to set.
③ Confirm the contents and press .

- When a ring alert has been set, it will be replaced by the selected video/i-motion.
- Entering phonebook No. ☛Step 3 of "Editing saved phonebook entries" in P104

■ **Setting as incoming image (voice call, video-phone call)**

① Press Menu 3 and press 1 or 2.

- When an incoming image has been set, it will be replaced by the selected video/i-motion.
- Restrictions for setting video/i-motion ☛P331

INFORMATION

- i-motion in ASF format cannot be downloaded and played. Only the i-motion in MP4 (Mobile MP4) format can be downloaded and played.
- The play restrictions such as number of replayable times or expiration of playback may be set for i-motion files.
- When i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded, replay may be temporarily stopped in wait for data reception. The replay is automatically resumed when receiving data is restarted.
- When i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded, i-motion may become unable to play and it may stop or be blurred depending on radio wave conditions. In such a case, the i-motion can be replayed after the completion of downloading if the data is normally received. However, some i-motion files may allow reception of data but may not be replayed correctly.
- Even for the type of i-motion which is replayed while the data is being downloaded, it may not be played during downloading depending on the status of sites.
- i-motion of the former version downloaded may show garbage characters.
- When i-motion data is improper, reception of i-motion may be canceled.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, follow the instructions on the screen and delete video/i-motion saved in FOMA terminal until an available capacity required for saving the item is recovered.

Menu 293

Setting auto play and type of i-motion to be downloaded

i-motion Setting

i-motion files are specified whether to play automatically or not and the i-motion type to be downloaded is specified.

Default Auto replay setting: Auto Play ON i-motion type setting: Normal type

1 Press [▽] [9 WXYZ] [3 DEF] on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Auto replay setting : Sets whether to automatically play normal type i-motion during or after downloading.

- Even when ***Auto Play OFF*** is set, i-motion can be played by selecting ***Play*** after downloading i-motion.
- Streaming type i-motion is automatically played regardless of the auto play settings.

i-motion type setting : Sets the type of i-motion to be downloaded.

- When replaying streaming type i-motion, select ***Norm・Streaming***.

3 Press [📖].

INFORMATION

- In the site screen, press [Menu] and select ***Display*** → ***i-motion settings***.

Mobile Wallet i-mode FeliCa

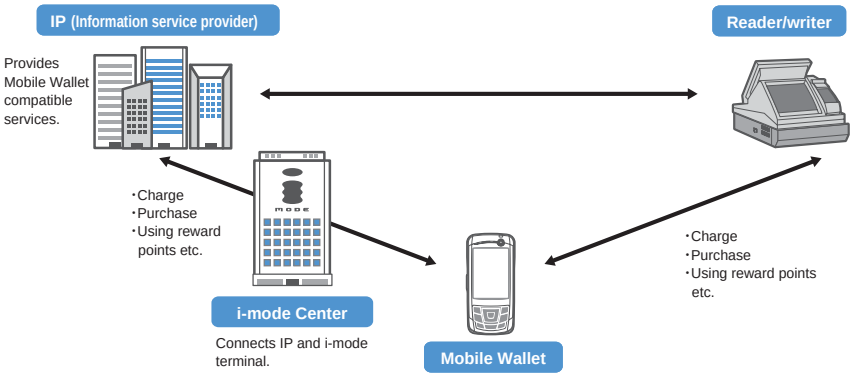
Mobile Wallet.....314
Starting Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli.....315
Preventing use of IC card functions.....IC Card Lock 316

Mobile Wallet

The i-mode terminal that is equipped with an IC card and provides useful functions of i-mode (i-mode FeliCa) using the IC card is called “Mobile Wallet”. FeliCa is the contactless IC card technology, which allows reading and writing data just by holding an IC card over a reader/writer. The Mobile Wallet can be used conveniently in daily life, as electronic money for payment, as airplane ticket, or as reward point card, just by holding it over a compatible reader/writer*.
Also, compared to a conventional contactless IC card compatible with FeliCa, the Mobile Wallet provides more useful functions; you can charge electronic money from sites into the IC card of the terminal, check the balance and usage history.

Note: To use the IC card functions, download Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli that supports the IC card functions.

* A reader/writer is used to read and write the data in an IC card.



- Subscription and usage of Mobile Wallet compatible services differ for each service. Contact the service provider such as IP (Information service provider) for details. Before using Mobile Wallet compatible services, see “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual” for usage precautions.
- Keep secure your terminal security code and password for each service.
- Take a separate note of the name and contact information for each Mobile Wallet compatible service. Data in the IC card may be lost or modified due to failure, repair, change of model or other handlings of your Mobile Wallet terminal. Please note that you will be required to delete the data before repair. If the data in the IC card should be lost or modified, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of data. If you delete the data in the IC card or the data is accidentally lost or modified, the response differs for each Mobile Wallet compatible service. For details contact your service provider such as IP (Information service provider) beforehand.
- Data in the IC card cannot be copied to a new terminal when you replace your Mobile Wallet terminal at a DoCoMo Shop (including the case of failure). Measures differ for each Mobile Wallet compatible service. For details contact your service provider such as IP (Information service provider) beforehand.
- Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli can be auto started, deleted and its folders managed in the same way as normal i-αppli.
- Be careful not to lose your Mobile Wallet terminal. If the terminal should be lost, contact your service provider such as IP (Information service provider) for information regarding the Mobile Wallet compatible service. Please note that use of the IC card functions cannot be restricted.

Using the Mobile Wallet

Step 1 Download Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli ☛P288

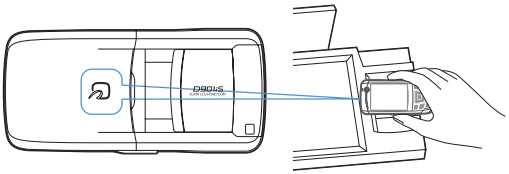
Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli, 電子マネー「Edy」(Electronic money “Edy”) is registered by default.

Step 2 Start Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli to read and write data in IC card

Use Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli to charge electronic money and tickets and to check the balance and usage history.

Step 3 Hold FeliCa mark over reader/writer

You can use FOMA terminal as electronic money for shopping or as tickets by holding the FeliCa mark on the terminal over a reader/writer.
This function can be used without starting Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli.



INFORMATION

- If the IC card is not recognized when you hold the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer, try again by changing the position, angle, etc.
- Do not expose FOMA terminal to strong shocks when holding the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer.
- The Mobile Wallet can be used during a call or i-mode connection. However, you cannot start Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli during i-mode connection.
- The IC card can be used by holding the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer even when the power is off, but not when the battery pack is removed. When the battery pack is attached, if it is not used for an extended period or is not charged after a low battery alert, the IC card may not be used. In this case, charge the battery. When the power is off, you cannot start Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli to read and write data in the IC card.
- i-αppli may start when you hold the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer. However, no i-αppli starts when the target i-αppli is not saved in FOMA terminal or is set not to start with i-αppli To.

Starting Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli

Start the preinstalled Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli and downloaded Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli.

1 Press Menu 6 は MNO 7 ま PQRS on the stand-by display.

2 Select Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli to start.

- For icon definitions of i-αppli settings, see Step 3 in "Starting i-αppli". ☛P290
- For submenu items, see "i-αppli". ☛P286

Quitting

Quit the Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli using the procedure specified for each.

- You can also quit by pressing [PWR] and selecting ***Ended***.

INFORMATION

- When Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli is started, the IC card may not be used by holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer.
- Some of Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli operations may not be available during a video-phone call.
- When any of the following conditions occurs, Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli under operation and reading and writing data in the IC card are interrupted. In that case, the data may be discarded:
  - When there is an incoming call (except when the ringing time for Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service is set to "0" second)
  - When the date and time set in Alarm Clock or Scheduler arrives
  - When you switch to another function
- When you press [iアプリ] during a call or alarm sounding to switch to the Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli screen, the operation varies for each Mobile Wallet compatible service that you subscribe to.
- Some Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli may not start or operate correctly when your terminal is outside the service area or cannot use the saved data.
- When Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** set for ***i-αppli***), starting Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli requires entry of the terminal security code.

Menu 8314

Preventing use of IC card functions

IC Card Lock

IC Card Lock disables use of the IC card by holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer and Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli.

- The setting is retained even if the power is turned off.
- IC Card Lock cannot be set when All Lock is active. To set both IC Card Lock and All Lock, first set IC Card Lock and then set All Lock.
- Activating Remote Lock automatically sets both IC Card Lock and All Lock.

Default OFF

1 Hold down [メール] for over a second and select *Yes*.

IC Card Lock is set and [FeliCa] appears on the stand-by display.

- When you select from the menu, enter the terminal security code and press [1あ].

Canceling

① **Hold down [メール] for over a second and enter the terminal security code.**

- When you select from the menu, enter the terminal security code and press [2かABC].

INFORMATION

- Removing the battery pack automatically sets IC Card Lock. To cancel IC Card Lock, attach the battery pack and then turn the power on.
- IC Card Lock remains active even if you turn the power off or the power goes out due to empty battery.

Displaying/Editing/ Managing Data

Making full use of image

Displaying images ..... My Picture 318
Editing still images 321
Setting the operating conditions of images ..... Settings 328

Making full use of video/i-motion

Playing video/i-motion .....i-motion 328
Editing video/i-motion 332
Setting the operating conditions of video/i-motion ..... Settings 336

Making full use of Chara-den

Chara-den 337
Displaying Chara-den ..... Chara-den 338
Recording Chara-den ..... Record Chara-den 340

Making full use of melody

Playing melodies ..... Melody 344
Setting the operating conditions of melodies ..... Settings 345

Making full use of the miniSD memory card

Before using the miniSD memory card 346
Inserting/removing the miniSD memory card 350
Exchanging the data between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card 350
Displaying data in the miniSD memory card 354
Managing the miniSD memory card 356

Managing various data

Using the album 357
Checking/editing detail information of the data ..... View/Edit Detail Info 360
Deleting data 363
Sorting data ..... Sort 363

Making full use of infrared communication

Infrared communication 364
Sending the data by infrared communication ..... Send Ir Data 365
Receiving data by infrared communication ..... Receive Ir Data 367
Activating infrared communication mode.... Infrared Communication Mode 370
Using the infrared remote control function 370
Setting operations for data transfer ..... Data Transfer Setting 370

Making full use of Sound Recorder

Recording voice with Sound Recorder ..... Sound Recorder 371
Changing the recording settings 374

Making full use of PDF compatible viewer

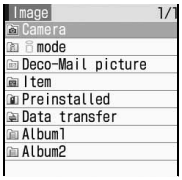
Displaying the PDF data ..... My Document 375
Utilizing bookmarks or marks 378
Saving the image of the page ..... Capture Screen 380
Setting the operating conditions of PDF compatible viewer .....Setting 380

Displaying images

Displays images saved in My Picture (*Image*) of *Data Box* in FOMA terminal.

1 Press [i-mode] [1 あ/@] on the stand-by display.

2 Select a folder.



The following images are stored in each folder:

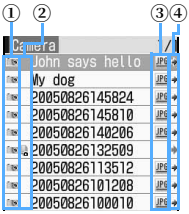
- *Camera* : Images shot by Camera or Chara-den, captured image from PDF data
- *mode* : Images downloaded from a site, i-mode Mail or i-αppli
- *Deco-Mail picture* : Images preinstalled by default for Deco-mail or downloaded from sites or barcode reader
- *Item* : Frame images preinstalled by default or item images downloaded from sites
- *Preinstalled* : Images preset by default
- *Data transfer* : Images downloaded by Bar Code Reader, images moved/copied from the miniSD memory card or images received by data communication
- Album : Images moved from another folder
  - Not displayed by default. To cretae ☛P358
  - You can enter any name of album in creating.

- Press [Mail] and press [1 あ/@] or [2 か/ABC] when switching to the folder list of the miniSD memory card. Operating procedure of the miniSD memory card ☛P354

3 Place the cursor at the image to display.

image display name at the cursor and icon

Thumbnail display



Title display

Image list

① Origination

: Preinstalled : i-mode : Camera
: Frame/Stamp : Data transfer : Chara-den

② Type of image

No icon: Still image : Continuous shots, Create animation
: Animation/Flash

③ File format

GIF : GIF image JPG : JPEG image : SWF (Flash movie)

④ File restriction

(in blue) : Attaching to mail or output from FOMA terminal available
(in gray) : Attaching to mail or output from FOMA terminal unavailable

- Each time you press [Mail], the image switches between thumbnail display and title display.
- Images with the UIM operation restriction function set are displayed with in thumbnail display.
- Display name and other items can be changed. ☛P361

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

■ **Sending mail attaching images**

① **Place the cursor at the image to send and press [✉].**

The mail composition screen is displayed with the selected image attached.

- When the file size of still image is under 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to paste in the text field. Select ***Yes*** to paste the image to the mail text.
- Depending on the image size or file size of still image, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert the image to the stand-by size or save it to Data Box. ☛P234
- Images that can be attached to mail ☛P233

4 Press [●] to check the image.

- Press [●] to switch to the previous or next image.
- When a larger image than display area (240 x 240) is reduced and displayed. When an image is reduced, press [●] to display at same magnification (However, in case images other than still images shot with D901iS exceed the size of 1224 x 1632, displaying at same magnification may be unavailable). Pressing [●] allows you to scroll image in this case. Reduced display reappears by pressing [●]
- Animation, Create animation, continuous shots and Flash movies are replayed automatically when displaying.
  During playback, the following operations are enabled:
  [●] : Pause/replay [Menu] [0わん] : Retry (play from the beginning)
  [📖] : Slow-down playback (only in stop for playing Create animation/ continuous shots)

INFORMATION

- When displaying an image in Privacy Mode (***Authorized access*** set for My picture), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- Thumbnail may not be displayed properly depending on the image.
- When other functions are being executed, images that exceed 1224 x 1632 in horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) size may be unavailable for displaying at same magnification or for attaching to mail (in case the image is not converted to the stand-by size).

Setting images to the stand-by display or phonebook data

1 Press [●] [1あ] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the image to set and press [Menu] [2か].

3 Select the item to set.

■ **Setting to the stand-by display**

① **Press [1あ] and select *YES*.**

- Image that can be enlarged is set to the same size of image by selecting ***YES (Same size)*** and set to enlarged size in accordance with display area by selecting ***YES (Large size)***.
- If the i-αppli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it. If ***YES*** is selected, i-αppli stand-by display is canceled.

■ **Adding to the phonebook**

① **Press [2か].**

- Adding to the phonebook ☛P93

■ **Updating phonebook data saved**

① **Press [3さ] and select phonebook data to update.**

- If an image has already been set, the image is replaced by the selected image.

■ **Setting as call image**

① **Press 4 and press 1 or 2.**

■ **Setting as the video-phone call image, substitute image or on-hold image**

① **Press 5 and press 1 to 6.**

- Images whose size exceeds 176 x 144 and images unavailable for output from FOMA terminal cannot be set as substitute image, answer machine image, response hold image and on-hold image.

■ **Setting as outgoing/incoming mails or message retrieval**

① **Press 6 and press 1 to 3.**

- The outgoing/incoming mail image is also displayed even when Message R/F or SMS is sent or received.

■ **Setting to menu icons**

① **Press 7 or 8 and press 0 to 9.**

The selected image is set to a menu icon of ***Custom1*** or ***Custom2*** of icon design.

- Create animation, Flash movies and images in the ***Item*** folder cannot be set to the menu icon.

INFORMATION

- In the image display screen, press Menu and select ***Use image***.
- If images set to the stand-by display or phonebook are deleted, each image returns to the default setting.
- Full images may not be displayed depending on the image size.

Creating animation

You can create animation by selecting still images (up to 6) in the same folder.

- Animation, Create animation, continuous shots, Flash movies and still images with a size of more than 640 x 480 size cannot be saved to Create animation.
- Still images saved in Create animation cannot be displayed or edited respectively.

1 Press 1 on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Press Menu 4 1.

■ **Canceling**

You can also divide the continuous shots into individual still images.

① **Place the cursor at the Create animation to cancel and press Menu 4 2.**

3 Select images to save to Create animation.

The number of 1 to 6 is displayed on the image in selected order.

- To cancel all selection, press Menu.
- Each time you press Func, thumbnail display and title display are switched.

4 Press ▶.

5 Enter a display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) and press ▶.

In the image list, the first cartoon panel of Create animation appears and and the display name are displayed.

INFORMATION

- In the image display screen, press Menu and select ***Animation*** → ***Create*** or ***Cancel***.

Editing still images

Edit still images saved in ***Image***. The editing items and contents are as follows:

Editing items	Description	Maximum image size editable (dots)*
Change size	Changes the size.	1728 x 2304 (352 x 288 for zoom-in/out)
Clip	Clips to any size.	1728 x 2304
Brightness/Tone	Changes brightness and tone.	352 x 288
Effects	Applies special effects.	240 x 320
Reverse/Rotate	Reverses/rotates.	480 x 640
Frames	Adds a frame.	352 x 288
Paste stamp	Pastes stamps.	352 x 288
Paste text	Pastes text.	352 x 288
Cut	Cuts any section.	240 x 320
Size limitation	Limits the file size for saving.	1728 x 2304
Adjust	Adjusts brightness and color balance.	352 x 288

* If the image cannot be edited because the size of it is too large, it can be reduced to the editable size by ***Change size***.

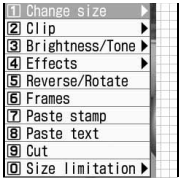
- The following images cannot be edited:
  - Animation, Create animation, continuous shots, Flash movies, images in ***Item*** folder and images in ***Preinstalled*** folder
  - Still images not permitted to attach to mail or to output from FOMA terminal (excluding still images with file restriction set with your terminal)
  - Still images with a size of more than 1728 x 2304, still images of which either the vertical or horizontal size is under 8 dots.
- However, in case images other than still images shot with D901iS exceed the size of 1224 x 1632, editing may be unavailable.
- Areas in an image edited which are transparent on FOMA terminal are displayed as white when viewed on a PC.

1 Press ▽ 1あ on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the still image to edit and press 📖 and Menu.

- To adjust ☛P327

3 Select items to edit and edit still images.



Edit menu screen

1あ : ***Change size*** ☛P322
2か : ***Clip*** ☛P322
3さ : ***Brightness/Tone*** ☛P323
4た : ***Effects*** ☛P324
5な : ***Reverse/Rotate*** ☛P324
6は : ***Frames*** ☛P324
7ま : ***Paste stamp*** ☛P325
8や : ***Paste text*** ☛P326
9ら : ***Cut*** ☛P326
0わん : ***Size limitation*** ☛P327

4 Press ▽ and select *Save* after editing.

Edited still image is saved as a new still image in the same folder.

- Select ***As frame/stamp*** to save as images for frame or stamp.
  Images that can be available as frame/stamp ☛P362

INFORMATION

- Larger still images than display area are reduced. However, images are displayed at same magnification in the case of ***Paste stamp***, ***Paste text***, ***Cut*** and ***Zoom in/out*** of ***Change size***.
- The result of editing depends on the still image type or method of editing.
- Repetitive editing and saving may deteriorate the image quality.
- After editing, the file size of still images may become larger.
- When there is not enough available storage space to save the still image, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number of images, you cannot save it. Delete unnecessary images and save it again.

Changing the image size

• Changing the size of still image may deteriorate the image quality.

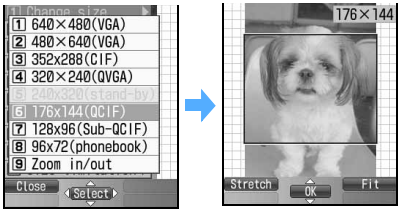
1 Press [1 あ] on the edit menu screen.

2 Change the image size.

Changing into the specified size

① Press [1 あ] to [8 TUV].

If the horizontal to vertical ratio of specified size and still image is same, the size is changed and the still image edit screen reappears. If the horizontal to vertical ratio differs, a size frame is displayed. By pressing [●]/[▭], adjusting the position of size frame and press [●]. The area framed by size frame is changed into the specified size.



- Press [Menu] to put the whole still image in the specified size, ignoring the aspect ratio.
- Press [📖] to put the whole still image in the specified size, holding the aspect ratio.

Zooming in/out

① Press [9 WXYZ] and press [▭] to zoom in/out.

You can zoom in/out by 5% with horizontal and vertical ratio held. The current image size and the rate of Zoom in/out are displayed on the upper right of the screen.

- Press [Menu] to zoom out by 20% and press [📖] to zoom in by 20%.
- Horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) size can be zoomed in up to 352 x 288.
- Images can be reduced up to 8 dots in either size of horizontal or vertical.

② Press [●].

The still image edit screen reappears.

Clipping images to any size

You can clip a part of the still image by specifying the size or range.

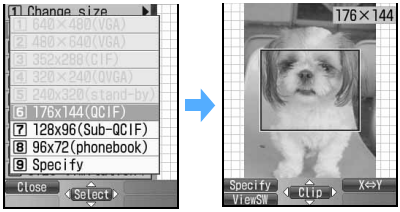
• When the size of image is less than 16 x 16, clipping is unavailable.

1 Press [2 か ABC] on the edit menu screen.

2 Clip the image.

Clipping to the specified size

① **Press 1 あ to 8 tuv and press ● to adjust the clipping frame position.**



- Each time you press ▣, horizontal and vertical size of the clipping frame are switched.
- Each time you press #, clipping size is switched.
- To specify clipping range, press Menu.

② **Press ●.**

The still image is clipped into the selected size and the still image edit screen reappears.

Specifying the range and clipping

① **Press 9 wxyz.**

A frame specifying the range is displayed in dotted line, ✣ is displayed on the upper left of the frame.

② **Press ● to adjust the position of ✣ and press ●.**

The position of upper left of the range specification frame is set and ✣ is displayed on lower right of the frame.

③ **Press ● to adjust the position of ✣ and press ▣.**

The clipping range is set and the range specification frame is displayed in solid line.

- Press ● instead of ▣ to change the position of upper left again.
- Press ● after pressing ▣ to move the frame specifying range.

④ **Press ●.**

The still image is clipped into the specified range and the still image edit screen reappears.

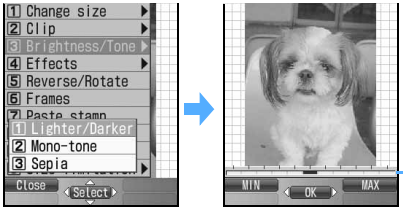
Changing brightness or tone

1 Press 3 def on the edit menu screen.

2 Change brightness or tone.

Adjusting brightness

① **Press 1 あ to adjust brightness.**



- Press ● to increase or decrease by 1 level.
- Press ▣ to maximize and press Menu to minimize.

② **Press ●.**

The still image edit screen reappears.

■ **Changing tone to monotone or sepia**

① **Press 2 か ABC or 3 さ DEF.**

The tone is modified and the still image edit screen reappears.

Applying special effects

1 Press 4 た GHI on the edit menu screen.

2 Select the type of effect.

The effect is applied to the still image and the still image edit screen reappears.

Soften : Softens the image.

Spherical : Swells the still image spherically from the center.

Emboss : Turns leaden color and emphases concavity and convexity.

Spiral : Makes the still image look as if it is spiraling out from the center.

Shiny : Attaches a mark as glistening.

Mosaic : Attaches a mosaic.

Reversing/rotating

1 Press 5 な JKL on the edit menu screen.

2 Reverse/rotate a still image.

- The following operations are available:

[▲▼] : Reverse up and down

[◀▶] : Reverse left and right

[Menu] : Rotate 90 degrees to the left

[□] : Rotate 90 degrees to the right

3 Press [●].

The still image edit screen reappears.

Overlaying a frame

1 Press 6 は MNO on the edit menu screen.

The same size frame list as the still image being edited is displayed.

- Images set as frame option in Edit Detail Info are displayed even if their size differs from that of the still image edited.

2 Select a frame.

3 Check the image with frame and press [●].

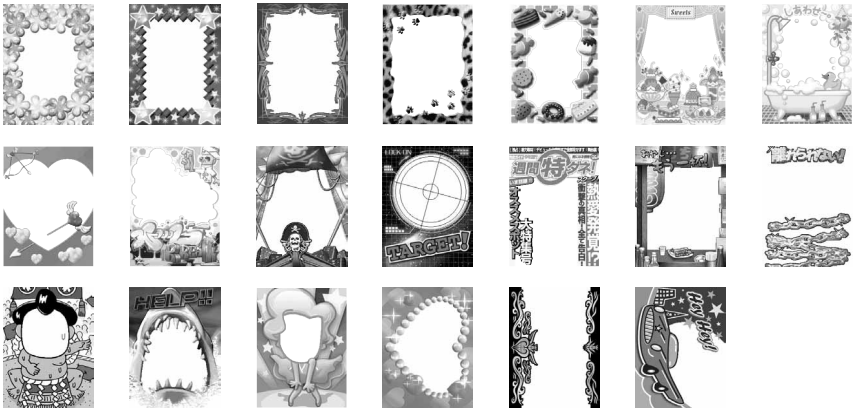
The still image edit screen reappears.

- Press [▲▼] to switch frames.
- Press [Menu] to rotate frame 180 degrees.

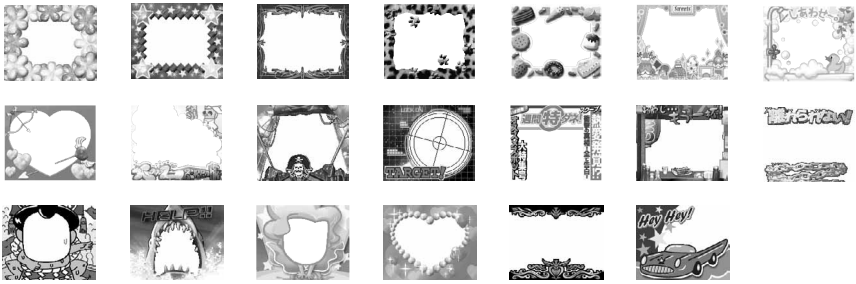
Frames set by default

• If a frame registered by default is deleted, it can be downloaded from the i-mode site, “My D-style”.
☛P294

■ **Size for stand-by (240 x 320)**



■ **QCIF size (176 x 144)**



Pasting stamps

1 Press 7まPQRS on the edit menu screen.

The smaller size stamps than the still image being edited are listed.

• Images set as stamp option in Edit Detail Info are displayed even if their size is larger than that of still image edited.

2 Select a stamp.

The selected stamp is displayed in the center of the screen.

3 Press ● to adjust the position to attach the stamp and press ●.

A beep sound is heard and the stamp is pasted.

• You can paste in another location continuously.

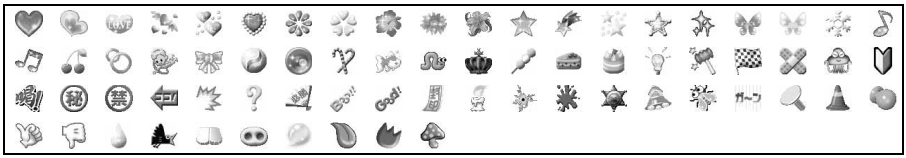
• Press Menu to delete all the attached stamps.

• The volume of a beep sound depends on Volume Setting.

4 Press [m].

The still image edit screen reappears.

Stamps set by default



Pasting characters

Paste Text

1 Press [8 TUV] on the edit menu screen.

2 Select each item to set.

Text	: Enters the text (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters).
Font type	: Sets the text type.
Font size	: Sets the text size.
Font color	: Sets the text color.
Font border color	: Sets the text bordering color.
Background color	: Sets the text background color.
Paste method	: If ***By block*** is set, text is pasted at the same time. If ***By character*** is set, text can be pasted on a different position by character.

3 Press [m].

The text (in case of ***By character*** set for ***Paste method***, the first character) is displayed in the center of the screen.

4 Press [◎] to adjust the position to paste characters and press [●].

A beep sound is heard and text is pasted.

- You can paste text in another location continuously.
- Press [Menu] to delete all the pasted text.
- When you set ***By character*** for the paste method , the characters are pasted one at a time each you press [●]. When the last character is pasted, the first character appears.
- The volume of a beep sound depends on Volume Setting.

5 Press [m].

The still image edit screen reappears.

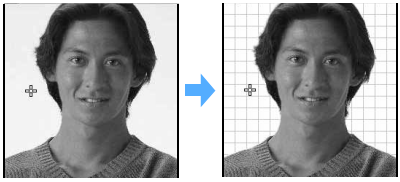
Cutting any section out

Select color and cut the section of the same color.

1 Press [9 WXYZ] on the edit menu screen.

[◎] is displayed in the center of the screen.

2 Press ● to place ✣ at the color to cut and press ●.



The section with the same color as the position of ✣ is cut out.

- You can cut another area continuously.

3 Press 📖.

The still image edit screen reappears.

Limiting file size for saving

Limit the file size to a size below 9,000 bytes, 100 Kbytes or 500 Kbytes for saving.

1 Press ロわん記号 on the edit menu screen and select the size.

The still image will be saved as a new still image with a size that is equal to or smaller than the set file size in the same folder.

- Still images more than the size of 352 x 288 cannot be set to ***9000 Byte***. Also still images more than the size of 480 x 640 cannot be set to ***100 Kbyte***.
- When other functions are being executed, images that exceed 1224 x 1632 in horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) size may be unavailable for limiting the size for saving.

Adjusting brightness and color balance

- Adjusting may not have much effect depending on the still image.

1 Press ● 1あ/@ on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the still image to adjust and press 📖 twice.

The image adjustment mode is activated and the current adjustment mode is indicated in the upper right of the screen.

3 Press ● to switch the adjustment mode.

Level

Close-up	: Makes appropriate adjustment for images such as still objects and plants.
Near view	: Makes appropriate adjustment for the background.
Distant view	: Gives vivid brightness and contrast to a landscape image.
Beautiful skin	: Gives an effect to make the skin look white and smooth on a portrait image.
Tanned	: Gives an effect to make the skin look tanned on a portrait image.
Pale	: Gives an effect to make the skin look pale on a portrait image.
Drunk	: Gives an effect to make the skin look ruddy on a portrait image.

- The adjustment mode can also be selected by pressing Menu and 1あ/@ to 7まPQRS.

4 Adjust the level of the effect and press [●].

- Press [▲▼] to increase or decrease by 1 level.
- Press [✉] to maximize and press [Clear] to minimize.

5 Press [●] and select *Save*.

Adjusted still images are saved in the same folder as new still images.

- Select ***As frame/stamp*** to save as images for frame or stamp.
  Images that can be available as frames/stamps ☛P362

Setting the operating conditions of images

Settings

Default View format: Display 12 icons Display title: Yes Display number: Yes Display comments: Yes Scale up image: No Sound effect: Yes

1 Press [●] [1あ] on the stand-by display.

2 Press [Menu] [4たGHI].

3 Select each item to set.

View format	: The image list is set to 12 thumbnail display by ***Display 12 icons*** or title display by ***List view***.
Display title	: Sets whether to show a display name on the image display screen.
Display number	: Sets whether to display the number of images on the image display screen.
Display comments	: Sets whether to display comments on the image display screen.
Scale up image	: When smaller images than displayed area are displayed, sets whether to enlarge up to full display area with horizontal and vertical ratio of the image held.
Sound effect	: Sets whether to play effect sounds set for images when an image is displayed.

4 Press [📖].

INFORMATION

● In the image list or image display screen, press [Menu] and select ***Settings***.

Menu 52

Playing video/i-motion

i-motion

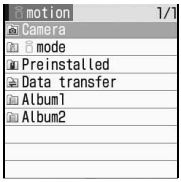
You can play video/i-motion saved in ***i-motion*** of ***Data Box*** in FOMA terminal.

- You can play video/i-motion of the image size of 48 x 48 to 320 x 240 (MP4 file, ASF file).

1 Press [●] [2かABC] on the stand-by display.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

2 Select a folder.



The following video/i-motion files are saved in each folder:

Camera : Videos recorded with Movie Camera or Chara-den or the sounds recorded with Sound Recorder

mode : i-motion downloaded from sites or i-motion Mail

Preinstalled : Videos preinstalled by default

Data transfer : Video/i-motion moved/copied from the miniSD memory card or received by data communication

Album : Video/i-motion moved from another folder

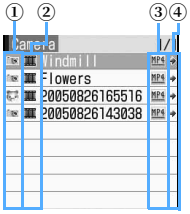
- Not displayed by default. To cretae ☛P358
- You can enter any name of Album in creating.

- Press [Na] when switching to the folder list in the miniSD memory card.
  Operating procedure of the miniSD memory card ☛P354

3 Place the cursor at the video/i-motion to play.

Video/i-motion display name at the cursor and icon

Thumbnail display



Title display

Video/i-motion list

① Origination

: Preinstalled : i-mode : Camera
: Data transfer : Chara-den

② Restriction

: No restriction : Restriction on the number of times
: Restriction on expiration : Restriction on period

③ File types

MP4 : MP4 MP4 : MP4 with bookmark
ASF : ASF* ASF : ASF with bookmark*

* Only the file saved in the miniSD memory card can be replayed.

④ File restriction

(in blue) : Attaching to mail or output from FOMA terminal available
(in gray) : Attaching to mail or output from FOMA terminal unavailable

- Each time you press [Na], thumbnail display and title display are switched.
- Sounds recorded with Sound Recorder, video/i-motion only with sound (without image such as singer's vocals) and video/i-motion with the UIM operation restriction function set are displayed as in thumbnail display.
- Display name and other items can be changed. ☛P360

Sending mail attaching video/i-motion file (i-motion Mail)

① Place the cursor at the video/i-motion to send and press [✉].

Mail composition screen with selected video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail ☛P233

4 Press [●] and replay video/i-motion.

① **Play volume:** Indicates current volume.

② **Playing status**

▶ : in play　　■ : in stop　　❚❚ : in pause

③ **File types**

: only sound　　: sound + image　　: only text

: image + text　　: only image　　: sound + image + text

: sound + text

④ **Enlargement/reduction**

: enlarged　　: reduced

No icon: in same size

- Whether set to enlarge or not can be set in Settings.

⑤ **Playing duration**: Indicates the current playing time/full duration in values and a bar.

- In case of video/i-motion with bookmark set, a confirmation screen asking whether to play from bookmark position is displayed. If you select ***Yes***, video/i-motion is played from bookmark position and if you select ***No***, video/i-motion is played from the beginning.
- The following operations are available while playing video/i-motion:

[●] : Pause/replay　　[📖] : Stop

[▷] : Play at fast speed　　[●] (in stop) : Play from the beginning

[↕] : Adjust volume　　[クリア] : Return to the list screen

Setting a bookmark

① **Press [Vm] and select *Yes* at the position to set bookmark during play.**

- If a bookmark is already set, it is discarded and the new bookmark is set in the new position.
- Press [●] to replay continuously.
- Stop play and press [Vm] to cancel bookmark.
- You cannot set from i-motion whose replay restriction is set or when replaying from the phonebook registration screen, mail composition screen, Set screen of sound or display and i-αppli etc.

Switching horizontal and vertical size of images

① **Press [*#].**

- Each time you press, horizontal and vertical size of images are switched.
- For video/i-motion with the ticker, switching is unavailable.

INFORMATION

- When saving video/i-motion, acquisition of thumbnail images may not be available due to the effect of other functions. Such video/i-motion is displayed as in thumbnail display.
- While playing video/i-motion, if other functions such as incoming call/mail and schedule alarm are activated, play is paused. If you end the other functions and press [●], a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to replay from the interrupted position. If you select ***Yes***, video/i-motion is played from the interrupted position and if you select ***No***, video/i-motion is played from the beginning.
- When video/i-motion is played in i-αppli, incoming mail or received messageR/F may cause incorrect playback.
- When video/i-motion with sound is played during Silent Mode, a confirmation screen appears. If you select ***Yes***, it is replayed in accordance with the volume in ***Settings*** of i-motion.
- During privacy mode (***Authorized access*** is set for ***i-motion***), entry of the terminal security code is required to play video/i-motion.
- You cannot play video/i-motion during a voice or a video-phone call.

When playback restrictions for i-motion are set

A confirmation screen is displayed before playback starts. Playback restriction types and contents to check are as follows:

Restriction	Status	Description
Restriction on the number of times	Playback counts remain	***Available to play x (x/all) time(s). Play?*** is displayed. To play, select ***Yes***; to stop, select ***No***.
	Max. number of plays reached	***This data can no longer be replayed. Delete?*** is displayed. To delete, select ***Yes***; to cancel, select ***No***.
Restriction on expiration	Within expiration	***Available to play until year/month/date hour: minutes. Play?*** is displayed. To play, select ***Yes***; to stop, select ***No***.
	After expiration	***Replay period has expired. Delete?*** is displayed. To delete, select ***Yes***; to cancel, select ***No***.
Restriction on period	Within period	***Available to play From year/month/date hour: minutes to year/month/date hour/minutes. Play?*** is displayed. To play, select ***Yes***; to stop, select ***No***.
	Before period	***Replay period has not yet started.*** is displayed. Press [▽] to return to the video/i-motion list.
	After period	***Replay period has expired. Delete?*** is displayed. To delete, select ***Yes***; to cancel, select ***No***.

- You can check remaining playback counts, replay expiration and playback period in View Detail Info.
- Even if you change the date and time, expiration time and period of restriction cannot be changed.
- The date and time information may be reset if the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal for an extended period of time. If this happens, i-motion with replay restriction on expiration or period cannot be played.

Setting video/i-motion to the stand-by display or phonebook data

- Video/i-motion without an image, i-motion whose replay restriction is set and i-motion whose image size is beyond 320 x 240 cannot be set as the stand-by display.
- Video/i-motion can be set for phonebook, the Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion) or incoming image when the image size is Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) or QCIF (176 x 144). However, only the video/i-motion with only image can be set for phonebook or the incoimg image.
- Only the video/i-motion for which ***Available*** is set for ring tone and incoming image settings in detail information can be set as Movie ringtone and incoming image.

1 Press [▽] [2 か ABC] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the video/i-motion to set and press [Menu] [2 か ABC].

3 Select the item to set.

■ **Setting as the stand-by display**

① **Press [1 あ @] and select *YES*.**

- Video/i-motion that can be enlarged is set to the same size of image by selecting ***YES (Same size)*** and set to enlarged size in accordance with display area by selecting ***YES (Large size)***.
- If the i-αppli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it. If ***YES*** is selected, the i-αppli stand-by display is canceled.
- To replay video/i-motion set for the stand-by display ☛P119

■ **Adding to the phonebook**

① **Press [2 か ABC].**

- Registering entries to the phonebook ☛P93

■ **Updating phonebook data saved already**

① **Press 3 and select phonebook data to update.**

- If video/i-motion has already been set, it is replaced by the selected video/i-motion.

■ **Setting as Movie ringtone**

① **Press 4 and press 1 to 6.**

■ **Setting as memory ring alert (call, mail)**

① **Press 4 and press 7 or 8.**

② **Select phonebook data to set.**

③ **Check the contents and press ▣.**

- If any tone has already been set, it is replaced by the selected video/i-motion.
- Entering phonebook No. ☛ Step 3 of “Editing saved phonebook entries” in P104

■ **Setting as incoming images (voice call/video-phone call)**

① **Press 5 and press 1 or 2.**

- If an incoming image has already been set, it is replaced by the selected video/i-motion.

INFORMATION

● The following video/i-motion files cannot be set as Movie ringtone or incoming image:

- Video/i-motion files sent back to your terminal after transferred to a PC or other FOMA terminal using infrared communication or the data link software
- Video/i-motion files copied/moved to FOMA terminal from the miniSD memory card (including the case where files are copied/moved to your terminal again after saved in the miniSD memory card)

Editing video/i-motion

You can edit video/i-motion saved in ***i-motion***.

- The following video/i-motion can be edited:
  - The video shot with your terminal
  - The video/i-motion without file restriction or replay restriction except the video shot with your terminal
- Video/i-motion files registered by default cannot be edited. Besides, some video/i-motion such as the video in ASF format cannot be edited depending on the file format.
- Icon definitions and key operations when playing video/i-motion during editing ☛P330

Clipping the still image

Capture

You can specify any position while playing video/i-motion and clip as a still image (capture).

- Tickers are not displayed in the captured still image.

1 Press ▣ 2 on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Select video/i-motion to capture.

The selected video/i-motion is played back.

3 Press Menu 3 at any position during playback.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

4 Check images and press [Image].

The still image is captured and saved in ***Camera*** folder of My Picture (***Image***).

- To capture continuously, press [Camera], resume a play and repeat Step 3 to 4.

Sending mail attaching captured still image

① **Press [Mail].**

Captured still image is saved in ***Camera*** folder of My Picture (***Image***) and the mail composition screen with still image attached is displayed.

- If the file size of still image is below 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to paste in the text field. Select ***Yes*** to paste in the mail message.
- Depending on the size or setting of quality for video, it cannot be attached to mail.

INFORMATION

- You can capture even during a pause or after a play is finished.
- A still image captured is received as mail with URL (i-shot Mail) at the mova terminals.

Clipping the video

Custom Edit

You can clip a part of video/i-motion from the beginning to the desired position.

1 Press [2 か ABC] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the video/i-motion to clip and press [Menu] [4 た GHI] [1 あ /@].

The custom edit mode is activated and [✂] is displayed under the playing duration.

- When tickers are inserted in video/i-motion, a screen indicating that tickers may be deleted is displayed. Select ***Yes*** to activate the custom edit mode. In this case, tickers may be deleted depending on the clipping position.

3 Press [Camera] (start position), adjust the clipping end position and press [Camera] (end position).

Current file size/ Maximum file size

- Press [クリア] to retry the operation or press [Menu] to stop clipping after pressing [Camera] (start position).
- If you have played until the end without pressing [Camera] (end position), clipping is terminated automatically. End position is set before the end of file by approximately 1,000 bytes.

Setting the limit of clipping size

- Setting is available only when the original file size exceeds 290 Kbytes.

① **Press [Menu] in the screen before pressing [Camera] (start position).**

② **Select *Msg attach: Small* (290 Kbytes), *Msg attach: Large* (490 Kbytes) or *No settings* (original file size).**

- When video/i-motion file size during clipping has reached the set clipping size, clipping ends automatically.
- When the original size of video/i-motion file exceeds 490 Kbytes, ***No settings*** is unavailable.

4 Enter a display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) and press [Book].

The clipped video/i-motion is saved as new data in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

■ **Playing video/i-motion**

① **Press [Video].**

■ **Sending mail attaching video/i-motion**

① **Press [Mail].**

The clipped video/i-motion is saved and the mail composition screen with video/i-motion attached is displayed.

・Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail ☛P233

INFORMATION

● More than one image can be clipped out of the same video/i-motion file.

Clipping video/i-motion specifying the file size Size Clip

You can clip a part of video/i-motion from the beginning up to the specified file size.

・File size which you can specify is 10 to 490 Kbytes. However, the maximum size varies depending on the clipped video/i-motion.

1 Press [Clear] [2 か ABC] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the video/i-motion to clip and press [Menu] [4 た GHI] [2 か ABC].

・When tickers are inserted in video/i-motion, a screen indicating that tickers may be deleted is displayed. Select ***Yes*** to activate the size clip mode. In this case, tickers may be deleted depending on the clipping position.

3 Enter the size to clip.

■ **Settings to the size that can be attached to mail**

・Setting is available only when the original file size exceeds 290 Kbytes.

① **Press [Menu].**

② **Select *Msg attach: Small* (290 Kbytes) or *Msg attach: Large* (490 Kbytes).**

・When ***Msg attach: Small*** is selected, 290 is automatically set and when ***Msg attach: Large*** is selected, 490 is set to the clipping size.

4 Enter a display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) and press [Book].

The clipped video/i-motion is saved as new data in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

■ **Playing video/i-motion**

① **Press [Video].**

■ **Sending mail attaching video/i-motion**

① **Press [Mail].**

The clipped video/i-motion is saved and the mail composition screen with video/i-motion attached is displayed.

・Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail ☛P233

INFORMATION

● More than one image can be clipped out of the same video/i-motion.

● Clipped video/i-motion may be smaller than the specified file size.

Inserting the ticker

Edit Ticker

- The number of tickers inserted differs depending on video/i-motion (up to 10).
- The contents of tickers already inserted cannot be changed. In case of inserting a new ticker, tickers already inserted are all deleted.

1 Press [2 か] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the video/i-motion to insert tickers and press [Menu] [4 た] [3 さ] [1 あ].

- If tickers are already inserted, a confirmation screen asking whether to delete and edit tickers is displayed. If ***Yes*** is selected, all tickers inserted already are deleted.

Deleting tickers

① **Press [Menu] [4 た] [3 さ] [2 か] and select *Yes*.**
All tickers inserted are deleted. Go to Step 9.

3 Select each item to set.

Time interval to show : Sets how to arrange tickers.
- Set to ***User specified*** to specify any position to insert the ticker.
- Specify the number of tickers when setting to ***Regular interval.*** Tickers of the number specified are inserted at regular intervals within video/i-motion replay duration.

Tickers : Enters the number of tickers (1 to 10) when setting ***Time interval to show*** to ***Regular interval***.

4 Press [ ].

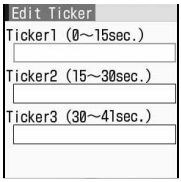
- When ***Time interval to show*** is set to ***User specified***, a confirmation message appears and [ ] is displayed under the playing duration. Go to Step 5.
- If ***Regular interval*** has been set for ***Time interval to show***, go to Step 7.

5 Press [ ] to start playing and press [ ] on the ticker inserting position.

Playing is not interrupted. Each time you press [ ], the inserting position of tickers is set.
- When replay is started, the first inserting position is set at the beginning.
- Press [ ] to end the setting. Go to Step 6.
- When you have set up to 9 tickers or playback of a video/i-motion file ends, the settings are automatically ended. Go to Step 6.
- To display 1 ticker from the beginning to the end, press [ ] to start playing and press [ ].

6 Select *Yes*.

7 Select *Ticker* field and enter characters (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters).



■ **Decorating tickers**

① **Place the cursor at the ticker to decorate and press [✉].**

② **Select each item to set.**

Ticker1* to *10 : Displays characters entered on the ticker edit screen. Enter characters.

Font color : Sets the text color. If it is set to ***Default***, White is set.

- The setting of ***Font color*** has no effect on pictograms.

Background color : Sets the background color of tickers. If it is set to ***Default***, Black is set.

Scroll : Sets a text scrolling.

- Setting ***Scroll in*** gradually brings into view characters that are not visible at first.
- Setting ***Scroll out*** gradually sends characters out of view that are visible at first.
- Setting ***Scroll in & out*** brings into view characters that are not visible at first and sends them out of view.
- When setting to ***None***, characters cannot be scrolled.

Scroll direction : Sets the scroll direction when set to other than ***None***.

Word alignment : Sets the display position of characters.

Font size : Sets the size of characters.

Under line : Sets to underline the characters.

Blink : Sets to flash the characters.

③ **Press [📖].**

8 Press [📖].

- In case that the file size of video/i-motion without ticker is 300 Kbytes or less, if the file size of video/i-motion with ticker exceeds 300 Kbytes, a message appears meaning that the mail attachment (small) size is exceeded. Press [●] to insert the ticker.

9 Enter a display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one-byte or two-byte) and press [📖].

The video/i-motion with tickers is saved as new data in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

■ **Playing video/i-motion**

① **Press [Na/Bf].**

■ **Sending mail attaching video/i-motion**

① **Press [✉].**

The video/i-motion with tickers is saved and the mail composition screen with video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail ☛P233

Setting the operating conditions of video/i-motion

Settings

Default View thumbnails: Yes Size adjustment: Normal Repeat play: ON Display light: Always on Volume: Level 3 Surround: OFF

1 **Press [C] [2 か ABC] on the stand-by display.**

2 **Press [Menu] [5 な JKL].**

3 **Select each item to set.**

View thumbnails
：Video/i-motion list is set to 12 thumbnail display (***Yes***) or title display (***No***).

Size adjustment
：If ***Zoom*** is set, video/i-motion is enlarged/reduced and displayed with horizontal and vertical ratio of the image held in accordance with display area when the display area and the size of video/i-motion to play are unsuitable.
Setting ***Normal*** does not zoom in/out. However, when larger video/i-motion than display area is played, it is reduced with horizontal and vertical ratio of the image held in accordance with display area.

Repeat play ：Specifies whether to repeat play while playing an album.

Display light ：If ***Always on*** is set, the lighting on the display stays on while video/i-motion list is displayed or replaying. If you set ***Terminal settings***, it depends on Display Light Setting ☛P127.

Volume ：Specifies the sound volume during video/i-motion play.

Surround ：Specifies whether to enable the surround effects during video/i-motion play.

4 **Press [i].**

INFORMATION

● In the video/i-motion list, press [Menu] and select ***Settings***.

Chara-den

Chara-den is a character to display on the other party's screen instead of your self image when you use the video-phone. By pressing dial keys during a video-phone call, you can move the character and make it express a feeling casually. Also, you can set Chara-den as the stand-by display and have Chara-den make specific actions on stand-by or for missed calls.
The displayed still image and video of Chara-den can be shot and saved.

- Some Chara-den can move their mouths in time with the sounds from the microphone.
- Chara-den can be downloaded from sites and stored.
- Action of Chara-den consists of ***Action*** (whole acts) and ***Action of Parts*** (partial acts). Some Chara-den has no ***Action of Parts***.

Action: *喜ぶ* **(Joy)**

Action: *愛情* **(Affection)**

Action of Parts: *足 ジャンプ* **(Jump)**

Displaying Chara-den

The following Chara-den images are registered in ***Preinstalled*** folder by default:

©BVIG

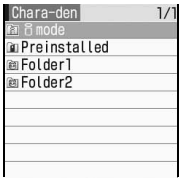
ブンブン **(bunbun)** ***(Dimo)***

女の子 **(Girl)**

男の子 **(Boy)**

1 Press [4] on the stand-by display.

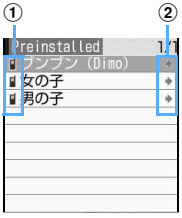
2 Select a folder.



The following Chara-den is saved in each folder:

- ***mode*** : Chara-den downloaded from sites
- ***Preinstalled*** : Chara-den preset in FOMA terminal by default
- Folder : Chara-den moved from another folder
  - Not displayed by default. To cretae ☛P358
  - You can enter any name of folder in creating.

3 Select Chara-den to display.



Chara-den list

① Origination

: i-mode : Preinstalled

② File restriction

(in gray): Attaching to mail or output from FOMA terminal unavailable

- Display name and other items can be changed. ☛P360

When making a video-phone call using Chara-den

① Place the cursor at Chara-den to use and press [Video].

② Select the phone number field, enter the phone number and press [Video].

- Phone number can be entered from the phonebook by pressing [Phonebook].
- Pressing [Menu] changes the settings such as call type or caller ID notification. ☛P52
- Operating procedure of the video-phone ☛P74

Setting Chara-den to the video-phone substitute image

① Place the cursor at the Chara-den to set as the substitute image and press [Mail].

- You can also set by holding down [Video] for over a second in Chara-den display screen.

Setting Chara-den to the stand-by display

① Place the cursor at the Chara-den to set and press [Menu] [4].

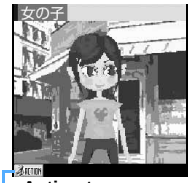
② Set the type of action and the interval of action and press [Phonebook].

- The contents of the setting is the same as the procedure ② to ③ in “Setting action of Chara-den” ☛P119

③ Select *YES (Same size)* or *YES (Large size)*.

- If the i-αppli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it. If ***YES*** is selected, the i-αppli stand-by display is canceled.

4 Operate Chara-den.



Action type
ACTION: Action
PARTS: Action of Parts

- Pressing a dial key performs action in accordance with the number.
- Press ロ to stop action.

Switching between large size and same size

① **Press ↑ for large size and press ↓ for same size.**
- To set which is displayed first, press Menu 4 and press 1 or 2 in the folder list.

Switching Chara-den

① **Press Menu 9 1 and select a folder.**
② **Select Chara-den to display.**

Displaying Action list

① **Press ✉.**

The action list for current action type is displayed.
- Selecting an action activates the Chara-den.

Switching Action and Action of Parts

① **Hold down ✉ for over a second.**
- Each time you hold down, Action and Action of parts are switched.

Preinstalled Chara-den actions

ブンブン **(bunbun)** ***(Dimo)***

Action

1 *喜ぶ* (Joy)	***3*** *悲しむ* (Sorrow)	***5*** *ラブラブ* (I love you)	***7*** *ノーリアクション* (No reaction)	***9*** *びっくり* (Surprised)
2 *怒る* (Angry)	***4*** *ありがとう* (Thank you)	***6*** *ごめんなさい* (I am sorry)	***8*** *バイバイ* (Goodbye)	

女の子 **(Girl) /** *男の子* **(Boy)**

Action

1 *喜ぶ* (Joy)	***4*** *怒る* (Angry)	***7*** *挨拶* (Greeting)	***#1*** *悩む* (Worried)	***#4*** *あきれる* (Amazed)
2 *ガッツポーズ* (Victory pose)	***5*** *泣く* (Weep)	***8*** *うなずく* (Nod)	***#2*** *称える* (Praise)	
3 *愛情* (Affection)	***6*** *ダメ* (Refuse)	***9*** *さよなら* (Goodbye)	***#3*** *お願い* (Do me a favor)	

Action of parts

11 *頭 右を向く（ループ）* (Turn the head right (loop))	***16*** *頭 上下に振る* (Shake the head up and down)	***24*** *胴体 前に傾く（ループ）* (Tilt the body forward (loop))
12 *頭 左を向く（ループ）* (Turn the head left (loop))	***17*** *頭 回転する* (Turn around the head)	***31*** *右手 挙げる（ループ）* (Right hand up (loop))
13 *頭 上を向く（ループ）* (Turn the head up (loop))	***21*** *胴体 右を向く（ループ）* (Turn the body right (loop))	***41*** *左手 挙げる（ループ）* (Left hand up (loop))
14 *頭 下を向く（ループ）* (Turn the head down (loop))	***22*** *胴体 左を向く（ループ）* (Turn the body left (loop))	***51*** *足 しゃがむ（ループ）* (Squat on heels (loop))
15 *頭 左右に振る* (Shake the head right and left)	***23*** *胴体 後ろを向く（ループ）* (Turn around the body (loop))	***52*** *足 ジャンプ* (Jump)

INFORMATION

- Chara-den cannot be edited or saved out of FOMA terminal by attaching to mail or transferring data.
- When a call is made and received while Chara-den is displayed, Chara-den display will not return after the end of the call. In case of a voice call, the Chara-den returns to the Chara-den list, Chara-den returns to the stand-by display for a video-phone call.
- If Chara-den registered by default has been deleted, it can be downloaded from the i-mode site “My D-style”. ☛P294

Recording Chara-den

Record Chara-den

・Still images and videos shot are saved in the same file format as still images and videos shot with the camera. Image file saving format ☛P157

Viewing the Chara-den recording screen

Action type ☛P339

① **Shooting mode**
: still image shooting mode : video recording mode

② **Memory to save***
: FOMA terminal : miniSD memory card

③ **Recording type**
: Video + Voice : Only video (w/o mic)
: Only video (w/mic) : Still image

④ **Size**
: (still image/video fixed)

⑤ **Quality (still image/video)***
During still image shooting : Economy : Standard : Fine
During video recording : LP : STD : HQ : HQ +

⑥ **Size restrictions***
During still image shooting : No restriction
During video recording : Msg. attachment(S) (290 Kbytes)
: Msg. attachment(L) (490 Kbytes)

* You can change settings in Still Image Setting or Video Setting. ☛P343

Shooting still images

1 Press 4 on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the Chara-den to shoot and press .
Chara-den shooting screen appears.

3 Press repeatedly until is displayed for the recording type.
・ → → → is switched each time pressed. You can switch to also by pressing Menu 3 4.

■ **Switching Chara-den**
① **Press Menu 1 1 and select a folder.**
② **Select Chara-den to shoot.**

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

4 Execute an action to shoot and press [●].

The shutter sound is heard and the shot image is saved in ***Camera*** folder of My Picture (***Image***).

- Operating procedure of Chara-den ☛ Step 4 in P339
- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, the image is saved in ***My picture*** folder of the miniSD memory card.

Checking the saved still image immediately

① **Press [メール] and select the still image to check.**

- Press [クリア] twice to return to the Chara-den shooting screen.
- In case the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, press [メール], select a folder and select a still image. Press [クリア] 3 times to return to the Chara-den shooting screen.

When *No* is set for *Auto save* in Still Image Setting for shooting Chara-den

The still image confirmation screen is displayed.

- The following operations are available in the still image confirmation screen:

[●] : Save still images
[Menu] : Switch where to save
[Mail] : Cancel (delete the still image without saving)
[メール] : Compose mail

INFORMATION

- ***Rec.File Restriction*** is set to ***File restricted*** for Chara-den, the still images taken (except for the case with ***Rec.File Restriction*** set with your terminal) cannot be edited, forwarded or attached to mail.
- When a call is made and received while recording Chara-den, Chara-den display will not return after the end of the call. In case of a voice call, Chara-den returns to the Chara-den list, Chara-den returns to the stand-by display for a video-phone call.
- When there is not enough available storage space to save the image, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number of images, Chara-den cannot be shot. Delete unnecessary images following the instruction of a confirmation screen.
- The shutter sound is disabled when ***Silent*** is set in Ring Volume Setting or Silent Mode is active.

Recording the video

1 Press [●][4 GHI] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the Chara-den to shoot and press [メール].

The Chara-den shooting screen appears.

3 Press [Mail] and select the recording type.

- → → → is switched each time pressed. You can switch to , or also by pressing [Menu] [3 DEF] and press [1] to [3 DEF].

Video & Voice
: Records Chara-den with sounds from the microphone.
For Chara-den that reacts with the sounds from the microphone, their mouths move in time with the sounds.

Only video (w/mic)
: Records only the image. The microphone is only valid for Chara-den that reacts with the sounds and moves its mouth in time with the sounds from the microphone. Sounds are not recorded.

Only video (w/o mic)
: Records only the image. Microphone becomes invalid.

Switching Chara-den

① **Press [Menu] [1] [1] and select a folder.**
② **Select Chara-den to shoot.**

4 Execute the action to record and press [●].

The shutter sound is heard and recording is started. ▭ switches to ●.

- Operating procedure of Chara-den. ☛ Step 4 in P339
- Action can be executed during recording as well.
- Press [●] to pause while recording. ● switches to ❚❚. Press [●] to restart the recording.

5 Press [📖].

The shutter sound is heard and the recorded video is saved in ***Camera*** folder of ***i-motion***.

- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, the video is saved in ***Movie*** folder of the miniSD memory card.
- If the size of video file exceeds the limit while recording, recording is automatically stopped and the video recorded up to that point is saved.

Checking the saved video immediately

① **Press [📖] and select a video file to check.**

- Press [クリア] twice to return to the Chara-den recording screen.
- In case the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, press [📖], select a folder and select a video. Press [クリア] 3 times to return to the Chara-den shooting screen.

When *No* is set for *Auto save* in Video Setting for recording Chara-den

The video confirmation screen is displayed.

- The following operations are available in the video confirmation screen:

[●] : Save videos　[📖] : Play videos　[ﾒｰﾙ] : Cancel (delete the video without saving)
[Menu] : Switch where to save　[✉] : Compose mail

INFORMATION

- When key operation is made or charging is started during recording, operation sound may be recorded.
- Chara-den that reacts with the sounds from the microphone may not make motions correctly depending on the volume of the sounds from the microphone.
- Recording may end before reaching the set file size depending on the Chara-den or action operation.
- The time displayed on the recording screen shows a rough indication of the remaining time before the set file size is reached. Some errors may be observed depending on Chara-den and action operation.
- ***Rec.File Restriction*** is set to ***File restricted*** for Chara-den, the videos taken (except for the case with ***Rec.File Restriction*** set with your terminal) cannot be edited, forwarded or attached to mail.
- If there is an incoming call during recording or in pause, the recording is stopped. The video recorded before the stop is saved regardless of the setting of ***Auto save*** in Video Setting.
- When the time set in alarm or schedule alarm has come during recording, the recording is stopped. The video recorded before the stop is saved automatically when ***Auto save*** is set to ***Yes***. If ***Auto save*** is set to ***No***, a confirmation screen appears.
- When the battery is almost exhausted during recording, the message indicating the battery is running out is displayed and the recording stops. When ***Auto save*** is set to ***Yes***, the data recorded before the stop is saved automatically and press [●] to return to the shooting screen. If ***Auto save*** is set to ***No***, a confirmation screen appears by pressing [●]. Even when returning to the shooting screen, the message appears indicating shooting is not available due to exhausted battery and recording cannot be performed.
- If the alarm or low battery alert sounds during recording and the recording stops, the alarm or low battery alert may be recorded at the last of saved video.
- If a call is made or received during video recording stand-by, Chara-den does not return to video recording mode after the end of the call. In case of a voice call, Chara-den returns to the Chara-den list, Chara-den returns to the stand-by display for a video-phone.
- When there is not enough available storage space to save the videos, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number of videos, Chara-den cannot be recorded. Delete unnecessary video files following the instruction of a confirmation screen.
- The shutter sound is disabled when ***Silent*** is set in Ring Volume Setting or Silent Mode is active.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Setting the operation of still image/video recording

Default
- Still Image Settings
  Quality: Standard Shutter sound: Shutter sound1 Rec. File Restriction: File unrestricted
  Auto save: Yes Save to: Terminal Display size: Large
- Video Settings
  Quality: STD Size restriction: Msg attach (s) Shutter sound: Shutter sound1
  Rec. File Restriction: File unrestricted Auto save: Yes Save to:Terminal Display size: Large

1 **Press Menu 4 GHI on the Chara-den recording screen.**

2 **Select each item to set.**

3 **Press ●.**

Setting items

○ : Available × : Unavailable

Item	Setting		Description
	Still image	Video	
***Quality* (still image)**	○	×	Sets the quality of still images to shoot. Higher quality requires a larger size of still image files.
***Quality* (video)**	×	○	Sets the quality of video to shoot. Higher quality requires a larger size of video files.
Size restriction	×	○	Sets the size restrictions of the video to record. When the file size of the recording video exceeds the limit value, recording ends automatically.
Shutter sound	○	○	Selects the shutter sound for shooting among 1 to 5. • The sound at the cursor is played by pressing ●.
Rec.File Restriction	○	○	When you send still images/videos to the other mobile phone via mail attachment or data transfer, you can set whether to restrict sending still images/videos to the other mobile phone from the received party's mobile phone. • Downloaded Chara-den with ***File restricted*** preset cannot be set to ***File unrestricted***.
Auto save	○	○	When ***Auto save*** is set to ***Yes***, the shot still image/video is automatically saved in the specified destination. When setting ***No***, a confirmation screen is displayed after shooting.
Save to	○	○	Sets the memory to save.
Display size	○	○	Specifies whether to enlarge Chara-den in accordance with the display area or to display in the same size at the center of the screen. • The setting takes effect the next time the shooting screen is displayed.

INFORMATION

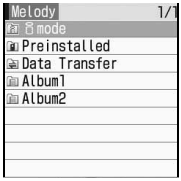
- If file restriction in detail information is set for ***Rec.File Restriction*** for Chara-den, the still image/video taken (except for the case with ***Rec.File Restriction*** set with your terminal) cannot be edited, forwarded or attached to mail.
- If file restriction in detail information is set for ***Rec.File Restriction*** for Chara-den, the still image/video taken (except for the case with ***Rec.File Restriction*** set with your terminal) cannot be saved in the miniSD memory card. Even when setting the memory to save to ***miniSD card***, it is changed to ***Terminal***.

Playing melodies

Play melodies saved in ***Melody*** of ***Data Box*** in FOMA terminal.

1 Press [5 JKL] on the stand-by display.

2 Select a folder.

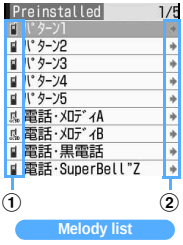


The following melodies are saved in each folder:

- ***mode*** : Melodies downloaded from sites or i-mode Mail
- ***Preinstalled*** : Melodies preset in FOMA terminal
- ***Data transfer*** : Melodies downloaded via barcode reader, melodies moved/copied from the miniSD memory card or melodies received via data communication
- Album : Melodies moved from another folder
  - Not displayed by default. To cretae ☛P358
  - You can enter any name of album in creating.

- Press [iアプリ] to switch to the miniSD memory card folder list.
  Operating procedure of the miniSD memory card ☛P354

3 Place the cursor at the melody to play.



① Origination

- : i-mode
- : Data transfer
- : Preinstalled
- : i-mode + 3D sound supported
- : Data transfer + 3D sound supported
- : Preinstalled + 3D sound supported

- 3D sound ☛P113

② File restriction

- (in blue): Attaching to mail or output from FOMA terminal available
- (in gray): Attaching to mail or output from FOMA terminal unavailable

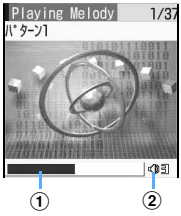
- Display name and other items can be changed. ☛P360

■ Sending mail attaching melodies

① Place the cursor at the melody to send and press [✉].

- If the receiver is other than FOMA D901i or D901iS, received melody may not be correctly played.
- Melodies that can be attached to mail ☛P233

4 Press [●] to play melody.



① Play bar: Indicates the current played position.
② Play volume: Indicates the current volume.

- The following operations are available while playing a melody:
  [音量] : Adjust volume [▲▼] : Play the previous/next melody
  [クリア]/[●] : Stop

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

INFORMATION

- You cannot play melody during a voice or a video-phone call.
- When trying to play melody in Silent Mode, a confirmation screen appears.
  When you select ***Yes***, melody is played in the volume of ***Settings*** of the melody.

Setting melodies for ring tone/on-hold tone

1 Press [3 DEF] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the melody to set and press [Menu] [2 ABC].

3 Select the type of sound to set.

■ **Setting as ring tone or on-hold tone for voice call, mail, chat mail, Message R/F or video-phone call**

① Press [1] to [7 PQRS].

■ **Setting as memory ring alert (call, mail)**

① Press [8 TUV] or [9 WXYZ].

② Select phonebook data to set.

③ Check the contents and press [▤].

- If a ring tone has already been set, the ring tone is replaced by the selected melody.
- Entering phonebook No. ☛ Step 3 of “Editing saved phonebook entries” in P104

INFORMATION

- In the melody play screen, press [Menu] and select ***Use melody***.

Setting the operating conditions of melodies

Settings

Default Volume: Level3 Lighting pattern: Sync melody Lighting color: Rainbow Vibrate alert: OFF Play position: play all Play background: Standard Stereo/3D sound: ON

1 Press [3 DEF] on the stand-by display.

2 Press [Menu] [5 JKL].

3 Select each item to set.

Volume : Sets the volume in playing melodies.

Lighting pattern

: Sets the lighting pattern of the call indicator in playing melodies.

- When setting to ***Sync melody***, it lights/blinks in ***Rainbow***.

Lighting color : Sets the color of the call indicator in playing melodies.

Vibrate alert : Sets the vibrator pattern in playing melody.

Play position : Specifies whether to play the whole (***play all***) or part of the melody (***Play partial***) in playing melody.

Play background

: Sets the image to be displayed on the screen for playing melody.

Stereo/3D sound

：Sets to ***ON*** to play melody with broadening stereophony. Set to ***OFF*** for monophonic replay.

・3D sound ☛P113

■ **Selecting the background image from My Picture (*Image*)**

① **Select *play background* field and press [2 カ ABC].**

② **Select the select image field.**

③ **Select a folder and select an image to be set as background.**

・Place the cursor at the image and press [Ⓜ] to display it. Press [●] to set.

4 Press [Ⓜ].

INFORMATION

- In the melody list and melody play screen, press [Menu] and select ***Settings***.
- Even if ***Sync melody*** is set for lighting pattern or vibrator, it may not be synchronized for some melodies.
- Even if ***Play partial*** is set for play position, partial playing may not be performed for some melodies.

Before using the miniSD memory card

You can save data such as shot still images, videos or melodies in the miniSD memory card or make backup of data such as the phonebook entries or schedules. In addition, video files created with external devices (PC, etc.) can be saved in the miniSD memory card for playing with FOMA terminal (☛P493) or the data of the miniSD memory card can be operated from a PC. (☛P434)

- The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores.
- Unformatted miniSD memory cards must be formatted with FOMA terminal before they can be used. The operation of the miniSD memory card whose format is stopped is not guaranteed. ☛P356
- The miniSD memory card formatted by such as a PC may not operate in FOMA terminal correctly.
- Still images in the miniSD memory card cannot be set as an icon, background image or the stand-by display. Set after moving/copying to FOMA terminal.
- FOMA terminals support commercial miniSD memory cards of up to 128 Mbytes (as of May, 2005). Perform the following procedure to see the updated information:
  - From FOMA terminal: ***iMenu*** →*メニューリスト* (Menu List) →*ケータイ電話メーカー* (Mobile phone manufacturer) → ***My D-style*** →*クイックマニュアル集* → ***D901iS*** *クイックマニュアル* (D901iS Quick Reference Manual)
  - From PC: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation's web site at http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/d901is/ → ***FAQ*** → ***miniSD*** *メモリーカード* ***(memory card)***
- To connect a PC with FOMA terminal, the FOMA USB connection cable (optional) is required.

Usage precautions of the miniSD memory card

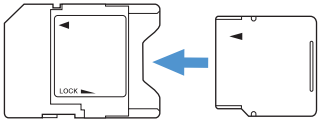
- Do not remove the miniSD memory card, switch off or apply impact while saving or deleting data, checking usage status or fomatting. The data may be corrupted.
- Subjecting FOMA terminal to strong impact such as dropping when the miniSD memory card is attached may cause the miniSD memory card to pop out.
- Do not attach labels or stickers on the miniSD memory card.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

- Do not attach the miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal if the card is damaged, soiled on the surface or deformed. It may cause failure.
- is indicated at the upper part of the screen and the terminal is in the data transfer mode (same condition as out of service area) while data is being copied, moved, deleted, the miniSD memory card is being formatted or information is being updated, so FOMA terminal is not available for phone calls, i-mode connection or data communication. Also, you cannot switch to other functions by pressing .
- The miniSD memory card cannot be used while All Lock or PIM Lock is on.
- In the miniSD memory card in which the data has been written and protected with other devices such as a PC, the data cannot be saved, deleted and formatted.
- Data saved from other devices into the miniSD memory card may not be displayed or played on FOMA terminal. Also, the data saved in the miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal may not be displayed or played on other devices.
- Depending on the miniSD memory card you are using, the saved video may be distorted.
- It is recommended that the data saved in the miniSD memory card be separately backed up for storage. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased or changed data.

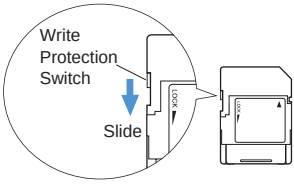
Using with devices supporting the SD memory card

The miniSD memory card adapter allows you to use miniSD memory cards with devices which support the SD memory card.



Insert a miniSD memory card into a miniSD memory card adapter.
- To remove the card, pull it out.

■ Preventing erroneous deletion



When you use the miniSD memory card with a miniSD memory card adapter, Write Protection Switch on the adapter will allow you to prevent erroneous deletion of data on the card.
- Slide the Write Protection Switch to the “LOCK” side.
- Use something with a fine tip to slide the switch.
- Be careful not to give damage to the miniSD memory card.

miniSD memory card folder structure

■ Displaying on FOMA terminal

The folder structure is as shown below:
(Different types of data are saved into different destinations.)

Item		Saved data	Maximum*2
Data Box	***My picture***	Still images shot with the camera, JPEG, GIF of DCF*1 standard	9,999 items
	Other image	JPEG, animation GIF of DCF*1 non-standard	9,999 items
	Movie	Video/i-motion recorded with the camera	4,095 items
	Melody	Melodies	9,999 items

Item		Saved data	Maximum*2
PIM	*Phonebook*	Phonebook data, phonebook backup data	9,999 items in total
	Schedule	Schedule data, schedule backup data	
	Received message	Received mail data, backup data of received mail	
	Unsent message	Unsent mail data, backup data of unsent mail	
	Sent message	Sent mail data, backup data of sent mail	
	Note	Memo data, backup data of memos	
	Bookmark	Bookmark data, backup data of bookmarks	
My document		PDF data	999 items

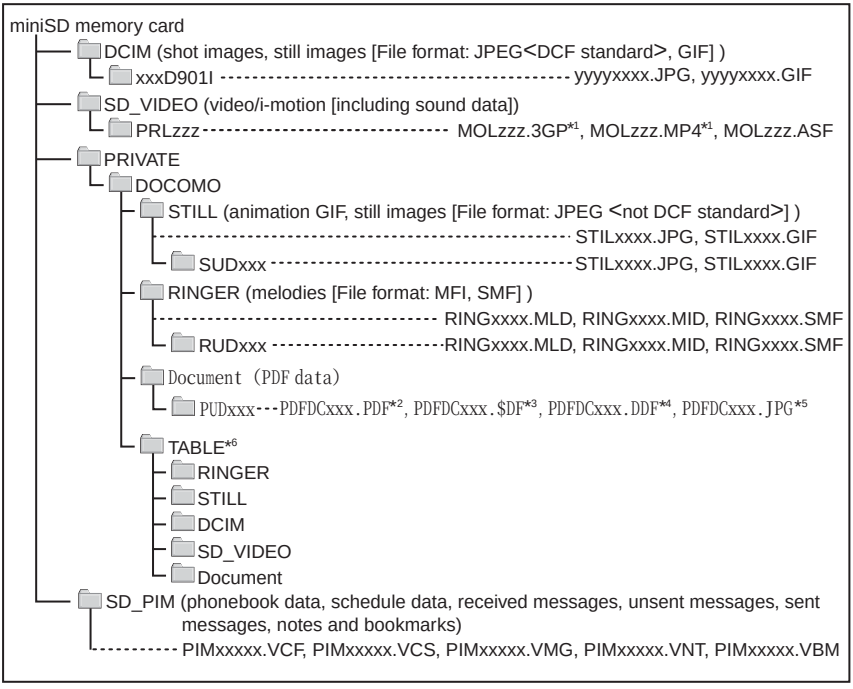
*1 DCF is an abbreviation of Design rule for Camera File system and it is a standard for file systems.

*2 Maximum data items which can be saved in the miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal regardless of the capacity of the miniSD memory card.

■ **Inserting to and displaying on a PC**

When data is moved/copied to the miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal or still images or videos shot with the camera are saved directly to the miniSD memory card, the folder compatible with the file is automatically created in the miniSD memory card. When the contents of the miniSD memory card are displayed on a PC, etc., the structure of the folders and files is as follows:

When saving data in the miniSD memory card from a PC, etc., save in the specified folder with the following file format and file name. If data is saved in the wrong folder or different file format, the data cannot be recognized on FOMA terminal.



*1 Files with extension of “3GP” or “MP4” are treated as MP4 format.

*2 Supports the long file name format up to 64 one-byte characters including the extension as well.

*3 PDF data that failed to be downloaded. When the rest of the data has been downloaded and saved, the file name is changed to “PDFDCxxx.PDF”.

*4 This file manages the information of bookmarks and marks in PDF data. The file name without extension is as same as that of corresponding PDF data.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

*5 This file displays PDF data in thumbnail. The file name without extension is as same as that of corresponding PDF data.

*6 Folders for data management. Never delete or rename a file in this folder. FOMA terminal cannot correctly display data.

・The rule of folder name and file name is as follows:
(Characters are all one-byte.)

・100 to 999 are placed in xxx of “xxxD901I”.

・Any one-byte alphanumeric characters in yyyy of “yyyyxxxx” and 0001 to 9999 in xxxx.

・A hexadecimal value 001 to FFF in zzz of “PRLzzz” and “MOLzzz” (In hexadecimal notation, one digit is represented with one of 16 alphanumeric characters 0 to 9 and A to F.)

・0001 to 9999 in xxxx of “STILxxxx” and “RINGxxxx”

・001 to 999 in xxx of “SUDxxx”, “RUDxxx”, “PUDxxx” and “PDFDCxxx”

・00001 to 65535 in xxxxx of “PIMxxxxx”

INFORMATION

● To use data copied to the miniSD memory card with a PC, etc., updating the miniSD memory card is required on FOMA terminal.

● If you change or delete the folder name in the miniSD memory card on a PC, etc., FOMA terminal cannot correctly display data.

● Even if a still image larger than 1728 x 2304 in horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) size is saved in the miniSD memory card, it cannot be displayed on FOMA terminal.

Data of still images/videos/melodies/PDF available in the miniSD memory card

File format \ Operation		Copy/move to miniSD memory card	Copy/move to FOMA terminal	Attach to mail*1	Display contents
Still image in JPEG format	**File size**	Unlimited	500 KB	500 KB	1.5 MB
	Image size	Unlimited	1728 x 2304	Unlimited	1728 x 2304
Still image in GIF format	**File size**	Unlimited	500 KB	10,000 bytes	1.5 MB
	Image size	Unlimited	480 x 640	Unlimited	480 x 640
Video/i-motion in MP4, 3GP format (including sound data)	**File size**	Unlimited	500 KB	500 KB	Unlimited
	Image size	Unlimited	Unlimited	176 x 144, 128 x 96	48 x 48 to 320 x 240*2
Video/i-motion in ASF format	**File size**	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	Unlimited
	Image size	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	176 x 144, 320 x 240
Melody in MLD format	**File size**	Unlimited	100 KB	Not supported	100 KB
Melody in MID, SMF format	**File size**	Unlimited	100 KB	10,000 bytes	100 KB
PDF data	**File size**	Unlimited	2 MB	Not supported	Unlimited

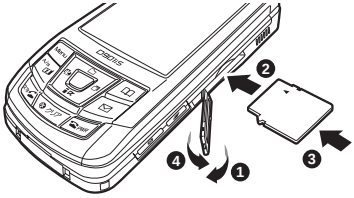
*1 For details on mail attachment, refer to “Attaching files” (☛P233).

*2 Even if video/i-motion data exceed the playable image size, in case the sound format is playable or a ticker that can be displayed exists in the data, the sound or ticker is replayed.

Inserting/removing the miniSD memory card

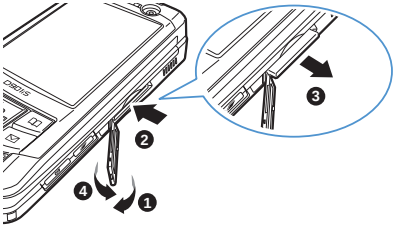
- Turn the power off before inserting/removing the miniSD memory card.
- In the miniSD memory card slot, do not insert anything other than the miniSD memory card.
- Do not touch metal contacts with your finger when you insert or remove the miniSD memory card.
- Insert the miniSD memory card correctly into FOMA terminal. You cannot perform operation such as copying data or making backup if you have not the miniSD memory card inserted correctly.
- Note that the miniSD memory card may pop out of the slot occasionally when you insert/remove it.
- Do not attach the miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal if the card is damaged or soiled on the surface or deformed. It may cause failure.

Attaching the miniSD memory card



❶ Open the miniSD memory card slot cover.
❷ Insert slowly the miniSD memory card properly with its printed surface upward.
❸ Insert the miniSD memory card further until it clicks.
❹ Close the miniSD memory card slot cover.

Removing the miniSD memory card



❶ Open the miniSD memory card slot cover.
❷ Push the miniSD memory card lightly, and leave your finger.
The miniSD memory card pops out a little.
❸ Remove the miniSD memory card slowly.
Pull it straight out.
❹ Close the miniSD memory card slot cover.

Exchanging the data between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card

You can copy/move data between the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card and back up FOMA terminal data into the miniSD memory card.
Data type and operation contents exchangeable are as follows:

Data type		Contents of operation
Data Box data (Still image, Video/i-motion, Melody)		One item, Selected items, All items (copy) One item, Selected items, All items (move)
My Documents data (PDF data)		
PIM data	**Phonebook, Schedule, Mail (received/unsent/sent), Bookmark**	One item (copy), Backup, Recovery
	Note	Backup, Recovery

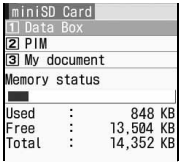
- The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Checking free space of the miniSD memory card

Check free space of the miniSD memory card before copying or marking backup of data.

1 Press [Menu] [6 MNO] [6 MNO] on the stand-by display.



Memory status : The rate of used area to full capacity is indicated in bar.
Used : The current used area is indicated in numeric.
Free : The current free area is indicated in numeric.
Total : Full capacity of the miniSD memory card attached to FOMA terminal is indicated in numeric.

INFORMATION

- If the used area is not 0 KB with no data saved, format the miniSD memory card.
- The miniSD memory card capacity actually available is smaller than the capacity specified on the miniSD memory card.
- If free capacity of the miniSD memory card is insufficient, data may not be saved. Save data after deleting unnecessary data or attaching another miniSD memory card.

Copying/moving data from FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card

- Continuous shots and Create animation cannot be copied/moved.
- The data prohibited from outputting from FOMA terminal cannot be copied/moved (except for the data with ***Rec.File Restriction*** set with FOMA terminal or the data in the ***Data transfer*** folder).
- PDF data downloaded partially cannot be copied/moved.
- PIM data cannot be moved.
- UIM phonebook cannot be copied.

Example When copying/moving still images to the miniSD memory card

1 Press [▽] [1 あ/@] on the stand-by display and select a folder in which still image to copy/move is saved.

2 Place the cursor at the still image to copy/move, press [Menu] [5 な JKL] and press [4 た GHI] or [5 な JKL].

3 Press [1 あ/@] to [3 さ DEF].

■ **Copying/moving selected items**

① Select still images.

- Press [▽] to select or cancel an item and press [Menu] to select or cancel all.
- Each time you press [Mail], thumbnail display and title display are switched.

② Press [▷].

4 Select *Yes*.

Still images are copied/moved in the miniSD memory card.

- Press [▽] to stop copy/move.

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, melody list or PDF data list, press [Menu] and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Move to miniSD*** or ***Copy to miniSD*** → ***One item***, ***Selected items*** or ***All items***.
- In the phonebook list, press [Menu] and select ***IrDA/miniSD/UIM*** → ***Copy to miniSD card***

- In the schedule day view screen, press [Menu] and select ***IrDA /miniSD*** → ***Copy to miniSD card***.
- In the received mail list, sent mail list or unsent mail list, press [Menu] and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Copy to miniSD*** → ***One item***.
- In the Bookmark list, press [Menu] and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Copy to miniSD*** → ***Copy one item***.
- If still images are copied/moved to the miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal, data size may increase. If the images are copied/moved from the miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal, the data size remains the same.
- When the phonebook data is copied, still images saved in the phonebook data are also copied. However, in case of displaying the phonebook data in the miniSD memory card, the still images are not displayed. When returning the data to FOMA terminal, the still images are displayed.
- Even if the phonebook data is copied/moved, the saved videos are not copied.
- In case attached files (except video/i-motion) and the message text contained in mail exceed 10,000 bytes, the attached files are not copied.
- Even when sent mail or unsent mail is copied, the attached video/i-motion file is not copied.
- The member list or image (still image) saved in the schedule is not copied.
- When the data set to the stand-by display or incoming ring alert are moved to the miniSD memory card, the stand-by display or incoming ring alert returns to default settings.

Copying/moving data from the miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal

• The maximum number of saved items in FOMA terminal ☛P33

Copying/moving data in Data Box/My Document data to FOMA terminal

1 Press [Menu] [6 MNO] [6 MNO] on the stand-by display.

2 Select the type of the data.

■ **When copying/moving the data in *Data Box***

① **Press [1 あ/@] and press [1 あ/@] to [4 た GHI].**

■ **When copying/moving the data in *My document***

① **Press [3 さ DEF].**

3 Select a folder.

4 Place the cursor at the data to copy/move and press [Menu] [3 さ DEF] for the data in *Data Box* or press [Menu] [2 か ABC] for the data in *My document*.

5 Press [1 あ/@] to [6 は MNO].

■ **Copying/moving selected items**

① **Select data items.**

- Press [●] to select or cancel an item and press [Menu] to select or cancel all.
- Up to 9 data items can be selected in the displayed page. Selection is available for single page.

② **Press [▣].**

6 Select *Yes*.

Data is copied/moved to each ***Data transfer*** folder in My Picture (***Image***), ***i-motion***, ***Melody*** or ***My Documents***.

- Press [●] to stop copy/move.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

INFORMATION

● If you search the data and display the list screen, copying/moving all items cannot be performed.

Copying PIM data into FOMA terminal

• Backup data (data with , , , ,) cannot be copied. Restore the data to FOMA terminal.

1 Press Menu 6 6 2 on the stand-by display and press 1 to 7.

2 Place the cursor at the data to copy, press Menu 1 1 and select *Yes*.

Backing up data saved in FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card

Make a backup of each PIM data in FOMA terminal into the miniSD memory card at once.

1 Press Menu 6 6 2 on the stand-by display and press 1 to 7.

2 Press Menu 1 4.

3 Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.

The selected PIM data is backed up to the miniSD memory card as one data item integrated.

• Press to stop backup. If terminated, the backup data will be discarded.

INFORMATION

● Operation is available from Phonebook list, schedule list, mail list or Bookmark list as well.

- In Phonebook list, press Menu and select ***IrDA/miniSD/UIM*** → ***Backup to miniSD***.
- In the schedule day view screen, press Menu and select ***IrDA/miniSD*** → ***Backup to SD card***.
- In received mail list, sent mail list or unsent mail list, press Menu and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Copy to miniSD*** → ***All items***.
- In Bookmark list, press Menu and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Copy to miniSD*** → ***Backup***.

Restoring backup data of the miniSD memory card

• There are 2 ways of the recovery by adding and the overwritten recovery. Note that when overwritten and restored, each PIM data in FOMA terminal is overwritten and original data is deleted.

1 Press Menu 6 6 2 on the stand-by display and press 1 to 7.

2 Place the cursor at the backup data, press Menu 1 and press 2 or 3.

: Phonebook : Schedule : Received message/Unsent message/Sent message

: Note : Bookmark

- If recovery by adding is performed, the data will be saved as another data that is not data saved in FOMA terminal.
- If overwritten recovery is performed, data saved in FOMA terminal will be overwritten.

3 Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.

- Press [●] to stop recovery. Backup data processed until the stopped point are restored in FOMA terminal.

Displaying data in the miniSD memory card

- If data in the miniSD memory card is changed or deleted by PCs, etc., the data in the miniSD memory card is not displayed properly on FOMA terminal. In such a case, update the miniSD memory card information. ☛P357

Displaying data in Data Box/My Document

1 Press [Menu] [6 MNO] [6 MNO] on the stand-by display.

2 Select the type of the data.

■ **When displaying the data in *Data Box***

① **Press [1 あ] and press [1 あ] to [4 GHI].**

■ **When displaying the data in *My document***

① **Press [3 DEF].**

3 Select a folder.

■ **Switching to the folder list of FOMA terminal**

① **Press [Mail].**

4 Place the cursor at the data to check.

- Each time you press [Mail], thumbnail display and title display are switched (except for melody data).

■ **Sending mail attaching data (only Data Box data)**

① **Place the cursor at the data to send and press [✉].**

■ **Displaying detail information**

① **Place the cursor at the data to display detail information and press [Menu] [2 ABC] for Data Box data, press [Menu] [1 あ] for My Documents data.**

■ **Deleting one item**

① **Place the cursor at the data to delete and press [Menu] [4 GHI] [1 あ] for Data Box data, press [Menu] [3 DEF] [1 あ] for My Documents data.**

② **Select *Yes*.**

■ **Deleting multiple items**

① **Press [Menu] [4 GHI] [2 ABC] for Data Box data, press [Menu] [3 DEF] [2 ABC] for My Documents data and select data.**

- Press [●] to select or cancel an item and press [Menu] to select or cancel all.
- Up to 9 data items can be selected in the displayed page. Selection is available for single page.

② **Press [📖] and select *Yes*.**

■ **Deleting all**

① **Press [Menu] [4 GHI] [3 DEF] for Data Box data, press [Menu] [3 DEF] [3 DEF] for My Documents data.**

② **Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.**

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

■ **Jumping to the specified pages**

① **Press [Address] and enter the number of page to jump.**

- When no page is entered, the first page is displayed.

■ **Searching for data in the miniSD memory card**

① **Press [Menu][5 な JKL] for Data Box data, press [Menu][4 た GHI] for My Documents data.**

② **Enter the date and press [Address].**

③ **Select the data to display.**

■ **Continuously playing video/i-motion (only video/i-motion)**

① **Press [Menu][6 は MNO].**

Video/i-motion in a folder is replayed continuously. After replaying the last video/i-motion, replay returns to the first video/i-motion.

- You can make the following operations during continuous play:

[●] : Pause/replay [Volume] : Adjust volume

[Answer]/[Mail] : Play the previous/next video/ i-motion [Address] : Stop

5 Press [●] to check the contents of data.

- Refer to the following pages for operating procedure of video/i-motion, melody or PDF data:
  - Video/i-motion ☛P330 - Melodies ☛P344 - PDF data ☛P376
- The following operations are available while the still image is displayed:

[Menu]: Display Detail Info

[Address]: Switch display/hide the file name

[Mail]: Compose mail

Displaying the PIM data

1 Press [Menu][6 は MNO][6 は MNO][2 か ABC] on the stand-by display.

2 Press [1 あ /@] to [7 ま PQRS].

3 Place the cursor at the data to check.

■ **Deleting one item**

① **Place the cursor at the data to delete and press [Menu][2 か ABC][1 あ /@].**

② **Select *Yes*.**

■ **Deleting multiple items**

① **Press [Menu][2 か ABC][2 か ABC] and select data.**

- Press [●] to select or cancel an item and press [Menu] to select or cancel all.
- Up to 9 data items can be selected in the displayed page. Selection is available for single page.

② **Press [Address] and select *Yes*.**

■ **Deleting all**

① **Press [Menu][2 か ABC][3 さ DEF].**

② **Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.**

■ **Jumping to the specified pages**

① **Press [📖] and enter the number of page to jump.**

・When no page is entered, the first page is displayed.

■ **Searching for data in the miniSD memory card**

① **Press [Menu][3 さ DEF].**

② **Enter the date and press [📖].**

③ **Select the data to display.**

4 Press [●] to check the contents of data.

・For the display, refer to the following pages:

・Phonebook ☛P103 ・Schedule ☛P396 ・Mail ☛P252 ・Bookmark ☛P194

・When selecting one PIM data item, detail of the selected data is displayed.

・When selecting backup data, all the data contained in backup data are listed as title.

INFORMATION

● You cannot make a call or send mail from the detail screen of the phonebook or schedule saved in the miniSD memory card. And in the mail detail screen, replying, forwarding, editing and protecting cannot be executed.

● The still images saved in the phonebook data are not displayed.

● Schedules saved in the miniSD memory card do not sound alarm for the set date and time.

● Place the cursor at the mail address in the mail detail screen and press [Menu][3 さ DEF][1 あ] to register the mail address to the phonebook or press [Menu][3 さ DEF][2 か ABC] to register it to the phonebook by overwriting. Also, place the cursor at the image or melody attached and press [Menu][4 た GHI][1 あ] to display/play and press [Menu][4 た GHI][2 か ABC] to check the title. However, still images or i-motion beyond 10,000 bytes and the number of items cannot be displayed.

Managing the miniSD memory card

Formatting the miniSD memory card

Format

Format it when you delete all the data saved in the miniSD memory card or when a new miniSD memory card is used in FOMA terminal.

1 Press [Menu][6 は MNO][6 は MNO] on the stand-by display and press [📖].

2 Select *format method*.

Quick format : Only the data management area in the miniSD memory card is formatted. Performing the minimum necessary processing is a method to shorten the format period. The saved data are all deleted. Use this method only when the miniSD memory card has been formatted and has no problem.

Regular format : Both the data management and data areas in the miniSD memory card are formatted. This method is used to format a new miniSD memory card.

3 Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.

・Press [●] to stop updating.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Updating the miniSD memory card information

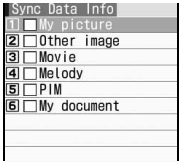
Sync Data Info

If the data is no longer correctly displayed on FOMA terminal because data in the miniSD memory card are changed, added or deleted using the other devices, update information in the miniSD memory card.

- If information update is performed, the display name of data is changed as follows:
  - In case of the data in ***My picture*** or ***Other image***, it is changed to the file name.
  - In case of the data in ***Movie***, ***Melody*** or ***My document*** , it is changed to the title name. When the data has no title, it is changed to the file name.

1 Press [Menu] [6 MNO] [6 MNO] on the stand-by display and press [Ajax].

2 Select the item to update information.



- Press [●] to select or cancel an item and press [Menu] to select or cancel all.

3 Press [Mail] to select *Yes*.

- Press [●] to stop updating.

INFORMATION

- When there are many data items saved on the miniSD memory card, updating information will take some time.
- If available capacity becomes less than required for creating management information in FOMA terminal when data is saved in a miniSD memory card with other devices, data saved in the miniSD memory card may be no longer correctly displayed on FOMA terminal.

Checking the miniSD memory card

Scan Card

You can check the data saved in the miniSD memory card and restore it if there is any problem.

- The data may not be restored depending on the condition of the miniSD memory card.

1 Press [Menu] [6 MNO] [6 MNO] on the stand-by display and press [Mail].

2 Select *Yes*.

Using the album

You can create albums (folders) in ***Image***, ***i-motion***, ***Chara-den***, ***Melody*** or ***My Documents*** of ***Data Box*** in FOMA terminal and sort out the data. The album data in ***i-motion*** and ***Melody*** can be replayed at one time.

- In ***Chara-den*** or ***My Documents***, the album is referred to as folder.
- Names of the fixed folder registered by default cannot be changed or deleted.

Creating albums

- Up to 100 albums in My picture ***(Image)*** and up to 10 albums respectively in ***i-motion***, ***Melody***, ***Chara-den*** or ***My Documents*** can be created.
- No album by default.

Example Creating the album in ***Image***

1 Press [▲] [1] on the stand-by display.

2 Press [Menu] [1].

■ **Changing the album name**

① **Place the cursor at the album to change and press [Menu] [2].**

■ **Deleting albums**

① **Place the cursor at the album to delete and press [Menu] [3].**

- When data is saved in the album to delete, enter the terminal security code.

② **Select *Yes*.**

3 Enter the album name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) and press [📖].

INFORMATION

- In the folder list of ***i-motion*/*Melody***, press [Menu] and select ***Create album***.
- In the folder list of ***Chara-den*/*My Documents***, press [Menu] and select ***Create folder***.
- An album with the same name as a existing one can be created.
- If an album in which data set to the stand-by screen or ring alert is saved is deleted, each setting returns to the default. When data set to the phonebook is deleted, the operation follows the settings of Sound Setting or Mail/Call Image Setting.

Moving/copying data to the album

Moving data to the album

You can move data in the fixed folder to an album or move it from album to album.

- Data can be moved between ***Deco-Mail picture*** in My Picture (***Image***) and other folders as well.
- Data saved in ***Preinstalled*** folder cannot be moved.

Example Moving data in ***Image***

1 Press [▲] [1] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the data to move and press [Menu] [5] [1] [1].

■ **Moving selected items**

① **Press [Menu] [5] [1] [2] and select data.**

- Press [●] to select or cancel an item and press [Menu] to select or cancel all.
- Each time you press [No.m], thumbnail display and title display are switched.

② **Press [📖].**

■ **Moving all the data in folder**

① **Press [Menu] [5] [1] [3].**

3 Select the destination album and select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, press Menu and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Move to album*** → ***One item***, ***Selected items*** or ***All items***.
- In the melody list, press Menu and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Move to album*** → ***Move one item***, ***Move selected items*** or ***Move all items***.
- In the image display screen, press Menu and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Move to album***.
- In the melody play screen, press Menu and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Move to album*** → ***Move one item*** or ***Move all items***.
- In the Chara-den list, press Menu and select ***Move*** → ***One item***, ***Selected items*** or ***All items***.
- In the Chara-den display screen, press Menu and select ***Move***.
- In the PDF data list, press Menu and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Move to folder*** → ***One item***, ***Selected items*** or ***All items***.

Returning album data to the original fixed folder

Example Returning album data in ***Image*** to the original fixed folder

1 Press ▽/1 on the stand-by display and select an album.

2 Place the cursor at the data to return and press Menu 5 2 1.

■ **Returning selected items**

① **Press Menu 5 2 2 and select data.**

- Press ● to select or cancel an item and press Menu to select or cancel all.
- Each time you press Vol., thumbnail display and title display are switched.

② **Press 📖.**

■ **Returning all the data in album**

① **Press Menu 5 2 3.**

3 Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, press Menu and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Return to folder*** → ***One item***, ***Selected items*** or ***All items***.
- In the melody list or PDF data list, press Menu and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Restore to folder*** → ***One item***, ***Selected items*** or ***All items***
- In the image display screen, press Menu and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Return to folder***.
- In the melody play screen, press Menu and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Restore to folder*** → ***One item*** or ***All items***.
- In ***Deco-Mail picture*** folder, preinstalled images are moved to ***mode*** folder by returning data to the original fixed folder.
- Operation of returning to the folder is unavailable for Chara-den.

Copying data

- The following data cannot be copied:
  - Create animation, Continuous shots, images in ***Item*** folder, images in ***Preinstalled*** folder of ***Image***
  - i-motion whose replay restriction is set
  - Melody, Chara-den
  - File restricted data

Example Copying data in ***Image***

1 Press ▽/1 on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the data to copy and press Menu 5 JKL 3 DEF.

The copied data are saved in the same folder as the original data.

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, PDF data list or image display screen, press Menu and select ***Move/Copy*** → ***Copy***.
- If data copied in the album is returned to the fixed folder, it moves to the same fixed folder as the original data.

Playing the entire album data

You can play i-motion or melody data in an album continuously.

- The fixed folder data registered by default cannot be played.
- i-motion whose replay restriction is set is not played.

1 Press ☝ 2 ABC on the stand-by display for i-motion, and press ☝ 3 DEF for melody.

2 Place the cursor at the album to play and press Menu 4 GHI.

- Icon definitions in the album playback screen ☛P330, P344

When the video/i-motion album is played

- The following operations are available:
  - ☝ : Pause/replay
  - ☝ : Adjust volume
  - ☝ / ✉ : Playing the previous/next data
  - 📖 : Stop
- When album repeat play is set to ***ON***, ON is displayed and the album is played repeatedly.

When the melody album is played

- The following operations are available:
  - ☝ : Play the previous/next melody
  - クリア / ☝ : Stop
  - ☝ : Adjust volume

INFORMATION

- If you try to play album during Silent Mode, a confirmation screen is displayed. If you select ***Yes***, it is replayed according to Settings of i-motion operation for the video/i-motion or Settings of melody ring volume for the melody.

Checking/editing detail information of the data

View/Edit Detail Info

Check detail information. The contents of some information can be changed.

Checking detail information

Example Displaying the image detail information

1 Press ☝ 1 あ/@ on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the images to check detail information and press Menu 3 DEF 1 あ/@.

・Press ▶ to change a part of detail information.

INFORMATION

- In the image display screen, video/i-motion list, Chara-den list, Chara-den display screen, melody list, melody play screen or PDF data list, press Menu and select ***Detail Info*** → ***View***.
- In the video/i-motion display screen, press Menu and select ***Detail information***.
- In the Chara-den recording screen, press Menu and select ***View detail Info***.

Changing detail information

Example Changing the image detail information

1 Press ▼ 1 あ/@ on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the image to change detail information and press Menu 3 DEF 2 か ABC.

3 Select each item to set and press ▶.

INFORMATION

- In the image display screen, video/i-motion list, Chara-den list, Chara-den display screen, melody list, melody play screen or PDF data list, press Menu and select ***Detail Info*** → ***Edit***.
- For video/i-motion, Chara-den and melody, selecting ***Back to original*** returns the display name to the original title preset.

Displayed items and their availability

・Depending on the data, some items cannot be changed even when shown as “Changeable” in the list.

● : Changeable ○ : Unchangeable — : No display

Displayed item	Image	Video/ i-motion	Chara-den	Melody	PDF data	Description
Display name	●	●	●	●	●	Title displayed on FOMA terminal (up to 36 characters regardless of one-byte or two-byte except for melody; up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters for melody)
Title (Original)/ Original title	—	○	○	○	—	Original title preset in data
File name	●	●	○	●	○	File name displayed when attaching data to mail (up to 36 one-byte alphanumeric characters, “.”, “-”, or “_”) ・“.” cannot be used for the first character of the file name.
Type	○	—	—	—	—	Type of image
File restriction	●	●	○	●	○	When you send data to the other mobile phone via mail attachment, you can set whether to restrict sending data to the other mobile phone from the received party’s mobile phone. ・i-motion/melodies downloaded from sites, etc. cannot be changed.
Rec. file restriction	—	—	○	—	—	Whether or not to set file restriction for the still image/video shot with Record Chara-den

Displayed item	Image	Video/ i-motion	Chara-den	Melody	PDF data	Description
Creator	—	●	—	—	—	Creator's name (up to 256 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) ・The name registered in Own Number appears in ***Creator*** when you have recorded video using your FOMA terminal. If the name is not registered in Own Number, ***Creator*** is not set.
Copyright	—	●	—	—	—	The name of the author and the release date of the production (up to 256 characters regardless of one- or two-byte)
Description	—	●	—	—	—	Description of video/i-motion (up to 256 characters regardless of one- or two-byte)
Format/File format	○	○	—	○	○	File type ("---" for Flash movie)
Sound	—	○	—	—	—	Sound data type
Display size	○	○	○	—	—	Display size (Not displayed for Flash movie)
File size	○	○	○	○	○	File size
Duration/ Playing time	—	○	—	○	—	Playing time
Saved date & time	○	○	○	○	○	Saved date & time
Use as frame	●	—	—	—	—	Whether or not to set the image to be able to paste as frame image ・Images more than the size of 352 x 288 and images composed with item image cannot be set.
Use as stamp	●	—	—	—	—	Whether or not to set the image to be able to paste as stamp image ・Images more than the size of 240 x 320 and images composed with item image cannot be set.
Comment	●	—	●	—	—	Description of data (up to 100 characters regardless of one- or two-byte)
Ring tone	—	○	—	—	—	Whether the video/i-motion can be set to ring tone
Receive display	—	○	—	—	—	Whether the video/i-motion can be set to incoming image
Restriction	—	○	—	—	—	Playback restriction of video/i-motion
Originated	○	○	○	○	○	Origination of data
Transfer for repair	○	—	—	○	○	When your FOMA terminal is repaired, whether your data can be moved at a service center designated by DoCoMo*

* If your data cannot be moved or should be lost/modified, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of data.

INFORMATION

- Even if ***Yes*** is set for ***Use as frame*** or ***Use as stamp***, images are saved in the original folder and are not displayed in ***Item*** folder.
- Still images/videos recorded with FOMA terminal, the image or video/i-motion and melody obtained via data transfer or the miniSD memory card can be attached to mail or sent by data transfer, regardless of the setting of ***File restriction***.
- ***Ring tone*** is always set to available for the video/sound recorded with the recording type of ***Video + Voice*** or ***Voice only*** set with your FOMA terminal, or the video/sound clipped from the video/sound.
- Detail information stored in the miniSD memory card may differ from the information displayed on FOMA terminal.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Deleting data

• Data saved in ***Preinstalled*** folder of My Picture (***Image***), ***i-motion***, ***Melody*** or ***My Documents*** cannot be deleted.

Example Deleting data of ***Image***

1 Press [1] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the data to delete and press [Menu] [6] [1].

■ **Deleting selected items**

① **Press [Menu] [6] [2] and select data.**

- Press [●] to select or cancel an item and press [Menu] to select or cancel all.
- Each time you press [Mail], thumbnail display and title display are switched.

② **Press [Ⓒ].**

■ **Deleting all the data in folder**

① **Press [Menu] [6] [3] and enter the terminal security code.**

3 Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, melody list, Chara-den list or PDF data list, press [Menu] and select ***Delete*** → ***One item***, ***Selected items*** or ***All items***.
- In the image display screen or Chara-den display screen, press [Menu] and select ***Delete***.
- In the melody play screen, press [Menu] and select ***Delete*** → ***One item*** or ***All items***.
- If data set for the stand-by display or ring alert are deleted, each setting returns to the default. When data set to the phonebook are deleted, the operation follows the settings of Sound Setting or Mail/Call Image Setting.
- If you delete Create animation, the images composing Create animation are also deleted.
- If Chara-den registered by default has been deleted, it can be downloaded from the i-mode site "My D-style". ☛P294

Sorting data

Sort

You can change the order of data of the list screen.

Default **Sort Criteria: Saved date & time Order: Descending**

Example Sorting data of My Picture ***(Image)***

1 Press [1] on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Press [Menu] [7].

3 Select each item to set and press [Ⓒ].

Sort criteria : Sets the sorting method.
Order : Sets ascending or descending order.

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, melody list, Chara-den list or PDF data list, press Menu and select ***Sort***.
- If one-byte and two-byte character are mixed in ***Display name***, the Japanese syllables may not match the sort result.

Infrared communication

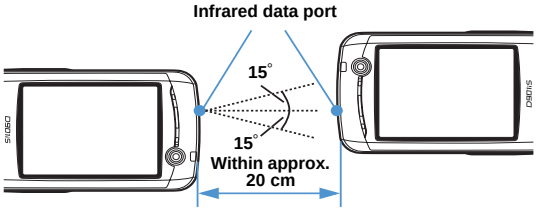
You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals, mobile phones or PCs with an infrared communication function. Also, by using the i-αppli compatible with infrared communication, you can link to devices having an infrared communication function.

- Infrared communication is disabled while All Lock, PIM Lock or Self Mode is set.
- Infrared communication and USB connection cannot be performed at the same time.
- Data prohibited from outputting from FOMA terminal cannot be sent/received. Note that the data whose file restriction is set to ***File Restricted*** with the same terminal and data in ***Data transfer*** folder are excluded.
- During infrared communication, the terminal is in data transmission mode (same status as outside the service area), so phone calls, i-mode connection and data communication are disabled. Also, you cannot switch to other functions by pressing .
- The infrared communication function of this terminal conforms to IrMC 1.1.
- Even if the terminal of the other party conforms to IrMC 1.1, some data may not be sent/received depending on the data type.
- The data including pictograms may not be displayed correctly when sent to other than i-mode terminal. Even when sending to i-mode terminal, the data including pictogram 2 may not be displayed correctly depending on phone terminals.

Using infrared communication

The maximum communication range is approximately 20 cm and the angle is within 15 degrees from the center.
Keep the FOMA terminal pointing at the remote device's infrared data port and do not move it until all the data have been sent or received.

- Infrared communication may not be performed properly in areas of direct sunlight or directly under fluorescent lights.



Notes in receiving the data from the other FOMA terminal via infrared communication

- The folder name that was set by the other terminal may not be taken over even if you receive all items of message.
- If you receive messages, usual messages may be stored in the folder for the Message i-αppli in Inbox, Outbox or Unsent messages.
- Upon reception of all items of bookmark data, the data you will receive covers the entire of the folder created by the other terminal.
- When you receive bookmarks from any terminal other than D901iS, the data may be stored in the top folder.
- If you receive images, video/i-motion or melodies from other than D901iS, the data may be saved as notes.

Notes in sending the data of D901iS to the other FOMA terminal via infrared communication

- The receiver may not save a large size file of images, video/i-motion or melodies because of the difference in the file size limit.

Sending the data by infrared communication

Send Ir Data

You can send data by selecting each item to send one at a time or by sending all items of the specified function data at once. The following data are available for sending:

Data type	Remarks
Phonebook*	• A phonebook entry for which Secret Attribute is set can be sent by Sending one item only when Secret Mode is on. • Own Number data is also sent when Sending all is performed. • Phonebook data cannot be sent when Keypad Dial Lock is on. • When ***Ph.book image sending*** is ***ON*** for Data Transfer Setting, still images saved in the phonebook data can be sent together. However, the images may not be sent depending on the receiver's model.
Schedule*	• A schedule for which Secret Attribute is set can be sent by Sending one item only when Secret Mode is on. • The date and time setting is required.
Received mail*/ Sent mail*/ Unsent mail*	• Attached data in the text (a link item that activates i-αppli) are deleted.
Notes*	———
Bookmark*	• Folder settings may not be reflected depending on the model of the other party. • When sending all, bookmarks are sent from the end of the list.
Image	• A title of up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters can be sent. Characters that exceed the maximum number will be deleted. • Data of over 500 KB cannot be sent.
Video/ i-motion	• A title of up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters can be sent. Characters that exceed the maximum number will be deleted.
Melody	• A title of up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters can be sent.
Own Number	• Images may not be sent depending on the model of the other party.

*Sending all is enabled.

- When data is communicated with terminals other than D901iS or with infrared communication devices, some data may not be sent/received correctly. Items that cannot be saved by the recipient are discarded.

Sending single data item

Example Sending a phonebook entry

1 Make your party's FOMA terminal ready to receive.

2 Search the phonebook, place the cursor at the phonebook data to send and press Menu 8 TUV 1 あ/@.

3 Select *Yes*.

- Press ● to stop infrared sending.

INFORMATION

- In the sent mail list, unsent mail list or received mail list, press Menu and select ***Send Ir data*** → ***Selected item***.
- In the Image list, video/i-motion list or melody list, press Menu and select ***Send Ir data***.
- In the schedule day view screen, press Menu and select ***IrDA/miniSD*** → ***Send Ir data***.
- In the Own Number detail screen, press Menu and select ***Send own number***.
- In the bookmark list or list of notes, press Menu and select ***Send Ir data*** → ***Send***.

Sending all data items

You can send all the data of phonebook, schedule, mail, notes and bookmark via infrared communication.

- If you send all the data, the same authentication password between sender and receiver must be entered. Decide a 4-digit authentication password among ***0000*** to ***9999*** in advance.

1 Make your party's FOMA terminal ready to receive.

2 Press Menu 6 は/MNO 5 な/JKL 1 あ/@ on the stand-by display.

3 Select the type of data to send and enter the terminal security code.

4 Enter the 4-digit authentication password.

The entered authentication password is masked with "✳".

5 Select *Yes*.

- Press ● to stop infrared sending.

INFORMATION

- In the bookmark list, sent mail list, unsent mail list, received mail list or list of notes, press Menu and select ***Send Ir data*** → ***Send all***.
- In the folder list of bookmark, sent message, unsent message or received message, press Menu and select ***Send all Ir data***.
- In the phonebook list, press Menu and select ***IrDA/miniSD/UIM*** → ***Send all Ir data***.
- In the calendar for schedule, press Menu and select ***IrDA/miniSD*** → ***Send all Ir data***.
- When all the data items are sent, order of the data may change in the receiver's data folder.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Receiving data by infrared communication

Receive Ir Data

You can receive data by selecting each item to receive one at a time or by receiving all items of the specified function data at once. Received data are saved directly in FOMA terminal or is saved in FOMA terminal after received data are saved temporarily in ***INBOX*** and checked.
The following data are available for receiving:

Data type	Storage after receiving	Order of saving data
Phonebook*	Phonebook • If you receive all phonebook items, Own Number data except the phone number is overwritten. • Receiving cannot be executed when Keypad Dial Lock is set.	Smallest free phonebook No.
Schedule*	Scheduler • You need to make date and time settings.	Order by date & time
Received mail*	Inbox	Order by received date & time
Sent mail*	Outbox	Order by sent date & time
Unsent mail*	Unsent messages	Order by saved date & time
Notes*	Notepad	Order of reception
Bookmark*	Bookmark	Top of the list
Image	***Data transfer*** folder of ***Image***	Top of the list
Video/i-motion	***Data transfer*** folder of ***i-motion***	Top of the list
Melody	***Data transfer*** folder of ***Melody***	Top of the list
Own Number	Phonebook	Smallest free phoonebook No.

* Receiving all is enabled.

• When invalid characters and so on are included in the received data, they are replaced by space or cut.

Receiving single data item

• You cannot receive data that exceed 500 Kbytes.

1 Press [Menu] [6 は MNO] [5 な JKL] [2 か ABC] [1 あ /@] on the stand-by display.

The receive method selection screen is displayed.

2 Press [1 あ /@] or [2 か ABC].

⇌ and ▮ appear.

Confirm & save : Received data is saved temporarily in ***INBOX***. After receiving is finished, the ***INBOX*** data list appears.

Save : Received data is saved in FOMA terminal. After receiving is finished, The receive method selection screen reappears without displaying ***INBOX***.

3 Select *Yes*.

Receiving stand-by condition is activated.

4 Send single data item on the sender side.

- Press [▼] to stop infrared communication.
- When selecting ***Confirm & save*** in Step 2, ***INBOX*** screen appears after receiving is finished.
  Operation to save the data ☛Step 2 in P369
  When selecting ***Save***, the receive method selection screen reappears after receiving is finished.

Receiving all data items

You can receive all the data of phonebook, schedule, mail, notes and bookmark via infrared communication.

- If you receive all the data, the same authentication password between receiver and sender must be entered. Decide a 4-digit authentication password among 0000 to 9999 in advance.

1 Press [Menu] [6 は MNO] [5 な JKL] [2 か ABC] [2 か ABC] on the stand-by display.

The all receive method selection screen is displayed.

2 Press [1 あ /@] or [2 か ABC].

⇄ and ↓ appear.

Confirm & overwrite : Received data is saved temporarily in ***INBOX***. After receiving is finished, ***INBOX*** data list appears. Add or overwrite can be selected when saving from ***INBOX***.

Overwrite : Received data is overwritten and saved in FOMA terminal. After receiving is finished, the all receive method selection screen reappears without displaying ***INBOX***.

- Note that the original data in FOMA terminal are all deleted by overwriting and replaced by new data.
- If you select ***Confirm & overwrite***, go to Step 4.

3 Select *Yes* and enter the terminal security code.

4 Enter the 4-digit authentication password.

- The entered authentication password is masked with "✳".

5 Select *Yes*.

Receiving stand-by condition is activated.

6 Send all the data on the sender side.

- Press [▼] to stop infrared communication.
- When selecting ***Confirm & overwrite*** in Step 2, ***INBOX*** screen appears after receiving is finished.
  Operation to save the data ☛Step 2 in P369
  When selecting ***Overwrite***, the all receive method selection screen reappears after receiving is finished.

INFORMATION

- Receiving time differs depending on the type or number of received data. If you receive the data of large capacity or many numbers, receiving may take some time.
- For precautions of saving data, refer to INFORMATION in "Saving received data". ☛P369

Saving received data

You can save data stored in ***INBOX*** temporarily to FOMA terminal.

- If ***Confirm & save*** is selected when receiving one data item, ***Confirm & overwrite*** is selected when receiving all the data items, ***INBOX*** screen is displayed automatically after infrared communication is finished.

1 Press Menu 6 5 2 3 on the stand-by display.

2 Select the data to save.

: single item/multiple items of phonebook data
: single item/multiple items of bookmark data
: single item/multiple items of message data
: single item/multiple items of schedule data
: single item/multiple items of notes
: image data
: video/i-motion data
: melody data

■ Deleting single item

① Place the cursor at the data to delete and press Menu 2.

■ Deleting all

① Press Menu 3 and enter the terminal security code.

3 Select *Yes*.

■ Selecting multiple items

① Enter the terminal security code.

② Select *Add* to add or select *Overwrite* to overwrite.

- Note that the original data in FOMA terminal are all deleted by selecting ***Overwrite*** and replaced by new data.

INFORMATION

- Depending on the size of data to save, the maximum number of items that can be received and saved may be fewer.
- Message data received from the equipment that allows to save by folder may be saved in the Message i-αppli folder. Place the cursor at the Message i-αppli folder and press Menu 1 to check saved message data.
- ToDo (list function to manage business) data cannot be saved on D901iS. When receiving all items of ToDo data and schedule data at once from the models other than D901iS, etc., only the schedule data is saved. Note that in case all items of only ToDo data are received, when overwriting, all the schedule data registered in D901iS will be deleted.
- When the data of receiving all items are saved by overwriting, the protected data in FOMA terminal are deleted.

Activating infrared communication mode

Infrared Communication Mode

Activate i-αppli by receiving the data to start i-αppli via infrared communication device having the function of starting i-αppli.

- It is necessary to download the specified software from sites, etc. beforehand.
- In case i-αppli is set not to start with i-αppli To function via an external device, i-αppli cannot be activated.

1 Press Menu 6はMNO 5なJKL 2かABC 1あ/@ 2かABC on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.

Receiving stand-by condition is activated.

2 Receive the data to start i-αppli via infrared communication device.

i-αppli is activated.

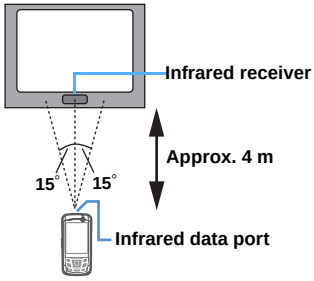
- Press ● to quit receiving.

Using the infrared remote control function

FOMA terminal can be used as an infrared remote controller by downloading the i-αppli for infrared remote control.

- Download the i-αppli suited for the individual model.
- This function is unavailable when Self Mode is on, or during infrared communication.
- Communication may be influenced by the model of the supported device used and ambient luminance.
- Some equipment cannot be operated even if it is compatible with infrared remote control.

Remote control operation



Perform remote control operation with the infrared data port of FOMA terminal pointed at the infrared receiver of the supported device used (operating procedure differs depending on i-αppli). Angle for remote control is 15 degrees from the center and the distance is approximately 4 m at the maximum. However, the range depends on the operated device or ambient luminance.

INFORMATION

● If preset i-αppli *G ガイド番組表リモコン*(G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller) is activated, FOMA terminal can be used as an infrared remote controller for TV, etc. ☛P296

Setting operations for data transfer

Data Transfer Setting

Set operations for data transfer by infrared communication and USB connection.

Default End alert: OFF Auto Authentication: OFF Ph. book image sending: ON

1 Press Menu 6はMNO 5なJKL 3さDEF on the stand-by display.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

2 Select each item to set.

End alert : Specifies whether to enable communication end tone at the end of communication.
- The communication end tone is disabled if Keypad Sound is set to ***OFF*** even if ***End alert*** is set to ***ON***.

Auto Authentication : Specifies whether to automatically exchange authentication codes with the other party while connecting to USB.
- To set ***ON***, enter the terminal security code, enter 4 to 8-digit ***Auth code: terminal*** (FOMA terminal) and ***Auth code: PC*** (the other party) and press [📖].
- ***Auto Authentication*** is unavailable in case the software for a PC (the other party) does not support this setting.

Ph.book image sending
: Specifies whether to send images along with the all phonebook data.

3 Press [📖].

Recording voice with Sound Recorder

Sound Recorder

You can record sound with Sound Recorder. Recorded voice can be saved in the miniSD memory card as well as playing on FOMA terminal and can be attached to i-mode Mail to send.
- Recorded sound is saved as video/i-motion without video.
- The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores.

Recording screen and sound files

Reading the recording screen

① **Quality** : Indicates the quality of the sound to be saved. ☛P374

② **Size restrictions**
: Indicates the size restrictions on the file to be saved. ☛P374

③ **Shooting mode**
: Indicates recording mode for voice.

④ **Save to** : Indicates the memory to save. ☛P167
[FOMA]: FOMA terminal [SD]: miniSD memory card

⑤ **Recording Type**
: Indicates recording mode for voice.

⑥ **Indicator** : **During stand-by for recording**
Indicates the usage rate of the memory to save.
- The miniSD memory card storage area usage rate may not become 0 even when no recorded voices have been saved.

During recording/pause
Indicates the rate of the recorded sound size to the file size set in ***Size restrictions***.

⑦ **Counter** : **During stand-by for recording**
Indicates the approximate maximum time of sounds that can be saved in FOMA terminal or the miniSD memory card at this time.

During recording/pause
Indicates the approximate elapsed/remaining time (duration up to the recording stop).

Sound files

Item	Contents
File format	MP4 (MobileMP4)
Encoding method	AMR
Extension	3gp
Title	Recorded date/time is automatically set. (Example) In case of 12:34:56 on Aug. 26, 2005. → 20050826123456.3gp • The display name and the file name can be changed after recording sound. ☛P361 • When the date and time is not set in FOMA terminal, the display name, title and file name become "----------".
Mail attachment/ output	Sounds can be attached to mail to send and also be output to PCs and other terminals using the miniSD memory card and dedicated data link software.

Recording time of sound

The sound recording time varies depending on the setting of quality and size restrictions.

• Quality and size restrictions can be set in ***Recording Settings***. ☛P166

■ Recording time of sounds that can be stored in FOMA terminal (estimates)

Item	Quality	File size restrictions	
		Message attachment (S) (290 KB)	Msg attachment (L) (490 KB)
Recording time for one operation	***STD***	Approx. 4 minutes	Approx. 7 minutes
	HQ	Approx. 3 minutes	Approx. 5 minutes
Maximum recording time in FOMA terminal	***STD***	Approx. 159 minutes	Approx. 159 minutes
	HQ	Approx. 104 minutes	Approx. 105 minutes

■ Recording time of sounds that can be stored in the miniSD memory card (estimates)

Capacity	Quality	File size restrictions		
		Message attachment (S) (290 KB)	Msg attachment (L) (490 KB)	None
16 MB	***STD***	Approx. 230 minutes	Approx. 230 minutes	Approx. 230 minutes
	HQ	Approx. 150 minutes	Approx. 151 minutes	Approx. 151 minutes
32 MB	***STD***	Approx. 475 minutes	Approx. 475 minutes	Approx. 475 minutes
	HQ	Approx. 311 minutes	Approx. 312 minutes	Approx. 312 minutes

Recording the sound

• Record the sound in as quiet place as possible where environmental noise is little.

• Even when ***Silent*** is set for Ring Volume or Silent Mode is active, the recording confirmation sound (shutter sound) is heard.

1 Press Menu 6 MNO 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

The call indicator lights in blue, Sound Recorder is activated and sound recording mode is started.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

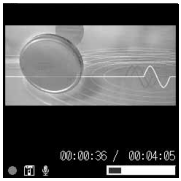
2 Press [●] or [📷].

Recording screen

The shutter sound is heard, compact light flashes in red, call indicator flashes at 2-second intervals with changing the color and recording is started. switches to .

- The sound is recorded from the microphone.
- Press [●] to pause recording. The compact light is turned on in red, the call indicator is turned on in green and switches to ❚❚. Press [●] to restart recording.

3 Press [📖] or [📷].



The shutter sound is heard and recording is finished. A confirmation screen of recorded sound is displayed.

- When ***Auto save*** for Recording Setting is set to ***Yes***, recorded sound is saved and the recording screen reappears. Operations from Step 4 are not required.
- If the file size exceeds the limit while recording, recording ends automatically and the sound recorded up to that point can be saved.
- If [📖] is pressed to end the recording during in pause, the sound recorded up to that point can be saved.

4 Confirm the recorded sound.

- Go to Step 5 to save the sound immediately.
- Press [クリア] to record again without saving.
- Press [📖] to replay the sound. When ***Auto play*** in Recording Setting is set to ***Yes***, the recorded sound is played automatically.

Sending mail attaching the recorded sound

① **Press [✉].**

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the recorded sound.

Select ***Yes*** to save the recorded sound in FOMA terminal, and the mail composition screen is displayed.

- Even when the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the recorded sound is saved in FOMA terminal.
- If the file size of the recorded sound exceeds 500 Kbytes, the sound cannot be attached.

Changing the title

① **Press [Menu] [3 さ DEF] [1 あ @] and enter the title (up to 31 characters regardless of one-byte or two-byte) and press [📖].**

- Changed title is valid after saving the sound.

Inserting a ticker

① **Press [Menu] [3 さ DEF] [2 か ABC] and select *Yes*.**

The recorded sound is saved in FOMA terminal and the ticker Set screen is displayed.

Follow the procedure from Step 3 in “Inserting the ticker”. ☛P335

- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, tickers cannot be inserted.

Switching memory to save between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card

① **Press [Menu] [5 な JKL].**

- If the file size of the recorded sound exceeds 490 Kbytes, the destination to save cannot be switched.

Displaying the list of sounds stored in FOMA terminal

① **Press [Menu] [6 は MNO] and press [1 あ @] or [2 か ABC].**

5 Press [●] or [📷].

The recorded sound is saved in ***Camera*** folder of ***i-motion***.

- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, the sound is saved in ***Movie*** folder of the miniSD memory card.
- To confirm the saved sound immediately, press [📖] and select the sound to confirm.

INFORMATION

- Sound Recorder is activated by pressing [Menu] on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen and selecting ***Switch modes*** → ***Sound recorder*** as well. Also you can switch by setting the recording type for ***Recording Settings*** to ***Voice only*** during stand-by for recording with Movie Camera.
- For the usage precaution for Sound Recorder, refer to INFORMATION in “Recording videos with Movie Camera” ☛P166.
- For the procedure of playing the recorded sound, refer to “Playing video/i-motion” ☛P328.

Changing the recording settings

Setting the sound quality

1 Press [●] on the recording screen and place the cursor at the quality icon.

Icon of quality

- You can also press [8 TUV] to select the icon of quality.

2 Press [▲▼] to switch the icon and press [●].

Standard : Standard quality

High Quality : The sound will be better, but the recordable time is shorter.

- You can also set by pressing [8 TUV] to switch the icon and pressing [●].

Restricting the file size

1 Press [●] on the recording screen and place the cursor at the size restriction icon.

Icon of size restrictions

- You can also press [9 WXYZ] to select the icon of size restrictions.

2 Press [▲▼] to switch the icon and press [●].

Msg attachment (S)
: Restricts the file size to 290 Kbytes. Data of this file size can be sent to the terminal unsupporting large capacity messages being attached to i-mode Mail.

Msg attachment (L)
: Restricts the file size to 490 Kbytes. Data of this file size can be sent to the terminal which supports large capacity message.

None : No restriction for the file size. When the destination to save sound is set to ***Phone*** in ***Recording Settings***, selection cannot be made.

- You can also set by pressing [9 WXYZ] to switch the icon and pressing [●].

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

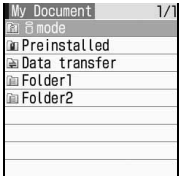
Displaying the PDF data

Displays PDF data saved in ***My Documents*** of ***Data Box*** in FOMA terminal. Also, PDF data downloaded from i-mode or Internet web site(s) can be displayed. Various operations are available such as magnifying/reducing, searching for the character strings, displaying link and capturing screen while displaying PDF data.

- To download PDF data ☛P200
- The 3 PDF data of ***HOW TO USE 1***, ***HOW TO USE 2*** and ***HOW TO USE 3*** are preset in the ***Preinstalled*** folder by default.

1 Press 5 JKL on the stand-by display.

2 Select a folder.

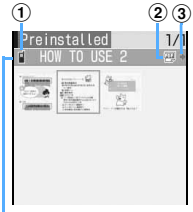


The following PDF data are stored in each folder:

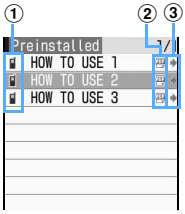
- ***i mode*** : PDF data downloaded from sites
- ***Preinstalled*** : PDF data preset by default
- ***Data transfer*** : PDF data moved/copied from the miniSD memory card
- Folder : PDF data moved from another folder
  - Not displayed by default. To cretae ☛P358
  - You can enter any name of folder in creating.

- Press Mail when switching to the folder list of the miniSD memory card. Operating procedure of the miniSD memory card ☛P354

3 Place the cursor at the PDF data to display.



Display name of data at the cursor and icon
Thumbnail display



Title display

PDF data list

① Origination

: Preinstalled : i-mode : Data transfer

② Type of file

: PDF data downloaded all the data

: PDF data downloaded partially

- The part of data not obtained can be downloaded.

: PDF data that failed to be downloaded in case the communication is disconnected in the process, etc.

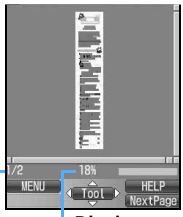
③ File restriction

(in blue) : Output from FOMA terminal available

(in gray) : Output from FOMA terminal unavailable

- Each time you press Mail, thumbnail display and title display are switched.
- In case images in PDF data cannot be shown in thumbnail display, the following icons appear in thumbnail display:
  : PDF data which is set with UIM operation restriction, has no thumbnail images or never displayed.
  : PDF data downloaded partially
  : PDF data that is unsuccessful in being downloaded.
- Display name can be changed. ☛P361

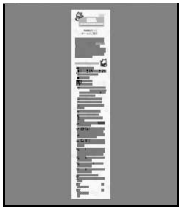
4 Press [●] and display PDF data.



Display magnification

Page No./Total number of pages

Normal display



Full-screen display

PDF display screen

- Each time you press [*], normal display and full-screen display are switched.
- The following operations are available while displaying the PDF data:

[▲▼◀▶] : Scroll*	[4] : First page
[Clr] : To the previous page	[5] : Search ☛P377
[✉] : To the next page	[6] : Last page
[📖] : HELP ☛P378	[7] : Right 90 degrees
[1] : Zoom Out	[8] : Display link ☛P378
[2] : Fit page ☛P377	[9] : Capture Screen ☛P380
[3] : Zoom in	[0] : Document Info ☛P378

* Hold down for over a second for high-speed scroll.

- It may take time to display depending on PDF data.
- In case a password is set for PDF data, enter the password and press [📖].
- When selecting PDF data (file type of [ ]) which failed to be downloaded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to download the rest of the data. If you select ***Yes***, downloading starts.
- To download the rest of PDF data (file type of [ ]) downloaded partially, press [Menu] [8] while displaying the PDF data. In case there are the page not downloaded, a confirmation screen appears when trying to display the page. Select ***Yes*** to download (After selecting ***Yes*** once, the subsequent pages are downloaded without a confirmation screen).
- The rest of the data may not be downloaded depending on the PDF data.
- In case complicated images are contained in PDF data, the display may be different from that of the original PDF data.

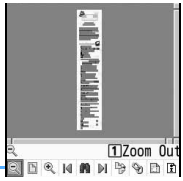
Terminating the display

① **Press [Clr] and select Yes.**

- In case of having changed the PDF data, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to save or not. Select ***Yes*** to ***save***.

Operations while displaying PDF data

Using the tool bar



Tool bar

① **Press [●].**
Tool bar is displayed.

② **Place the cursor at the icon by pressing [▲▼◀▶] and press [●].**

: Zoom Out	: Fit page	: Zoom in
: First page	: Search ☛P377	: Last page
: Right 90 degrees		: Display link ☛P378
: Capture Screen ☛P380		: Document Info ☛P378

- Keypads of [1] to [9] and [0] are assigned for icons from the left. Icons can be selected also by pressing each keypad.
- To stop the operation, press [Clr], so the cursor indicating an icon disappears. Press [Clr] again to vanish the tool bar.
- The tool bar remains after selecting an icon.
  - Operations for scrolling or selecting the submenu are available with displaying the tool bar.
  - Press [1] to [9] and [0] to execute the function of each icon. Operation is available by pressing [●] and placing the cursor at an icon by pressing [▲▼◀▶] and pressing [●].
  - Press [Clr] to vanish the tool bar.

Changing the settings of the display screen

Only the current display is changed. When displaying the PDF data next time, it returns to the default setting ***(Fit display size: No, Display properties: Yes, Scroll bar: Yes)***.

① **Press** Menu 5 JKL 2 ABC.

② **Select each item to set and press** ▣.

Fit display size : Sets to ***Yes*** to display full-screen.
Display properties : Sets whether to display the page No. / total and the display magnification.
Scroll bar : Sets whether to display the scroll bar.

- Scrolling operation is available even when setting to ***No.***

Switching the display modes

You can select among ***Fit page***, ***Actual size*** and ***Fit width***.

① **Press** Menu 6 MNO 1 .@.

- Press Menu 5 JKL 3 DEF to set the display mode when the PDF compatible viewer is activated.
- ***Fit page*** is available by pressing 2 ABC as well. Operation is also available using the tool bar.

② **Press** 1 .@ **to** 3 DEF.

Magnifying/reducing the display

① **Press** Menu 6 MNO 4 GHI**, enter the magnification (2 to 1000 %).**

- The display can also be magnified or reduced by pressing 1 .@ or 3 DEF. Operation is also available by the tool bar.

Switching the layout of the page

You can select from ***Single page*** (each page is displayed) and ***Continuous-facing*** (2 page-spread is displayed).

- For PDF data containing only one page or downloaded partially, the setting is unavailable.

① **Press** Menu 7 PQRS **and press** 1 .@ **or** 2 ABC.

Switching pages

Page to display	Operation
Previous page	Press Abc or Menu 1 .@ 5 JKL.
Next page	Press ✉ or Menu 1 .@ 6 MNO.
Specified page	Press Menu 1 .@ 3 DEF and input the page No.

Page to display	Operation
First page*	Press 4 GHI or Menu 1 .@ 1 .@.
Last page*	Press 6 MNO or Menu 1 .@ 2 ABC.

* This operation is also available using the tool bar.

Switching the page using the header

Select the header registered already in PDF data to switch the page. It is not available in the PDF data containing no header. The header cannot be added or changed.

① **Press** Menu 1 .@ 4 GHI.

② **Select the header**

Rotating the display

The rotation of 90 degrees to right/left and 180 degrees can be available.

① **Press** Menu 6 MNO 2 ABC **and press** 1 .@ **to** 3 DEF.

- Rotation of 90 degrees to right can be executed also by pressing 7 PQRS. Operation is also available by the tool bar.
- To display the previous page by scrolling, press ▲ and press ▼ to display the next page regardless of the direction of the page.

Searching for the character strings

- When all of the PDF data is not downloaded, searching is executed only in the displayed page.

① **Press** Menu 5 JKL 1 .@.

② **Select the entry field for character string and enter the string (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters).**

- When searching a word matching partially together, select ***No*** in ***Whole words only Search***. For example, in case of entering “cat”, when selecting ***No***, “cats” is also searched, but when selecting ***Yes,*** “cats” cannot be searched.
- When not distinguishing upper/lower case, select ***No*** in ***Case-sensitive***.

③ **Press [Dictionary].**
Searching is executed and the word matching to entered character strings is highlighted.
- Press [Mail] to highlight the next word matching and press [Mail] to highlight the previous word.
- Press [Menu] to end searching.
- Press [Dictionary] to display ***Help***.

■ **Using the link**
To move the page using link items in PDF data, switch the link display to on. By setting to on for link display, using the link of the phone number, mail address or URL in the data allows you to make a voice call/video-phone call, compose i-mode mail or connect to sites.

① **Display the link item to use and press [Menu] [6 MNO] [3 DEF].**
- ***Display link*** can be set to on also by pressing [8 TUV]. Operation is also available by the tool bar.

② **Select the link item.**
- While the link display is on, the operation of scrolling or moving the page is not available.
- The operation in case of selecting the phone number, mail address or URL is the same as for Phone to (AV Phone to), Mail to or Web to from sites.
- Press [Menu] to quit the link display.

■ **Displaying the document information**
The title, name of the author and file size can be displayed.

① **Press [Menu] [9 WXYZ].**

■ **Displaying *HELP***
Check the key operation available on the screen while displaying the PDF data or search result.

① **Press [Dictionary] on each screen.**

INFORMATION

● PDF data saved in the miniSD memory card using PC, etc. can also be displayed on FOMA terminal.
- Storage or file name of PDF data in the miniSD memory card ☛P348
- To display PDF data in the miniSD memory card ☛P354

Utilizing bookmarks or marks

Register bookmarks or marks in pages you frequently use or need to have another look later. You can switch the page only by selecting bookmarks or marks. The position and current state of display (magnification, the direction of rotation) are registered in bookmarks. Also the description of the page and notes can be registered in bookmarks as the bookmark information.
In marks, only the position can be registered.
- Bookmarks or marks are preset in some PDF data.
- Up to 10 bookmarks and marks can be registered respectively including those preset.

Utilizing bookmarks

Registering bookmarks

1 Display the page to register the bookmark on the PDF data display screen and press [Menu] [4 GHI] [2 ABC].

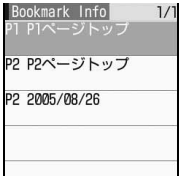
2 Enter the information of the bookmark (up to 128 one-byte or 64 two-byte characters) and press [Dictionary].

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Displaying bookmarks

1 Press Menu 4 GH 1 あ/@ on the PDF data display screen.

2 Select a bookmark.



The registered bookmark position in the corresponding page is displayed with the same state (magnification, the direction of rotation) as registered.

■ **Editing**

① **Place the cursor at the bookmark to edit and press Menu 1 あ/@.**

② **Enter the information of the bookmark and press ▤.**

■ **Deleting one item**

① **Place the cursor at the bookmark to delete and press Menu 2 か ABC 1 あ/@.**

② **Select *Yes*.**

■ **Deleting selected items**

① **Press Menu 2 か ABC 2 か ABC and select bookmarks.**

- Press ● to select or cancel an item and press Menu to select or cancel all.

② **Press ▤ and select *Yes*.**

■ **Deleting all**

① **Press Menu 2 か ABC 3 さ DEF.**

② **Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.**

INFORMATION

- Multiple bookmarks can be deleted also by pressing Menu and selecting ***Bookmark/Mark*** → ***Delete bookmark*** on the PDF data display screen.
- If PDF data is moved to PC and so on via the miniSD memory card, etc., bookmarks may be deleted.

Utilizing marks

Registering marks

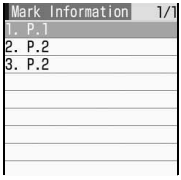
1 Display the page to register the mark on the PDF data display screen and press Menu 4 GHI 5 JKL.

A registered mark is displayed in the center of the current displayed range.

Displaying marks

1 Press Menu 4 GH 4 GH on the PDF data display screen.

2 Select a mark.



The registered mark position is displayed in the corresponding page.

■ **Deleting one item**

① **Place the cursor at the mark to delete and press Menu 1 あ/@.**

② **Select *Yes*.**

■ **Deleting selected items**

① **Press Menu 2 か ABC and select marks.**

- Press ● to select or cancel an item and press Menu to select or cancel all.

② **Press ▤ and select *Yes*.**

■ **Deleting all**

① **Press Menu 3 さ DEF.**

② **Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.**

INFORMATION

- Multiple marks can be deleted also by pressing Menu and selecting ***Bookmark/Mark*** → ***Delete mark*** on the PDF data display screen.
- If PDF data is moved to PC and so on via the miniSD memory card, etc., marks may be deleted.

Saving the image of the page

Capture Screen

The content on the current screen is saved as an image of JPEG format.

- Capture Screen may not be available depending on the PDF data.
- Saved images cannot be output from FOMA terminal by attaching to mail, infrared communication or the data link software and also cannot be copied/moved to the miniSD memory card.
- The size of an image captured depends on the size of the screen on which PDF data is displayed.

1 Display the contents to save on the PDF data display screen and press Menu 3さ DEF.

The contents displayed on the screen are saved in the ***Camera*** folder of ***Image***.

Setting the operating conditions of PDF compatible viewer

Setting

Select the format of display for the PDF data list. The 12 Thumbnails appear when setting to ***Display 12 icons*** and the title display appears when setting to ***List view***.

Default Display 12 icons

1 Press ▲ 5な JKL on the stand-by display.

2 Press Menu 4た GHI and press 1あ ./@ or 2か ABC.

INFORMATION

- In the PDF data list, press Menu and select ***Setting***.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Other Convenient Functions

Multiaccess ..... Multiaccess 382
Multitask ..... Multitask 384
Having edit screens displayed when FOMA terminal is opened ..... Edit by Slide 386
Setting to turn power on/off automatically at specified time ..... Auto Power ON/OFF 387
Ringing alarms at set time..... Alarm Clock 388
Setting to turn power ON automatically at the time specified for the alarm ..... Alarm Auto Power ON 390
Managing schedules ..... Scheduler 390
Registering often-used functions ..... Custom Menu 400
Recording your own name and mail address ..... Own Number 404
Recording other party's or your voice ..... Talking/Stand-by Voice Memo 405
Checking the call duration and the call cost ..... Call Duration/Call Cost 407
Reset the call cost automatically..... Reset Call Cost 408
Setting to notify the limit of call cost.....Call Cost Limit 408
Using Calculator ..... Calculator 409
Composing notes ..... Notepad 410
Using the earphone/microphone set with switch ..... Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch 412
Determining a service provider ..... NW Search Method 415
Checking current settings of functions ..... Confirm Settings 415
Resetting functions ..... Reset 416
Deleting registered data collectively ..... Delete All Data 416

Multiaccess

Multiaccess is a function that three functions (the voice call, packet communication, SMS) can be used at the same time.

- The icon for the function in progress is indicated on the task bar.
- While executing the function, press ▭ to display ***New Task*** menu or ***Switch Task*** menu, and a new function is activated and the screen is switched.
- The following functions can be used simultaneously:
  - Voice call: 1 line
  - i-mode, i-αppli, i-mode Mail or packet communication with PC connected: 1 line
  - SMS: 1 line

INFORMATION

- Multiaccess combinations ☛P488
- During Multiaccess you are charged separately for each communication.
- If many functions are executed at once, for example, a message arrives while video or animation is playing or Camera is operated, the movements displayed on the screen may not appear smooth or the sound may be disrupted during play.

Operations available during Multiaccess

Receiving i-mode Mail, SMS or a voice call during communication

Example Receiving i-mode Mail during a voice call

1 An i-mode Mail is received during a voice call.

During receiving mail, and are flashing at the top of the display and when receiving is finished, flashes and is displayed.

- stops flashing automatically.

Example Receiving a voice call during i-mode/packet communication

Receive an incoming voice call while viewing sites.

- Similarly, you can receive a voice call during packet communication with a PC connected.

1 A voice call is received during i-mode/packet communication.

- The screen displayed when a voice call is received depends on Priority Comm Mode.

2 Press .

- The talking and the site screens can be switched during operation. ☛P385
- To end site display, press in the site screen and select ***Yes***.
- To end the call, press on the talking screen.

Performing other communication during communication

Another communication can be performed at the same time without interruption.

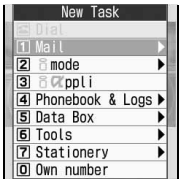
Example Connecting i-mode during a voice call

1 Press during a voice call.

New Task menu appears.

- If you switch the call to use the speakerphone function on the talking screen, the site screen can be viewed while talking.

2 Press 2 1 .



New Task menu

- The voice call remains connected, so you can continue talking without interruption.
- The talking and the site screens can be switched during operation. ☛P385
- To end site display, press in the site screen and select ***Yes***.
- To end the call, press on the talking screen.

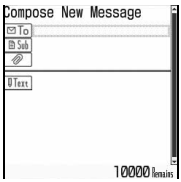
Example Sending i-mode Mail during a voice call

1 Press during a voice call.

New Task menu appears.

- If you switch the call to use the speakerphone function on the talking screen, you can compose mail while talking.

2 Press 1 2 .



When the i-mode Mail has been sent, the talking screen reappears.

- The voice call remains connected, so you can continue talking without interruption.
- You can switch between talking and the mail composition screen during operation. ☛P385
- To end message composition, press on the mail composition screen.
- To end the call, press on the talking screen.

Example Performing packet communication during a voice call

1 Send data from a PC while talking.

This action starts packet communication.

- The screen displayed during packet communication depends on Priority Comm Mode.
- The voice call remains connected, so you can continue talking without interruption.
- To end the call, press on the talking screen.

Example Making a voice call during i-mode/packet communication

Voice call is made while a site is displayed.

- Similarly, you can make a voice call during packet communication with a PC connected.

1 Press [Mail] during i-mode/packet communication.

New Task menu appears.

2 Press [Talk].

- Select ***Phonebook & Logs*** from ***New Task*** menu to call from the phonebook, received call history or redial data.

3 Enter the phone number and press [Talk].

- To end site display, press [Clear] in the site screen and select ***Yes***.
- To end the call, press [Clear] on the talking screen.

Multitask

Multitask

Multitask allows you to execute several functions at the same time and perform operations by switching the screen.

- The icon for the function in progress is indicated on the task bar.
- While executing the function, ***New Task*** menu or ***Switch Task*** menu can be displayed to start a new function or switch the screen by pressing [Mail].
- The number of functions that can be performed simultaneously is up to 2. However, the function of keypad dialing or Own Number display can be activated even when other 2 functions are being performed.

Executing a new function

- Some functions may be restricted or unable to start simultaneously with one another.
  Multitask combinations ☛P490

Example Displaying/registering a schedule during talking

1 Press [Mail] during a call.

New Task menu appears.

- If you switch the call to use the speakerphone function on the talking screen, the schedule screen can be viewed while talking.

2 Press [7 PQRS] [1 あ/@].

- The call remains connected, so you can continue talking without interruption.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

3 View/Register a schedule.

- To quit the schedule, press on the schedule screen.
- To end the call, press on the talking screen.

INFORMATION

- The function available using Multitask may be restricted depending on the status of activating or lock setting. During infrared communication or updating software/pattern data (Virus Scan Function), operation by Multitask is invalid.
- If many functions are executed at once, for example, message arrives while video or animation is playing or Camera is operated, the movement displayed on the screen may not appear smooth or the sound may be disrupted during play.

Switching functions to operate

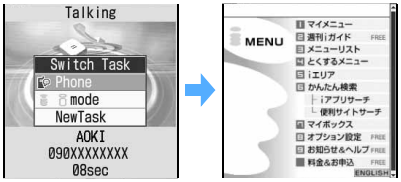
Press when multiple functions are used to display ***Switch Task*** menu. Select from ***Switch Task*** menu to go to the desired screen and perform the required operation.

Example Switching from the talking screen to the site screens

1 Press during a voice call.

Switch Task menu appears.

2 Select *mode*.



Switch Task menu

- To bring back the talking screen, press again and select ***Phone*** from ***Switch Task*** menu.
- You can start a new function by pressing in ***Switch Task*** menu to display ***New Task*** menu. Press again to return to ***Switch Task*** menu.

Item names displayed on the screen switching menu

Phone	*Video-phone*	*64K data comm.*	*AV comm.**1
Dial input	*Mail*	*Compose message*	*Chat mail*
Message R/F	*Check new message**2	*mode*	*appli*
*PPP data comm.**3	*Image*	*motion*	*Melody*
Chara-den	*My Document*	*PDF Viewer**4	*Camera*
Movie Camera	*Sound recorder*	*Bar code reader*	*miniSD card*
Phonebook	*Received calls*	*Redial*	*Notepad*
Scheduler	*Calculator*	*Software update*	*Update definition*
Receive SMS	*Receive message**5	*Notify (Alarm clock)**6	*Notify (Scheduler)**7
Own number	*Recorded messages*	*Voice memos*	

*1 Video-phone using the external device
*2 Checking new message and SMS
*3 Packet communication performed when connected to a PC
*4 PDF displaying screen
*5 Reception screen for i-mode Mail and Message R/F
*6 The alarm screen displayed at the time set in Alarm Clock
*7 The alarm screen displayed at the scheduled date/time

INFORMATION

- The item names displayed in ***Switch Task*** menu may differ from the menu item names.
- Screens cannot be switched for “cannot be selected” in Multitask combinations. ☛P490

Exiting all running operations

All functions are ended in Multitask at a time.

1 Press [▭][m] during Multitask and select *Yes*.

Having edit screens displayed when FOMA terminal is opened

Edit by Slide

You can set the received mail reply screen, schedule edit screen and other screens to be automatically displayed when you open FOMA terminal.

Default all ON

1 Press [Menu][8 TUV][9 WXYZ][7 PQRS] on the stand-by display.

2 Select the item to set and press [1 あ][2 か] or [2 か].

Inbox : Sets whether or not to display the mail composition screen for reply by opening FOMA terminal when the received mail list screen/view screen is displayed.

Outbox : Sets whether or not to display the mail composition screen for editing by opening FOMA terminal when the sent mail list screen/view screen is displayed.

Unsent message : Sets whether or not to display the mail composition screen for editing by opening FOMA terminal when the unsent mail list screen is displayed.

Chat mail : Sets whether or not to display the screen where you can enter the message by opening FOMA terminal when the chat mail screen is displayed.

Schedule : Sets whether or not to display the schedule registration screen by opening FOMA terminal when the calendar screen/day view screen is displayed.

Notepad : Sets whether or not to display the notepad edit screen by opening FOMA terminal when the notepad list screen/details screen is displayed.

3 Press [m].

INFORMATION

- If ***Schedule*** is set to ***ON***, the edit screen is displayed by opening FOMA terminal when the schedule details screen is displayed.

Setting to turn power on/off automatically at specified time

Auto Power ON/OFF

- The date and time setting is required.
- Auto Power ON cannot be set to operate at the same time as Auto Power OFF.

Default Auto power ON: OFF Auto power OFF: OFF

Example Setting Auto Power ON

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 5 JKL 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

■ **Setting Auto Power OFF**

① **Press Menu 8 TUV 5 JKL 3 DEF on the stand-by display.**

2 Select each item to set.

Auto power ON

：Sets/cancels Auto Power ON.

- When set to ***OFF***, ***Time*** or ***Repeat*** cannot be selected.

Time ：Sets the time to automatically turn the power on.

- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with 0.

Repeat ：Sets Auto Power ON to repeat.

- When set to ***OFF***, FOMA terminal is turned on only once at the set time and Auto Power ON is canceled.

3 Press ▶.

INFORMATION

- When ***ON*** is set for Alarm Auto Power ON, if Alarm Clock, the set time for schedule and Auto Power ON is the same, an operation set in the schedule or Alarm Clock takes place after the power turns on automatically.
- When ***ON*** is set for PIN1 Code ON/OFF, enter the PIN1 code after the power is turned on at the set time by Auto Power ON.
- When Reset Call Cost is set to ***ON***, enter the PIN2 code after the power is turned on at the set time by Auto Power ON.
- If the set time for the schedule, Alarm Clock and Auto Power OFF is the same, Auto Power OFF is made after operating the schedule or Alarm Clock. If a snooze operation is performed after the alarm sounds, Auto Power OFF takes place after releasing the snooze operation.
- Even if Auto power OFF is set to ***ON***, when the specified time arrives while FOMA terminal is in any mode except stand-by, the power is not turned OFF. The power is turned off after the stand-by display reappears by exiting each function. However, if the specified time arrives while the terminal security code entry screen is displayed following the stand-by display or the PIN code entry screen is displayed when FOMA terminal is turned on, the power is turned off.
- Cancel Auto Power ON not only turn FOMA terminal off in areas where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities and airplanes.

Ringing alarms at set time

Alarm Clock

This function announces the set time with an alarm sound or vibration.

- The date and time setting is required.
- When Alarm Clock is on, defaults of settings are as follows; ***Time***: ***00:00***, ***Repeat***: ***None***, ***Alarm sound***: *アラーム・アナログ時計* (Alarm/Analogue clock), ***Volume***: ***Level4***, ***Vibrate alert***: ***OFF***, ***Lighting pattern***: ***Terminal settings***, ***Lighting color***: ***Terminal settings***.

Default not set

Setting the alarm time and the sound

1 Press Menu 7 PQRS 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 あ to 9 わ WXYZ.

- Up to 9 alarms can be registered. The input title is displayed for the registered alarm.

Canceling

① Place the cursor at the alarm title to cancel in the alarm list and press Menu.

- To set the canceled alarm again, press Menu.

Editing

① Select the alarm title to edit in the alarm list.

② Edit the alarm setting.

3 Select each item to set.

Time : Enter the time to set an alarm.

- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with 0.

Repeat : Press 1 あ to 3 さ DEF to select for repeating an alarm.

- If ***None*** is set, the alarm is activated only once.
- If ***Every day*** is set, the alarm is activated everyday.
- If ***Day of week*** is set. Select ***Day/Week*** field to select the days of the week and press ●.

Title : Enter a title (up to 14 one-byte or 7 two-byte characters).

- *アラーム1* (Alarm 1) to *アラーム9* (Alarm 9) is set by default.
- If the title field is blank, the alarm cannot be set.

4 Press ▶ to switch to *Set sound* screen select each items to set.

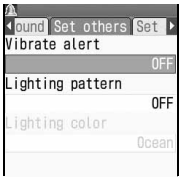
Alarm sound

: Select ***motion*** or ***Melody*** and select a video/i-motion file or a melody as an alarm.

Volume : Select the alarm volume.

- Adjusting the volume ☛P62

5 Press ▶ to switch to *Set others* screen select each items to set.



Vibrate alert : Sets the vibration used at the alarm time.

Lighting pattern : Sets the lighting pattern of the call indicator for the alarm time.

- When ***Sync melody*** or ***OFF*** is set, ***Lighting color*** cannot be set.

Lighting color : Sets the color of the call indicator shown at the alarm time.

6 Press ●.

- ⏰ or 📅 (when a schedule alarm is also set) is indicated in the stand-by display.

When the set time arrives

The alarm screen appears and the alarm sounds. The screen as shown below or the set video/i-motion appears on the display and the alarm sounds at the volume set. If lighting or vibrator is set, it operates according to its setting.

- Pressing PWR while the alarm is sounding stops the alarm sound and the display before sounding reappears.
- If the terminal is left unoperated for about 1 minute or a key other than PWR is pressed, the alarm sound stops. After that the terminal rings for 1 minute followed by a 4- minute silent period repeatedly for 30 minutes (snooze operation). In case of setting video/i-motion, the first image is displayed.

- If some operation such as call is going on at the set time, the terminal operates as follows:
  - During a call, the warning sound but the alarm occurs and the alarm screen appears. In addition, the vibrator does not operate even if FOMA terminal has been set to notify a call by vibration. During On-hold, the above operation is available after canceling On-hold.
  - When power is off, neither the power is turned on nor the alarm sounds. If you want to let the alarm sound, set Alarm Auto Power ON to ***ON***.
  - When the set time arrives during data transmission/reception (except packet communications), during an incoming or outgoing call or while clearing a call, the alarm operates after those operation ends.

INFORMATION

- While Silent Mode is active, the alarm does not sound and the vibrator set for Alarm Clock is activated and the call indicator lights/flashes. However, the alarm setting applies when ***ON*** is set for Vibrator and Alarm/ Schedule sound of Customize Silent Mode.
- When multiple alarms are set for the same time, the alarm set for the smallest item number in the alarm list is activated.
- When alarm and schedule alarm are set for the same time, the screen that notifies alarm appears at first, but followed by the snooze operation and then schedule alarm is notified. Even if the schedule alarm screen is finished, the snooze operation of alarm is continued.
- When the Chara-den is displayed at the set time, the alarm may sound a few seconds late.
- When All Lock or PIM Lock is activated, Alarm does not sound.

Setting to turn power ON automatically at the time specified for the alarm Alarm Auto Power ON

Set to automatically turn the power on and an alarm or an alarm sound if the power is off when the date and time specified by the schedule or Alarm Clock arrives.

Default OFF

1 Press Menu 8 TUV や 5 JKL な 5 JKL な on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 あ.

- To set not to turn the power on automatically, press 2 か ABC.

INFORMATION

- If PIN1 Code ON/OFF is set to ***ON***, enter the PIN1 code after the power is turned on and the alarm operates at the time specified by Alarm Clock or the schedule.
  In this case, the alarm sounds according to the default setting (*アラーム・アナログ時計* for Alarm Clock, *アラーム・女性ボイス* for Schedule) even if downloaded melody or i-motion is set for the alarm.
- When Reset Call Cost is set to ***ON***, enter the PIN2 code after the power is turned on and the alarm operates at the time specified by Alarm Clock or the schedule.
- Cancel Alarm Auto Power ON not only turn FOMA terminal off in areas where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities and airplanes.

Menu 71

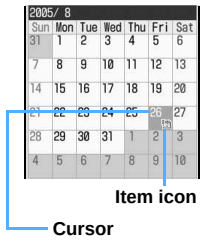
Managing schedules Scheduler

If various schedules are saved, you will be notified of it with the display and/or alarm sound at the set time.

Displaying the calendar

The calendar screen allows displaying schedules.

1 Hold down 📖 for over a second on the stand-by display.



Current day is displayed in pink, Saturday in blue, and day-off and national holiday in red.

- For a day with multiple schedules set, the item icon for the plan schedule planned for the earliest hour is indicated.
  A date with the repeat schedule setting is marked with ◥ to the upper right. A date with the long-term schedule setting is marked with ◺ to the upper right.
- Press ⊕ to move the date. The day view screen is displayed by pressing ●.
- Press 1 to display the previous month and 3 to display the next month.
- The calendar is displayed according to the last setting you set.

■ **Specifying a particular day to display**

① **Press Menu 4 GHI 2 ABC on the calendar screen.**

② **Enter the year, month and day.**

The cursor is moved to the specified date.

- Press Menu 4 GHI 1 /@ to restore the current date display.
- In ***Day View*** screen, press Menu 5 JKL 2 ABC. Press Menu 5 JKL 1 /@ to restore the current date display.

INFORMATION

- The calendar can display dates between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2060.
- The displayed color depends on the setting of Color Scheme.
- Days off on the calendar is based on the Law Concerning National Holidays and a law that revises part of the Old Age People's Welfare Law (law no. 59, June 22 in 2001) (as of May, 2005). However, the Vernal Equinox and Autumnal Equinox may be different because the correct date is announced by an official gazette on February 1 of the previous year. The above law was in force on January in 2003. So, keep in mind that Marine day and Respect for the Aged day are not displayed on the date as before they are revised.
- Days off or national holidays can be set. ☛P391, P392

Setting display style for the calendar

Calendar View Mode

Default Scroll mode: Monthly mode Display mode: Normal mode

1 Hold down 📖 for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Press Menu 6 MNO 1 /@.

3 Select each item to set.

Scroll mode : Sets the calendar display mode.
- Set ***Monthly mode*** to switch the display every month.
- Set ***Slide mode*** to scroll the display by week.

Display mode : Sets the beginning of the week (leftmost position).
- Set ***Normal mode*** to be Sunday.
- Set ***Business mode*** to be Monday.

4 Press 📖.

Setting days off

Day Off Setting

You can set days off from the office or school. They can be set by specifying a date or days of the week.
- When setting days off by specifying dates, up to 30 items can be registered.

Example Setting days off by specifying dates

1 Hold down 📖 for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the date to set as a day off and press Menu 6 2 1.

- The color of the date specified as a day off changes.
- To set a day off to be repeated yearly, press Menu 6 2 2.

■ **Canceling**

① **Place the cursor at the day off to cancel and press Menu 6 2 3.**

- Press Menu 6 2 4 to cancel all days off.

■ **Setting days off by specifying the day of week**

① **Press Menu 6 3.**

② **Press 1 to 7 to select a day of week to set as a day off.**

- ***Reset*** is indicated in the guide row when a day of the week other than Sunday is selected or the selection of Sunday is canceled. Press Menu to restore the default setting.

③ **Press 📖.**

- If you register the calendar display without selecting days off, Sunday is automatically set as the day off.

Setting national holidays

Holiday Setting

Holidays can be changed and up to 5 new entries can be registered.

1 Hold down 📖 for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Press Menu 6 4.

■ **Changing the setting**

① **Select the holiday to change and go to Step 4.**

■ **Deleting the setting**

① **Place the cursor at the holiday to delete, press Menu and select *Yes*.**

- You cannot delete holidays set by default.

3 Press 📖.

4 Select each item to set.

Holiday : Enter the holiday name (up to 22 one-byte or 11 two-byte characters).

- You cannot change the holiday name set by default.

Mark on calendar

: Specifies whether to display the set holiday.

- If ***OFF*** is set, the holiday is not displayed and ***Date*** cannot be set.

Date : Enter a date set for holiday.

- To change the date of holiday set by default, select ***Change*** and enter the date.

5 Press 📖.

Saving schedules

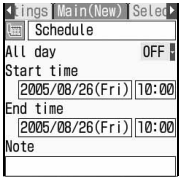
- Up to 300 items can be registered. You can save multiple schedules for the same day.
- The date and time setting is required.

1 Hold down [📖] for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the day to save the schedule and press [📖].

- In the day view screen, press [📖] as well.
- When the schedule is set to ***ON*** in Edit by Slide, open FOMA terminal after selecting the date from the monthly screen or displaying the day view screen to display the registration screen.

3 Select each item to set.



(Item icon)

：Select the icon.

- The selected icon is indicated in the schedule heading.

Schedule **(contents field)**

：The description equivalent for the selected icon is displayed. Change the description as required (up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters).

- The entered description is not changed by changing the icon after changing the description.

All day ：To set the schedule to ***All day*** without specifying the time, press [1 あ].

- Press [2 か ABC] when not setting ***All day***.
- If ***All day*** is set, the time display of the schedule is marked with ***AllDay*** on the day view screen. If ***All day*** is set for the long-term schedule, the date display is followed by ***All Day***.

Start time ：Enter a start date and time for the schedule.

- Enter the last 2 digits of the year. For single-digit months and days, precede the digit with 0.
- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with 0.
- You can set dates up to December 31, 2060.
- You cannot set the data and time if you set ***All day***.

End time ：Enter an end date and time for the schedule.

Note ：Enter schedule details (up to 600 one-byte or 300 two-byte characters).

4 Press [📷] to switch to *Set alarm* screen and select each items to set.

Alarm ：Press [1 あ] to set an alarm.
Select ***motion*** or ***Melody*** from ***Alarm*** field and select a video/i-motion file or a melody for the alarm.

- To disable an alarm, press [2 か ABC].

Alarm in advance ：Press [1 あ] to enable an alarm before the start time of a schedule.

- The selection method is the same as for ***Alarm***.

Alarm before time ：Set how many minutes ago an advance alarm sounds by pressing [1 あ] to [5 な JKL].

5 Press ▶ to switch to *Other settings* screen and select each items to set.

Repeat : Press 1あ to 6MNO to select the repeat setting for a schedule.

- When you set a 31st day or February 29 in a leap year as the schedule starting date and ***Every month*** or ***Every year*** is selected in the repeat setting, the schedule repeating date becomes the last day of the same year/month without the specified date (that is, 30th or February 28).
- If ***None*** is selected, the scedule alarm is activated only once.
- If ***Day of week*** is selected, select ***Day/Week*** field. And select a day of the week when the alarm is sounded, then press 📖.

Image : Press 1あ and select a still image from ***Image*** field to display the image in the schedule alarm screen.

- Flash movies cannot be set for images.

6 Press ▶ to switch to *Select members* screen.

7 Select <*Select member list*> and select members to register.

- Up to 5 members can be registered. Such a list allows you to make calls and send mail.
- Press 📖 to switch between the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook.
- The first phone number, mail address, URL in the phonebook data is registered.

■ Deleting a member

① Place the cursor at the member to delete and press Menu.

8 Press 📖.

- When a schedule set with an alarm or advance alarm is saved, 🔔 or 🔔 (when Alarm Clock is also set) is indicated in the stand-by display.

Registering a schedule by simple key operation from the stand-by display

1 Enter the date and time (8 digits) to register schedule on the stand-by display and press 📖.

Example: For August 26 3 p.m., enter “08261500”

- When entering the time on the day, enter 4 digits with 2 digits for hour and for minute respectively.

2 Save the schedule.

INFORMATION

- When Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** set for ***Schedule***), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- When selecting the member list while activating Privacy Mode (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***), entry of the terminal security code is required.
- It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of the contents of Scheduler. Schedules can be saved using the miniSD memory card ☛P350. Use the data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional) to send the data to the PC.
- When a Chara-den image is displayed at the set time, the alarm may sound a few seconds late.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

● To change the schedule alarm screen, you can select a video/i-motion for ***Alarm*** or ***Alarm in advance*** in the ***Set alarm*** screen or select an image for ***Image*** in ***Other settings*** screen. When you have set voiced video/i-motion as an alarm and later set an image, the alarm sound becomes the standard melody. If you set voiced video/i-motion after the image as an alarm, the image setting becomes ***None***.

When a schedule alarm or alarm in advance is set

When the set time arrives, the schedule alarm screen appears and the alarm sounds. The date/time, schedule description and set image or video/i-motion appears on the schedule alarm screen. The alarm sounds at the ring alert volume set in Ring Volume setting. When Alert Lighting Setting is set, it operates according to the setting.

- An alarm in advance, when set, sounds before the schedule start time.
- Pressing Clear while the alarm is sounding stops the alarm sound and the previous display reappears. If the terminal is left unoperated for about 1 minute or a key other than Clear is pressed, the alarm sound stops with the display as is when an image is set for the alarm. In case of setting video/i-motion, the first image is displayed and the alarm sound stops. Press [ ] and the screen as shown on the left disappears. If some operation such as call is going on at the set day and time, the terminal operates as follows:
  - During a call, the warning sound but the set alarm sound occurs and the schedule alarm screen appears. During On-hold, the above operation is available after canceling On-hold.
  - When the power is off, neither the power is turned on nor the alarm sounds. To sound the alarm, set Alarm Auto Power ON to ***ON***.
  - When the set time arrives during data transmission/reception (except packet communications), during an incoming or outgoing call or while clearing a call, the alarm operates after those operation ends. However, if the schedule data is received by data communication, it does not operate.

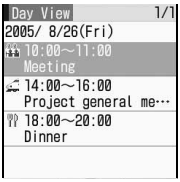
INFORMATION

● While Silent Mode is active, the alarm does not sound and the vibrator operates in ***Pattern A***. When Customize Silent Mode is set, the settings for ***Vibrator***, ***Alarm/Schedule sound*** and ***Ring alert volume*** are applied.
● When Privacy Mode is active (***Authorized access*** set for ***Schedule***), a schedule alarm or an alarm in advance is not activated.
● If a Create animation or continuous shots are set, the first image is displayed.
● When multiple schedules are set at the same date/time, after stopping the alarm sound, press [ ] to confirm the data of other schedules set at the same time.
● When a schedule alarm and an alarm are set for the same time, the screen that notifies the alarm appears at first, followed by the snooze operation and then the schedule alarm is notified. Even if the schedule alarm screen is finished, the snooze operation of the alarm is continued.
● When All Lock or PIM Lock is activated, the schedule alarm does not sound.
● If a Chara-den image is displayed at the set time, the alarm may sound a few seconds late.

Checking recorded schedule data

You can add, change and delete the schedules from the displayed screen.

1 Hold down [📖] for over a second on the stand-by display and select the recorded schedule day to check.



Day View screen

- Press [▶] to switch dates in the day view screen.

■ Displaying schedules for the specific item only

① Press [📖] for over a second on the stand-by display.

② Press [Menu] [3 さ DEF] [2 か ABC].

- Press [Menu] [3 さ DEF] [1 あ @] to show all items.
- When operating in the day view screen, press [Menu] [4 た GHI] [2 か ABC]. Press [Menu] [4 た GHI] [1 あ @] to restore the all items display.

③ Select an item icon.

2 Select a schedule to check.

Details screen

■ Changing the schedule data

① Press [📖] on the schedule details screen.

- When the schedule is set to ***ON*** in Edit by Slide, open FOMA terminal in each registration screen for schedule to display ***Main (Edit)*** screen.
- When operating in the day view screen, press [Menu] [2 か ABC].

② Change the schedule data and press [📖].

③ Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

- A schedule for which Secret Attribute is set can only be viewed in Secret Mode.
- If the displayed schedule contains phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions can be used.

Copying/Pasting schedules

You can copy a schedule and paste it elsewhere to use it as a schedule for another day.

- When a long-term schedule is copied and pasted, the entire schedule is pasted in all the corresponding date.
- The copied schedule is memorized until Scheduler is ended and can be pasted on another day any number of times. However, only 1 item can be memorized and copying new schedule overwrites the retained item.

1 Hold down [📖] for over a second on the stand-by display and select the recorded schedule day to copy.

2 Place the cursor at the schedule to copy and press [Menu] [6 は MNO] [1 あ @].

3 Press [クリア] to display the calendar screen.

4 Place the cursor at the day to paste the schedule and press [Menu] [5 な JKL].

- When operating in the day view screen, press [Menu] [6 は MNO] [2 か ABC].

Composing mail from schedules

Schedules can be sent as an i-mode Mail message.

- The number of schedule items that can be sent depends on the screen operated.

○ : Available × : Unavailable

Sending type \ Screen operated	Calendar screen	Day view screen	Details screen
Send selected item	×	○	○
Send selected day/Send all*	○	○	×

* Sends all recorded schedules (including past schedules).

- Schedules are written to a mail message in the Date To format. ☛P411
- If a schedule exceeds the mail message capacity, the excessive part will be deleted.
- When schedules are displayed by item, only the displayed items are sent with mail.
- To send schedules for which Secret Attribute is set, set Secret Mode on.

Example Sending a schedule from the day view screen

1 Hold down [Mail] for over a second on the stand-by display and select the recorded schedule day to send a mail.

- When operating in the calendar screen, press [Menu] and select ***Compose message*** → ***Send selected day*** or ***Send all***.
- When operating in ***Details*** screen for schedule, press [Menu] and select ***Compose message***. Pressing [Mail] composes i-mode Mail as well.

2 Place the cursor at the schedule to send by mail and press [Mail].

- Press [Menu] [7 まPQRS] [2 かABC] to send all of the schedule registered for the selected day by mail.
- Press [Menu] [7 まPQRS] [3 さDEF] to send all of the schedule registered at once.
- Composing/sending i-mode Mail ☛P225

Deleting schedules

You can delete 1 entry or multiple entries.

○ : Available × : Unavailable

Deleting type \ Screen operated	Calendar screen	Day view screen	Details screen
Selected item	×	○	○
One day/Before date/Delete all	○	○	×

- To delete schedules with repeat setting, select ***Delete all*** from the calendar screen, ***Selected item*** or ***Delete all*** from the day view screen or ***Delete entry*** from the details screen.

Example Deleting the schedule from the day view screen

1 Hold down [Mail] for over a second on the stand-by display and select the recorded schedule day to delete.

- When operating in the calendar screen or the details screen, press [Menu] and select ***Delete***. Go to Step 3 for the calendar screen, or go to Step 4 for the details screen for schedule.

2 Press Menu 3 さ DEF.

3 Press 1 あ to 4 た GHI.

- Press 4 た GHI to delete all schedules and enter the terminal security code. However, if deleted without setting to Secret Mode, schedules with Secret Attribute set will not be deleted.
- To delete the long-term schedule including the selected day, press 2 か ABC or 3 さ DEF select ***Delete long term***. Note that, even when ***Before date*** is selected for the long-term schedule including the day before the selected day, the entire schedule including the day after the selected day is deleted.

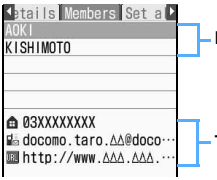
4 Select *Yes*.

Using member lists

Make calls or compose i-mode Mail by selecting a member list recorded in a schedule. Site display is also available from the registered URL in the phonebook data of the member list.

1 Hold down 📖 for over a second on the stand-by display and select the recorded schedule day to use.

2 Select a schedule to use and press ● to display the member list screen.



Recorded members

The first phone number, mail address and URL of the selected member

- For members with Secret Attribute set, the name and detail information are masked with "＊" unless Secret Mode is set. When Privacy Mode is activated (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***), the name and detail information of all members is also masked with "＊".

3 Use the Phonebook data.

■ Making a voice/video-phone call

① Place the cursor to a member and press 📞 for a voice call or press Mail for a video-phone call.

A voice/video-phone call is made to the displayed phone number.

- When selecting to show/hide caller ID or specifying the data rate, press Menu and select ***Customized call***.
- Place the cursor to a member and hold down 📞 or Mail for over a second to make a call using the speakerphone function.

■ Sending i-mode Mail

① Place the cursor to a member and press ✉.

The selected mail address of the member is set for the receiver and the schedule is saved in the message in the Date To format.

- Press Menu 5 な JKL 2 か ABC to send i-mode Mail to all the members. The mail addresses of all members are set for the receivers and the schedule is saved in the message in the Date To format.

② Edit and send i-mode Mail.

- Composing/sending i-mode Mail ☛P225

■ **Displaying a site**

① Place the cursor to a member and press Menu 6 MNO.

INFORMATION

- To use the second or subsequent phone number and mail address registered in the phonebook data, select a member from the member list screen to display the phonebook details screen ***(Phone/Mail)***. You can make a voice/video-phone call or compose i-mode Mail by placing the cursor at the phone number or mail address (☛P103). Note that, if i-mode Mail is composed from the phonebook details screen, the schedule is not set in the message and the Date To function cannot be used.
- Pressing 📖 on the member list screen displays the member selection screen and members can be added or deleted.
- When ***No setting*** is set in Caller ID Setting for phonebook data, voice/video-phone calls are made according to the setting of Caller ID Notification.

Protecting secret schedules

Secret Attribute

Set Secret Attribute to the schedule data so that the data cannot be used without entry of the terminal security code.

・Secret Attribute cannot be set when Secret Mode is not set.

1 Activate Secret Mode.

2 Hold down 📖 for over a second on the stand-by display and select the recorded schedule day to use.

3 Place the cursor at the schedule to set and press Menu 9 WXYZ.

flashes when a secret attribute is set for the selected schedule.

・To cancel, place the cursor at the schedule with Secret Attribute set and press Menu 9 WXYZ.

INFORMATION

- A schedule for which Secret Attribute is set can only be viewed in Secret Mode. A schedule alarm or an alarm in advance is also deactivated.
- Secret Attribute is automatically set for schedules made while Secret Mode is on.

Checking the number of registered schedule items

Check No. of Items

You can check the number of registered schedules and days off set in the schedule.

1 Hold down 📖 for over a second on the stand-by display and press Menu 7 PQRS.

・Press ⏻ to return to the calendar screen.

Registering often-used functions

Custom Menu

You can create your original menu (custom menu) by freely registering functions or phonebook data of specific persons in addition to the menu that is previously registered (normal menu). Store the functions you often use and the phonebook data of the other party you frequently reach in this menu for quick access and making a call easily.

Reading a template

- The 4 types of preset templates are provided.
- When a template is read, all custom menu items are replaced.
- You can also create a custom menu by reading templates and adding or deleting menu items.

Default Standard

1 Press Menu / 📖 on the stand-by display.

- When ***Custom*** is set for ***Default MENU*** of Menu Setting, press Menu on the stand-by display.

2 Press Menu 7 PQRS 1 あ/@ and press 1 あ/@ to 4 た GHI.

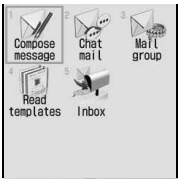
Standard : Alarm Clock, Calculator, Sound Recorder, Receive Display, Information Line Setting, Open Answer, Edit by Slide, Change Security Code, Activate/Deactivate Caller ID Notification

Data/Security
: Image, i-motion, My documents, Privacy Mode Setting, Remote Lock, IC card software list, IC Card Lock

User-data related
: Bookmark, Screen Memo, Phonebook Search, Scheduler, Alarm Clock, Notepad, Save Word, Save Phrase, miniSD card

Message : Compose Message, Chat Mail, Mail Group, Read Template, Inbox

3 Enter the terminal security code.



A template is read and set in the custom menu.

- When the custom menu is already created, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to use the new the custom menu. Selecting ***Yes*** sets the selected template for the custom menu.

Creating your custom menu

Use the template to create your custom menu.

- Up to 9 icons can be registered in a level of Custom Menu.
- 9 icons have been already registered for ***Standard*** and ***User-data related*** of the template. If any of these templates is selected, selected menu items are overwritten.

1 Read a template sample.

- When you newly register all items, reset the custom menu. ☛P403

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

2 Register the item.

Registering person

- If Secret Attribute is set for the phonebook data, it is not displayed unless Secret Mode is set.
- When the phonebook data that contains Flash movie or video/i-motion is registered in the custom menu, a pre-registered character icon is displayed on the menu screen instead of Flash movie or video/i-motion.

① **Press Menu 1 1.**

- To retry to search by another method, press Menu.

② **Select the party to register.**

Registering functions

① **Press Menu 1 2.**

- The screen for selecting functions is displayed in the format of the normal menu set in Menu Setting (the sample screen is in the tile display format).

② **Place the cursor at the entry to set and press .**

- A menu item without submenus can also be registered by selecting the item or by a shortcut operation.

***Edit by slide* is stored**

Registering groups

① **Press Menu 1 3 and enter the group name (up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters).**

② **Press .**

Registering in a group

When the 3rd level is displayed, only functions or persons can be stored.

① **Select a group.**

The items in the group are displayed.

- When an empty group is selected, the item selection screen is displayed. When the second level is displayed, only functions or persons can be stored.

② **Add or replace the item.**

Overwriting the stored item

① **Place the cursor at the item for replacement and press Menu 2.**

② **Press 1 to 3 to select an item to register.**

- When you select ***Group***, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite the all items in the group after pressing 1 to 3. To select ***Yes***, the all items in the group are deleted.

INFORMATION

● You can change the order of stored items or icons. ☛P403

Using the custom menu

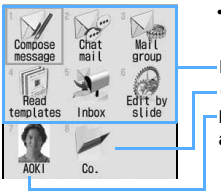
You can execute functions registered in the custom menu, and also make a call to a person registered in it.

- Shortcut operations are also available while the custom menu is displayed. The method of selecting numbers for shortcut operations can be selected between the same method as for the normal menu and the method that uses dial keys corresponding to the positions of custom menu items.

1 Press [Menu]/[📖] on the stand-by display.

- When ***Custom*** is set for ***Default MENU*** of Menu Setting, press [Menu] on the stand-by display.

2 Select items.



- To select a function or person from a group, select the group to display it.

Function
Group
Person (Making a customized call or checking detail information is available.)

■ **Executing functions**

① **Select a function.**

- When a menu item that has submenus is selected, the submenu items are displayed.

■ **Making a call**

① **Place the cursor at a person.**

② **Press [☎] for a voice call and press [Video Call] for video-phone call.**

- When 2 or more phone numbers are stored, select a phone number. When only one phone number has been registered, hold down [☎] or [Video Call] for over a second. The caller's voice can be heard through the speaker.

■ **Sending i-mode Mail**

① **Place the cursor at a person.**

② **Press [✉].**

- When 2 or more mail addresses are stored, place the cursor to a mail address and press [✉] or [●]. When no mail address has been stored, the receiver field is left blank.

■ **Sending SMS**

① **Place the cursor at a person.**

② **Hold down [✉] for over a second.**

- When 2 or more phone numbers are stored, place the cursor at a phone number and press [✉] or [●]. When no phone number has been stored, the receiver field is left blank.

To execute registered functions quickly

Function registered in the custom menu can be started by pressing the corresponding dial key ([1 あ/@] to [9 わ/WXYZ]) for over a second on the stand-by display. However, when the menu item is a person or group or a menu that has submenus, the function is not activated.

INFORMATION

- If Secret Attribute is set for a person in the phonebook, the name of the person is displayed as " ＊＊＊ " unless Secret Mode is set. is indicated.
- Persons cannot be selected when PIM Lock or Privacy Mode is on (***Authorized access*** set for ***Phonebook & Logs***). The icon changes to and the name of the person is displayed as " ＊＊＊ ".
- When Secret Attribute and PIM Lock are set, the phone operations according to the PIM Lock function.

Editing the custom menu

The item arrangement, icon design and group names can be changed as well as deleting items deleted on the custom menu.

1 Press Menu 📖 on the stand-by display.

- When ***Custom*** is set for ***Default MENU*** of Menu Setting, press Menu on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the item to edit and perform each operation.

- When editing items in a group, select a group and display the screen to edit items in the group.

■ Replacing items

① Press Menu 4 GHI.

② Select the destination item and select *Yes*.

■ Changing icons

① Press Menu 5 JKL to select an icon.

- Press 📖 to reset the icon.

■ Changing group names

① Press Menu 6 MNO.

② Enter the group name and press 📖.

■ Deleting items

① Press Menu 3 DEF and select *Yes*.

- When the group is deleted, items in the group are also deleted.

Resetting the custom menu

Delete all the menu items in the custom menu. This operation is performed to create a new custom menu.

1 Press Menu 📖 on the stand-by display.

- When ***Custom*** is set for ***Default MENU*** of Menu Setting, press Menu on the stand-by display.

2 Press Menu 7 PQRS 2 ABC.

3 Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.

- Press ● to display the item selection screen. When an item is selected, you can store persons, functions or groups. ☛P401

Recording your own name and mail address

Own Number

Default UIM settings

1 Press Menu わをん on the stand-by display.

- As Own Number, the subscribing terminal phone number is set.

2 Press 📖.

3 Enter the terminal security code, and set the name and mail address.

- The setting procedure for items is the same way as Step 3 to 4 of "Registering the phonebook to FOMA terminal" ☛P94. Note that groups cannot be set.
- If any item has already been set, it is displayed.
- The subscribing terminal phone number (Own Number) is displayed in the first phone number location. It cannot be changed.

4 Press ▼ to set other information.

- The setting procedure for items is the same way as Step 5 of "Registering the phonebook to FOMA terminal" ☛P95.
- None of these are set by default.
- If any item has already been set, it is displayed.

5 Press 📖.

INFORMATION

- Your Own Number is recorded in the UIM. If you enter other items, they will be registered on FOMA terminal.
- Own number can be stored/changed also when 圏外 (out of service area) is indicated.
- Changing the mail address in Own Number does not change your i-mode Mail address. Similarly, changing your i-mode Mail address does not change the mail address in Own Number.
  For details on how to check and change an i-mode Mail address, refer to "FOMA i-mode User's Manual".

Displaying Own Number details

1 Press Menu わをん on the stand-by display.

2 Press ● and enter the terminal security code.

- The content that has already been set is displayed.
- When the data is long, only a part of it is displayed. Press 📖 to display the name, reading, the first phone number and the first mail address.

Editing Own Number

① Press Menu 2 か and edit Own Number.

Resetting recorded data

① Press Menu 3 さ and select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

● You can use the information stored in Own Number to perform various operations.
- Customized call ☛P52
- Composing i-mode Mail/SMS. displaying sites ☛P100
- Editing entries ☛P104
- Forwarding Own Number (Infrared sending) ☛P365
- Setting various functions ☛P107

Recording other party's or your voice

Talking/Stand-by Voice Memo

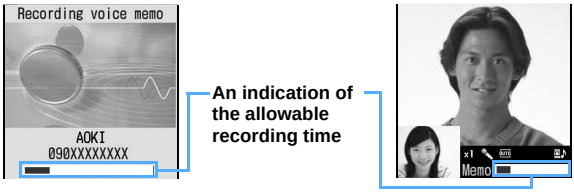
Your voice is recorded in stand-by as talking note (Stand-by Voice Memo) or other party's voice is recorded in voice/video-phone call (Talking Voice Memo).
- Talking/Stand-by Voice Memo can be recorded up to 30 seconds long for each message and up to 4 messages in total.
- The recording for Talking Voice Memo may be disrupted if the signal conditions are poor. Guidance messages such as out-of-service area notice or number change information cannot be recorded.

Recording voice of the other party while talking

Talking Voice Memo records only the voice of the other party. The image of the video-phone call cannot be recorded.

1 Hold down [●] for over a second during a call.

Recording starts.



Voice Memo during voice calls

Voice Memo during video-phone calls

- When the remaining time becomes 5 seconds, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of recording is approaching (the rapid beeps are not recorded). A beep is also heard at the end of the recording (this sound is not heard at the beginning of the recording).
- To cancel recording, hold down [●] for over a second.
- Pressing [▱][4 ghi][4 ghi][2 abc] during a call does not record voice memos.

Menu 463

Recording your own voice during stand-by

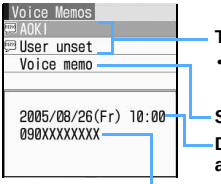
1 Press [●][3 def] on the stand-by display.

After about 3 seconds, a beep is heard and recording starts.
- When the remaining time becomes 5 seconds, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of recording is approaching (the rapid beeps are not recorded). A beep is also heard at the end of the recording.
- To cancel recording, press either [↑], [PWR] or [クリア].

Playing voice memos

1 Press [camera] [4 GHI] on the stand-by display.

The voice memo list shows both Talking and Stand-by Voice Memos.



Talking Voice Memo

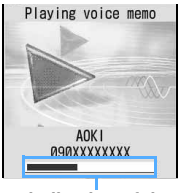
- **The phone number, the name (When the phone number is saved in the phonebook) or the reason for no caller ID.**

Stand-by Voice Memo

Date and time of recording (If the date and time have not been set, no date and time are recorded.)

Phone number of the other party (*Voice memo* is displayed for Stand-by Voice Memo.)

2 Select voice memo to replay.



An indication of the playing time

The voice memo is played.

- Press [clear] to stop playback.
- Press [volume] to adjust the volume.
- You can hear a voice memo from the speaker by pressing [TALK] during playback. By pressing [TALK] again, you can hear it from the earpiece.

3 Select whether to delete the played voice memo.

- Select ***Yes*** to delete the voice memo.

■ Deleting voice memos from the voice memo list

① Place the cursor to a voice memo to delete, press [Menu] [2 ABC] [1] and select *Yes*.

- Press [Menu] [2 ABC] [2 ABC] and select ***Yes*** to delete all.

■ Saving phone number in the phonebook from the voice memo list

① Place the cursor to a voice memo to save and press [Menu] [4 GHI].

- When adding in the registered phonebook data, press [Menu] [5 JKL].

② Press [1] or [2 ABC] to record a name and mail address. ☛P94, P97

- When adding in registered phonebook data, press [1] or [2 ABC] and select the phonebook data of registration destination. ☛P104

INFORMATION

- For Talking Voice memo, placing the cursor at a party in the list followed by pressing [TALK] or [Mail] makes a voice call or video-phone call respectively. From the submenu, Customized Call can be used to make voice or vide-phone calls by specifying to show/hide caller ID or to make video-phone calls by specifying data rate.
- Maintain the contents of voice memos in some other form (e.g. written a notebook). Recorded data may be lost due to failure, repair, change to new model or other handlings of FOMA terminal. If the data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

Checking the call duration and the call cost

The call duration and the call cost of the last and total of voice/video-phone call can be checked.

- The duration includes the voice call, video-phone call and 64K data communication, and the both of incoming and outgoing are counted for each.
- The call cost data is counted only for outgoing. However, when calling the toll-free party or the directory assistance service (104), “0 YEN” or “✻✻✻✻✻ ” is displayed.
- The call cost is stored in the UIM, so stored total cost is displayed (starting from December in 2004) when using the current UIM to FOMA terminal you newly purchased.

  Note: In FOMA terminals released before 901i series, call cost data is stored in the UIM, but cannot be displayed.
- The displayed call duration and call cost can be reset.
- The displayed call duration and call cost are estimates and may be different from the actual. Note that the call cost does not include consumption tax.

Checking the call duration

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 4 GHI 1 on the stand-by display.

Last call	: The duration of the last voice/video-phone call or of the last data communication
Total voice calls	: The total duration of voice calls made
Total video-phone calls	: The total duration of video-phone calls made
Total data sessions	: The total duration of data communication established

- If the total duration of calls was reset in the past, the duration of the total calls made up to the present after the reset is displayed.

■ When the total calls duration is reset

① Press ▭ and enter the terminal security code.

② Select the call duration to reset and select *Yes*.

- To reset the total duration of all, select ***All calls/data reset***.
- Press ▭ to return to the call duration screen.

Checking the call cost

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 4 GHI 4 GHI 1 on the stand-by display.

Last call cost: Voice	: The cost of the last voice call
Last call cost: VP	: The cost of the last video-phone call
Last call cost: Data	: The cost of the last data communication
Total calls cost	: The total cost of voice/video-phone call and data communication including • If the total duration of calls was reset in the past, the cost of the total calls made up to the present after the reset is displayed.
Reset: day & time	: The date and time of the last reset

■ Resetting the total call cost

① Press ▭, enter PIN2 code and select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

- No last charge information appears as “✻✻✻✻✻✻ YEN”.
- When you switch from the voice call to the video-phone during a call, the last call cost shows the total amount of them. During the operation to switch, no call cost is required.
- When the last or total duration of voice/video-phone call or 64K data communication exceeds 9,999 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting is restarted from 0 second.
- When FOMA terminal is turned off, the last call duration is stored, but the last call cost is displayed as “✻✻✻ ✻✻✻ YEN”.
- The duration of receiving a call and ringing time cannot be counted.
- The call duration and call cost is not counted for i-mode/packet communication. For details of usage fees, see “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual” you received when you subscribed to i-mode.

Reset the call cost automatically

Reset Call Cost

Total call cost is set to zero automatically on the 1st day of each month.

Default OFF

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 4 GHI 4 GHI 4 GHI on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and press 1 あ/@.

- To cancel the setting, press 2 か ABC.

3 Enter the PIN2 code.

INFORMATION

- When the setting is ***ON***, the call cost will be reset if you change the date and time to the next month in Date and Time Setting.
- When the setting is ***ON***, if 0 o’clock the first day of the month comes, while the power is off or during a call, a reset will take place when you turn the power on or end the call.
- Even if Reset Call Cost is set to ***ON***, the setting is canceled when the UIM different from the one used during setting it is inserted and then turn the power on. It doesn’t return to the previous setting even if the UIM used when setting it is inserted again.

Setting to notify the limit of call cost

Call Cost Limit

Set the maximum limit of call cost and, when the total call cost exceeds the set amount, it is notified with an alarm or icon.

- The amount shown in Call Cost Limit is only an estimate and should not be regarded as the actual amount for billing.

Default OFF

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 4 GHI 4 GHI 2 か ABC on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code select each item and set.

Alert : Set whether to notify when the total call cost exceeds the set amount.
- If ***OFF*** is set, the items below cannot be set.

Limit : Set the maximum amount of call cost (10 - 100,000 yen. 10 yen unit).

Alert method : Select the alarm with icon, or the icon only.

Alert sound : Select an alarm sound from the melody list. Available when ***Sound + icon display*** is selected in ***Alert method***.

Alert time : Specify how many seconds alarm sound should ring (1 - 60 sec.). Available when ***Sound + icon display*** is selected in ***Alert method***.

3 Press [i].

INFORMATION

- If the call cost exceeds the maximum limit while talking or during communication, ¥ is displayed. When ***Sound + icon display*** is set for ***Alert method***, the alarm sounds and message informing that the call cost exceeds the maximum limit is displayed on the stand-by display after a call/communication.
- The alert sounds at the ring alert volume set in Ring Volume Setting.
- In Silent Mode, a message appears but the alarm does not sound if ***Sound + icon display*** is set for ***Alert method***. In Customize Silent Mode, however, the alarm sounds according to the ring alert volume set for Customize Silent Mode.
- Even if ***Sound + icon display*** is set for ***Alert method***, neither the alarm sounds nor the message appears if:
  - In Driving Mode.
  - The call cost exceeds the limit while talking or during communication at 0 o'clock the first day of the month when Call Cost Limit is set to ***ON***.
- If any key is pressed or other function is started while an alarm is sounding, the alarm sound stops.
- Even if the UIM is replaced after Call Cost Limit is set to ***ON***, the setting is stored.

Removing the icon of Alert

Remove Call Cost Icon

1 Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [4 GHI] [4 GHI] [3 DEF] on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the security code and select *Yes*.

Using Calculator

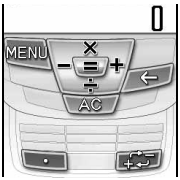
Calculator

You can perform addition, subtraction, multiplication and division (+ , − , × , ÷) on your FOMA terminal.

- Up to 8 digits can be entered.
- You can use the calculator from the entry fields for schedules and notes, and paste the result of a calculation into the entry field of the original screen. ☛P469

1 Press [Menu] [7 PQRS] [4 GHI] on the stand-by display.

2 Make a calculation.



Calculate using the dial keys (0わん to 9らMNO) and ●(＋, －, ×, ÷).

- To delete the last digit entered, press ✉.
- To enter a decimal point, press ＊ネットワ.
- To switch the displayed value between the positive and negative, press #ショ.

3 Press ●.

The calculation result is displayed.

- Press クリア to delete the calculation result.

INFORMATION

- Press Menu 1あ to copy displayed numbers. Press Menu 2かABC to paste the copied number. Copied numbers are stored until FOMA terminal is turned off and you can paste them in the entry fields of notes, mail composition screen, etc. any number of times. Note that only 1 numbers can be stored and copying new numbers overwrite the stored numbers.
- An error is generated and “E” is displayed when the integral part of the calculation result exceeds 8 digits. Press クリア to clear. When the number including a decimal point exceeds 8 digits, any decimals that do not fit in the display are rounded up or rounded down.
- You can copy up to the first 8-digit one-byte numbers from the entry field of notes, mail composition screen, etc. and paste them on the calculator screen. The part that exceeded 8 digits is not copied.
- You cannot enter additional numbers following the pasted numbers in the calculator screen. Also, you cannot paste two-byte numbers or a character other than a number.

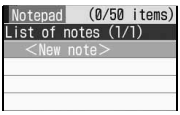
Composing notes

Notepad

- Notes can be recorded up to 50 items.

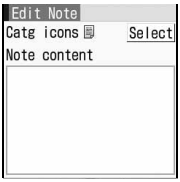
1 Press Menu 7まPQRS 2かABC on the stand-by display.

2 Select <*New note*>.



- When ***Notepad*** is set to ***ON*** in Edit by Slide, open FOMA terminal pointing <***New note***> with a cursor to display the notepad edit screen.

3 Enter the note data in *Note content* field (up to 600 one-byte or 300 two-byte characters).

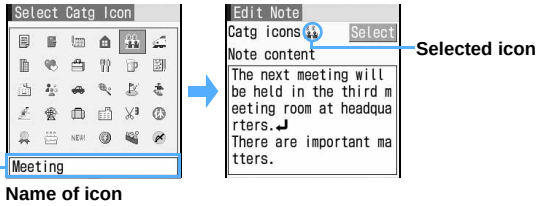


■ Inputting values calculated with Calculator

① Press Menu 8たTUV 2かABC on the character entry screen.

② Make a calculation and press ●.

4 Select *Select* in *Catg icons* field and select an icon.



5 Press [Menu].

- Notes without any content cannot be recorded.

INFORMATION

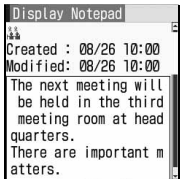
- Maintain the contents of Notepad in some other form (e.g. written). Data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional) can be used to send and save the data to the PC.

Checking notes

1 Press [Menu] [7 まPQRS] [2 かABC] on the stand-by display.

The notepad list screen appears.

2 Select a note to check.



- If the note data contains phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions can be used.
- Press [Menu] to edit notes.
- When ***Notepad*** is set to ***ON*** in Edit by Slide, open FOMA terminal to display the notepad edit screen.

■ When deleting a note

① Press [Menu] [1 あ/@].

② Select *Yes*.

■ Creating mail from a note

① Press [Menu] [2 かABC].

INFORMATION

- When deleting single note from the notepad list screen, place the cursor at the note to delete, press [Menu] and select ***Delete note***. To delete all items, press [Menu], select ***Delete all*** and enter the terminal security code.
- To compose mail from the notepad list, place the cursor at the note to use for message text, press [Menu] and select ***Compose message***.

Saving schedule from notes

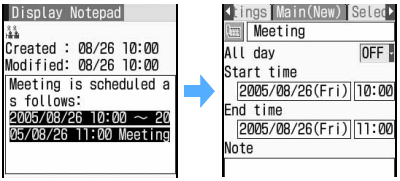
Date To

- When the message text contains schedule description in the Date To format, copying the text to Notepad allows saving it as schedule.

1 Press [Menu] [7 まPQRS] [2 かABC] on the stand-by display.

2 Select the note written in Date To format.

3 Select the description written in Date To format, and save it as schedule.



Date To format

Date To is effective when the entry of note has a string in the format below (All items are requisite):

Example: **2005/08/26 □ 10:00 □～□ 2005/08/26 □ 11:00 □ Meeting↵**

Start date / Start time / End date / End time / Description / A line feed is regarded as an entry

Note: □ represents half-sized space. It is not actually displayed.

- Only one-byte characters can be used for date and time.
- Separate the start date, start time, " ～ ", end date, end time and description with half-sized spaces.
- The description can contain up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters. Any character exceeding the maximum number is deleted.
- The year is based on the Christian era and the time is in the 24-hour format. If there is only 1 digit for month, day, hour or minute, the preceding 0 can be skipped.

Using the earphone/microphone set with switch

Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch

By connecting the optional flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (including the stereo earphone set with flat switch) to the earphone/microphone jack, it is possible to make or receive calls simply by pressing the switch.

- It is not possible to make a video-phone call by pressing the switch of the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch.
- Use the earphone jack converter adapter P001 for the existing earphone/microphone.

Connecting the earphone/microphone set with switch

To connect the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch to FOMA terminal, open the cover of the earphone/microphone jack and insert the connection plug of the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch. ☛P23

- Do not wrap the cord of the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch around FOMA terminal. Reception level of radio waves may deteriorate.
- When the cord of the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch nears the antenna, a noise may be emitted.
- Insert the plug firmly. If it is not inserted completely, there may be audio disruption.

Making calls by pressing the switch

By registering a phone number to the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Quick Dial, it is possible to make a voice call to that number only by pressing the switch on the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch.

- To make a call using a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch, the Handset Quick Dial must be set to ***ON***.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

1 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear 2 short beeps.

A voice call will be made to the first registered phone number of the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Quick Dial.

・If more than one phone number has been registered, the first phone number will be dialed.

2 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear a short beep to end a call.

INFORMATION

- If Secret Attribute has been set for the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Quick Dial, Secret Mode must be activated before operating.
- Even if Call Waiting Service is subscribed and activated, you cannot make another call during a call by entering the number of a third party and pressing the switch. Be aware that pressing the switch will terminate the first call.
- While transferring or copying data between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card, you cannot make calls by pressing the switch.

Receiving calls by pressing the switch

1 When an incoming call is received, hold down the switch for over a second until you hear 2 short beeps.

・The ring tone is emitted from the point set by Headset Switch.

2 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear a short beep to end a call.

INFORMATION

- If Auto Answer is set, you can receive an incoming call automatically.
- Operations when FOMA terminal is closed while a call made by connecting a flat type earphone/microphone with switch ☛P59
- When Call Waiting Service is subscribed and activated, you can receive a voice call during a call by holding down the switch for over a second.

Registering the receivers for calling with earphone/microphone

Headset Quick Dial

Set the receiver to make a call using a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch by assigning the phonebook No.

Default OFF

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 6 MNO 4 GHI 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

2 Select *Headset quick-dial* field and press 1 .

・To cancel the setting, press 2 and go to Step 5.

3 Select *Phonebook No.* field.

・To search by specifying search method, press Menu.

4 Choose the receiver.

5 Press 📖.

INFORMATION

● When the phonebook data of ***Phonebook No.*** set by this function is deleted or overwritten in other data, or ***Phonebook No.*** is changed, Headset Quick Dial is canceled.

Answering a call automatically with the earphone/microphone connected

Auto Answer

When using a flat type earphone/microphone with switch, you can receive an incoming call automatically. When a voice or video-phone call is received, the voice of the other party is heard from the connected earphone/microphone set with switch.

・This function is not available for incoming calls while talking.

・This function is not available in Driving Mode.

Default OFF

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 6 MNO 4 GHI 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

2 Select *Auto answering* field and press 1 あ.

・To cancel the setting, press 2 ABC and go to Step 4.

3 Select *delayed time(sec)* field, enter the time (0 - 120 sec.).

4 Press 📖.

INFORMATION

● The same time period cannot be set for both the delayed time for Auto Answer and the response time for Answer Machine.

● When a video-phone call has been answered by Auto Answer, the substitute image set in Image Setting is sent and a video-phone call is automatically started.

● When this function and Answer Machine, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service are set simultaneously, the set ringing time determines which function will be used.

● If an incoming call is received from the specified phone number when the Reject/Accept Call or Reject non-Reg. Caller is set, this function is not activated.

Hearing the ring tone only through the earphone

Headset Switch

When connecting a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch, you can set to hear the ring tone only through the earphone.

Default Headset + speaker

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 6 MNO 4 GHI 1 あ on the stand-by display.

2 Press 2 か ABC.

・To hear the ring tone both through the earphone and the speaker, press 1 あ 。.

INFORMATION

● When a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch is not connected, the ring tone sounds through the speaker regardless of this setting.

● Even when you set to ***Headset only***, you will hear the ring tone through the speaker when 20 seconds pass without answering a call.

Determining a service provider

NW Search Method

This function allows you to select a FOMA service provider. Select whether to set the service provider manually or using automatic search. Determine a service provider when you select ***Manual Select***.

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

Default Auto select NW

1 Press Menu 8 や TUV 9 ら WXYZ 5 な JKL on the stand-by display.

2 Select each items to set.

Search method

：Sets how to retrieve a network.

・If you select ***Auto select NW***, you cannot set ***Manual select***.

Manual select

：Determines a service provider.

・A service provider other than DoCoMo cannot be selected for manual selection (as of May 2005).

・A service provider other than DoCoMo cannot use the Pake-Houdai service.

3 Press 📖.

Checking current settings of functions

Confirm Settings

・During PIM Lock, the specific setting of the item being locked is displayed as “---”.

1 Press Menu 8 や TUV 4 た GHI 2 か ABC on the stand-by display.

This displays the settings in the ***Sound/Vibrator*** menu.

2 Press [●] to check the current settings.

Current screen

Resetting functions

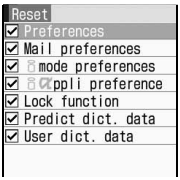
Reset

This function resets functions to their default settings.

- For the functions to be returned to the default settings by resetting, see “Menu list”. In addition, the following functions, though not mentioned in “Menu list”, are reset to the default settings:
  - Silent Mode (to be reset when ***Preferences*** is selected)
  - Driving Mode (to be reset when ***Preferences*** is selected)
  - Predict dictionary data
  - User dictionary data (data recorded using Save Word are deleted)

1 Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [4 GHI] [5 JKL] on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code, and select the item to reset.



- Press [●] to switch select/cancel. Press [Menu] select all/cancel all.

3 Press [▭], and select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

● Menu Setting is not reset by this function, but if ***Custom1*** or ***Custom2*** of the type of icons is changed, they return to the default status.

Deleting registered data collectively

Delete All Data

Deletes the saved data and return the settings of the functions to the default.

- Protected data are also deleted.
- Deleting data collectively should be done with battery fully charged. If the battery power is not enough, the data may not be deleted collectively.

 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

- The following data preinstalled by default are deleted:
  - i-αppli (except for Electronic money “Edy”)
  - Chara-den
  - Images in ***Deco-Mail picture*** and ***Item*** folders of ***Image*** (My Picture) in Data Box
- The following data saved or registered are deleted:
  - Message R/F
  - i-mode Mail
  - Chat mail (including the chat member setting)
  - SMS
  - Mail template
  - Mail group
  - Bookmark
  - Entered URL
  - URL history
  - Screen memo
  - Last Visited URL
  - i-αppli
  - i-αppli display history
  - Phonebook data
  - Received call history
  - Redial data
  - Recorded message (including the greeting)
  - Voice memo
  - The data of ***Image/i-motion/Melody/My Documents*** in Data Box (except for ***Preinstalled*** folder)
  - Chara-den
  - Data read by Bar Code Reader
  - Schedule (including holidays registered or changed)
  - Notepad
  - Alarm
  - Call duration
  - Save words/fixed phrase
  - Registering USSD
  - Recorded reply message
  - Own Number (except for your phone number)
  - Folder/Album created
  - Updating software (Reserved update)
- The functions listed in Reset function, the following functions return to the default:
  - Sort Criteria
  - i-mode Shortcut for bookmark
  - i-αppli (functions set from software list)
  - Answer Machine
  - Operation settings of ***Image/i-motion/Melody/Chara-den/My Documents***
  - Camera
  - Movie Camera
  - Sound Recorder
  - Data exchange settings by infrared communication
  - PIM Lock
  - Terminal security code
  - Privacy Mode Setting
  - Data and Time Settiing
  - External Device setting
  - NW search method
  - Arrival Call Act
  - Menu Setting
  - Changed folder name
  - Custom Menu

1 Press Menu B や TUV 4 た GHI 6 は MNO on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.

Data are deleted collectively during restart.

INFORMATION

- The following data are not deleted and cannot be reset to the default:
  - Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli and related data.
  - The data saved, registered or set in the UIM or the miniSD memory card
  - Data communication setting set via a PC
- To restore the default setting for each function, execute Reset.
- If there are the data of large capacity, about 1 minute may be required to restart. Be careful not to turn off the power before completing the operation.
- If the data or i-αppli preinstalled by default are deleted, they can be downloaded from i-mode site “My D-style” (☛P294). Packet communication fee is required separately to download.

MEMO

Network Services

Network services available using FOMA terminal ..... Network Service 420
Using Voice Mail Service ..... Voice Mail 420
Using Call Waiting Service ..... Call Waiting 422
Using Call Forwarding Service ..... Call Forwarding 424
Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service ..... Nuisance Call Blocking 425
Using Caller ID Request Service ..... Caller ID Request 426
Using Dual Network Service ..... Dual Network 427
Switching languages for the guidance ..... English Guidance 427
Using Service Dialing Number ..... Service Dialing Number 428
Setting Arrival Call Act ..... Arrival Call Act 428
Setting Remote Control ..... Remote Control 429
Using Multi Number ..... Multi Number (Service not available) 429
Registering new network services ..... Added Service (Register USSD) 429

Network services available using FOMA terminal

Network Service

This manual shows an overview of each network service. For details of operation or usage precaution, see “Network Services User’s Guide.”

Service	Application	Monthly fee	Page
Voice Mail Service	Required	Charged	P420
Call Waiting Service	Required	Charged	P422
Call Forwarding Service	Required	Free	P424
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Required	Free	P425
Caller ID Request Service	Not required	Free	P426
Dual Network Service	Required	Charged	P427
English Guidance Service	Not required	Free	P427
Service Dialing Number	Not required	Free	P428
Added Service (Register USSD)	Not required	Free	P429

- When new network services are provided by DoCoMo, you can register them on the menu list. ☛P429
- For further information or subscription, contact “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual listed.
- Network service cannot be started and stopped from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.

INFORMATION

● You can stop Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service and Call Forwarding Service from your FOMA terminal after these services are started. Stopping a service does not cancel the contract itself.

Using Voice Mail Service

Voice Mail

Voice Mail Service stores voice messages when FOMA terminal is turned off or in a location where radio waves are hard to reach, or when you cannot answer a call.
You can access your voice messages from anywhere in Japan.

- Unanswered calls are transferred to the Voice Mail Service Center, which stores voice messages. An icon indicated on the stand-by display and received call history alert you that one or more calls have been transferred.

- Up to 20 voice messages, each 3 minutes long can be recorded and they are stored up to 72 hours.
- Includes a function that only announces that you are unable to answer the call.
- When Voice Mail Service is active, you are still able to make and receive calls.
- Note that, though you can subscribe to both Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service, 2 services cannot be used simultaneously. When you enable Call Forwarding Service, Voice Mail Service is automatically disabled. (After that, if you turn Call Forwarding Service off, Voice Mail Service is not automatically activated.)
- You can forward incoming calls to the Voice Mail Service Center (☛P57). You can also forward incoming calls to the Voice Mail Service Center while on the phone. ☛P428
- Voice Mail Service can be accessed from touch-tone general subscriber phones or payphones using the network security code. Set Remote Control beforehand.
- When a ***User unset*** call without caller ID notification is received while Caller ID Request Service is on, a guidance is played requesting to notify the caller ID. No voice message is recorded.
- When a video-phone call is received, 「音声電話でおかけ直しください」is noticed to caller and the call is not transferred to the Voice Mail Service Center.

Basic flow of Voice Mail Service

Step1 Activate the service

Step2 The caller leaves a voice message*

Step3 Play back the voice message

* Callers can press [#] on their telephone to skip hearing the answering message and proceed directly to recording mode.

About Voice Mail Service fees

Use of Voice Mail Service requires the call charge for hearing voice messages, in addition to the monthly charge.

Activating Voice Mail Service

1 Press [Menu] [9] [1] [1] [1] on the stand-by display.

2 Select *Yes*.

3 Select *Yes*.

- Select ***No*** to activate Voice Mail Service by the set time (the default: 10 seconds) without the ringing time setting.

4 Enter the ringing time (between 0 and 120 seconds).

Voice Mail Service is activated.

- You can increase or decrease the entered values by pressing [○].

Deactivating Voice Mail Service

1 Press [Menu] [9] [1] [1] [3] on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.

Checking current settings

1 Press [Menu] [9] [1] [1] [4] on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

- From the screen for checking current setting, you can change the setting by the submenu.
  - [Menu] [1]: Activate Voice Mail Service
  - [Menu] [2]: Deactivate Voice Mail Service
  - [Menu] [3]: Set ringing time of Voice Mail Service
- You can set only the ringing time by pressing [Menu] [9] [1] [1] [2] on the stand-by display.
- When a new call arrives while you are talking (or using packet communication), you can choose to transfer the call to Voice Mail Service Center. Forwarding the incoming call manually ☛P57
- The ringing time setting is still retained even after you deactivate Voice Mail Service.

Using voice prompts to set up Voice Mail Service

1 Press [Menu] [9] [1] [1] [6] on the stand-by display.

2 Select *Yes* and follow the voice prompts.

- To check if there is a new voice message or listen to a voice message, hang up the phone first.

Hearing voice messages

When there are voice messages, [1] with the number of messages is displayed.

1 Press [Menu] [9] [1] [1] [5] on the stand-by display.

2 Select *Yes* and follow the voice prompts.

INFORMATION

- New voice messages can be also played quickly from the stand-by display. ☛P32
- The number displayed shows the number of new voice messages provided by guidance when the messages are played, which does not include saved voice messages.

Checking for new voice messages
Check Messages

1 **Press Menu 9 1 1 7 on the stand-by display.**

2 **Select *Yes*.**

When new voice messages arrive, 1 with the number of messages are displayed on the stand-by display.

- If Notification is on, the notification melody will sound and the vibrator will be activated according to Vibrator Setting when a new voice message arrives.

Setting ring tone to sound when new voice messages arrive
Notification

You can set an alert tone to sound when the caller left a new voice message, or when the number of voice messages has increased at the time you access Voice Mail Service Center to check for new messages.

- If any message is found as a result of Check Messages, the vibrator is activated according to Vibrator Setting.
- While turning Silent Mode on, even if Vibrator Setting is off, the vibrator is activated according to Vibrator Setting.
- For voice messages left just after performing Check Messages, the alert tone may not sound.
- When All Lock, PIM Lock, Driving Mode or an alarm sound is active, the alert tone does not sound and the vibrator is not activated.

Default Voicemail alert: ON
Notification melody: パターン 1

1 **Press Menu 9 1 2 on the stand-by display.**

2 **Select *Voicemail alert* field and press 1.**

- Press 2 and go to Step 5 to disable the alert tone.

3 **Select *Notification melody* field.**

4 **Select a folder to select a melody.**

The melody is set and the setting screen for Notification reappears.

- Selecting, playing and checking the melody ☛P112

5 **Press ▶.**

Erasing voice mail icon
Remove Voicemail Count

1 **Press Menu 9 1 4 on the stand-by display.**

2 **Select *Yes*.**

An icon that indicates the number of voice messages is erased.

Notifying incoming calls received while you were out of service area
Missed Call Notice

When FOMA terminal is turned on or within the service area, this function notifies you of calls received with your FOMA terminal turned off or outside the service area using SMS.

Activating Missed Call Notice

1 **Press Menu 9 1 3 1 on the stand-by display.**

2 **Select *Yes*.**

3 **Select *Yes* or *No*.**

- Select *Yes* to notify incoming calls of which caller ID is notified.
- Select *No* to notify all incoming calls.

Deactivating Missed Call Notice

1 **Press Menu 9 1 3 2 on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.**

Checking current settings

1 **Press Menu 9 1 3 3 on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.**

Using Call Waiting Service
Call Waiting

When a third party calls you while you are on the phone, this service notifies you with the call waiting ring tone. This allows you to place your current call on hold and then answer the other call.

- You can also place the current call on hold and call another party.
- When a ***User unset*** call is received while Caller ID Request Service is activated, a guidance is played requesting to notify the caller ID and Call Waiting Service cannot be used.

- Call Waiting Service does not operate under the following conditions:
  - When you make a call to 104, 110, 117*, 118 and 119
    - * When calling 117, you may hear beeps indicating another incoming call, but you cannot answer it. The missed call is recorded on the received call history.
  - When you are dialing or calling another party
  - While you are connected to the Voice Mail Service Center as a user of the service, e.g. for replaying voice messages
  - When you make a call to 4-digit phone number for setting the network services, including 1411 (activating Voice Mail Service) and 1420 (deactivating Call Forwarding Service)
  - During a video-phone call (the call is recorded as missed call on the received call history)
  - When a video-phone call is received during a voice call (the call is recorded as missed call on the received call history)
- The caller is charged for calls on hold.
- You cannot make a video-phone call during a call.

Activating Call Waiting Service

1 Press Menu 9 5 2 1 on the stand-by display.

2 Select *Yes*.

Deactivating Call Waiting Service

1 Press Menu 9 5 2 2 on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.

Checking current settings

1 Press Menu 9 5 2 3 on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

- To use Call Waiting Service, set Arrival Call Act to ***Answer***. Call Waiting Service is available regardless of whether you activate or deactivate Arrival Call Act.
- If Arrival Call Act is set to other than ***Answer***, an incoming call cannot be received even when you activate Call Waiting Service.

Other operations

■ Putting the current call on hold to answer an incoming call

① Press during a call.
The current call is put on hold and the second call can be answered.
- ***Multi connecting*** appears on the screen.
- Press to switch the other parties.
- When ***Hold*** is displayed in the guide row, you can put your current call on hold by pressing . Press again to release on hold.
- To finish a call on hold, Press Menu 1 while Call Waiting is active (during multi-connection).

② Press when you finish talking to the other party.
This ends the call and the ring tone sounds.
- Press to switch back to the other party on hold.

■ Answering an incoming call after finishing the current call

① Press during a call.
A ring tone sounds to indicate there is an incoming call.

② Press .
You are connected to the new party.

■ Holding the current call and making another call

① Press Menu 8 during a call and enter the phone number.
- Press Menu 2 to call back from the received call history or press Menu 3 to make a call from Redial. When calling the party registered in the phonebook, press and place the cursor at the other party to make a call to.

② Press .
Your current call is automatically put on hold and you can begin talking to the other party you called.
- ***Multi connecting*** appears on the screen.
- Press to switch the other parties.
- When ***Hold*** is displayed in the guide row, you can put your current call on hold by pressing . Press again to release on hold.
- To finish a call on hold, Press Menu 1 while Call Waiting is active (during multi-connection).

③ Press when you finish talking to the other party.
The call ends.
- Press to switch back to the other party on hold.

INFORMATION

● During multi-connection, you cannot receive incoming calls. Unanswered calls are recorded as missed ones on the received call history.

Using Call Forwarding Service Call Forwarding

Call Forwarding Service automatically forwards calls to your home or office when FOMA terminal is outside the service area, is turned off or you cannot answer the call.

・The service is available anywhere within the FOMA service area nationwide.

- Only 1 forwarding destination can be set.
- When Call Forwarding Service is on, you are still able to make and receive calls.
- You can forward incoming calls (☛P57). You can also forward incoming calls while you are on the phone. ☛P428
- Note that though you can subscribe to both Call Forwarding Service and Voice Mail Service, 2 services cannot be used simultaneously. When you enable Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service is automatically disabled. (After that, if you turn Voice Mail Service off, Call Forwarding Service is not automatically activated.)
- When a ***User unset*** call is received while Caller ID Request Service is on, a guidance is played requesting to notify the caller ID. The call is not forwarded to the forwarding destination.
- Call Forwarding Service can be operated from touch-tone general subscriber phones or payphones using the network security code. Set Remote Control beforehand.
- You cannot forward incoming video-phone calls to the forwarding destination incompatible with the 3G-324M standard even if Call Forwarding Service is activated. Check the specifications of the destination when making the forward settings.

Basic flow of Call Forwarding Service

Step 1 Set the forwarding destination phone number

Step 2 Activate Call Forwarding Service

Step 3 Calls come in to your FOMA terminal

Step 4 Unanswered calls are automatically forwarded to the previously specified destination

About Call Forwarding Service fees

Call charge

Caller ⟷ Call Forwarding Service subscriber ⟷ Forward

Charged to caller. Charged to Call Forwarding Service subscriber.

Note: There is no call charge for setting the forwarding destination, activating and deactivating the service, and setting the ringing time.

Activating Call Forwarding Service

1 Press [MENU] [9 wxyz] [3 def] [1] on the stand-by display.

2 Select *Yes*.

3 Select *Yes*.

4 Enter the forwarding destination phone number (up to 26 digits).

・Toll-free and 3-digit numbers such as 110 cannot be specified as forwarding destinations.

■ **Setting forwarding destination phone numbers from the phonebook**

① **Press [MENU] while [📖] is indicated in the guide row.**

・Press [MENU] to search again by changing the search method.

・When a phonebook entry including several phone numbers is selected, select a phone number where you want to forward to.

② **Select the forwarding destination phone number.**

5 Press [📖].

 * From January 2001, the DoCoMo display beeper name has changed to “QUICKCAST”.

6 Select *Yes*.

- Select *No* to activate Call Forwarding Service by the set time (the default ringing time is 7 seconds) without the ringing time setting.

7 Enter the ringing time (between 0 and 120 seconds).

- You can also increase or decrease the entered values by pressing .

INFORMATION

- When FOMA terminal is outside the service area or is turned off, calls are automatically transferred without the ring tone sounding. Also in this case, Call Forwarding Service subscriber is charged for the call from the forwarding source to destination.
- Transfer may be suspended when the forwarding destination requests to stop the service and DoCoMo determines this to be necessary.
- Note that specifying a PBX, beeper* or facsimile machine as the forwarding destination may cause misunderstanding by callers.
- When a new call arrives while you are talking (or using packet communication), you can choose to forward the call to the forwarding phone number. Forwarding the incoming call manually ☛P57
- Ringing time setting is still retained even after you change the forwarding phone number or deactivate Call Forwarding Service.

Deactivating Call Forwarding Service

1 Press Menu 9wxyz 3def 2abc on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.

Checking current setting

You check service activation/deactivation and the forwarding destination phone number.

1 Press Menu 9wxyz 3def 5jkl on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.

Changing forwarding destination

1 Press Menu 9wxyz 3def 3def on the stand-by display.

2 Enter a phone number and press .

3 Select *Yes*.

Setting forwarding guidance on/off

1 Press 1 4ghi 2abc 9wxyz on the stand-by display and follow the voice prompts.

Setting Voice Mail Service to handle calls when forwarding destination is busy Fwd-Party-Busy Setting

- A subscription for Voice Mail Services is required.

1 Press Menu 9wxyz 3def 4ghi on the stand-by display.

2 Select *Yes*.

- To cancel the handling by Voice Mail, select *No*.

Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service

Nuisance Call Blocking

You can set FOMA terminal to automatically reject nuisance calls. After registering a phone number of the nuisance caller, subsequent calls from the registered phone number are rejected, letting the caller hear the guidance informing it.

- Up to 30 phone numbers can be registered.
- When receiving a video-phone call from the number registered on the nuisance call list, the video-phone call will be cut off without playing the image guidance.

Registering the phone number of last call as nuisance caller

1 Press Menu 9wxyz 4ghi 1 on the stand-by display after disconnecting a nuisance call.

2 Select *Yes*.

The phone number of the latest call is registered in the nuisance call list and is rejected in future. The phone numbers you did not answer such as missed calls, etc. cannot be registered.

■ **When 30 phone numbers have already been registered**

A screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite the oldest phone number on the list. Select *Yes* to delete the oldest phone number from the list and allow you to register a new phone number.

Registering the specified phone number as nuisance caller

1 Press 1 4 4 on the stand-by display and follow the voice prompts.

INFORMATION

- The following table lists the relationships between incoming calls received with Nuisance Call Blocking Service activated and other services.

Service	Handling of incoming calls to be rejected
Voice Mail Service	The call rejection guidance is played. No voice message is recorded.
Call Forwarding Service	The call rejection guidance is played. The call is not forwarded to the forwarding destination.
Call Waiting Service	The call rejection guidance is played.
Caller ID Request Service	The call rejection guidance is played. The guidance which requests to notify the caller ID is not played.
Driving Mode	The call rejection guidance is played. The Driving Mode guidance is not played.

- You can register a ***User unset*** call on the nuisance call list.
- You cannot check for or inquire about phone numbers registered on the nuisance call list. It is recommended that you make a note of the phone numbers registered as nuisance callers.
- International phone calls cannot be registered on the nuisance call list.
- When there is an incoming call from a number on the nuisance caller list, no ring tone sounds. The call is not recorded on the received call history.

Deleting phone numbers from nuisance caller list

You can delete phone numbers one-by-one, beginning with the most recently registered. You can also delete all phone numbers at once.

1 Press Menu 9 4 3 on the stand-by display.

- Press Menu 9 4 2 to delete all phone numbers.

2 Select *Yes*.

The most recent registered phone number is deleted.

Using Caller ID Request Service Caller ID Request

For an incoming call without the caller ID, this service plays a guidance requesting the caller to notify the caller ID information. This helps you avoid problems caused by nuisance calls, etc.

- Caller ID Request Service operates when no caller ID is notified because of ***User unset***. This service does not operate when no caller ID is notified because of ***Not support*** or ***Payphone***.
- The caller is charged for calls while the guidance requesting the caller ID information plays.

Activating Caller ID Request Service

1 Press Menu 9 6 1 on the stand-by display.

2 Select *Yes*.

Deactivating Caller ID Request Service

1 Press Menu 9 6 2 on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.

Checking current setting

1 Press Menu 9 6 3 on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

- The following table lists the relationships between incoming calls received with Caller ID Request Service activated and other services.

Service	Handling of incoming calls with caller ID unsent
Voice Mail Service	The guidance which requests to notify the caller ID is played. No voice message is recorded.
Call Forwarding Service	The guidance which requests to notify the caller ID is played. The call is not forwarded to the forwarding destination.
Call Waiting Service	The guidance which requests to notify the caller ID is played.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	If the call originates from a number on the nuisance caller list, the call rejection guidance is played. The guidance which requests to notify the caller ID is not played.
Driving Mode	The guidance which requests to notify the caller ID is played. The Driving Mode guidance is not played.

- When a ***User unsent*** voice call is received while Caller ID Request Service is activated, no ring tone sounds and the call is not recorded on the received call history. When receiving a video-phone call without the caller ID, the image guidance will not be played to request the caller ID. The message which notices caller disconnection will be displayed on the screen.
- Caller ID Request Service can be activated/deactivated only with FOMA terminal with your own UIM attached. Remote Control is not available. Operation for activating/deactivating the service does not require call charge.
- If Anonymous Caller of FOMA terminal is set as well as this service, this service is given priority.

Using Dual Network Service Dual Network

Allows you to use the mova terminal with the phone number of FOMA terminal.
With this function, even in a location outside the FOMA service area, you can make or receive voice calls using the mova terminal if you are inside the mova service area.

- FOMA and mova cannot be used simultaneously.
- Perform operation to switch network from FOMA terminal or mova terminal which is not in network condition.

Activating mova terminal

1 Dial “1540” on the mova terminal.

2 Follow the voice prompts.

Activating FOMA terminal

The following procedure explains the method of switching network that is used by the mova terminal to FOMA terminal.

1 Press Menu 9 wxyz 9 wxyz 5 jkl 1 あ/@ on the stand-by display of FOMA terminal.

2 Select *Yes*.

3 Enter the network security code.

Checking current settings

1 Press Menu 9 wxyz 9 wxyz 5 jkl 2 abc on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

- The mova terminal is available for the current FOMA i-mode service with some exceptions. Moreover, when using i-mode or various network services, FOMA and mova terminals are subject to their respective restrictions and precautions. For details, see “Network Services User’s Guide.”

Switching languages for the guidance English Guidance

This service allows you and other parties to hear the guidance in English when setting various network services such as making and receiving calls.

- Guidance in Japanese and English is provided.
- You cannot use English Guidance when you make or receive a video-phone call.
- While the caller is using this service, the caller’s settings will take priority over the receiver’s.

1 Press Menu 9 wxyz 9 wxyz 4 ghi 1 あ/@ on the stand-by display.

2 Select *Yes*.

3 Press 1 あ/@ or 2 abc.

Japanese: Sets the guidance for you to hear at the time of calling to Japanese.
English : Sets the guidance for you to hear at the time of calling to English.

4 Select *Yes*.

5 Press 1 あ/@ to 3 def.

Japanese: Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to Japanese.
Japanese+English
: Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to Japanese followed by English.
English+Japanese
: Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to English followed by Japanese.

Checking current settings

1 **Press [Menu] [9 wxyz] [9 wxyz] [4 ghi] [2 abc] on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.**

Using Service Dialing Number Service Dialing Number

Calls are made to DoCoMo for Repairs or DoCoMo for General Inquiries.

- The item numbers for the DoCoMo for Repairs and DoCoMo for General Inquiries may differ depending on the UIM types. ☛P36

Calling DoCoMo for Repairs

1 **Press [Menu] [9 wxyz] [9 wxyz] [6 mno] [1 あ /@] on the stand-by display.**

2 **Select *Yes*.**

Call is made to DoCoMo for Repairs.

Calling DoCoMo for General Inquiries

1 **Press [Menu] [9 wxyz] [9 wxyz] [6 mno] [2 abc] on the stand-by display.**

2 **Select *Yes*.**

Call is made to DoCoMo Information Center.

Setting Arrival Call Act Arrival Call Act

During a voice call or 64K data communication you can use Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, etc. to handle an incoming call.

- Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service are optional subscriber services.
- 64K data communication or a video-phone call received during a call, and 64K data communication or a video-phone call received during 64K data communication are rejected (handled according to ***Call Rejection***).

Selecting how incoming calls are handled while talking

Default Answer

1 **Press [Menu] [9 wxyz] [8 tuv] on the stand-by display.**

2 **Press [1 あ /@] to [4 ghi].**

Answer : You can answer or disconnect the second call received during a call or 64K data communication. Call Waiting Service must be subscribed and activated.

Voice Mail : Incoming calls received during a call or 64K data communication are handled by Voice Mail Service.

Call Forwarding : The second call received during a call or 64K data communication is forwarded.

Call Rejection : The second call received during a call or 64K data communication is rejected and recorded on the received call history.

INFORMATION

- To enable Arrival Call Act you selected, turn Arrival Act Setting on. However, when Call Waiting Service is subscribed and activated, Arrival Call Act is enabled regardless of Arrival Act Setting.
- If you set this function to ***Voice Mail*** or ***Call Forwarding*** and turn Arrival Act Setting on, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is automatically available even while either of them is deactivated.

Enabling Arrival Call Act Arrival Act Setting

You activate or deactivate the response method selected by Arrival Call Act.

- The act selected in Arrival Call Act is performed with Call Waiting Service subscribed and activated regardless of settings of this function.

1 **Press [Menu] [9 wxyz] [7 pqrs] [1 あ /@] on the stand-by display.**

2 **Select *Yes*.**

Disabling Arrival Call Act

1 **Press [Menu] [9 wxyz] [7 pqrs] [2 abc] on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.**

Checking current settings

1 **Press Menu 9 7 3 on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.**

Setting Remote Control Remote Control

You can access such services as Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service from touch-tone general subscriber phones or payphones.

Activating Remote Control

1 **Press Menu 9 9 3 1 on the stand-by display.**

2 **Select *Yes*.**

Deactivating Remote Control

1 **Press Menu 9 9 3 2 on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.**

Checking current settings

1 **Press Menu 9 9 3 3 on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.**

Using Multi Number Multi Number

- Multi Number has not been started as of May, 2005.

Registering new network services Added Service (Register USSD)

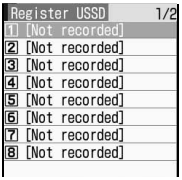
When a new network service is provided by DoCoMo, you use the service by registering it in the menu.

- Up to 10 services can be registered.

Registering network services

1 **Press Menu 9 9 1 on the stand-by display.**

2 **Place the cursor at the number to record and press ▶.**



- Press ▶ to switch to the next or previous page.

■ **Changing registered contents**

① **Place the cursor at a number that is already in use and press ▶.**

3 **Select *USSD code* field, enter the USSD code.**

- Enter the service code provided by DoCoMo in ***USSD code*** field. Service code is the code used to make settings for the network service. It is registered as the USSD code on FOMA terminal.

4 **Select *Name* field and enter service the name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters).**

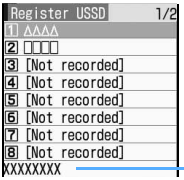
5 **Press ▶.**

Using registered network services

1 **Press Menu 9 9 1 on the stand-by display.**

2 **Press 1 to 8.**

The registered code is transmitted to the service center.



- Press ▶ to switch to the next or previous page.

Service code is displayed.

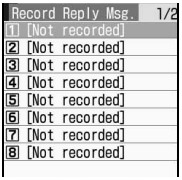
Registering reply messages

You can register messages corresponding to a code returned from the service center when an added service is executed. The reply message is displayed when the recorded code is returned as a reply.

• Up to 10 messages can be registered.

1 Press [Menu] [9 らWXYZ] [9 らWXYZ] [2 かABC] on the stand-by display.

2 Press [1 あ/@] to [8 やTUV].



• Press [▷] to switch to the next or previous page.

■ **Changing registered contents**

① **Select a number that is already in use.**

3 Select *USSD code* field and enter the USSD code provided by DoCoMo.

4 Select *Reply message* field and enter the message (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters).

5 Press [Mail].

Deleting registered services

1 Press [Menu] [9 らWXYZ] [9 らWXYZ] [1 あ/@] on the stand-by display.

• Press [Menu] [9 らWXYZ] [9 らWXYZ] [2 かABC] to delete the reply message.

2 Place the cursor at the service to delete and press [Menu] [1 あ/@].

• Press [Menu] [2 かABC] to delete all services.

• Press [▷] to switch to the next or previous page.

3 Select *Yes*.

Data Communication

Data communication 432
Flow of setup for data communication 433
Connecting PC to FOMA terminal 434
Installation of the communication configuration file (driver) 435
Communicating using FOMA PC configuration software 437
Communicating without using FOMA PC configuration software 446
AT command 455

Data communication

The data communication and connection modes available from FOMA terminal and hints on use are explained.

- FOMA terminal does not support fax communication.
- When connecting FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's PDA "Sigmarion Ⅱ" or "musea" for data communication, make sure to update "Sigmarion Ⅱ" or "musea". For details on update such as method, visit the DoCoMo website.

Supported communication modes

FOMA terminal supports 3 communication formats: packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer.
These communications become available by installing the related software on a PC from the attached CD-ROM, connecting FOMA terminal to a PC and making required settings.

■ **Packet communication**

Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which makes it suitable for high-speed exchange of relatively small amounts of data such as sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible. High-speed packet communication provides a maximum reception speed of 384 kbps and a maximum transmission speed of 64 kbps by using access points that support packet communication on FOMA, such as mopera U / mopera, DoCoMo's Internet connection service. These are offered by Best-effort connection which allows transmission speed to vary with the environment and the rate of congestion. Note that communications of large-size data such as for viewing and downloading websites containing images will require high charges.

■ **64K data communication**

The 64K data communications allow data transmission/reception at stabled communication rate of 64 kbps. Communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, which makes it suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents. Use access points that support FOMA 64K data communication services such as mopera U / mopera, DoCoMo's Internet connection service or ISDN synchronized 64kbps access points.

■ **Data transmission**

It is a form of non-charged communication in which data are transferred/exchanged via FOMA USB cable (optional). Various data including the phonebook, incoming/outgoing mail and bookmarks are sent/received.

Usage precautions

Internet service provider usage charges

When using the Internet from PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (herein after called as provider) is generally required. This charge is paid directly to the provider, and is separate from the FOMA service charge. For more information on usage charges, contact your provider.

- DoCoMo provides 2 Internet connection services: mopera U and mopera. The mopera U service allows you to use broadband Internet connection and international roaming services. It requires subscription and a monthly fee. There is also a plan that requires a monthly fee only when you use the service. The mopera service, however, allows you to access the Internet without subscription and monthly fee. You can make a connection with Internet immediately.

Setting dialup connection (provider, etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64kbps data communication.

- You cannot connect to access points of DoPa.
- You cannot connect to access points of PHS64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authentication during network access

Some dialup connections require user authentication (ID and password) before a connection can be established. If user authentication is required, you must use your communication software or dialup network to enter your ID and password before connection. Your ID and password will be assigned by the dialup connection's provider or network administrator. For more information, contact your provider or network administrator.

Access authentication during using PC browser

To authenticate FirstPass (user certificate), you must install FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and configure it. See "FirstPassManual" in CD-ROM for details.
To view "FirstPassManual" (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, you can download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website. (Communication fee are separately required for downloading.) See the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.

■ **Operating environment for the FirstPass PC software**

Item	Requirements
PC	PC/AT compatible computer
OS	The Japanese version of Windows 98SE, Me, 2000, XP or XP SP2
Memory requirements*	Windows 98SE, Me, 2000: 32MB or more Windows XP: 128MB or more
Hard Disk Capacity*	10 MB or more free disk space
Browser	Microsoft® Internet Explorer 5.5 and later version For Windows XP, Microsoft® Internet Explorer 6.0 and later version

* May vary with the PC system configurations.

Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication from FOMA terminal, the following conditions must be satisfied.

- The PCs which support a FOMA USB cable (optional).
- You must be within the FOMA service area.
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications.
- 64K data communication requires a dialup connection that supports FOMA 64K data communications or ISDN synchronized 64kbps.

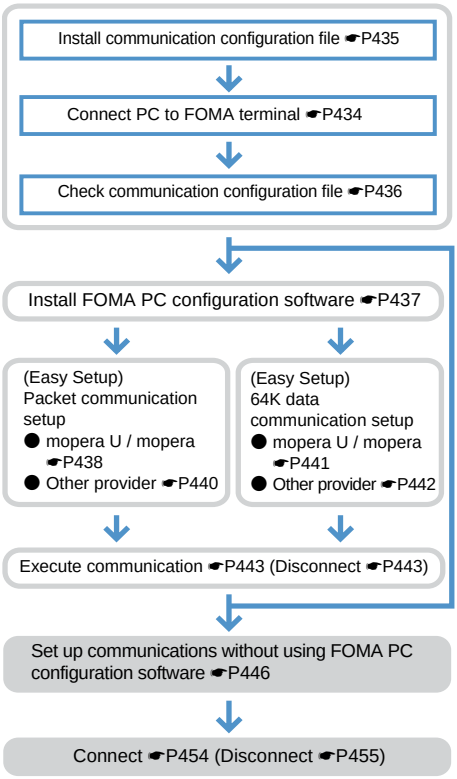
However, even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy, or the signal quality is poor.

Glossary of Data communication

- APN (Access Point Name)
  String to identify an provider or corporate LAN to connect with by packet communication. The APN for mopera U is "mopera.net" and mopera is "mopera.ne.jp".
- cid (Context Identifier)
  A number corresponding to a dialup connection (APN) of packet communication and registration number assigned to APN that is registered in FOMA terminal. 10 numbers from 1 to 10 are available for FOMA terminal.
  "mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid1, and "mopera.net" for cid3 by default.
- W-TCP
  A TCP parameter designed to fully utilize TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communications in a FOMA network. This communication setting is essential to enable full use of FOMA terminal capability.
- Administrator privilege
  A user level that provides complete access to all OS functions in Windows XP and 2000. There must be at least 1 user that has administrator privileges for each PC. A user that has no administrator privileges is not normally allowed to install/uninstall drivers and softwares.

Flow of setup for data communication

The setup work needed to connect FOMA terminal to a PC to perform packet or 64K data communication is as follows:



Communication configuration file (driver)

Install the communication configuration file on a PC from attached CD-ROM, before connecting FOMA terminal to a PC to perform data communication in the communication mode.

FOMA PC configuration software

When the FOMA PC configuration software (found on the CD-ROM) is installed on a PC, a number of settings required for data communication via connection between FOMA terminal and PC can be made from the PC by simple operation.

Checking operating environment

Use the communication configuration file and the FOMA PC configuration software in the following operating environments:

- Note that utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. Furthermore, operation will not be guaranteed in an environment other than that described below and DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for pertaining to operation under such conditions.
- The operation procedure for Windows XP is mainly explained here. The screen display may differ under other OS. Also, Windows 98 and Windows 98SE are collectively shown as Windows 98, and Windows XP and Windows XP SP2 as Windows XP.

Item	Requirements
PC*	PC/AT compatible computer
OS	The Japanese version of Windows 98, Me, 2000, XP
Memory requirements	Windows 98, Me: 32MB or more Windows 2000: 64MB or more Windows XP: 128MB or more
Hard disk capacity	5 MB or more free disk space

* PC with a USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) is required in case of USB connection.

Before installation/uninstallation

- Installing and uninstalling the communication configuration file or FOMA PC configuration software under Windows XP or 2000 can only be performed by a user with administrator privileges. Attempting by others user produces an error. For details on PC administrator privileges, refer to the instruction of the PC or contact your PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.
- Before starting operation, make sure that no other program is running. If there is any active program, save and exit the program before operation.

Connecting PC to FOMA terminal

The connection should be made with the PC and FOMA terminal both switched on.

- Be sure to install the communication configuration file (driver) before connecting with a PC in communication mode for the first time. ☛P435
- When FOMA terminal is connected with a PC in miniSD mode for the first time, the OS installs the driver automatically. Installation of the communication configuration file on a PC is not required beforehand. However, the OS which support miniSD mode are Windows XP and 2000 only.

Selecting PC operation during USB connection

USB Mode Setting

Specify whether to perform data communication via PC or operate the data of the miniSD memory card attached to FOMA terminal from a PC at the time of connection of PC and FOMA terminal.

Default Communication mode

1 Press Menu 6 MNO 5 JKL 4 GHI on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 あ or 2 か ABC.

Communication mode
: In this mode, data communication is performed from a PC.

miniSD mode
: In this mode, the miniSD memory card attached to FOMA terminal is operated from a PC.

3 Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

- Even when FOMA terminal is connected with PC, this function setting can be changed.
- The miniSD mode may not be set if the PC is set to start data communication automatically when FOMA terminal is connected.
- When the miniSD memory card is being operated from a PC, the mode cannot be set to ***Communication mode***. Also, ***miniSD mode*** cannot be set during a call or i-mode.
- When ***miniSD mode*** is set
  - If you format the miniSD memory card attached to FOMA terminal from a PC, reading and writing on FOMA terminal may not be disabled. It is advisable to format the miniSD memory card on FOMA terminal. ☛P356
  - USB Mode Setting is switched automatically to the communication mode in about 90 seconds after the last access to the miniSD memory card without connecting FOMA terminal to a PC.
  - Communication such as phone call or i-mode can not be used.
  - The call indicator flashes.
  - Click on the task tray and click *USB 大容量記憶装置デバイスードライブ(E:) を安全に取り外します*(Release safely the USB large memory device-Drive E: *) to quit operation of the miniSD memory card.
    * The character to be assigned to a drive varies with the system of PC.
- The miniSD memory card folder structure during operation from a PC. ☛P348

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Connecting using the FOMA USB cable

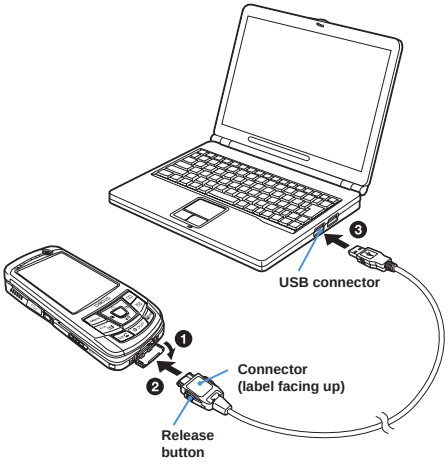
Connect by using the FOMA USB cable (optional).

❶ Open the cap on the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal.

❷ Insert one end of the FOMA USB cable into the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal until it clicks.

❸ Insert the other end of the FOMA USB cable into the PC USB connector.

- When a PC and FOMA terminal are connected in communication mode, appears on the display of FOMA terminal.
- If you connect FOMA terminal to a PC in communication mode before installing the communication configuration file, Windows may automatically detect that a FOMA USB cable has been inserted, request to install a driver, and the wizard screen will be displayed. In that case, remove FOMA terminal and click キャンセル (Cancel) to exit the wizard.



■ **Removing FOMA USB cable**

Press release buttons on both sides of the connector of FOMA terminal. Pull the connector out from the PC.

Connecting while charging

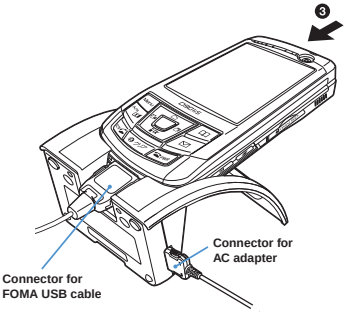
FOMA terminal can be connected using a desktop holder (optional) during the charging. However, charging time becomes longer.

❶ Connect a desktop holder with AC adapter.

- Insert the AC adapter in an outlet.

❷ Connect FOMA terminal to the FOMA USB cable.

❸ Place the desktop holder shown in the figure, and insert FOMA terminal to the desktop holder.



INFORMATION

- Do not remove the USB cable during data communication.
- To perform data communication while charging your FOMA terminal, close your terminal. Do not open or expose FOMA terminal and the desktop holder to shock. The shock may cause disruption of charging or data communication, malfunction or loss of data if FOMA terminal is slipped from the desktop holder.
- When charging FOMA terminal is started during data communication, the charging may not be completed. To ensure completion of recharging, it is recommended that recharging be started after data communication has completed.

Installation of the communication configuration file (driver)

Install the communication configuration file on a PC before connecting FOMA terminal to a PC to perform communication in the communication mode.

- When FOMA terminal is connected with PC in miniSD mode, installation of the communication configuration file is not required.

Installing the communication configuration file

- Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation" ☛P434

Example For Windows XP

1 Insert the attached CD-ROM into a PC.

- Make sure to connect FOMA terminal to a PC after performing Steps 1 to 3.

2 Click *スタート* (Start) and *ファイル名を指定して実行* (Run). Enter "<CD-ROM drive letter>:¥USBDRIVE¥D901iSin.exe" in *名前* (Name) and click *OK*.

3 Click *はい* (Yes).

A screen requesting to connect FOMA D901iS to a PC is displayed.

4 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

A progress screen for installation is displayed and automatically completed.

- Connect FOMA terminal while the power is on. ☛P435
- Check type and name of the device installed.

INFORMATION

- Installation may take a few minutes.
- When Windows rebooting is prompted on the screen, follow the instruction and reboot.
- If the PC and FOMA terminal are connected before the communication configuration file is installed, another driver may be automatically installed. When this happens, performing the operation in Step 2 displays a message saying that the installed driver must be uninstalled. In this case, uninstall the driver following instruction shown on the display and install the communication configuration file.
- If PC cannot detect FOMA terminal for some reason, uninstall and reinstall the communication configuration file.

Checking the communication configuration file

- When the PC does not detect FOMA terminal correctly, settings and communication cannot be performed.

Example For Windows XP

1 Click *スタート*, *コントロールパネル* (Control Panel), *パフォーマンスとメンテナンス* (Performance and maintenance) icon and *システム* (System) icon.

システムのプロパティ (System properties) screen is displayed.

■ **For Windows 2000, Me, 98**

① **Click *スタート*, *設定* (Setting) and *コントロールパネル*. Then double-click *システム* icon.**

2 Click *ハードウェア* (Hardware) tab and *デバイスマネージャ* (Device manager).

デバイスマネージャ screen appears.

■ **For Windows Me, 98**

① **Click *デバイスマネージャ* tab.**

3 Click each device to check the name of the installed device.

Check that the name of all devices installed are shown.

Device type	Device name
Port (COM/LPT) or (COM and LPT)	• FOMA D901iS Command Port (COMx)*1 • FOMA D901iS OBEX Port (COMx)*1
Modem	FOMA D901iS
Universal Serial Bus Controller or USB (Universal Serial Bus) Controller	• FOMA D901iS • FOMA D901iS Command*2 • FOMA D901iS Modem*2 • FOMA D901iS OBEX*2

*1 COMx varies with PC to be used.
*2 Displayed only under Windows Me and 98.

Uninstalling the communication configuration file

- Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation" ☛P434
- Before uninstalling, make sure that FOMA terminal is removed from the PC.

Example For Windows XP

1 Click *スタート*, *コントロールパネル* and *プログラムの追加と削除* (Add/delete Programs) icon.

プログラムの追加と削除 screen is displayed.

■ **For Windows 2000, Me, 98**

① **Click *スタート*, *設定* and *コントロールパネル*. Then double-click the *アプリケーションの追加と削除* (Add/delete applications) icon.**

2 Select *FOMA D901iS USB* and click *変更と削除* (Update/delete).

3 Check that you have selected the correct program for removal, and click *はい*.

The uninstall process of the configuration software starts.

4 Click *OK*.

INFORMATION

- When the installation fails or ***FOMA D901iS USB*** is not displayed on the screen of Step 2, click *スタート*, and *ファイル名を指定して実行*. Then enter <CD-ROM drive letter>:¥USBDRIVE¥D901iSin.exe and click ***OK*** to execute directly and uninstall the communication configuration file.
- When the communication configuration file is uninstalled and immediately reinstalled under Windows Me or 98, data communication may not be successful depending on the environment such as PC configuration. In this case, the FOMA USB cable (optional) should be removed and reinserted before re-attempting data communication.

Communicating using FOMA PC configuration software

A number of settings are required when FOMA terminal is connected to a PC to perform packet communication or 64K data communication. The FOMA PC configuration software allows you to easily perform the following settings:

■ **Easy setup**
"Creating a dialup connection for FOMA data communication" and "W-TCP setup" can be performed automatically by following the instructions in the guide.

■ **W-TCP setup**
This function optimizes the settings in the PC required for "FOMA packet communication". Optimization of the communication settings using "W-TCP setup" is required to enable full use of communication performance.

■ **Dialup connection (APN) setup**
This function performs "dialup connection (APN) setup" required for "packet communication". Unlike 64K data communication, phone numbers cannot be used as a dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. Set a dialup connection name called APN in FOMA terminal for each dialup connection in advance, and enter the registration number (cid) in the phone number to connect field. "mopera.ne.jp" (APN) is registered in cid 1 to connect to "mopera", and "mopera.net" (APN) for cid 3 to connect to "mopera U", by default, but the APN for connections to other providers and company LAN must be set.

Installing FOMA PC configuration software

- Uninstall an old version of the FOMA PC configuration software (version 1.00), if already installed, before installing FOMA PC configuration software (version 2.00) from attached CD-ROM. You can display the version from *メニュー* (Menu) →*バージョン情報* (Version information) of FOMA PC configuration software.
- When "W-TCP environment configuration software" (herein after referred to as old "W-TCP configuration software") and "FOMA data communication configuration software" (herein after referred to as old "FOMA data communication configuration software") provided with FOMA terminals listed below are installed, uninstall these software in advance. (FOMA N2001, FOMA N2002, FOMA P2401, FOMA P2002, FOMA F2611, FOMA T2101V)
- Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation" ☛P434

Example For Windows XP

1 Insert the attached CD-ROM into the PC.

2 Click *スタート* and *ファイル名を指定して実行*. Enter "<CD-ROM drive letter>:¥FOMA_PCSET¥ＣＤ－ＲＯＭ版¥FOMA_PCSET¥setup.exe" in *名前* and click *OK*.

- Enter "ＣＤ－ＲＯＭ版" (underlined part) in two-byte and others in one-byte.

3 Click *次へ* (Next).

FOMA PC configuration software license agreement appears.

4 Read the content of the screen and click *はい* if you agree to the agreement.

5 Check that *タスクトレイに常駐する* (Reside in task tray) is selected and click *次へ*.

The “W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP setup)” resides in the task tray after the setup. ☛P443

- Residing in task tray is the recommended setting for optimum control of “W-TCP communication” setting and cancellation.
- You can change the setting of resident software after the installation.

6 Check the installation path and click *次へ*.

7 Check the name of the program folder and click *次へ*.

8 Click *完了* (Done).

The “FOMA PC configuration software” is started up.

- Settings can be started from this screen.

INFORMATION

- If “FOMA PC configuration software”, old “W-TCP configuration software”, and old “FOMA data communication configuration software” are already installed, the screen to cancel the installation appears. Click ***OK*** to uninstall these softwares and then install “FOMA PC configuration software”.

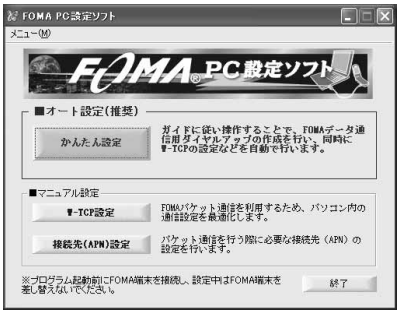
- When *キャンセル* or *いいえ* (No) is clicked during installation, follow the instruction shown on the screen and click *はい* or *いいえ*.

Setting packet communication by easy setup

Example For Windows XP

1 Click *スタート*, *すべてのプログラム* (All programs) (*プログラム* (Programs) for other than Windows XP), *FOMA PC設定ソフト* (FOMA PC configuration software) and *FOMA PC設定ソフト*.

The “FOMA PC configuration software” is started up.



Using mopera U / mopera

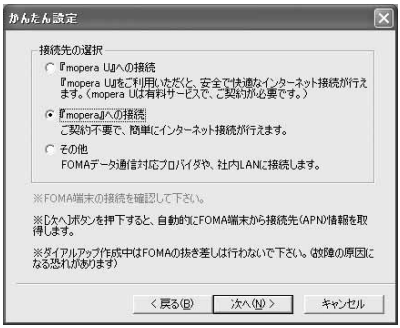
- Using other providers. ☛P440

1 Start the FOMA PC configuration software and click *かんたん設定* (Easy setup).

2 Select *パケット通信* (Packet communication) and click *次へ*.

3 **Select *『mopera U』への接続* (mopera U connection) or *『mopera』への接続* (mopera connection) and click *次へ*.**

- Mopera U is an optional service to be charged requiring subscription. When mopera U is selected, a confirmation message to agreement is displayed.



4 **Click *OK* on *FOMA 端末設定取得* (Get FOMA terminal settings) screen.**

接続先 (APN) 情報 (dialup connection (APN) information) is obtained from FOMA terminal. Please wait.

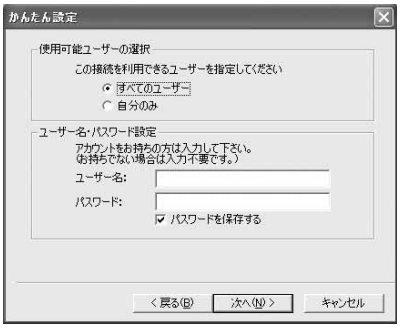
5 **Enter the connection name and click *次へ*.**

- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be entered:

¥ / : * ? ! < > | ”

6 **Click *次へ*.**

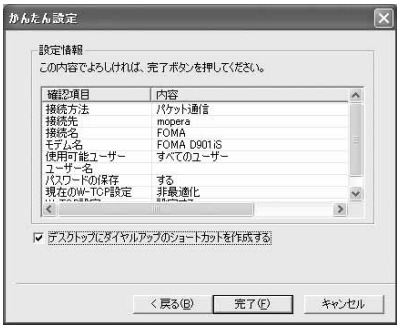
- The entry of a *ユーザー名* (User name) or *パスワード* (Password) is not required.
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the users that are allowed to access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection is not displayed.



7 **Check that *最適化を行う* (Optimize) is selected and click *次へ*.**

- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.

8 **Check the settings and click *完了*.**



9 Click *OK*.

The PC must be rebooted for the changes to take effect. Click *はい* when a window prompts you to reboot the PC.

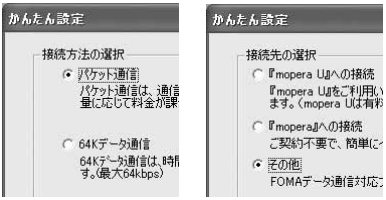
- If optimization of W-TCP setting has already been performed, the PC must not be rebooted.
- Performing communication ☛P443

Using other providers

- Using mopera U / mopera ☛P438

1 Perform Steps 1 to 4 of "Using mopera U / mopera" of "Setting packet communication by easy setup". ☛P438

- Select *その他* (Others) in Step 3 for the dialup connection.



2 Enter a connection name and click *接続先(APN) 設定* (Set dialup connection (APN)).

- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be entered:

¥ / : ＊ ? ! < > ｜ ”

■ Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting)

Click *詳細情報の設定* (Set detail info) to display *IP アドレス* (IP address) and *ネームサーバー* (Name server) setting screens. When the provider you subscribe to, the company LAN and other dialup information are required, register addresses based on the information.

3 Set dialup connection (APN).

"mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid1, and "mopera.net" for cid3 by default.

It is recommended to set 2 or 4 to 10, for cid.

① **Click *追加* (Add).**

接続先 (APN) の追加 (Add dialup connection(APN)) screen is displayed.

② **Enter a dialup connection name (APN), which supports the FOMA packet communication of your provider, in the *接続先 (APN)* (Dialup connection (APN)) correctly and click *OK*.**

The display returns to *接続先 (APN) 設定* screen.

- Only one-byte alphanumeric characters, hyphens (-) and periods (.) can be entered in the *接続先(APN)*.

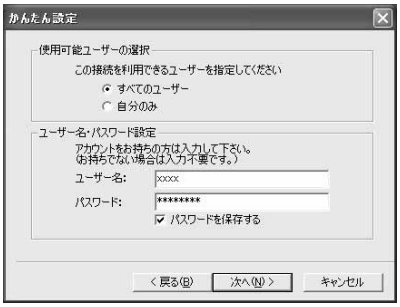
4 Click *OK*.

The display returns to the screen in Step 2. *接続先 (APN)* set in Step 3 is displayed in *接続先 (APN) の選択* (Select dialup connection (APN)).

5 Check the connection name (APN) of *接続先(APN) の選択* and click *次へ*.

6 Enter *ユーザー名* and *パスワード* and click *次へ*.

- Enter the *ユーザー名* and *パスワード* given by the provider correctly. Be careful about the upper/lower case of each character.
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the users that are allowed to access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection is not displayed.



7 Check that *最適化を行う* is selected and click *次へ*.

This optimizes the W-TCP setup required for packet communication.

- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.

8 Check the settings and click *完了*.

9 Click *OK*.

The PC must be rebooted for the changes to take effect. Click *はい* when a window prompts you to reboot the PC.

- If optimization of W-TCP Setting has already been performed, the PC must not be rebooted.
- Performing communication ☛P443

Setting 64K data communication by easy setup

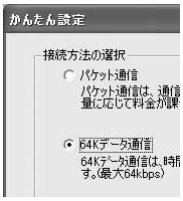
Example For Windows XP

Using mopera U / mopera

- Using other providers ☛P442

1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of "Using mopera U / mopera" of "Setting packet communication by easy setup". ☛P438

- Select ***64K*** *データ通信* (64K data communication) in Step 2 for the communication procedure.



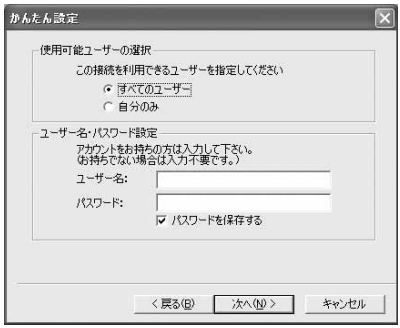
2 Enter the connection name and select the modem and click *次へ*.

- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be entered:

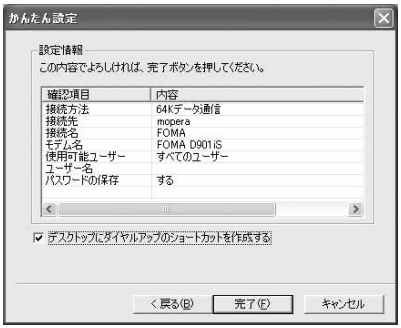
  ¥ / : * ? ! < > | "
- Check that ***FOMA D901iS*** is set for *モデムの選択* (Modem selection).

3 Click *次へ*.

- The entry of *ユーザー名* or *パスワード* is not required.
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the users that are allowed to access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection is not displayed.



4 Check the settings and click *完了*.



5 Click *OK*.

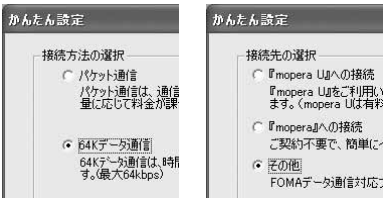
- Performing communication ☛P443

Using other providers

- Using mopera U / mopera ☛P441

1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of "Using mopera U / mopera" of "Setting packet communication by easy setup". ☛P438

- Select ***64K*** *データ通信* in Step 2 for the communication procedure, and *その他* in Step 3 for the dialup connection.



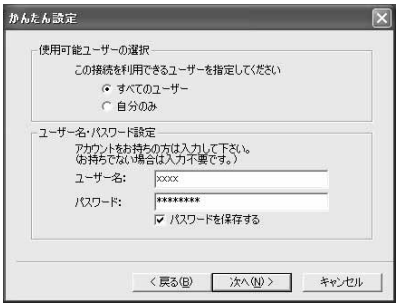
2 Set each item and click *次へ*.

- Register the following items.
  - *接続名* : Optional
  - *モデムの選択* : FOMA D901iS
  - *電話番号* (Phone number): Enter based on provider information.

■ **Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting)**
Click *詳細情報の設定* to display ***IP*** *アドレス* and *ネームサーバー* setting screens. When the provider you subscribe to, the company LAN and other dialup information are required, register addresses based on the information.

3 Enter *ユーザー名* and *パスワード* and click *次へ*.

- Enter the *ユーザー名* or *パスワード* given by the provider correctly. Be careful about the upper/lower case of each character.
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the users that are allowed to access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection is not displayed.



4 Check the settings and click *完了*.

5 Click *OK*.

- Performing communication ☛P443

Performing communication

Starting communication set with the FOMA PC configuration software and disconnection are explained here.

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC. ☛P434

2 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop.

Data communication starts.
- The icon varies depending on the OS.

- When there is no connection icon made on desktop, start from Start menu.

■ Starting from Start menu of Windows XP

① **Click** *スタート*, *すべてのプログラム*, *アクセサリ* **(Accessories),** *通信* **(Communication), and** *ネットワーク接続* **(Network connection). Then double-click the connection icon.**

■ Starting from Start menu of Windows 2000, Me or 98

① **Click** *スタート*, *プログラム*, *アクセサリ*, *通信* **and** *ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続* **(Network and dialup connections) (***ダイヤルアップネットワーク* **(Dialup network) for Me/98). Then double-click the connection icon.**

3 Establish a connection.

- Enter *ユーザー名* and *パスワード* and click *ダイヤル*.
- When mopera U / mopera is selected, the entry of *ユーザー名* or *パスワード* is not required.
- Connection established screen may be displayed depending on the OS. Click ***OK***.

INFORMATION

- FOMA terminal displays a connecting screen when you execute packet or 64K data communication. The following screens are displayed when a connection has been established:

- The transmission speed displayed on your PC may differ from actual speed.
- Data transmission is available only with FOMA terminal that was connected when the icon was created.
- When connecting FOMA terminal other than D901iS, installation of the communication configuration file for your FOMA terminal is needed.

Disconnecting

Just exiting the browser may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation:

1 Click in the task tray.

- Double-click for Windows Me and 98.

2 Click *切断* (Disconnect).

Optimizing packet communication setup

The method of optimizing the PC packet communication setup for FOMA network by means of “W-TCP setup” and canceling optimization is explained here.

The “W-TCP setup” is a “TCP parameter tuning tool” for optimizing TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communication in the FOMA network. To enable full use of the communication capability of FOMA terminal, this communication set up is required.

For Windows XP

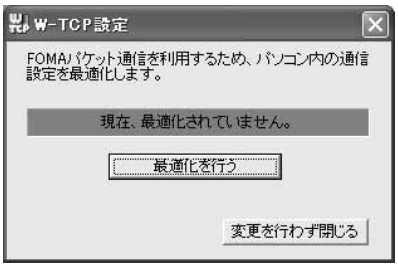
System optimization can be performed for each dialup connection.

1 Start *FOMA PC 設定ソフト* and click *W-TCP 設定* (W-TCP setup). ☛P438

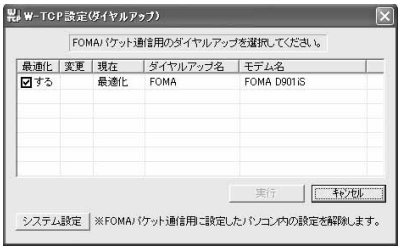
■ **Starting from task tray**
① **Click** .

2 Perform the following.

■ **When the system has not been optimized**
① **Click *最適化を行う* on the W-TCP setting screen.**
② **Select the dialup connection to be optimized and click *実行* (Execute).**
Optimization of the system settings and dialup settings are performed respectively.



■ **When the system has been optimized**
The following screen is displayed. Make the required settings if changes are to be made.



■ **Deactivating optimization**
① **Click *システム設定* (System setting) in *W-TCP設定(ダイヤルアップ)* (Set W-TCP (dialup)) screen.**
W-TCP setting screen is displayed.
② **Click *最適化を解除する* (Deactivate optimization).**

3 Reboot Windows, following the instruction shown on the screen.

• The settings take effect after rebooting the PC.

Under Windows 2000, Me or 98

1 Start *FOMA PC 設定ソフト* and click *W-TCP 設定* (W-TCP setup). ☛P438

■ **Starting from task tray**
① **Click** .

2 Perform the following.

■ **When the system has not been optimized**
① **Click *最適化を行う*.**

■ **When the system has been canceled**
① **Click *最適化を解除する*.**

3 Reboot Windows, following the instruction shown on the screen.

• The settings take effect after rebooting the PC.

Setting dialup connection (APN)

Set dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.

• Up to 10 dialup connections (APNs) can be set, which are to be registered under registration numbers (cid) 1 to 10 for management.
• By default, “mopera.ne.jp” is set for cid1 and “mopera.net” for cid3.
• Before setup, make sure that FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ☛P435
• For dialup connection (APN) other than mopera U / mopera, inquire your provider or network administrator.

1 Start *FOMA PC 設定ソフト* and click *接続先(APN)設定*. ☛P438

FOMA 端末設定取得 screen is displayed.

2 Click *OK*.

FOMA terminal is accessed for reading the “dialup connection (APN) information” registered.

3 Make the dialup connection (APN) settings.

■ **Adding dialup connections (APN)**
① **Click *追加*.**

■ **Editing or correcting registered dialup connections (APN)**
① **Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list and click *編集* (Edit).**

■ **Deleting registered dialup connection (APN)**

① **Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list and click *削除* (Delete).**

・The dialup connection registered in cid1 and cid3 cannot be deleted. (Selecting cid3 and clicking *削除* cannot actually delete, but return to "mopera.net".)

■ **Saving settings as file**

① **Click *ファイル* (File) and *名前を付けて保存* (Save as...) or *上書き保存* (Overwrite).**

・Save the settings as a file to back up dialup connection (APN) settings registered in FOMA terminal or save dialup connection (APN) settings during editing.

■ **Importing settings from file**

① **Click *ファイル* and *開く* (Open).**

・Import settings from a file to edit dialup connection (APN) saved on the PC or write to FOMA terminal.

■ **Importing dialup connection (APN) information from FOMA terminal**

① **Click *ファイル* and *FOMA端末から設定を取得* (Import setting from FOMA terminal).**

Access manually to FOMA terminal to import the dialup connection (APN) information registered.

■ **Writing dialup connection (APN) information to FOMA terminal**

① **Click *FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む* (Write setting to FOMA terminal).**

The dialup connection (APN) setting displayed is written to FOMA terminal.

■ **Creating dialup connections**

① **Select an added or edited dialup connection (APN) and click *ダイヤルアップ作成* (Create dialup connection).**

FOMA 端末設定書き込み (Write setting to FOMA terminal) screen is displayed.

② **Click *はい*.**

When the dialup connection (APN) information have been written to FOMA terminal, *パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成* (Create dialup connection for packet communication) screen is displayed.

③ **Enter a connection name and click *アカウント・パスワードの設定* (Set account and password).**

④ **Enter *ユーザー名* and *パスワード* and click *OK*.**

・Not required for mopera U / mopera.

・When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the users that are allowed to access the connection.

・Some providers may require you to enter IP and DNS information settings. Should this be the case, click *詳細情報の設定* in *パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成* screen, register the required information and click ***OK***.

⑤ **Click *FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む*.**

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite.

⑥ **Click *はい*.**

INFORMATION

- The dialup connection (APN) setting is information saved in FOMA terminal. When connecting another FOMA terminal (terminal replaced by repair, etc.), re-register the APN.
- To continue to use the dialup connection (APN) saved in the PC, save the registration number (cid) of the same APN in FOMA terminal.
- When FOMA terminal is detected as number larger than COM20 by checking the communication configuration file, APN information cannot be obtained or written during an APN setting. Set the information using "Hyper Terminal" that comes with Windows in that case. ☛P446

Uninstalling FOMA PC configuration software

・Before operation, read "Before installation/ uninstallation" ☛P434

Uninstall preparations

Right-click in the task tray, and click *常駐させない* (Do not reside), to cancel the resident of "W-TCP setup".

Uninstalling

Example For Windows XP

1 **Click *スタート*, *コントロールパネル* and *プログラムの追加と削除* icon.**

■ **For Windows 2000, Me, 98**

① **Click *スタート*, *設定* and *コントロールパネル*. Then double-click *アプリケーションの追加と削除* icon.**

2 **Select *NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト* (FOMA PC configuration software) and click *変更と削除*.**

3 Check that you have selected the correct program to delete and click *はい*.

The uninstall process of the FOMA PC configuration software starts.

■ **Canceling "W-TCP optimization"**
The confirmation screen is displayed when W-TCP is optimized.

- Click *はい* to uninstall.
- Canceling of "W-TCP optimization" is performed after the system is rebooted.

4 Click *OK*.

Communicating without using FOMA PC configuration software

The method of dialup network setup for packet communication/64K data communication without the FOMA PC configuration software is explained.

Setting operation procedures

Install communication configuration file ☛P435
Connect PC to FOMA terminal ☛P434

↓

Set dialup connection (APN)
(For 64K data communication and packet communication via mopera U / mopera, dialup connection do not require this setting.)

↓

Set to show/hide caller ID ☛P447 (Set as required.)

↓

Other settings (AT commands) ☛P455
(Set as required.)

↓

Dialup network

OS \ Settings	Dialup connection → TCP/IP	
Windows XP	P448	P449
Windows 2000	P450	P451
Windows Me	P452	P453
Windows 98	P454	P454

Note: For current setting details, inquire your provider or network administrator.

↓

Connect ☛P454 (Disconnect ☛P455)

Setting dialup connection (APN) for packet communication

Communication software to input AT commands is required for making settings. The method of setting using "HyperTerminal" that comes with Windows is explained here.

Default cid1：mopera.ne.jp cid3：mopera.net
cid2, 4 to 10：not recorded

Example For Windows XP

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC. ☛P434

2 Click *スタート*, *すべてのプログラム*, *アクセサリ*, *通信* and *ハイパーターミナル* (HyperTerminal). (Also double-click *Hypertrm* under Windows 98).

- For other than Windows XP, *プログラム* is displayed for *すべてのプログラム*.

3 Enter the dialup connection name in *名前* and click *OK*.

4 Enter a fictional phone number (such as 0) for *電話番号*, select *FOMA D901iS* from *接続方法* (Connection procedure), and click *OK*.

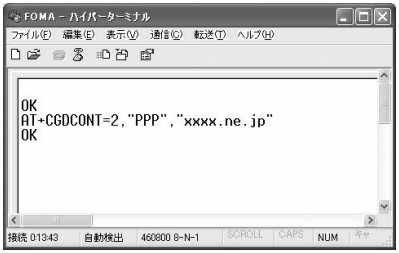
- Since area code does not effect dialup connection (APN) setting, it is not necessary to change.

5 Click *キャンセル*, when the connection screen is displayed.

6 Enter the dialup connection (APN) and press ↵.

- Enter the setting in the format "AT+CGDCONT =<cid>, "PPP", "APN"".

<cid> : Enter any number between 2, 4 to 10.
"PPP" : Enter "PPP".
"APN" : Enter the dialup connection (APN) in quotation marks.



If ***OK*** is displayed, the dialup connection (APN) has now been set.

■ **Resetting dialup connection (APN) settings**

AT + CGDCONT=↵ :
Reset all cids.

- The settings are restored to the default setting for <cid> = 1 and 3, and the settings for <cid> = 2, 4 to 10 are cleared.

AT + CGDCONT=<cid>↵ :
Reset specified cid

■ **Checking dialup connection (APN) settings**

AT + CGDCONT?↵

- For details ☛P460

■ **When nothing is displayed even if AT command is entered**

ATE1↵

- For details ☛P458

7 Check that *OK* is displayed and click *ファイル*, *ハイパーターミナルの終了* (End Hyper Terminal).

- ***"XXX"*と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか?** (Save the connection named "XXX"?) is displayed. Click *いいえ*.

The dialup connection (APN) and registration number (cid)

The dialup communication (APN) for packet communication can be set for registration numbers between cid1 to 10 in FOMA terminal. By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is set for cid1 and "mopera.net" for cid3. This setting is not required for mopera U / mopera. For connecting to other providers or corporate LANs, register APN for cid2, 4 to 10.

- For the dialup connection (APN), inquire your provider or network administrator.
- The dialup connection settings can be considered as phonebook entries registered for packet communication. The comparison between dialup connection settings and the FOMA terminal phonebook is as follows:

Dialup connection settings	FOMA terminal phonebook entries
Registration number (cid)	Registration number (Phonebook No.)
APN	Party's phone number

- The registered cid become the connection numbers of dialup connection setting.

Setting show/hide caller ID

Take care when disclosing your caller ID since it is important information.

- Settings must be "Show" for using mopera U / mopera.

Default not set

1 Perform Steps 1 to 5 of "Setting dialup connection (APN) for packet communication". ☛P446

2 Set show (186)/hide (184) caller ID during packet communication.

Enter in the format "AT ✻ DGPIR=<n>".

AT ✻ DGPIR=1↵ :
When packet communication connection is being established, "184" is added to connect to the dialup connection (APN).

AT ✻ DGPIR=2↵ :
When packet communication connection is being established, "186" is added to connect to the dialup connection (APN).

3 Check that *OK* is displayed and click *ファイル*, *ハイパーターミナルの終了*.

- ***"XXX"*と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか?** is displayed. Click *いいえ*.

■ **Setting to show/hide caller ID by dialup network settings**

The dialup network settings can also be used to append “186 (show)” or “184 (hide)” to the dialup connection number.

If “186” (show) or “184” (hide) is set by both the AT ＊ DGPIR command and dialup network settings, the show/hide caller ID setting is as shown below.

Show/hide caller ID setting made by AT ＊ DGPIR command / Dialup network Setting (<cid>=1)	not set	Hide	Show
＊99＊＊＊1#	Caller ID is sent.	Caller ID is not sent.	Caller ID is sent.
184＊99＊＊＊1#	Caller ID is not sent.		
186＊99＊＊＊1#	Caller ID is sent.		

- To reset the show/hide setting made by the AT ＊ DGPIR command to the default (not set), enter “AT ＊ DGPIR=0”.

Setting for Windows XP

Use network connection wizard to set the dialup connection and TCP/IP protocol.

Setting dialup connection

1 **Click *スタート*, *すべてのプログラム*, *アクセサリ*, *通信* and *ネットワーク接続*.**

ネットワーク接続 screen is displayed.

2 **Click *新しい接続を作成する* (Create new connection) in *ネットワークタスク* (Network task).**

新しい接続ウィザード (New Connection Wizard) screen is displayed.

3 **Click *次へ*.**

A screen for selecting the type of network connection is displayed.

4 **Select *インターネットに接続する* (Connect to Internet) and click *次へ*.**

The setup screen is displayed.

5 **Select *接続を手動でセットアップする* (Set up connection manually) and click *次へ*.**

The Internet connection screen is displayed.

6 **Select *ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する* (Use dialup modem to connect) and click *次へ*.**

The device selection screen is displayed.

- If there is only one modem installed, the device selection screen is not displayed. Go to Step 8.

7 **Select *モデム－FOMA D901iS (COMx)* (Modem: FOMA D901iS (COMx)) and click *次へ*.**

8 **Enter connection name in *ISP名* (ISP name) and click *次へ*.**

9 **Enter the number of the dialup connection (one-byte) in *電話番号* and click *次へ*.**

■ **For packet communication**

Enter “＊99＊＊＊<cid>#”.

- For <cid>, enter the cid number, registered in “Setting dialup connection (APN) for packet communication”. “＊99＊＊＊3#” for mopera U and “＊99＊＊＊1#” for mopera.

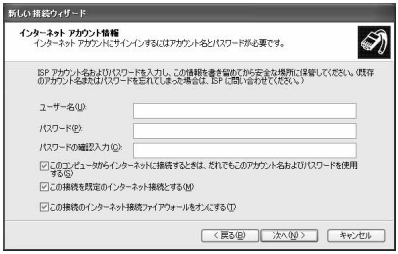
■ **For 64K data communication**

Enter the dialup connection phone number.

- “＊8701” for mopera U and “ ＊9601” for mopera.

10 **Enter *ユーザー名*, *パスワード*, *パスワードの確認入力* (Check and Enter Password), and set the other items as shown and click *次へ*.**

- When the access point is mopera U / mopera, the entry of *ユーザー名*, *パスワード* and *パスワードの確認入力* is not required. Set each items as shown and click *次へ*.



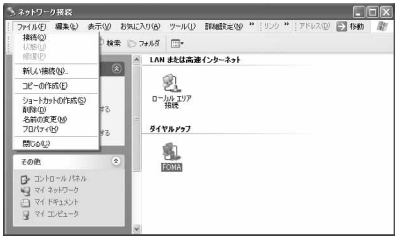
11 **Click *完了*.**

12 **Check the settings and click *キャンセル*.**

- Check the settings without connecting to the Internet immediately.

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 **Select the created dialup connection icon and click *ファイル* and *プロパティ* (Properties).**



2 **Check the setting of each item in *全般* (General) tab.**

- When multiple modems are installed to the PC, in *接続方法*, select *モデム - **FOMA D901iS (COMx)***.
- Uncheck (☐) *ダイヤル情報を使う* (Use dial information).

3 **Click *ネットワーク* (Network) tab and check the setting of each item.**

- Set ***PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet*** as *呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類* (Type of dialup server to call).
- Select only *インターネット プロトコル **(TCP/IP)*** (Internet protocol (TCP/IP)) in *この接続は次の項目を使用します* (Use these items for this connection). Since ***QoS*** *パケット スケジューラ* (QoS packet scheduler) settings can not be changed, leave it as it is.

4 **Click *設定*.**

5 **Uncheck (☐) all items and click *OK*.**

The dialup connection properties screen reappears.

6 **Click *OK*.**

Setting for Windows 2000

Use network connection wizard to set the dialup connection and TCP/IP protocol.

Setting dialup connection

1 **Click *スタート*, *プログラム*, *アクセサリ*, *通信* and *ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続*.**

ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 screen is displayed.

2 **Double-click *新しい接続の作成* icon.**

所在地情報 (Location information) screen is displayed.

- This screen is displayed for the first time you double-click *新しい接続の作成* icon. From the second time, go to Step 5.

3 **Enter the number in *市外局番* (Area code) and click *OK*.**

電話とモデムのオプション (Phone and modem options) screen is displayed.

4 **Click *OK*.**

ネットワークの接続ウィザード screen is displayed.

5 **Click *次へ*.**

A screen for selecting the type of network connection is displayed.

6 **Select *インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する* (Use dialup connection to Internet) and click *次へ*.**

Internet connection Wizard's start screen is displayed.

7 **Select *インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します* (Set Internet connection manually or connect using local area network (LAN)) and click *次へ*.**

Internet connection setting selection screen is displayed.

8 **Select *電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します* (Connect to Internet using phone line and modem) and click *次へ*.**

The modem selection screen is displayed.

- This screen is not displayed if multiple modems are not installed. Go to Step 10.

9 **Check that *インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する* (Select modem to use for connection to Internet) is set to *FOMA D901iS* and click *次へ*.**

The Internet account connection information screen is displayed.

- If ***FOMA D901iS*** is not set, set ***FOMA D901iS***.

10 **Enter the number of the dialup connection (one-byte) in *電話番号* and click *詳細設定* (Detailed settings).**

■ **For packet communication**

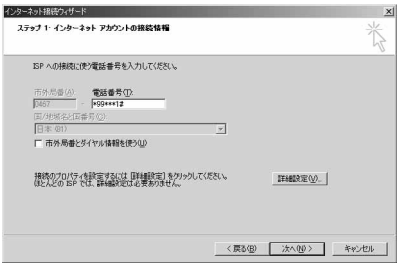
Enter "＊99＊＊＊<cid>#".

- For <cid>, enter the cid number registered in "Setting dialup connection (APN) for packet communication". "＊ 99 ＊＊＊ 3#" for mopera U and "＊ 99 ＊＊＊ 1#" for mopera.

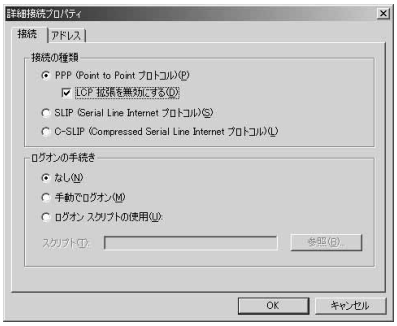
■ **For 64K data communication**

Enter the dialup connection phone number.

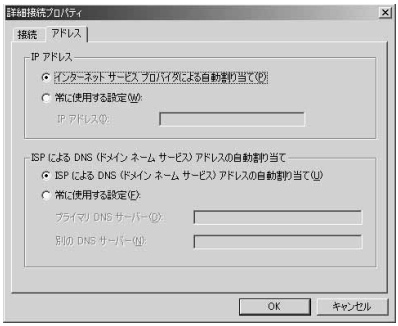
- "＊ 8701" for mopera U and "＊ 9601" for mopera.
- Uncheck (☐) *市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う* (Use area code and dial information).



11 **Set each item in *接続* (Connection) tab as shown.**



12 **Click *アドレス* (Address) tab and set each item as shown.**



13 **Click *OK*.**

Internet account connection information screen reappears.

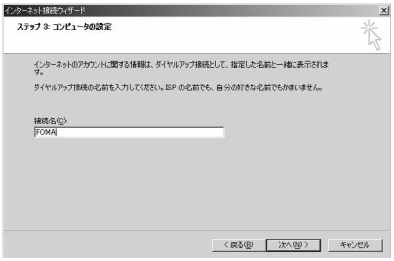
14 **Click *次へ*.**

Internet account logon information screen is displayed.

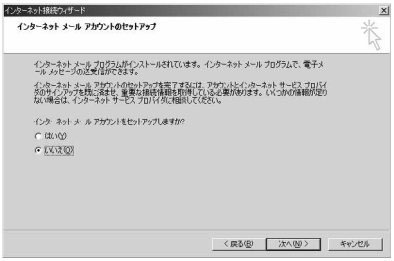
15 **Enter *ユーザー名* and *パスワード* and click *次へ*.**

- When the dialup connection is mopera U / mopera, the entry of *ユーザー名* or *パスワード* is not required. When a confirmation screen for no entry is displayed, click *はい*.

16 **Enter the dialup connection name in *接続名* and click *次へ*.**



17 **Select *いいえ* and click *次へ*.**

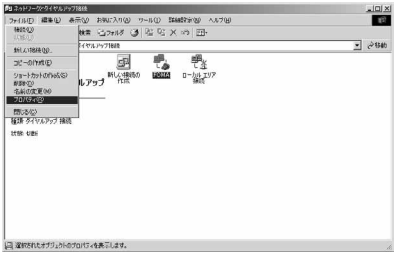


18 **Click *完了*.**

ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 screen reappears.

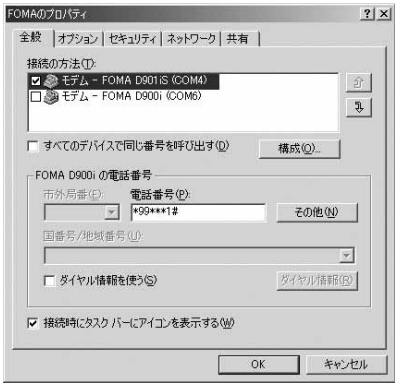
Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 **Select the created dialup connection icon and click *ファイル* and *プロパティ*.**



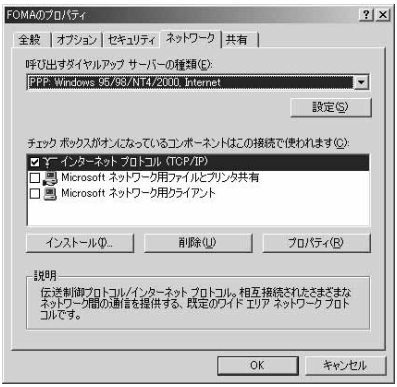
2 Check the setting of each item in *全般* tab.

- If multiple modems are installed in the PC, select *モデム-**FOMA D901iS (COMx)*** in *接続の方法* item.
  When the modem is changed, all items in *電話番号* is initialized. Enter the dialup connection phone number again in that case.
- Uncheck (☐) *ダイヤル情報を使う*.



3 Click *ネットワーク* tab and check the setting of each item.

- Set ***PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet*** as *呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類*.
- Select only *インターネット プロトコル **(TCP/IP)*** for component.



4 Click *設定*.

5 Uncheck all items (☐) and click *OK*.

The dialup connection properties screen reappears.

6 Click *OK*.

Setting for Windows Me

Setting dialup connection

1 Click *スタート*, *プログラム*, *アクセサリ*, *通信* and *ダイヤルアップネットワーク*.

ダイヤルアップネットワークへようこそ (Welcome to dialup network) screen is displayed.

- This screen is displayed when *ダイヤルアップネットワーク* is selected for the first time. From the second time, go to Step 3.

2 Click *次へ*.

ダイヤルアップネットワーク screen is displayed.

3 Double-click *新しい接続* (New connection) icon.

4 Enter the dialup connection name in *接続名* and click *次へ*.

- Check that ***FOMA D901iS*** is set for *モデムの選択*. If it is not set, set ***FOMA D901iS***.

5 Enter the dialup connection number (one-byte) and click *次へ*.

■ **For packet communication**

Enter "＊99＊＊＊<cid>#".

- For <cid>, enter the cid number registered in "Setting dialup connection (APN) for packet communication". "＊ 99 ＊＊＊ 3#" for mopera U and "＊ 99 ＊＊＊ 1#" for mopera.

■ **For 64K data communication**

Enter the dialup connection phone number.

- "＊ 8701" for mopera U and "＊ 9601" for mopera.
- *市外局番* does not need to be entered.

6 Check the name of the dialup connection and click *完了*.

Setting TCP/IP protocol

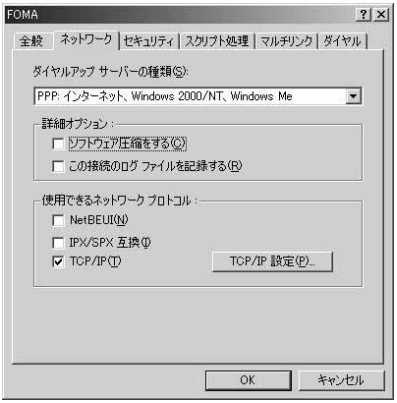
1 Select the created dialup connection icon and click *ファイル* and *プロパティ*.

2 Check the setting of each item in *全般* tab.

- Uncheck (☐) *市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う*(Use area code and dial properties).
- Check that ***FOMA D901iS*** is set for *接続方法*. If it is not set, set ***FOMA D901iS***.

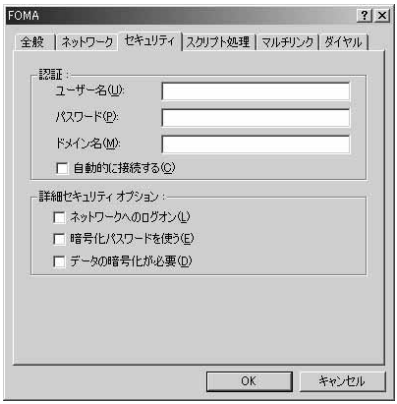
3 Click *ネットワーク* tab and check the setting of each item.

- Set *ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類* (Dialup server type) to ***PPP:*** *インターネット*, ***Windows 2000/NT, Windows Me*** (PPP: Internet, Windows 2000/NT, Windows Me).
- Uncheck (☐) all *詳細オプション*.
- Select only ***TCP/IP*** for *使用できるネットワーク プロトコル* (Available protocol).



4 Click *セキュリティ* (Security) tab, enter *ユーザー名*, *パスワード* and click *OK*.

- When the dialup connection is mopera U / mopera, the entry of *ユーザー名* or *パスワード* is not required.



Setting for Windows 98

Setting dialup connection

The operation procedures are the same as for Windows Me. ☛P452

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Follow steps 1 to 2 of "Setting TCP/IP protocol" of "Setting for Windows Me". ☛P453

2 Click *サーバーの種類* (Server type) tab and check the setting of each item.

- Set *ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類* to ***PPP: インターネット, Windows NT Server, Windows 98*** (PPP: Internet, Windows NT Server, Windows 98).
- Select only ***TCP/IP*** for *使用できるネットワーク プロトコル*.

3 Click *OK*.

Connecting through dial-up

The method of dialup connection for packet communication/64K data communication is explained.

Example For Windows XP

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC. ☛P434

2 Click *スタート*, *すべてのプログラム*, *アクセサリ*, *通信* and *ネットワーク接続*.

ネットワーク接続 screen is displayed.

- Under the Windows 2000, Me or 98, click *スタート* menu, *プログラム*, *アクセサリ*, *通信* and *ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続* (*ダイヤルアップネットワーク* for Me and 98).

3 Double-click the dialup connection icon.

4 Check each items and click *ダイヤル* (Dial).

- Under the Windows Me and 98, check each items and click *接続*.
- The phone number for the access point set for the dialup network is shown in *ダイヤル* or *電話番号*.
- When the dialup connection is mopera U / mopera, the entry of *ユーザー名* or *パスワード* is not required.

Disconnecting

Just exiting the browser may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation:

1 Click in the task tray.

The connection screen is displayed.

- Double-click for Windows Me and 98.

2 Click *切断*.

AT command

AT commands are commands for setting FOMA terminal functions using a PC.
FOMA terminals comply with AT commands and support some extended commands and proprietary AT commands.

About the AT command

■ **AT command input format**

"AT" must be entered before each AT command. Commands must be entered in one-byte alphanumeric characters. An input example is as follows:

ATD ＊ 99 ＊＊＊ 1# ↵
Command Parameter Press Enter key.

AT commands and their parameters (numbers or symbols) must be entered on a single line. All the characters from the first character to the character just before ↵ must be entered on a single line. Up to 160 characters (including "AT") can be entered in each line.

■ **AT command input mode**

To operate FOMA terminal using AT commands, the PC must be in the terminal mode.
Terminal mode is a mode that lets the PC operate as a single communication terminal. Characters entered from the keyboard are sent to the device or line connected to the communication port.

- Offline mode
  FOMA terminal in stand-by status. FOMA terminal must be in this status to use AT commands to control it.
- Online data mode
  FOMA terminal is in the communication mode. If you enter AT commands when FOMA terminal is performing communication, the received characters are sent directly to the communication receiver and may cause the receiver's modem to malfunction. Do not enter AT commands while FOMA terminal is performing communication.
- Online command mode
  AT commands allow you to operate FOMA terminal even when FOMA terminal is in the communication mode. These operations make it possible to execute AT commands without interfering with the connection to the communication receiver, and normal communication can continue after the commands have finished executing.

Switching between the online data mode and online command mode

To switch FOMA terminal from the online data mode to online command mode, you can use either one of the following procedures:

- Enter the "+++" command or the code set in the "S2" register.
- Turn the RS-232C* ER signal off when set in "AT&D1".

To switch from the online command mode to online data mode, enter "ATO ↵ ".

* The USB interface emulates an RS-232C signal line, so RS-232C signal control using communication applications is possible.

AT command list

- When AT commands are input, entering "¥" may cause "\" to appear depending on the font settings for the PC or communication software in use.
- If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned off, the setting values may not be recorded.
- AT command that can be used via the FOMA D901iS Modem Port is described in this list.

*1 : Indicates that you can return the command setting to the default with the AT&F command.
*2 : Indicates that you can store the command setting into your FOMA terminal with the AT&W command and restore it with the ATZ command.
None : Indicates the AT command does not include any display command or test command.
[ ] : Indicates the parameter can be omitted.

Command	Description & Parameter					
AT%V	Shows the version of your FOMA terminal in the format of "Verx.xx".					
ex.	Enter	AT%V	Display	None	Test	None
AT&C [n]	Selects the operational conditions of the circuit CD signal outgoing to DTE. n=0: The circuit CD signal is always on. (when parameter omitted) n=1: The circuit CD signal varies depending on the other modem. (default)					
*1, *2 ex.	Enter	AT&C1	Display	None	Test	None
AT&D [n]	Determines an action to be taken when the circuit ER signal coming from DTE changes from on to off in the online data mode. n=0: Ignores the ER signal condition (always on). (when parameter omitted) n=1: Switches the mode to the online command mode when the ER signal changes from on to off. n=2: Disconnects the circuit and switches the mode to the offline mode when the ER signal changes from on to off. (default)					
*1, *2 ex.	Enter	AT&D1	Display	None	Test	None
AT&E [n]	Selects type of speed display used when connection is made. This command is effective only when the ATX command is other than "n=0". n=0: Displays communication speed of wireless zone. n=1: Displays communication speed between PC and FOMA terminal. (default)					
*1, *2 ex.	Enter	AT&E1	Display	None	Test	None
AT&F [0]	Resets all FOMA terminal state to the factory preset. When executed while receiving a call, it resets FOMA terminal state to the factory preset without affecting the call. When executed during communication, the terminal state returns to default after you disconnect the communication.					
ex.	Enter	AT&F0	Display	None	Test	None
AT&S [n]	Determines the control of the DR signal FOMA terminal outputs. n=0: Always on. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: The DR signal turns on when the circuit is connected.					
*1, *2 ex.	Enter	AT&S0	Display	None	Test	None
AT&W [0]	Writes the current settings into FOMA terminal.					
ex.	Enter	AT&W0	Display	None	Test	None
AT ＊ DANTE	Shows the signal strength (reception level) in the format of " ＊ DANTE:m". m=0: Outside of the service area. m=1, 2, 3: Number of antennas displayed on FOMA terminal.					
ex.	Enter	AT ＊ DANTE	Display	AT ＊ DANTE?	Test	AT ＊ DANTE=?
AT ＊ DGANSM=n	Specifies whether to reject or accept an incoming packet call. n=0: Sets both the incoming call rejection and the incoming call acceptance off (default). n=1: Sets the incoming call rejection on. n=2: Sets the incoming call acceptance on.					
ex.	Enter	AT ＊ DGANSM=0	Display	AT ＊ DGANSM?	Test	AT ＊ DGANSM=?
AT ＊ DGAPL=n [,cid]	Specifies dialup connection (APN) to accept incoming packet calls from them. For an APN, use the cid parameter defined with "+CGDCONT". n=0: Adds the APN defined with the cid parameter to the call acceptance list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined with the cid parameter from the call acceptance list. When you omit the cid parameter, all cids will be added or deleted.					
ex.	Enter	AT ＊ DGAPL=0,1	Display	AT ＊ DGAPL?	Test	AT ＊ DGAPL=?
AT ＊ DGARL=n [,cid]	Specifies dialup connection (APN) to reject incoming packet calls from them. For an APN, use the cid parameter defined with "+CGDCONT". n=0: Adds the APN defined with the cid parameter to the call rejection list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined with the cid parameter from the call rejection list. When you omit the cid parameter, all cids will be added or deleted.					
ex.	Enter	AT ＊ DGARL=0,1	Display	AT ＊ DGARL?	Test	AT ＊ DGARL=?

Command		Description & Parameter					
AT＊DGPIR=n		Specifies whether to notify the caller ID for packet communication. This specification is effective both for incoming and outgoing calls. n=0: The APN is used as is when a packet communication is established. (default) n=1: Adds “184” to the APN when a packet communication is established. n=2: Adds “186” to the APN when a packet communication is established.					
	ex.	Enter	AT＊DGPIR=0	Display	AT＊DGPIR?	Test	AT＊DGPIR=?
AT＊DRPW		Shows the level of power reception in the format of “＊DRPW:m”, where the value of m ranges from 0 to 75.					
	ex.	Enter	AT＊DRPW	Display	None	Test	AT＊DRPW=?
+++		Changes FOMA terminal mode from the online data to the online command. The duration of escape guard is fixed to 1 sec.					
	ex.	Enter	+++	Display	None	Test	None
AT+CEER		Shows a reason of the disconnected communication. ☛P460					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CEER	Display	None	Test	AT+CEER=?
AT+CGDCONT		Specifies the APN for packet communication. ☛P460					
AT+CGEQMIN		Specifies the criteria for permitting the QoS (Quality of Service) level required by the network when the packet communication is established. ☛P460					
AT+CGEQREQ		Specifies the desired QoS level to be sent to the network when you originates a packet call. ☛P461					
AT+CGMR		Shows the version of your FOMA terminal with a 16-digit number.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CGMR	Display	None	Test	AT+CGMR=?
AT+CGREG= [n]		Determines whether to notify the network registration state. Either “inside the service area” or “outside the service area” is notified. n=0: Not notified. (default and when parameter omitted). n=1: Notified in the format of “+CGREG:n,stat”. stat=0: outside the service area stat=1: Inside the service area (home) stat=4: Unknown stat=5: inside the service area (visitor)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CGREG=1	Display	AT+CGREG?	Test	AT+CGREG=?
AT+CGSN		Shows the manufacturer’s serial number of FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CGSN	Display	None	Test	AT+CGSN=?
AT+CLIP= [n]		Specifies whether to show the caller ID of an incoming 64K data communication on the PC’s screen. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the information. If you enter “AT+CLIP?”, it shows “+CLIP:n,m”. m=0: The network setting that does not show your caller ID to the other party when you originate a call. m=1: The network setting that shows your caller ID to the other party when you originates a call. m=2: Unknown					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CLIP=0	Display	AT+CLIP?	Test	AT+CLIP=?
AT+CLIR= [n]		Specifies whether to show your caller ID to the other party when you originate a 64K data communication. n=0: In accordance with the service agreement. (when parameter omitted). n=1: Not notified. n=2: Notifies the caller ID. (default) If you enter “AT+CLIR?”, it shows “+CLIR:n,m”. m=0: CLIR is not activated (caller ID always notified). m=1: CLIR is activated (caller ID always not notified). m=2: Unknown m=3: CLIR temporary mode (default for “not notified”). m=4: CLIR temporary mode (default for “notified”).					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CLIR=0	Display	AT+CLIR?	Test	AT+CLIR=?
AT+CMEE= [n]		Specifies the error report format of FOMA terminal. ☛P460 n=0: Shows “ERROR”. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows in the format of “+CME ERROR:xxxx” (xxxx=numbers) n=2: Shows in the format of “+CME ERROR:xxxx” (xxxx=characters)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CMEE=0	Display	AT+CMEE?	Test	AT+CMEE=?
AT+CNUM		Shows the Own Number data of your FOMA terminal in the format of “+CNUM: “number”,type”. number: Phone number type=129: Does not show “+81”. type=145: Shows “+81”.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CNUM	Display	None	Test	AT+CNUM=?
AT+CR= [n]		Specifies whether to display the communication type (packet communication or 64K data communication) before “CONNECT” during line connection. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted). n=1: Shows the information in the format of “+CR:serv”. serv=SYNC: 64K data communication serv=GPRS: Packet communication					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CR=0	Display	AT+CR?	Test	AT+CR=?

Command		Description & Parameter					
AT+CRC= [n]		Specifies whether to use result codes of “+CRING:type” for incoming calls. n=0: Does not use the result code of “+CRING:type”. (default and when parameter omitted). n=1: Uses the result code of “CRING:type”. The example of codes are as follows: Packet communication··· +CRING:GPRS “PPP”··· “mopera.ne.jp” 64K data communication··· +CRING:SYNC					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CRC=0	Display	AT+CRC?	Test	AT+CRC=?
AT+CREG= [n]		Specifies whether to show the “inside/outside the service area” information. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted). n=1: Shows the information. If you enter “AT+CREG?”, it shows the information in the format of “+CREG:n,stat”. stat=0: outside the service area stat=1: Inside the service area (home) stat=4: Unknown stat=5: inside the service area (visitor)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CREG=0	Display	AT+CREG?	Test	AT+CREG=?
AT+GMI		Shows the manufacturer’s name of FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMI	Display	None	Test	AT+GMI=?
AT+GMM		Shows FOMA terminal name.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMM	Display	None	Test	AT+GMM=?
AT+GMR		Shows the version of FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMR	Display	None	Test	AT+GMR=?
AT+IFC= [n,[m]]		Specifies the local flow control between the PC and FOMA terminal. n is for setting the DCE-by-DTE control. n=0: Does not use the flow control. n=1: Uses XON/XOFF flow control. n=2: Uses RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. (default). m is for setting the DTE-by-DCE control. If you omit this parameter, the same value as n is assumed. m=0: Does not use the flow control. m=1: Uses XON/XOFF flow control. m=2: Uses RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. (default). If you omit both parameters, “AT+IFC=2, 2” is assumed.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+IFC=2,2	Display	AT+IFC?	Test	AT+IFC=?
AT+WS46= [22]		Specifies the radio network FOMA terminal uses to originate a call.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+WS46=22	Display	AT+WS46?	Test	AT+WS46=?
ATA		Specifies how to handle incoming packet or 64K data communications. For an incoming packet communications, you can specify the following: ATA184: Receives an incoming call without the caller ID displayed ATA186: Receives an incoming call with the caller ID displayed					
	ex.	Enter	ATA	Display	None	Test	None
A/		Reexecutes the previous command.					
	ex.	Enter	A/	Display	None	Test	None
ATD		Originates a packet or 64K data communication. ・Packet call: Enter “ATD ＊ 99 ＊＊＊ cid#”. If you omit cid, “cid=1” is assumed. When you enter it in the format starting with “ATD184 ＊ 99”, “184 (hide caller ID)” is attached to the call outgoing to the APN specified with cid (“186 (show caller ID)” is treated in the same manner). ・64K data communication: Enter it in the format of “ATD phone-number”. ・Redialing: Enter it in the format of “ATDL” or “ATDN”.					
	ex.	Enter	ATD phone-number	Display	None	Test	None
ATE [n]		Echoes back the characters received from the PC. n=0: Gives no echo back. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Gives echo back. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATE0	Display	None	Test	None
ATH		Disconnects the packet or 64K data communication.					
	ex.	Enter	ATH	Display	None	Test	None
ATI [n]		Shows the identification code. n=0:Shows “NTT DoCoMo”. (when parameter omitted) n=1:Shows FOMA terminal name. n=2:Shows the version of FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	ATI0	Display	None	Test	None
ATO		Switched the mode from the online command to the online data.					
	ex.	Enter	ATO	Display	None	Test	None
ATQ [n]		Specifies whether to show the result code on the PC. n=0: Shows the result code. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Does not show the result code.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATQ0	Display	None	Test	None
ATV [n]		Specifies whether to show the result with numeric codes or text messages. n=0: Shows the result with numeric codes. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the result with text messages. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATV1	Display	None	Test	None

Command	Description & Parameter						
ATX [n]	Specifies whether to detect busy tone and dial tone, and whether to display the communication speed. n=0: Busy tone not detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed not displayed. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Busy tone not detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed displayed. n=2: Busy tone not detected, dial tone detected, communication speed displayed. n=3: Busy tone detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed displayed. n=4: Busy tone detected, dial tone detected, communication speed displayed. (default)						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATX1	Display	None	Test	None
ATZ	Resets FOMA terminal settings to those stored in the non-volatile memory with the AT&W command. If you enter this command during receiving a packet or 64K data communication, the settings are reset without affecting the call reception. If you enter it during communication, it disconnects the communication first and resets the settings.						
	ex.	Enter	ATZ	Display	None	Test	None
ATS0= [n]	Specifies the number of ringing signals (RING) which triggers automatic call acceptance on FOMA terminal. n=0: Does not accept calls automatically. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1 to 255						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATS0=0	Display	ATS0?	Test	None
ATS2= [n]	Specifies an escape character. n=0 to 127 (43: default 0: when parameter omitted 127: to disable the escape processing)						
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS2=43	Display	ATS2?	Test	None
ATS3= [13]	Specifies a carriage return (CR) character that indicates the end of AT command's character string. It is attached to the end of the echoed back command string and the result code. (The setting is not changeable.)						
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS3=13	Display	ATS3?	Test	None
ATS4= [10]	Specifies the Line Feed (LF) character. It follows the CR character when the result code is displayed with text. (The setting is not changeable)						
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS4=10	Display	ATS4?	Test	None
ATS5= [8]	Specifies a backspace (BS) character that deletes the last character in the input buffer while you are entering an AT command. (The setting is not changeable.)						
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS5=8	Display	ATS5?	Test	None
ATS6= [n]	Specifies the pause period before dialing. This command sets the register but no action will occur. n=2 to 10: 2 to 10 seconds. (5: default and when parameter omitted)						
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS6=5	Display	ATS6?	Test	None
ATS7= [n]	Specifies the waiting time after dialing till connection is established for the packet or 64K data communication. n=1 to 255: 1 to 255 seconds (60: default and when parameter omitted).						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATS7=60	Display	ATS7?	Test	None
ATS8= [n]	Specifies the comma dialing function (pause time). This command sets the register but the pause time is fixed to 3 seconds. n=0 to 255: 0 to 255 seconds. (3: default 0: when parameter is omitted)						
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS8=3	Display	ATS8?	Test	None
ATS10= [n]	Specifies the permissible delay time before automatic disconnection. This command sets the register but no action will occur. n=1 to 255: in 1/10 seconds. (1: default and when parameter omitted)						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATS10=1	Display	ATS10?	Test	None
ATS30= [n]	Specifies the time elapsed after the last data transmission to activate automatic disconnection. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=1 to 255: 1 to 255 minutes. n=0: Does not disconnect. (default and when parameter omitted)						
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS30=0	Display	ATS30?	Test	None
ATS103= [n]	Specifies a mark to be used to delimit a destination subaddress if attached. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=0: ＊ (when parameter omitted) n=1: / (default) n=2: ¥						
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS103=0	Display	ATS103?	Test	None
ATS104= [n]	Specifies a mark to be used to delimit a caller subaddress if attached. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=0: # (when parameter omitted) n=1: % (default) n=2: &						
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS104=0	Display	ATS104?	Test	None
AT¥S	Shows the command settings and the contents of the S register.						
	ex.	Enter	AT¥S	Display	None	Test	None
AT¥V [n]	Specifies whether to use the extended result code for connection. This command takes effect when the ATX command parameter is "n=1 to 4". n=0: Does not use the extended result code. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Uses the extended result code.						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT¥V0	Display	None	Test	None

Disconnection reason list

■ **Packet communication**

Value	Reason
27	APN is not present or is incorrect.
30	Disconnected by network.
33	Terminal does not subscribe to packet communication.
36	Normal disconnection.

■ **64K data communication**

Value	Reason
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Normal disconnection.
17	Communication is impossible because remote device is busy.
18	You made a call but did not receive a response within the specified time.
19	Communication is impossible because the remote device is busy calling.
21	The remote device rejected incoming calls.
63	The service and option of the network are not valid.
65	Unavailable processing speed was specified.
88	You made a call to a terminal or received a call from a terminal with different terminal properties.

Error messages list

No.	Text display	Reason
10	SIM not inserted	No UIM (FOMA card) is set
15	SIM wrong	Other than DoCoMo SIM (IC card equivalent to UIM) is inserted
16	incorrect password	Incorrect password
100	unknown	Unknown error

Supplement to AT command

■ **Command name: AT+CGDCONT= [parameter]**

- **Outline**
  Sets the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.
- **Format**
  AT+CGDCONT=[<cid>[, “PPP” [, “<APN>”]]]
- **Parameter description**
  <cid>: 1 to 10
  <APN>: Optional
- **Example of execution**
  The command used to register an APN named “abc” (when <cid>=2).
  AT+CGDCONT=2, “PPP”, “abc”
- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**
  AT+CGDCONT=
  Clears all <cid> settings. However, entry for “<cid>=1” and “<cid>=3” is restored to the default setting.

  AT+CGDCONT=<cid>
  Clears the specified <cid> settings. However, entry for “<cid>=1” and “<cid>=3” is restored to the default setting.

  AT+CGDCONT=?
  Displays a list of assignable values.

  AT+CGDCONT?
  Displays the current setting values.

■ **Command name: AT+CGEQMIN= [parameter]**

- **Outline**
  Registers the criteria for judging whether to approve QoS provisioned by the network when PPP packet communication is established.
- **Format**
  AT+CGEQMIN= [<cid>[,,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]
- **Parameter description**
  <cid>：1 to 10
  <Maximum bitrate UL>: None or 64
  <Maximum bitrate DL>: None or 384
  For “Maximum bitrate UL” and “Maximum bitrate DL”, the minimum communication speed (in kbps) is set for both upload and download traffic between FOMA terminal and the base station. If the parameter is set to “None (default)”, all speeds are permissible. However, if “64” and “384” are set, any connection at a speed less than the above limit is not permitted, and chances are that packet communication will not be connected.
- **Example of execution**
  (1) Command used to permit all speeds both upload and download (when <cid>=2)
  AT+CGEQMIN=2
  (2) Command used to permit only 64kbps upload and 384 kbps download (when <cid>=4)
  AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64,384
  (3) Command used to permit 64 kbps upload and all speeds download (when <cid>=5)
  AT+CGEQMIN=5,,64
  (4) Command used to permit all speeds upload and only 384 kbps download (when <cid>=6)
  AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,384

- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**
  AT+CGEQMIN=
  Clears all <cid> settings.
  AT+CGEQMIN=<cid>
  Returns the specified <cid> to the default setting.
  AT+CGEQMIN=?
  Displays a list of assignable values.
  AT+CGEQMIN?
  Displays the current settings.

■ **Command name: AT+CGEQREQ=[parameter]**

- **Outline**
  Sets QoS requested to the network when transmission is performed during PPP packet communication.
- **Format**
  AT+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]
- **Parameter description**
  Only commands that require connection at 64 kbps upload/384 kbps download can be set. The contents are set by default for each cid.
  <cid>: 1 to 10
- **Example of execution**
  (when <cid>=2)
  AT+CGEQREQ=2
- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**
  AT+CGEQREQ=
  Returns all <cid> to the default setting.
  AT+CGEQREQ=<cid>
  Returns the specified <cid> to the default setting.
  AT+CGEQREQ=?
  Displays a list of assignable values.
  AT+CGEQREQ?
  Displays the current settings.

Result codes

■ **Result codes**

No.	Text display	Meaning
0	OK	Operation performed normally
1	CONNECT	Terminal connected to remote device
2	RING	Incoming call
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected
4	ERROR	Unable to accept command
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dial tone
7	BUSY	Detecting the busy tone
8	NO ANSWER	Connection completed. Time-out
100	RESTRICTION	The communication network is busy. Please wait for a while and retry.
101	DELAYED	Redialing restricted

■ **Extended result code**

No.	Text display	Meaning
5	CONNECT 1200	Connected at 1,200 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
10	CONNECT 2400	Connected at 2,400 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
11	CONNECT 4800	Connected at 4,800 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
13	CONNECT 7200	Connected at 7,200 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
12	CONNECT 9600	Connected at 9,600 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
15	CONNECT 14400	Connected at 14,400 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
16	CONNECT 19200	Connected at 19,200 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
17	CONNECT 38400	Connected at 38,400 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
18	CONNECT 57600	Connected at 57,600 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
19	CONNECT 115200	Connected at 115,200 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
20	CONNECT 230400	Connected at 230,400 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
21	CONNECT 460800	Connected at 460,800 bps between FOMA terminal and PC

INFORMATION

- When the ATV [n] command (☛P458) is set to “n=1”, the result code is displayed in the text display (default). When the command is set to “n=0”, the result code is displayed in the numeric display.
- To retain compatibility with a modem connected via conventional RS-232C, communication speed is displayed, but it differs from the actual connection speed because FOMA terminal is connected to the PC with a FOMA USB cable (optional).

■ Communication protocol result code

No.	Text display	Meaning
1	PPPoverUD	Connected via PPPoverUD (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
2	AV32K	AV (video-phone) connected via [32K]
3	AV64K	AV (video-phone) connected via [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected with PACKET

■ Display example of result codes

When “ATX 0” is set

Regardless of the settings of the AT¥V command (☛P459), only CONNECT is displayed upon completion of connection.

Text display example : ATD ＊ 99 ＊＊＊ 1#
CONNECT (“1” in numeric display)

When “ATX 1” is set

• When “ATX1”, “AT¥V0” is set (default)

Upon completion of connection, the result code is displayed in the following format: CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal - PC>

Text display example : ATD ＊ 99 ＊＊＊ 1#
CONNECT 460800 (“1 21” in numeric display)

• When “ATX1”, “AT¥V1” is set*

The code is displayed upon completion of connection as follows.

Text display example : ATD ＊ 99 ＊＊＊ 1#
CONNECT 460,800 PACKET mopera.ne.jp/64/384
“1 21 5” in numeric display

Indicates that speed between FOMA terminal and PC is 460800 bps and the terminal is connected to mopera.ne.jp providing a maximum upload speed of 64kbps and a maximum download speed of 384 kbps.

* When “ATX1” and “AT¥V1” are set at the same time, it is likely that dialup connection will fail. It is recommended that only “AT¥V0” be used.

Character Entry

Entering characters 464
Entering characters using 5-touch Input Method ..... **5-touch Input Method** 465
Registering fixed phrases ..... **Save Phrase** 469
Copying/cutting and pasting characters ..... **Copy Character** 470
Entering characters using codes ..... **KUTEN Code Input** 470
Registering frequently used words ..... **Save Word** 470
Entering characters using Slot Input Method ..... **Slot Input Method** 471
Setting input method ..... **Input Method Setting** 472

Entering characters

FOMA terminal has many functions such as the phonebook and mail that require entering characters.

- There are 5-touch Input Method and Slot Input Method for entering characters.
  In 5-touch Input Method, several characters are assigned to each key and at each press, the character switches. ☛P478
  In Slot Input Method, select characters from the upper and lower slots on the input board. ☛P471
- The character types which can be entered varies by each method:

○ : Available × : Unavailable — : No character

Input method / Character type	5-touch Input Method		Slot Input Method	
	One-byte	Two-byte	One-byte	Two-byte
Hiragana/kanji	—	○	—	○
Katakana	○	○	○	×
Alphabet	○	○	○	×
Numeric	○	○	○	×
Symbols	○	○	○	○
Pictograms	—	○	—	○

- There are 2 character types: one-byte characters and two-byte characters. 1 two-byte character, 1 two-byte blank or line feed is counted as 2 one-byte characters. For one-byte characters, voiced sound and semi-voiced sound characters are also counted as 1 character.
- Use KUTEN Code Input to enter characters whose readings you do not know.
- A total of 6,355 JIS level 1 and level 2 characters can be entered.
- Complex characters may be displayed in a changed or simplified form.

Character entry screen

There are 2 types of character entry methods: “full-screen entry” and “in-line entry”.

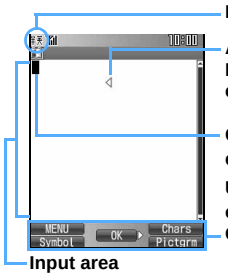
- Some entry fields may only be able to use either character entry method.
- Fixed phrases, when they are pasted or entered exceedingly, are truncated and fit to the input characters limit.

INFORMATION

● In this manual, to enter characters including the operation of pressing [●] is referred to as “enter”.

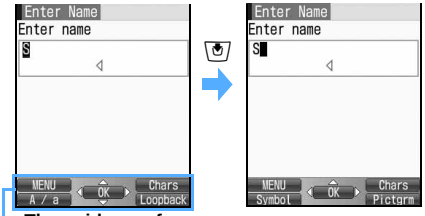
Full-screen entry

Place a cursor at the entry field and press [●] to display the full-screen entry area.



In-line entry

Place a cursor at the entry field and press [ひらがな 変換] to [5 JKL], [* ﾓｰﾄﾞ], and [# ｶﾅ] to enable character entry directly. The character is fixed by pressing [●].



Character entry screen submenu

Press [Menu] on the character entry screen. The following operations are enabled. However, the submenu is not displayed before the character is fixed, or on the decoration screen of Deco-mail.

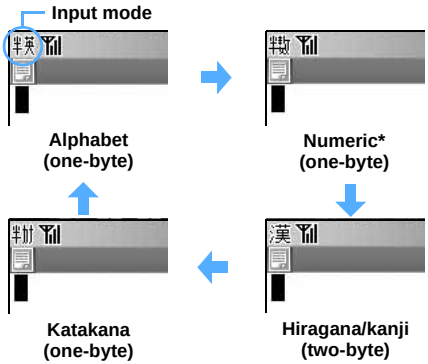
- Copy characters ☛P470
- Cut characters ☛P470
- Paste copied/cut characters ☛P470
- Quote the phonebook data ☛P468
- Save words ☛P470
- Save fixed phrases ☛P469
- Set the input method ☛P472
- Quote Own Number, result of calculation with Calculator or data read by Bar Code Reader. (Items displayed varies by the entry field). ☛P468
- End character entry (displayed only when characters are entered in the Slot Input Method).

Changing input modes

- The available input modes are different depending on the character entry screen.

Using to change modes

The input modes change each time is pressed as follows:



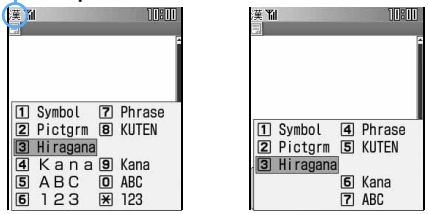
* Not displayed by Slot Input Method.

Using the input mode list to change modes

You can select the following input modes by pressing on the character entry screen.

Item	Input mode		Item	Input mode	
Hiragana	Hiragana/ kanji	漢	***123****	Two-byte numeric	全数
			Kana	One-byte katakana	半カ
Kana*	Two-byte katakana	全カ	*ABC*	One-byte alphabet	半英
ABC*	Two-byte alphabet	全英	*123**	One-byte numeric	半数

* This is not displayed by Slot Input Method.



- Press , or corresponding dial keys to select input mode.
- The following operations are also enabled by making selections from the input mode list:

Symbol : enters symbols ☛P468
Pictgrm : enters pictograms ☛P468
Phrase : enters fixed phrases ☛P467
KUTEN : uses KUTEN code to enter characters ☛P470

INFORMATION

● 全カ is displayed when only hiragana can be entered.

Entering characters using 5-touch Input Method

5-touch Input Method

Entering characters

Kana/Kanji Conversion

Example Entering “企業” in the phonebook

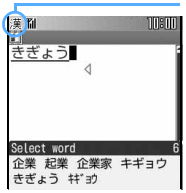
1 Place the cursor at *Enter name* field and press .

The character entry screen is displayed.

- In English mode, the alphabet mode is displayed first. Press to change to the hiragana/kanji mode.

2 Enter “きぎょう”.

漢 is indicated



“き” → Press twice.
Press to move the cursor 1 position to the right. (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by the automatic cursor function.)

“ぎ” → Press twice and press .

“ょ” → Press 3 times and press .

“う” → Press 3 times.

- Press to delete the entry when you have pressed a wrong key.
- Enter the character and press to enter “゛” and “゜”.
  For example, after entering “ほ”, each pressing of changes the character as: ぼ→ぽ→ほ. For characters that do not accept “゛” or “゜”, it is entered as two-byte characters.
- To change upper/lower case, enter the character and press .
- Pressing changes characters to two-byte katakana characters.

Returning to previous character

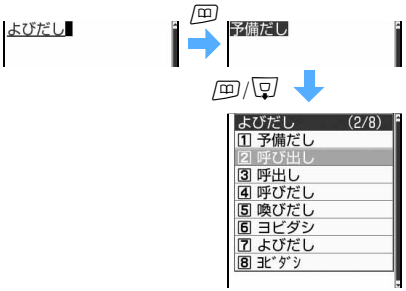
Pressing immediately after entering a character brings back to the previous character. The character appears in the reverse order of character switching every time is pressed. (e.g. …→ 1 →お→え→う→い→あ→ 1 →…) However, when voiced or semi-voiced sounds are entered or upper and lower case are changed, you cannot switch characters.

■ **Fixing hiragana without conversion**
Go to Step 4 after entering the hiragana.

3 Press [Kana].

- Press [▼] to convert text to kana/kanji when predict conversion options are not displayed. Predict conversion ☛P467
- Press [Clear] to restore the entry before conversion.

■ **Displaying the list of conversion options**
When pressing [Kana] fails to display the desired character, a list of conversion options is displayed by pressing [▼] or [Kana] again. If the list of conversion options has some pages, you can switch to the next page and the previous page by pressing [Mail] and [Web], respectively. Press [▼] to place the cursor at the conversion options and press [●] or press the key for the number of each option.



4 Press [●].

The character is fixed.

- When ***Input prediction*** of Input Method Setting is ***ON***, select *閉じる* (Close).

■ **Inserting characters**
Press [▼] to move the cursor to the insertion point and enter the character. The entered character is inserted at the cursor position.

■ **Deleting characters**

- When the cursor is inside an entered character string
(Example: 鈴木一郎)
  - Press [Clear] to delete a character at the cursor position.
  - Hold down [Clear] for over a second to delete the character at the cursor position and all following characters.
- When the cursor is at the end of an entered character string
(Example: 鈴木一郎)
  - Press [Clear] to delete the character at the left of the cursor position.
  - Hold down [Clear] for over a second to delete all entered characters.

■ **Entering line feed**
Move the cursor to the location to enter a line feed and press [#].

- Some entry fields may not permit a line feed.

5 Press [●].

You exit from character entry.

- To leave the space as a blank, delete all characters and press [●], or press [Clear], when new entry was made.
- To edit the entered contents of character entry screen and return to the screen before editing, delete all characters and press [Clear] and select ***Yes***.

INFORMATION

- In the following input modes, when the specified time elapses without pressing any key in inputting, the automatic cursor function will automatically move the cursor to the right. You can not only change the time setting for, but also disable the automatic cursor function. ☛P472
  - One-byte/two-byte alphabet
  - Hiragana/kanji
  - One-byte/two-byte katakana
- You can perform the following operations after the automatic cursor function has moved the cursor to the right.
  - [*/Shift]: add voiced/semi-voiced sound
  - [Num/Caps] : switch between upper/lower case
  - [Mail] : return to the previous character
- List of dial keys and character assignments ☛P478

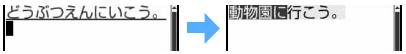
Block conversion of multiple clauses

The characters can be converted as a block to simplify text entry.

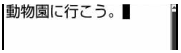
- Up to 24 two-byte characters can be converted.

Example Entering “動物園に行こう。”

1 Enter characters and press [Kana].



■ **Fix all characters**

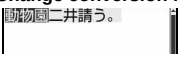


① **Press [Menu].**

■ **Fix converted portion**

① **Press [●].**

■ **Change conversion range**



① **Press [▼].**

When pressing [▼]

INFORMATION

● You can enter symbols, pictograms, alphabetic, Greek characters, etc. by entering the readings in hiragana. ☛P482, P483

Entering characters using input prediction function

The input prediction function is to display a list of predict conversion options that match the initial part of the reading when characters are entered.
This function automatically registers previously entered characters as predict dictionary data; you can easily enter the same characters next time, quickly by entering only the first part.

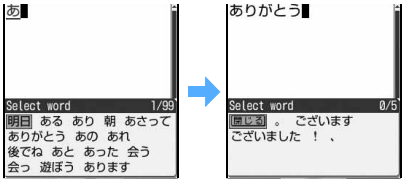
- The following words and character strings are displayed as options:
  - Standard words
  - Words entered by Kana/Kanji Conversion
  - Character strings registered by Save Word
- Only the hiragana/kanji mode can be used in predict conversion. However, predict conversion is not available in the following cases:
  - During in-line entry
  - Entering with Slot Input Method
- You can also set not to display the predict conversion options. ☛P472

1 Enter characters.

A list of predict conversion options is displayed.

- The more characters are entered, the less the number of predict conversion options are available.

2 Press ▽ and ◇ to place the cursor at an option and press ●.



- While the cursor is placed in predict conversion options, the following operations are enabled:
  - ▽/△ : switches to the previous/next page
  - 📖 : enables kana/kanji conversion (Predict conversion options disappear)
  - ● : fix the character
- When there are no appropriate words, press 📖 to convert text by kana/kanji conversion and predict conversion options vanish.

3 Select 閉じる.

The predict conversion options vanish.

Entering fixed phrases

Enter previously registered sentences, face marks, or pictogram words.

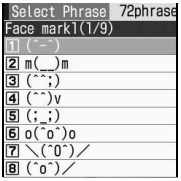
1 Press 📖 7まPQRS on the character entry screen.

- You can also display by pressing 📖 Menu.

2 Press 1あ to 日やTUV.

- When a fixed phrase has been created/registered, you can select by pressing 9わwxyz.

3 Press 1あ to 日やTUV.



When selecting *Face mark1*

- Press ▽ to switch pages.
- Place the cursor at a fixed phrase and press 📖 to check it. Press ● to enter the fixed phrase.

INFORMATION

● Mail using face marks may become deformed, look different or cannot be correctly displayed depending on the size of the display, number of displayed characters, or the fonts of the other terminal.
● List of fixed phrases ☛P479

Entering symbols and pictograms

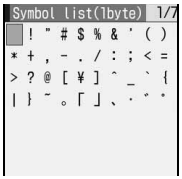
- Only available characters are listed.
- Part of pictogram can be converted by entering "えもじ". ☛P483

Example Entering symbols

1 Press [Func/Shift] on the character entry screen.

- Press [✉] to enter pictograms.
- You can also display the symbol list by pressing [📖][1 あ/@] and the pictogram list by pressing [📖][2 かABC].
- There are multiple symbol list, and pictogram list pages. Press [Func/Shift] or [✉] to switch pages.

2 Select a symbol.



- When the left element in the following brackets is selected, the right element is also automatically selected: e.g. selecting "(" also selects ")".

  () [] {} 「」( ) 〔 〕[ ] { } 〈 〉
  《 》『 』『 』【 】
- If [Menu] is pressed on the symbol list or the pictogram list, the continuous input area appears and symbols or a pictograms can be selected continuously. Up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte symbols can be entered and up to 10 pictograms can be entered continuously. Press [📖] to enter the selected symbols or pictograms at one time. Note that selecting the left element of the above brackets in the continuous input area does not lead inputting the right element.

INFORMATION

- Symbols and pictograms entered may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication.
- Pictograms may not be displayed correctly when sent to an another party using a non i-mode terminal.
- Pictogram 2 used in mail may not be displayed correctly on some phone terminals.

Quoting data to enter characters

You can enter characters by quoting phonebook data, Own Number information, the result of calculation with Calculator or string information of the data scanned with Bar Code Reader.

- On the character entry screen in which you cannot quote data, operation cannot be made, since menu items are displayed in a light color, or not displayed.

Quoting phonebook data entry

- Switch the character entry screen to full-screen entry.
- The phonebook data is unable to be quoted on the character entry screen of the phonebook.

1 Press [Menu][4 た GHI] on the character entry screen.

2 Select phonebook data to quote.

3 Select the entry to quote.

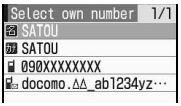
- When the contents are too long, they may be displayed shortly. To check, place the cursor at the content and press [📖]. It can be quoted by pressing [●].

Quoting Own Number entry

- The Own Number is unable to be quoted on the character entry screen of Own Number.

1 Press [Menu][8 TUV や][1 あ/@] on the character entry screen.

2 Enter the terminal security code and select the Own Number Information to quote.



- When the contents are too long, they may be displayed shortly. To check, place the cursor at the content and press [📖]. It can be quoted by pressing [●].

Quoting a result of calculation with Calculator

- The result can be quoted only on the character entry screen of Scheduler and Notepad.

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 2 ABC on the character entry screen.

2 Make calculation.

3 Press ●.

Quoting data scanned with Bar Code Reader

- The data can be quoted only on the character entry screen displayed during URL entry and i-mode.

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 2 ABC on the character entry screen.

Camera starts with Macro Mode.

2 Scan JAN code or QR code.

3 Press ●.

The string of the scanned data is entered.

Registering fixed phrases Save Phrase

Fixed phrases are registered in ***My phrase***.

- Up to 50 phrases can be saved.

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 9 WXYZ 2 ABC 9 WXYZ on the stand-by display.

2 Select <*New phrase*>.

The fixed phrase edit screen is displayed.

- To edit the registered fixed phrase, select a phrase to edit.
- To check the fixed phrase already registered, place the cursor at a fixed phrase and press 📖. You can edit it by pressing ●.

■ Deleting fixed phrases

① Place the cursor at a fixed phrase to delete, press Menu and select *Yes*.

3 Select *Message* field and enter the fixed phrase (up to 128 one-byte or 64 two-byte characters).

4 Press 📖.

- When you edit a registered fixed phrase, a confirmation screen is displayed. Select ***Yes*** to overwrite or ***No*** to cancel the operation.

Registering during character entry

Entered characters are selected and registered as a fixed phrase.

1 Press Menu 6 MNO on the character entry screen.

2 Place the cursor at the start point and press ●.

- To select the whole sentence, press Menu and ●. Go to Step 4.

3 Place the cursor at the end point and press ●.

The characters in the selected range are displayed on the phrase edit screen.

- To select from the start point to the beginning, press Menu and ●.
- To select from the start point to the end, press 📖 and ●.

4 Press 📖.

INFORMATION

- If a character string selected above contains blank spaces, it is processed as follows.
  - Blank spaces only
    : Cannot be registered as a fixed phrase
  - Blank spaces before and after a character string
    : Only character string is valid
  - Blank spaces between characters
    : Blank spaces are also valid
- On the entry screen for message, you can also operate by pressing Menu 6 MNO 2 ABC.
- When there is no character entered, press Menu 6 MNO to display the phrase edit screen except in the message text entry screen.
- When 50 fixed phrases have already been registered, the list of registered fixed phrases is displayed. To register a new item, you must either delete a phrase from this list or edit a registered phrase.

Copying/cutting and pasting characters

Copy Character

Characters copied or cut from a character entry screen are pasted elsewhere. They can also be pasted into another character entry screen.

- Copied and cut characters are retained until FOMA terminal is turned off and you can paste them in other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be retained. When you cut or copy a new item, it overwrites the previously saved item.

Copying/cutting characters

Example Copying characters

1 Press Menu 1 on the character entry screen.

- Press Menu 2 to cut the characters.

2 Place the cursor at the start point and press ●.

- To select the whole sentence, press Menu and ●.

3 Place the cursor at the end point and press ●.

The characters in the selected range is copied.

- To select from the start point to the beginning, press Menu and ●.
- To select from the start point to the end, press 📖 and ●.

INFORMATION

- On the entry screen for message, you can also operate by pressing Menu and selecting ***Copy/Cut***.

Pasting characters

- When the pasted phrase exceeds the number of characters permitted in the edited sentence, a message appears indicating that all characters will not be able to be pasted. When you select ***Yes***, the allowable number of characters is pasted.

1 Place the cursor at the place to paste and press Menu 3 on the character entry screen.

INFORMATION

- On the entry screen for message, press Menu and select ***Paste***.
- When the type of the copied/cut characters does not match with the character type used in the destination field, pasting is disabled. For example, hiragana or kanji cannot be pasted into the mail address field (one-byte alphanumeric).
- When a character string containing a line feed is pasted into an entry screen that cannot contain any line feeds, the line feed is replaced by a blank.

Entering characters using codes KUTEN Code Input

Characters, numbers and symbols on the KUTEN code list are entered using 4-digit code.

Example Entering "携" (code number 2340)

1 Press 📖 8 on the character entry screen.

2 Enter the 4-digit code (2 3 4 0 in this case).

- The available code range is 0101 to 8406.
- Entry of codes without characters, numbers and symbols is invalid.

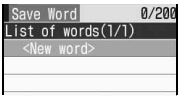
Registering frequently used words Save Word

Using registered readings makes it easy to convert characters.

- Up to 200 words can be saved.

1 Press Menu 8 9 1 on the stand-by display.

2 Select <*New word*>.



- To edit the registered word, select a word to edit.
- To check a registered word, place the cursor at a word and press 📖. You can edit it by pressing ●.

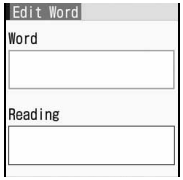
■ **Deleting words**

① **Place the cursor at a word to delete and press [Menu].**

② **Select *Delete*.**

- To delete all, select ***Delete all***.

3 Select *Word* field, enter the word to register (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters).



- The following character types can be registered:
  - One-byte/two-byte alphabet
  - Hiragana/kanji
  - One-byte/two-byte katakana
  - One-byte/two-byte numeric
  - One-byte/two-byte symbol
  - Pictogram

4 Select *Reading* field and enter the reading (up to 16 two-byte characters).

- You can enter only hiragana.

5 Press [Kana].

- A confirmation screen is displayed when editing registered words. Select ***Overwrite*** to replace the original word. To register a new word, keeping original word intact, select ***New***.

INFORMATION

- Only words with a reading can be registered.
- Readings that contain characters other than hiragana, prolonged sound, voiced sound or semi-voiced sound characters cannot be registered. Any blank spaces entered are deleted when saved.
- When the same word is already registered in the combination of a word and reading, the word cannot be registered.
- Up to 5 words with the same reading can be registered. To register additional words with the same reading, change the reading of new words.

Registering during character entry

You can select entered characters and register them as a word.

1 Press [Menu] [5 な JKL] on the character entry screen.

2 Place the cursor at the start point and press [●].

- To select the whole sentence, press [Menu] and [●]. Go to Step 4.

3 Place the cursor at the end point and press [●].

The characters in the selected range is displayed on ***Word*** field.

- To select from the beginning to the start point, press [Menu] and [●].
- To select from the start point to the end, press [Kana] and [●].

4 Enter the reading and press [Kana].

INFORMATION

- Any blank spaces entered are deleted when saved.
- On the entry screen for message, you can also register by pressing [Menu] [6 は MNO] [1 あ].
- When there is no character entered, press [Menu] [5 な JKL] to display the word edit screen except in the message text entry screen.
- When 200 words have already been registered, the list of registered words is displayed. To register a new item, you must either delete a word from this list or edit a registered word.

Entering characters using Slot Input Method

Slot Input Method

You use [▲▼◀▶] to select characters displayed on the slot input board.

- Slot Input Method must be set up before using this function. ☛P472
- The predict conversion function cannot be used in Slot Input Method.
- When you are using the slot input board and want to use the entry area (for deleting characters, moving the cursor, etc.), press [✉]. Press [✉] again to use the slot input board.
- In English mode, the alphabet mode is displayed first. Press [英/カナ] to change to the hiragana/kanji mode.

Example Entering “企業” in the phonebook

1 Place the cursor at *Enter name* field and press [●].

The character entry screen is displayed.

2 Enter “きぎょう”.

- “き” → Press [ロ], [ロ] and [●].
- “ぎ” → Press [●], press [ロ] 4 times and press [●].
- “ょ” → Press [No.], press [ロ] twice, [●] twice and press [●].
- “う” → Press [ロ] 4 times, press [ワ] twice and press [●].
- Press [No.] to replace the upper or lower slot with each other.

3 Press [変].

The characters are converted.

- Characters are converted in the same way as in the 5-touch Input Method.
- To return converted characters to the state they had before conversion, press [クリア].
- Press [Menu] to fix the characters as hiragana and go to Step 5. The slot input board becomes active at the same time as fix.

4 Press [●].

The character is fixed.

- New characters can be added.

5 Press [メール] and [●].

Character entry is exited.

INFORMATION

- List of characters assigned to input slot ☛P479
- Character entry screen submenu ☛P464

Setting input method

Input Method Setting

Default Input method: 5-touch Input prediction: ON Auto cursor: Normal

1 Press [Menu] [8 TUV] [9 WXYZ] [3 DEF] on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Input method

: Specifies 5-touch or slot input method.

- When ***Slot*** is set, items below are disabled.

Input prediction

: Specifies whether to display predictive conversion options.

Auto cursor

: Sets the time period before the cursor automatically moves to the right.

- Setting ***OFF*** disables automatic movement.
- Setting ***Slow*** moves the cursor in about 1.5 seconds.
- Setting ***Normal*** moves the cursor in about 1 second.
- Setting ***Fast*** moves the cursor in about 0.5 seconds.

3 Press [変].

Changing settings during character entry

- The changes cannot be made before the character is fixed, or on the decoration screen of Deco-mail.
- Only the automatic cursor function can be changed during in-line entry.

1 Press [Menu] [7 PQRS] on the character entry screen.

2 Press [1 あ] to [3 DEF].

- To switch between ***Use 5-touch*** and ***Use Slot input***, press [1 あ].
- To switch between ***Prediction ON*** and ***Prediction OFF***, press [2 ABC].
- To set the time period before the cursor automatically moves, press [3 DEF] and then press [1 あ] to [4 GHI].

Appendix

Menu list 474
List of dial keys and character assignments (5-touch Input Method) 478
List of input slots and character assignments (Slot Input Method) 479
List of fixed phrases 479
List of pictograms and symbols 481
List of special symbols for conversion 482
List of pictograms for conversion 483
KUTEN code input list 484
Combination of operations during Multiaccess 488
Combination of functions during Multitask 490
Services available for FOMA terminal 492
Options and related devices 492

Interchange between the external devices

About the data link software 493
Playing video data downloaded from the external devices on FOMA terminal .....Play Video 493
Playing video data recorded with FOMA terminal on a PC.....494
Playing sound data downloaded from a PC on FOMA terminal .....Play Sound 494

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting 497
Example of Error messages ..... Error Message 499
Warranty and After-Sales Service 505
Updating Software ..... Software Update 507
Protecting FOMA terminal from hazardous data .... Virus Scan Function 511
SAR certification information.....514

Menu list

• The menu differs depending on the menu display style (Menu Setting).
• One-byte and two-byte characters shown on the display may differ from those below.
: When the settings have been changed, the default settings are not restored by resetting.

1 Mail

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Inbox	———	P250
2 Compose message	———	P225
3 Chat mail	———	P270
4 Unsent messages	———	P250
5 Outbox	———	P250
6 Check new message		
1 i-mode message	———	P243
2 SMS	———	P279
3 Receive option	———	P242
4 Message retrieval	all selected	P265
7 SMS		
1 Compose SMS	———	P276
2 Received SMS	———	P281
3 Sent SMS	———	P281
4 SMS settings*1	Delivered report: Do not request Other than the above: use UIM settings	P279
8 Read templates	———	P237
9 Mail setting		
1 Incoming message	Select mail ring tone: Melody/ パターン 1 (Pattern 1) Incoming msg. lighting: Flash/Ocean Set vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P269
2 Incoming chat mail	Incoming setting: Same: Msg setting	P276
3 Sort criteria	got mail criteria: ON sent mail criteria: ON	P262
4 Signature	Auto insert: Yes Signature: not set	P264
5 Reply format	Quote: Yes Quote characters: >	P267
6 Receive option	OFF	P265
7 Incoming msg attach	Image: Receive Melody: Receive	P267
8 Mail group	———	P265
9 Display settings		
1 Message list	Display 2 rows	P267
2 Message attachment	Auto play	P268
3 Display priority	Show message	P270

2 i-mode

Menu item	Default	Page
1 i-Menu	———	P186
2 Bookmark	———	P194
3 Go to location		
1 Enter URL	———	P192
2 URL history	———	P192
4 Screen memo	———	P197
5 Last visited URL	———	P187
6 i-mode message	———	P243
7 Message R&F		
1 Message R	———	P209
2 Message F	———	P209
3 Message settings		
1 Auto display	MessageR preferred	P208
2 Message retrieval	all selected	P265
3 Message attachment	Auto play	P268
4 Incoming msg. alert	Select ring alert: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1) Incoming msg. lighting: Flash/Ocean Set vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P209
8 i-mode setting		
1 i-mode shortcuts	Not recorded	P195
2 Connection timeout	60 seconds	P204
3 Host selection	i-mode(FOMA Card)	P204
4 Set certificate*2	CA Certificate 1 to 9 Other than the above: use UIM settings	P212
5 Certificate download	———	P213
6 Certificate host	DoCoMo	P215
9 Display settings		
1 Image/Effect	Image, Animation: Display Use saved data: Yes Set lighting: Terminal settings Sound effect setting: ON	P205
2 Display color	Font/BG color: Default Link color: Default	P206
3 i-motion settings	Auto replay setting: Auto Play ON i-motion type setting: Normal type	P312

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

3 αppli

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Software list	———	P290
2 αppli settings		
1 Software sort	By download time	P307
2 Auto start	ON	P300
3 Software info display	OFF	P290
4 Light settings	Use phone setting	P293
5 Vibrate settings	ON	P293
6 αppli shortcut	Not recorded	P290
3 Display history	———	P302 P304 P291

4 Phonebook & Logs

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Phonebook	———	P99
2 Phonebook new entry	———	P93
3 Phonebook(UIM) new entry	———	P97
4 Received calls	———	P60
5 Redial	———	P50
6 Ans. machine/Voice memo		
1 Answer machine	Deactivate	P69
2 Recorded messages	———	P71
3 Record voice memo	———	P405
4 Voice memos	———	P406
7 Own number	UIM settings	P44, P404

5 Data Box

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Image	———	P318
2 motion	———	P328
3 Melody	———	P344
4 Chara-den	———	P337
5 My Documents	———	P375

6 Tools

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Camera	———	P158
2 Movie camera	———	P164
3 Sound recorder	———	P371
4 Bar code reader	———	P175
5 Data exchange		
1 Send all Ir data	———	P366
2 Receive Ir data	———	P367
3 Data exchange settings	End alert: OFF Auto Authentication: OFF Ph.book image sending: ON	P370
4 USB mode settings	Communication mode	P354
6 miniSD card	———	P366
7 IC card software list	———	P315

7 Stationery

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Scheduler	———	P390
2 Notepad	———	P410
3 Alarm clock	not set	P388
4 Calculator	———	P409

8 Settings

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Sounds/Vibrate		
1 Set sound	Phone, Mail: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1), Chat mail: Sync msg alert Message Request, Message Free: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1) On-hold tone: Default tone (Preinstalled on-hold tone, voice) Video-phone: Melody/ 電話・メロディA(Phone melody A) Open slide: Melody/ スライド・オープン音1(Slide opening sound 1) Close slide: Melody/ スライド・クローズ音1(Slide closing sound 1)	P112
2 Ring volume		
1 Ring alert volume	Level4	P62
2 Msg. alert volume	Level4	P62
3 Volume	Level4	P62
4 Keypad sound	Keypad sound1	P115
5 Low battery alert	ON	P41
6 Silent mode	General	P117
7 Vibrator	all OFF	P115
8 Set mute seconds	OFF	P150
9 Charge alert	ON	P116
2 Display		
1 Stand-by	メタル(Metal)	P118
2 Mail/Call image		
1 Outgoing call	Display image: Default	P125
2 Incoming call	Ring alert: Melody/ パターン1(Pattern 1) Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting: Flash/Ocean	P63
3 Video-phone dialing	Display image: Default	P125
4 Video-phone receiving	Ring alert: Melody/ 電話・メロディA (Phone melody A) Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting: Flash/Ocean	P63
5 Contact image	ON	P125

Menu item	Default	Page
2 Display		
2 Mail/Call image		
6 Outgoing msg. image	Display image: Default	P126
7 Incoming msg. image	Display image: Default	P126
8 Retrieving image	Display image: Default	P126
9 Receive display	Caller's phone number: Display Caller's name: Standard Receive mail/message: Display	P126
3 Color scheme	WhiteSmoke	P128
4 Battery icon	→ →	P130
5 Display light	Lighting method: Turn light ON Turn light on: 10 seconds Range: Display + Key Brightness: Normal AC adapter connected: Terminal settings	P127
6 Alert lighting	Indicator light, During call: OFF Incoming Video-phone, Incoming call, Incoming Mail, Incoming Message R, Incoming Message F, Incoming Chat Mail: Flash/Ocean Alarm, Schedule: OFF Play melody: Sync melody/ Rainbow Open slide, Close slide: Glimmer/Ocean IC card: ON	P130
7 Font	Standard	P131
8 Select language	Japanese	P42
9 Information line	Normal display: 1week calendar Partial display: ON Receive mail/message: Display	P133
3 Security		
1 Lock		
1 All lock	not set	P141
2 PIM lock	OFF	P143
3 Remote lock	OFF	P141
4 IC card lock	OFF	P316
2 Secret mode	not set	P147
3 Keypad dial lock	OFF	P144
4 UIM	UIM settings	P137
5 Change security code	0000	P137
6 Privacy mode	Phonebook & Logs, Mail, My picture, i-motion, Schedule, i-αppli: Show all Auto start: OFF	P145

Menu item	Default	Page
3 Security		
7 Scanning function		
1 Update definition	———	P512
2 Scanning settings	ON	P511
3 Scan version	———	P514
4 Info/Reset		
1 Call duration	———	P407
2 Confirm	———	P415
3 Battery level	———	P40
4 Call cost		
1 Last call cost	———	P407
2 Call cost limit	Alert: OFF	P408
3 Remove call cost icon	———	P409
4 Reset call cost	OFF	P408
5 Reset	———	P416
6 Delete all data	———	P416
5 Clock		
1 Date & time*3	Auto Time Set: ON Offset: +, 00h00m	P42
2 Auto power ON	OFF	P387
3 Auto power OFF	OFF	P387
4 Clock display format	Clock size: Digital 1/Large/ Top/Terminal settings Time format: 24 hour	P132
5 Alarm auto power ON	OFF	P390
6 Call/Answer		
1 Outgoing call	Display image: Default	P125
2 Incoming call	Ring alert: Melody/ パターン1(Pattern 1) Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting: Flash/Ocean	P63
3 Anonymous caller	all disable settings	P149
4 Headset		
1 Headset switch	Headset + speaker	P414
2 Auto answer	OFF	P414
3 Headset quick dial	OFF	P413
5 Reject/Accept call	Cancel settings	P148
6 Memory reject call	OFF	P151
7 Status message	On-hold tone: Standard	P66
8 Any key answer	ON	P59
9 Priority comm mode	No Set Up	P64

Menu item	Default	Page
7 Call		
1 Noise reduction	ON	P55
2 Reconnect alarm	High alarm	P55
3 On-hold tone	Default tone (Preinstalled on-hold tone, voice)	P66
4 Quality alarm	High alarm	P116
5 Prefix dialing	009130010	P54
6 Auto assist setting	Auto	P53
7 Sub address	ON	P54
8 Close settings	Continue	P59
9 Open answer	OFF	P59
8 Video-phone		
1 Video-phone dialing	Display image: Default	P125
2 Video-phone receiving	Ring alert: Melody/ 電話・メロディA(Phone melody A) Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting: Flash/Ocean	P63
3 Operation	Voice call auto switch: OFF Display setting: Both Sub screen: Me Display screen size: Large Send camera image: ON Sending image quality: Normal Display light: Always on (normal)	P87
4 Image	Substitutive image: Default Chara-den Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image: Default	P83
5 External device	Terminal	P89
6 Indicate V-phone		
1 Indication ON	Activate	P88
2 Indication OFF	———	P88
3 Check Indication	———	P88
9 Others		
1 Save word	———	P470
2 Save phrase	———	P469
3 Text input method	Input method: 5-touch Input prediction: ON Auto cursor: Normal	P472
4 Self mode	OFF	P143
5 NW search method	Auto select NW	P415
6 Software Update	———	P507
7 Edit by slide	all ON	P386

9 NW Services

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Voice mail		
1 Voicemail service		
1 Activate Voice mail	———	P421
2 Set ringing time	———	P421
3 Deactivate Voice mail	———	P421
4 Voice mail Status Request	———	P421
5 Play messages	———	P421
6 Voice mail settings	———	P421
7 Check messages	———	P422
2 Notification	Voicemail alert: ON Notification melody: パターン1 (Pattern 1)	P422
3 Notify missed call		
1 Activate Missed Call Notification	———	P422
2 Deactivate Missed Call Notification	———	P422
3 Missed Call Notification Status Request	———	P422
4 Remove voicemail count	———	P422
2 Call waiting		
1 Activate Call Waiting	———	P423
2 Deactive Call Waiting	———	P423
3 Call Waiting Status Request	———	P423
3 Call forwarding		
1 Activate Call Forwarding	———	P424
2 Deactivate Call Forwarding	———	P425
3 Register The Forwarding Number	———	P425
4 Setting at Forwarded Party Busy	———	P425
5 Call Forwarding Status Request	———	P425
4 Nuisance call barring		
1 Register Nuisance Caller	———	P425
2 Delete all entries	———	P426
3 Delete Most Recent Entry	———	P426
5 Caller ID notification		
1 Activate/Deactivate Caller ID Notification	———	P44
2 Caller ID Notification Status Request	———	P44
6 Caller ID request		
1 Activate Caller ID Request	———	P426
2 Deactivate Caller ID Request	———	P426
3 Caller ID Request Status Request	———	P426
7 Set arrival act		
1 Activate Arrival Act	———	P428
2 Deactivate Arrival Act	———	P428
3 Arrival Act Status Request	———	P429

Menu item	Default	Page
8 Arrival call act	Answer	P428
9 Others		
1 Register USSD	———	P429
2 Record reply message	———	P430
3 Remote control		
1 Activate Remote Control	———	P429
2 Deactivate Remote Control	———	P429
3 Remote Control Status Request	———	P429
4 English guidance		
1 Guidance Setting	———	P427
2 Guidance Status Request	———	P428
5 Dual network		
1 Dual Network Switching	———	P427
2 Dual Network Status Request	———	P427

Menu item	Default	Page
9 Others		
6 Service Dialing Number		
1 ドコモ故障問合せ	———	P428
2 ドコモ総合案内・受付	———	P428
7 Multi number		P429
8 Call barring	Unavailable on this terminal.	

0 Own number

Menu item	Default	Page
Own number	UIM settings	P44, P404

*1 UIM settings are as follows by resetting:
- Font type : Japanese
- Delivered report: Do not request
- Keep in SMS center: 3 days
- SMSC: DoCoMo
- Address: 81903101652
- Type of Number: international

*2 Items of the certificates saved in UIM are all valid by resetting.
*3 Date and time remain unchanged after resetting.

List of dial keys and character assignments (5-touch Input Method)

Key	Hiragana/kanji mode (two-byte)*1	Katakana mode (one-byte/two-byte)*1	Alphabet mode (one-byte/two-byte)*1	Numeric mode (one-byte/two-byte)*3
1 あ	あ い う え お 1	ア イ ウ エ オ 1	. / @ ¯*2 — : _ [¥] ^ ` { | } 1	1
2 か ABC	か き く け こ 2	カ キ ク ケ コ 2	a b c 2	2
3 さ DEF	さ し す せ そ 3	サ シ ス セ ソ 3	d e f 3	3
4 た GHI	た ち つ て と 4	タ チ ツ テ ト 4	g h i 4	4
5 な JKL	な に ぬ ね の 5	ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ 5	j k l 5	5
6 は MNO	は ひ ふ へ ほ 6	ハ ヒ フ ヘ ホ 6	m n o 6	6
7 ま PQRS	ま み む め も 7	マ ミ ム メ モ 7	p q r s 7	7
8 や TUV	や ゆ よ 8	ヤ ユ ヨ 8	t u v 8	8
9 ら WXYZ	ら り る れ ろ 9	ラ リ ル レ ロ 9	w x y z 9	9
0 わ 記号	わ を ん ー 、 。 ・ ? ！ 「 」 □ 0	ワ ヲ ン ー 、 。 ・ ? ！ 「 」 □ 0	！ ” # $ % & ’ ( ) ＊ ＋ , ; < = > ? □ 0	0 +*4
＊ 絵文字	゛ ゜	゛ ゜	The following character strings can be entered only in one-byte character: @docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm	＊ P*4
# ﾀﾞﾐｰ*5	Line feed	Line feed	Line feed	Line feed # T*4
✉	Brings back the previous character	Brings back the previous character	Brings back the previous character	
大/小	Changes upper/lower case	Changes upper/lower case	Changes upper/lower case	

□: Indicates blank space. : Press 大/小 after entering a character to switch between upper and lower case.
*1 Numeric characters other than those entered in the two-byte numeric mode are entered as one-byte characters.
*2 This character is entered as “~” in the one-byte alphabet mode.
*3 In numeric mode, “ ＊ ”, “#”, “P”, “T” and “ + ” can only be entered in the entry field that supports them.
*4 Hold down the relevant key for over a second to enter the character.
*5 Line feed may not be possible depending on the entry field.

List of input slots and character assignments (Slot Input Method)

Input slot		Hiragana/kanji mode (two-byte)
Upper slot	あ	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ 1
	か	かきくけこ 2
	さ	さしすせそ 3
	た	たちつてとっ 4
	な	なにぬねの 5
	゛゜	゛゜
Lower slot	は	はひふへほ 6
	ま	まみむめも 7
	や	やゆよ ゃゅょ 8
	ら	らりるれろ 9
	わ	わをんー 、。？！「」 □ 0
	↵	Line feed

Input slot		Katakana mode (one-byte)
Upper slot	ｱ	ｱｲｳｴｵｧｨｩｪｫ 1
	ｶ	ｶｷｸｹｺ 2
	ｻ	ｻｼｽｾｿ 3
	ﾀ	ﾀﾁﾂﾃﾄｯ 4
	ﾅ	ﾅﾆﾇﾈﾉ 5
	ﾞ	ﾞﾟ
Lower slot	ﾊ	ﾊﾋﾌﾍﾎ 6
	ﾏ	ﾏﾐﾑﾒﾓ 7
	ﾔ	ﾔﾕﾖｬｭｮ 8
	ﾗ	ﾗﾘﾙﾚﾛ 9
	ﾜ	ﾜﾝｰ 、。？！「」 □ 0
	↵	Line feed

Input slot		Alphanumeric mode (one-byte)
Upper slot	.	./@~ー:_[¥]^`{|}1
	A	ABCabc2
	D	DEFdef3
	G	GHIghi4
	J	JKLjkl5
	定	@docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm
Lower slot	M	MNOmno6
	P	PQRSpqrs7
	T	TUVtuv8
	W	WXYZwxyz9
	!	!"#$%&'()*+,;<=>? □ 0
	↵	Line feed

□ : Indicates two-byte space in hiragana/kanji mode and one-byte space in katakana, alphanumeric mode.
Note1: "゛" and "゜" are switched with every press of [*] in Hiragana/kanji mode.
Note2: Numeric characters are displayed as one-byte characters.

List of fixed phrases

• Face mark 1 (72 items)

(^-^)	m(_)m	(^^;)	(^^)v	(;_;)
o(^o^)o	＼(^O^)／	(^o^)／	d=(^o^)=b	(*^_^*)
(^^ゞ	(^。^;)	σ(^_^;	(ToT)	(^^)/~~
(ToT)/~~	(>_<)	(*_*)	(+_+)	(@_@)
(?_?)	(=_=)	(^_-)	(^∧^)	(-_-;)
w(°o°)w	(^3^)/~☆	(☆o☆)	(-_-)zzz	☆彡
(^ワ^)	v(^o^)	(^◇^)	(^-^)ノ	o(^-^)o
(^ー°)b	(^_-)-☆	(。･_･。)ノ	(･_･ゞ-☆	～(m~-~)m
＼(^o^)／	(#￣3￣)	(￣(エ)￣)	(^-^)_旦~	ヽ(´▽`)/
＼(*^▽^*)/	～(￣▽￣～)	^ー^)人(^ー^	ε=┌(･_･)┘	(^▽^)σ)^0^)
(~▽~@)♪♪♪	ヾ(￣◇￣)ノ))	ε=ヾ(*^▽^)ノ	(^_^;	(._.)
(･_･、	(^^;)	(°～°)	(>_<")	(-。-)
(-_-#)	(-_-)	_(._.)_	(´□`)	(´ー`)
(´ヘ`)	(´ω`)	(･_･?)	(･。･)	o(T□T)o
Σ(￣□￣;)	･°･(>_<)･°･			

• Face mark 2 (28 items)

_･)ｿｫｰｯ	('-'*)ｲﾊ	(-_☆)ｷﾗﾘ	(･_*)ﾍﾊﾞﾁ
(^-^ヽ了解	[壁]_-) ﾁﾗｯ	(~ー~) ﾍｴ～	(;ヘ_ヘ)ｱｬｼｲ
(-_ゞｺﾞｼｺﾞｼ	(;-_-)=3 ﾌｳ	{{(>_<)}}ｻﾑｲ	Σ(ﾟﾛﾟ;)ﾅﾆｰ!!
(ﾟ▽ﾟ)] ﾓｼﾓｼ	ヾ(*'-'*)ﾏﾀﾈｰ	(≧∇≦)/ ﾊﾙﾊﾙ	φ(..)ﾒﾓﾒﾓ♪
(･_･)ノ~ ° ﾎﾟｲ	ﾃｶﾞｰｳ(-_-)ノノ	o(^-^)○☆ﾊﾟﾝﾁ	d (>◇<) ｱｳﾄ！
__(-_-)__ｾｰﾌ！	(>_<)(>_<)ｲｬｰ	＼(o￣∇￣o)ﾊｰｲ	(~-~;)ヾ(-_-;)ｵｲ
(￣～￣) ﾓｹﾞﾓｹﾞ	<("O")> ﾅﾝﾃｺｯﾀ!	凸ヽ(^-^) ﾀｲｺﾊﾟﾝ	(･_･、ヾ(^-^)ﾖｼﾖｼ

・Common (20 items)

おはよう	おやすみ
おはよー！今日も一日がんばりましょう。	昨日は、とっても楽しかったです。どうもありがとう。
連絡下さい。	今から電話してもいいですか？
ごめんなさい、遅れます。	今日は○○の日です。早く帰って来てね。
○○まで迎えに来て！お願いします。	○○について知っている人は○○までに○○に教えて下さい。
もう少し待ってて！	
いってらっしゃい。	留守電にメッセージをお願いします。
○○で待ってます。	ただいま電話にでることができません。メールでご用件をお知らせ下さい。
集合時間は○○、集合場所は○○です。	
今日は外で食べて帰ります。ご飯はいりません。	メールありがとう。
○○の写真送ります。	最近の○○の写真です。

・Pleasure (20 items)

今なにしてるの？電話かメールを下さい。	どこか、遊びに行こーよ！
電話ちょうだい！電話番号は○○です。	おくれちゃう、ゴメン！
どこにいるの？	集合！
時間だよーん！！	トラブル発生！！
会いたい！	大好き！
みんなで飲みませんか？○○に○○。	今日○○に、○○へ行きませんか？
○○の待ち合わせ時間と場所、決めようよ。	○○に行かない？
○○のメンバー募集！詳しくは○○まで連絡下さい。	
今度みんなで○○へ行きましょう。○○までで、都合の良い日を教えて下さい。	
今度みんなで○○へ行きましょう。いいところがありましたら、お知らせ下さい。	
○○しませんか？日時：○○、場所：○○。出欠をご連絡下さい。	
メッセージ下さい！！	○○の時の写真だよ。

・Business (20 items)

本日の○○会議は、○○となりました。	本日の○○訪問は、○○となりました。
○○へ直行します。	○○へ直帰します。
電車遅延のため、○○遅れます。	至急 TEL 下さい。
予定変更！ TEL 下さい。	待ち合わせ変更！場所：○○、時間：○○
○○頃まで、携帯電話の電源を切ります。	振込口座：○○銀行○○支店、口座番号○○、名義人名○○です。
○○の件、よろしくお願い致します。	
今日、一杯どうですか？連絡下さい。	FAX 確認願います。
次の指示を待て。	変更します。
延期します。	中止します。
○○での写真送ります。	今わかりません。
あとで連絡します。	

・Answer (20 items)

Thank you!	Good!	OK です。	NG です。
いいよ。	行きます。	了解。	ダメ！
ごめんネ･･･	スミマセン、無理です。	本当？	おまかせっ！！
関係ないね！	うらやましー。	お疲れさま。	反対。
賛成。	待ってました！	それは残念。	写真届きました。

・Others (20 items)

またねー！	今どこ？	お誕生日おめでとう。	おめでとう。
まじでー！？	まかせなさい！！	キャンセル。	いってきます。
頑張って！	ありがとう！	www.	.ne.jp
.co.jp	.or.jp	.ac.jp	.net
.com	.org	.html	http://

・Pictogram words (20 items)

Pictogram words	Meaning	Pictogram words	Meaning
	ハロー！ / またね (Hello! / See you.)		ごきげん (High spirits)
	ピース (Peace)		るんるん (Cheerful)
	落ち込む (Depressed)		どうしよう (At a loss)
	ぷんぷん (Huff)		怒ってるぞ (Fury)
	メロメロ (Crazy about)		パニック (Panic)
	寝ます (Sleep)		チュッ！ (Kissing)
	ラブラブ (Love)		ダッシュ (Dash)
	えっ何？ (What?)		写真を撮る (Take a picture)
	がんばれ！ (Good luck!)		独りぼっち (Alone)
	カラオケ (Karaoke)		サッカー (Soccer)

Note: Pictogram words are not displayed by entering the meaning.

・My phrase (up to 50 items)
The registered fixed phrases are displayed.

List of pictograms and symbols

■ Symbol list

One-byte	□ ! " # $ % & ' ( ) * + , - . / : ; < = > ? @ [¥] ^ _ ` { | } ~ 。「 」、・ ゛ ゜
Two-byte	□、。，．・：；？！゛゜´｀¨＾￣＿ヽヾゝゞ〃仝々〆〇ー―‐／＼～∥｜…‥‘’“ ”（）〔〕［］｛｝〈〉《》「」『』【】＋－±×÷＝≠＜＞≦≧∞∴♂♀°′″℃￥$ ¢£%#&*@§☆★○●◎◇◆□■△▲▽▼※〒→←↑↓〓∈∋⊆⊇⊂⊃∪∩∧∨¬⇒ ⇔∀∃∠⊥⌒∂∇≡≒≪≫√∽∝∵∫∬Å‰♯♭♪†‡¶◯ＡＢＣＤＥＦＧＨＩＫＬＭＮ ΞΟΠΡΣΤΥΦΧΨΩαβγδεζηθικλμνξοπρστυφχψωАБВГД ЕЁЖЗИЙКЛМНОПРСТУФХЦЧШЩЪЫЬЭЮЯабвгдеёжзийк лмнопрстуфхцчшщъыьэюя─│┌┐┘└├┬┤┴┼━┃┏┓┛┗┣┳┫┻╋ ┠┯┨┷┿┝┰┥┸╂①②③④⑤⑥⑦⑧⑨⑩⑪⑫⑬⑭⑮⑯⑰⑱⑲⑳ⅠⅡⅢⅣⅤⅥⅦ ⅧⅨⅩ ミリ キロ センチ メートル グラム トン アール ヘクタール リットル ワット カロリー ドル セント パーセント ミリバール mm cm km mg kg cc ㎡ 平成 〃 〟 No. K.K. TEL ㊤㊥㊦㊧㊨㈱㈲㍾ 瞦妛皾≒≡∫∮Σ√⊥∠⊿∵∩∪

□ : Indicates blank space (one-byte/two-byte).
Note: Some symbols above may look different from the displayed ones.

■ Pictogram list

Pictogram 1	
Pictogram 2	

INFORMATION

- Pictograms may not be displayed correctly when sent to another party using a non i-mode terminal.
- Pictogram 2 used in mail may not be displayed correctly on some other terminals.

List of special symbols for conversion

Enter the readings in hiragana/kanji mode before conversion.

Reading	Symbol
あーる	ｱｰﾙ Rr
あい	Ｉ ｉ
あるふぁ	α Ａ
あんだーばー	＿
あんど	＆
いー	Ｅ ｅ
いーた	Ｈ η
いこーる	＝
いおた	Ｉ ι
いち	① Ｉ
いぷしろん	Ｅ ε
えっくす	Ｘ ｘ
えっち	Ｈ ｈ
えー	Ａ ａ
えい	Ａ ａ
えいち	Ｈ ｈ
えす	Ｓ ｓ
えぬ	Ｎ ｎ
えふ	Ｆ ｆ
えむ	Ｍ ｍ
える	Ｌ ｌ
えん	¥
おー	Ｏ ｏ
おう	Ｏ ｏ
おす	♂
おみくろん	Ｏ ｏ
おめが	Ω ω
おんぐすとろーむ	Å
おんぷ	♪
かっこ	（）「」［］ ｛｝〔〕◇ 《》『』【】
かっぱ	Ｋ κ
かい	Ｘ χ
かける	×
かぶ	㈱
かぶしきがいしゃ	㈱ KK
から	～
かろりー	ｶﾛﾘｰ
がんま	γ Γ
きゅー	Ｑ ｑ
きゅう	⑨ Ⅸ

Reading	Symbol
きごう	＜〈>〉＠ @／/〃± 々×≠÷≦ ≧∴§＼∞ ∧∈∨¬∋ ∀⊆⊇∃∠ ⊂⊥⊃⌒∪ ∩∂⊿∇∑ ≡ ∮≪〃 〃≫∟√∞ ∝∵∫∬Å ‰†‡¶
きろ	ｷﾛ
きろぐらむ	㎏
きろめーとる	㎞
く	⑨ Ⅸ
くさい	Ξ ξ
ぐらむ	ｸﾞﾗﾑ
けー	Ｋｋ
けい	Ｋｋ
こめ	※
こめじるし	※
ころん	：
ご	⑤ Ⅴ
さん	③ Ⅲ
さんかく	△▲▽▼
し	④ Ⅳ
しゃーぷ	♯
しょうわ	㍼
しー	ｃ
しーしー	㏄
しーた	θ Θ
しかく	□◆◇■
しぐま	Σ σ
しち	⑦ Ⅶ
しめ	㋡
じぇー	Ｊ ｊ
じぇい	Ｊ ｊ
じゅう	⑩ Ⅹ
じゅういち	⑪
じゅうく	⑲
じゅうご	⑮
じゅうさん	⑬

Reading	Symbol
じゅうし	⑭
じゅうしち	⑰
じゅうに	⑫
じゅうはち	⑱
じゅうよん	⑭
じゅうろく	⑯
じー	Ｇ ｇ
すらっしゅ	／＼/
せくしょん	§
せみころん	；
せんち	㎝ｾﾝﾁ
せんちめーとる	㎝
せんと	ｾﾝﾄ ¢
ぜーた	Ｚ ζ
ぜっと	Ｚ ｚ
たいしょう	〒
たう	Ｔ τ
たす	＋
だい	㈹
だいひょう	㈹
だぶりゅ	Ｗｗ
だぶりゅー	Ｗｗ
てぃー	Ｔ ｔ
てん	…‥、’” ‘“ヽゝ¨ ヽゞゝゞ `、’”
てんてん	‥…
でぃー	Ｄ ｄ
でるた	Δ δ
でんわ	℡
とん	ﾄﾝ
どう	仝々〃
どしー	℃
どる	ﾄﾞﾙ $
なな	⑦ Ⅶ
なみ	～
なんばー	№
に	② Ⅱ
にゅー	Ｎ ν
にじゅう	⑳
のま	々

Reading	Symbol
はいふん	―
はち	⑧ Ⅷ
はてな	?
ばい	Π π
ばつ	×
ぱーせんと	% パーセント
ひく	―
ひしがた	◇◆
びっくり	!
びー	B b
ぴー	P p
ふぁい	Φ φ
ふらっと	♭
ぶい	V v
ぷさい	Ψ ψ
ぷらす	＋
へいせい	㍻
へいほうめーとる	m²

Reading	Symbol
へくたーる	ヘクタール
べーた	β B
ぺーじ	ページ
ほし	☆★
まいなす	―
まる	① ② ③ ④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨ ⑩ ⑪ ⑫ ⑬ ⑭ ⑮ ⑯ ⑰ ⑱ ⑲ ⑳ ㊤ ㊥ ㊦ ㊧ ㊨ 。○●◎
みゅー	M μ
みり	㎜ ミリ
みりぐらむ	㎎
みりばーる	ミリバール
みりめーとる	㎜
めーとる	メートル

Reading	Symbol
めいじ	㍾
めす	♀
やじるし	→←↑↓ ⇒⇔
ゆー	U u
ゆう	㈲
ゆうげんがいしゃ	㈲
ゆうびん	〒
ゆうびんばんごう	〒
ゆぷしろん	υ Y
よん	④ Ⅳ
らむだ	λ Λ
りっとる	リットル
ろー	P ρ
ろく	⑥ Ⅵ
わっと	ワット
わい	Y y
わる	÷

Note 1: Some symbols above may look different from the displayed ones.

Note 2: Some symbols consist of either one-byte characters only or two-byte characters only; other symbols consist of both one-byte and two-byte characters.

List of pictograms for conversion

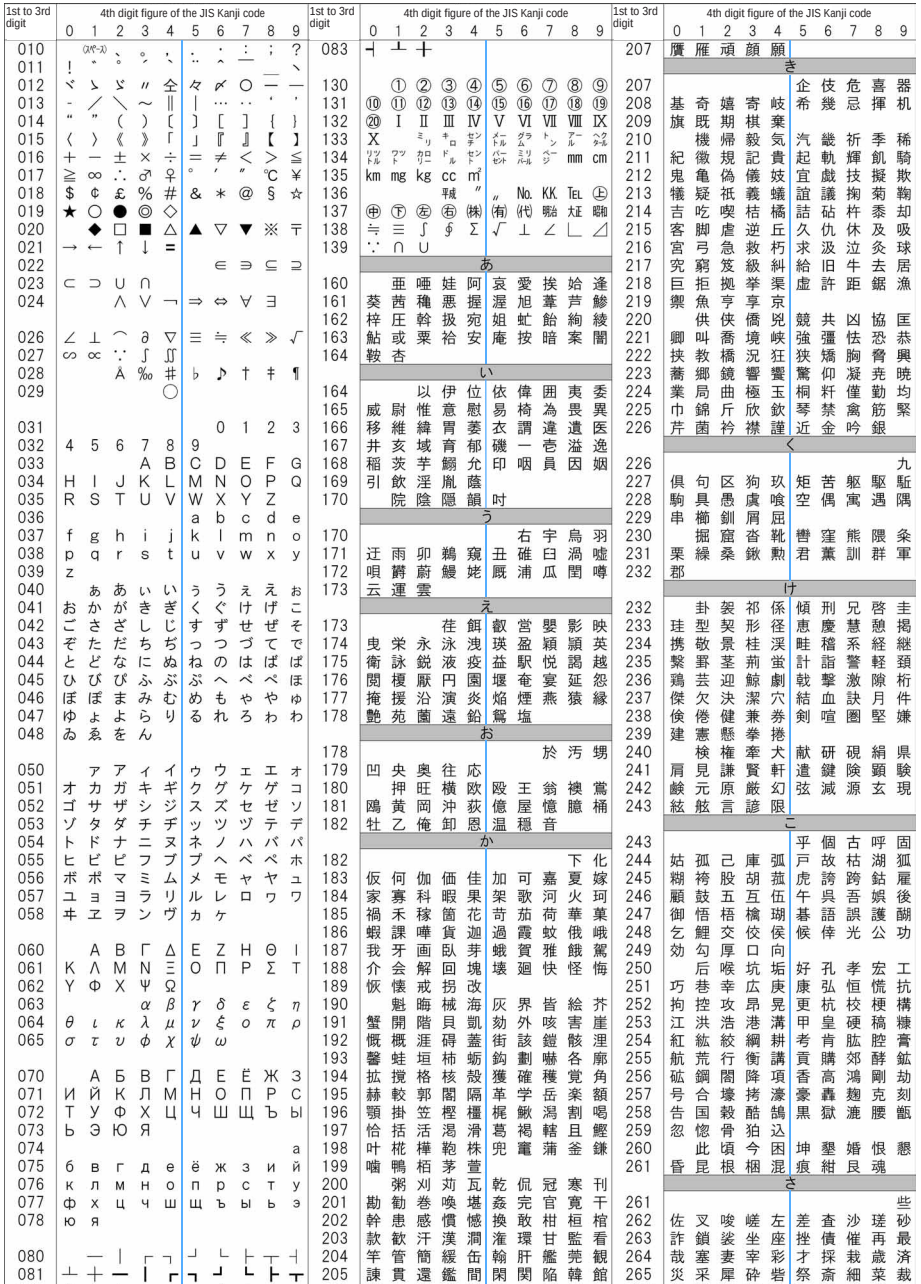
Enter the readings (“Entry” below) in hiragana/kanji mode and convert it.

• Only the following pictograms can be converted in the kanji mode. Input methods ☛P468

Entry	Conversion
えもじ	

KUTEN code input list

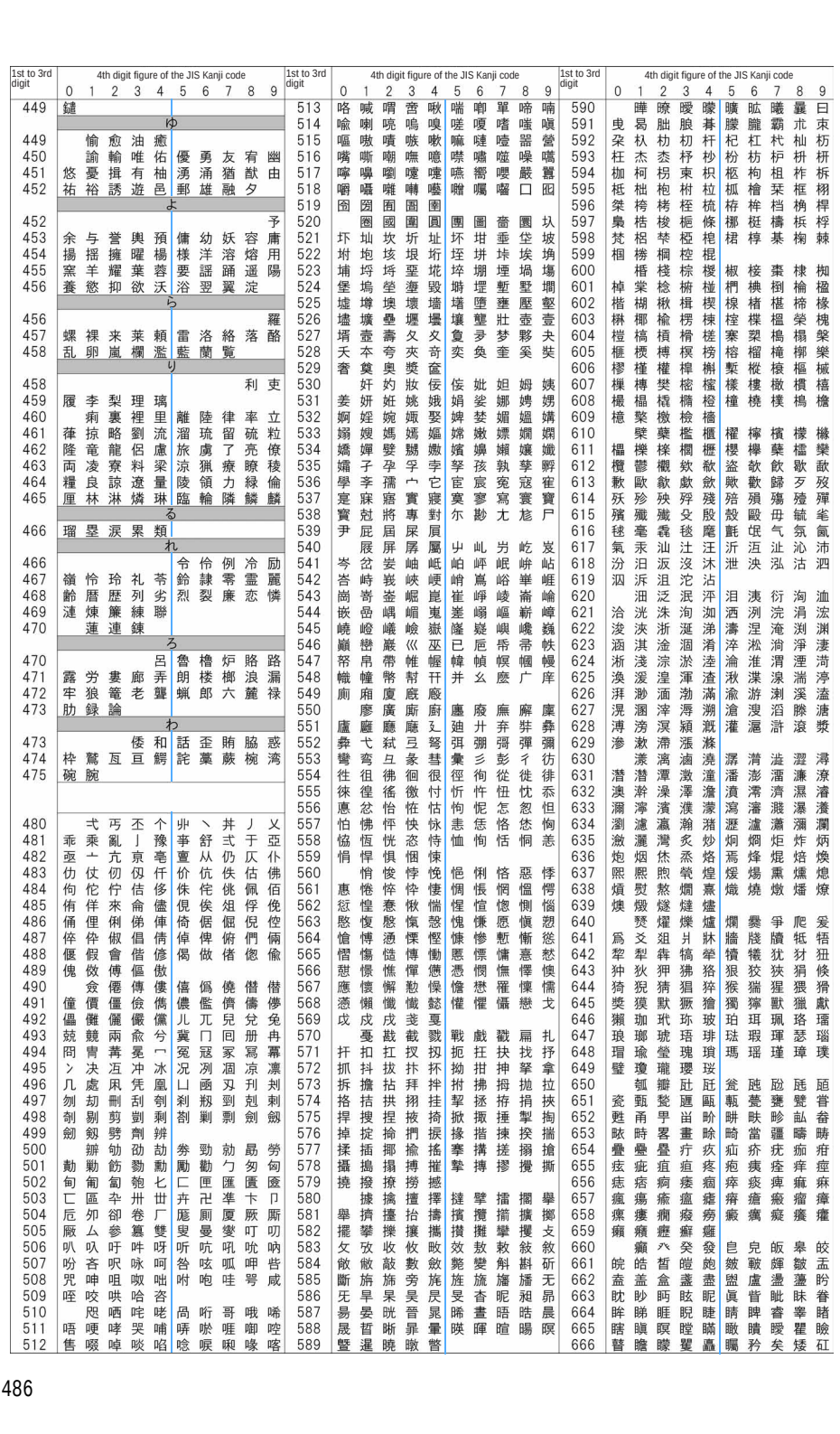
• Some of the following may look different from the displayed ones.



1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
267	堺	榊	肴	咲	崎	埼	碕	鷲	作	削
268	咋	搾	昨	朔	柵	窄	策	索	錯	桜
269	鮭	笹	匙	冊	刷					
270		擦	撮	擦	札	殺	薩	雑	皐	
271	鯖	捌	錆	鮫	皿	晒	三	傘	参	山
272	惨	撒	散	桟	燦	珊	産	算		蚕
273	讃	賛	酸	餐	斬	暫	残			
						し				
273								仕	仔	伺
274	使	刺	司	史	嗣	四	士	始	姉	姿
275	子	屍	市	師	志	思	指	支	孜	斯
276	施	旨	枝	止	肢	脂	至	視	詞	詩
277	試	誌	諮	資	飼	歯	事	似	侍	児
278	字		寺	次	耳	治	爾	璽	痔	滋
279										示
280	而	竺	辞	汐	叱	実	写	車	酌	手
281	耳	軸	七	自	宍	漆	疾	執	湿	嫉
282	失	室	柴	芝	茶	砂	姉	社	紗	者
283	謝	車	斜	煮	勺	弱	尺	赤	石	釈
284	若	寂	手	主	守	朱	取	狩	首	殊
285	珠	酒	腫	趣	種	受	呪	寿	授	樹
286	需	儒	囚	収	周	宗	就	州	修	愁
287	集	住	充	従	柔	汁	渋	獣	縦	重
288	銃	叔	夙	宿	淑	祝	縮	粛	塾	熟
289	出	術	俊	春	瞬	竣	舜	駿	峻	准
290	循	巡	遵	準	潤	盾	楯	殉	純	順
291	処	初	所	書	庶	暑	曙	渚	署	緒
292	諸	助	叙	女	序	徐	恕	鋤	除	傷
293	償	勝	匠	升	召	哨	商	唱	嘗	奨
294	娼	宵	将	小	少	尚	庄	床	廠	彰
295	承	抄	掌	捷	昇	昌	昭	晶	松	梢
296	樟	沼	消	渉	焼	焦	照	症	省	硝
297	礁	祥	称	章	笑	粧	紹	肖	蒋	衝
298	証	詔	象	賞	醤	鉦	鐘	障	鞘	上
299	丈	情	冗	条	杖	城	状	畳	壌	嬢
300	蒸	譲	錠	嘱	埴	飾	拭	植	殖	燭
301	織	職	色	触	食	蝕	辱	尻	伸	信
302	侵	唇	娠	寝	審	心	慎	振	新	森
303	浸	深	申	真	神	秦	臣	芯	身	辛
304	進	尽	人	迅	陣	仁	尋	甚	靭	腎
305	訊	須	図	水	吹	垂	帥	推	酔	遂
306	睡	穂	随	髄	枢	崇	数	据	杉	裾
307	寸	瀬	是	井	世	正	生	成	西	声
308	制	姓	征	性	青	斉	政	星	牲	凄
309	晴	盛	精	聖	声	製	西	誠	誓	逝
310	婿	静	清	青	席	積	折	節	説	戦
311	浅	千	川	全	栓	泉	染	洗	専	仙
312	穿	箭	線	羨	腺	舛	船	薦	詮	賎
313	践	選	遷	銭	銑	閃	鮮	前	善	漸
314	然	全	禅	繕	膳	糎				
						そ				
315								噌	塑	岨
316	措	曾	曽	楚	狙	疏	疎	阻	祖	租
317	粗	素	組	蘇	訴	朔	礎	遡	鼠	僧
318	創	双	倉	喪	壮	奏	層	匝	惣	想

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
319	捜	掃	挿	掻	操	早	曹	巣	槍	槽
320	蒼	燥	争	痩	相	窓	糟	総	綜	聡
321	草	荘	葬	蒼	藻	装	走	送	遭	鎗
322	霜		騒	像	増					
323		贈	造	速	存					
324	捉	束	足	促	則	賊	即	族	息	続
325	卒	袖	其	揃	速	俗	属	尊	孫	損
326	遜									
						た				
327								唾	堕	妥
328	惰	打	対	耐	滞	胎	怠	体	替	泰
329	黛	隊	滝	瀧	託	拓	沢	濯	琢	託
330	鐸	濁	諾							
331										
332	太	汰	詑	唾	堕	妥	惰	打	多	舵
333	陀	駄	態	退	隊	滝	瀧	卓	啄	宅
334	托	択	拓	沢	濯	琢	託	鐸	濁	諾
335	但	達	辰	奪	脱	巽	竪	辿	棚	谷
336	狸	鱈	樽	誰	丹	単	嘆	坦	担	探
337	旦	胆	歎	蛋	誕	鍛	団	壇	弾	断
338	段	男	談							
339						ち				
340						値	知	地	弛	恥
341	智	池	痴	稚	置	致	蜘	遅	馳	築
342	畜	竹	仲	酎	鋳	駐	逐	抽	衝	柱
343	中	註	丁	兆	凋	帳	喋	寵	弔	町
344	庁	牒	跳	銚	貯	鎮	陳			
345	つ									
346								津	墜	椎
347	槌	追	鎚	痛	通	塚	栂	掴	槻	佃
348	漬	柘	辻	爪	吊	釣	鶴			
349						て				
350								亭	低	停
351	帝	底	庭	提	程	艇	締	哲	徹	撤
352	鉄	典	展	店	添	転	田	伝	殿	澱
353	と									
354								兎	吐	堵
355	塗	妬	屠	徒	斗	杜	渡	登	土	塘
356	陶	頭	騰	闘	働	胴	同	道	銅	峠
357	導	童	洞	特	督	徳	独	読	栃	橡
358	凸	屯	鈍							
359	な									
360				奈	那	内	乍	凪	薙	
361	謎	灘	捺	鍋	楢	馴	縄	畷	南	楠
362	軟	難	汝							
363	に									
364				二	尼	弐	迩	匂	賑	肉
365	虹	廿	日	乳	入					
366	如	尿	韮	任	妊	忍	認			
367	ぬ									
368										濡
369	ね									
370										禰
371	寧	葱	猫	熱	年	念	捻	撚	燃	
372	粘									
373	の									
374				之	埜	嚢	悩	濃	納	能
375	乃	廼	野	垂						
376	脳	膿	農	覗	蚤					

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
377						は				
378						巴	把	播	覇	杷
379	波	派	琶	破	婆	罵	芭	馬	俳	廃
380	拝	排	背	肺	買	売	培	陪	媒	梅
381	煤	狽	配	倍	這	秤	箔	漠	柏	泊
382	薄	迫	曝	爆	縛	莫	駁	麦	函	箱
383	八	鉢	発	醗	髪	伐	罰	抜	筏	閥
384	鳩	噺	塙	蛤	隼	伴	判	半	反	叛
385	帆	搬	斑	板	氾	汎	版	犯	班	畔
386	繁	般	藩	販	範	煩	頒	飯	挽	晩
387	番	盤	磐	蕃	蛮					
388	ひ									
389						匪	悲	扉	非	被
390	卑	否	妃	庇	彼	碑	罷	疲	皮	肥
391	秘	緋	籤	備	尾	美	被	微	鼻	膝
392	樋	飛	非	日	桧	姫	媛	紐	百	氷
393	漂	標	苗	秒	病	描	猫	品	浜	貧
394	瀕	頻	敏	瓶						
395	ふ									
396						不	付	埠	夫	布
397	婦	富	冨	普	膚	扶	譜	敷	負	賦
398	阜	父	符	附	風	俯	釜	府	怖	芙
399	舞	無	楓	封	伏	幅	部	服	福	腹
400	複	覆	払	沸	仏	物	鮒	分	吻	噴
401	墳	憤	扮	焚	粉	紛	雰	噴	墳	聞
402	へ									
403						丙	併	兵	塀	
404	幣	平	弊	柄	並	蔽	閉	陛	箆	偏
405	変	片	篇	編	辺	返	遍	便	勉	娩
406	弁	鞭								
407	ほ									
408						捕	歩	甫	補	輔
409	保	舗	鋪	圃	捕	暮	母	簿	峯	菩
410	募	墓	慕	戊	暮	宝	峰	崩	庖	抱
411	報	奉	朋	俸	方	法	泡	砲	縫	胞
412	芳	萌	蓬	蜂	訪	飽	邦	鳳	乏	亡
413	傍	剖	坊	妨	帽	忘	房	暴	望	某
414	棒	冒	紡	肪	膨	謀	貌	北	僕	墨
415	撲	朴	没	殆	堀	幌	奔	本	翻	凡
416	盆									
417	ま									
418						摩	磨	魔	麻	埋
419	妹	昧	枚	毎	哩	槙	幕	膜	枕	鮪
420	柾	鱒	桝	亦	万	俣	末	茉	迄	侭
421	繭									
422	み									
423						魅	巳	箕	岬	密
424	蜜	湊	蓑	稔	脈	妙	粍	民	眠	
425	む									
426										務
427	夢	無	牟	矛	霧	鵡	椋	婿	娘	
428	め									
429										冥
430	名	命	明	盟	迷	銘	鳴	姪	牝	滅
431	免	棉	綿	緬	面	麺				
432	も									
433						摸	模	茂	妄	
434	孟	毛	猛	盲	網	耗	蒙	儲	木	黙
435	目	杢	勿	餅	尤	戻	籾	貰	問	悶
436	紋	門	匁							
437	や									
438				也	冶	夜	爺	耶	野	弥
439	矢	厄	役	約	薬	訳	躍	靖	柳	薮


1st to 3rd digit
4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
449 鑓 ゆ
449 愉 愈 油 癒 幽
450 諭 輸 唯 友 勇 宥 由
451 悠 憂 有 遊 優 湧 涌 融 夕 猷
452 祐 裕 誘 郵 雄
よ
452 予
453 与 誉 輿 曜 葉 欲 容 熔 遥 遜 陽
454 揚 様 要 浴 翌 淀 幼 洋 謡 溶 踊 窯
455 養 慾 抑 羅
ら
456 羅
457 螺 裸 来 嵐 欄 頼 濫 雷 洛 絡 覧 酪
458 乱 卵 藍 蘭
り
458 利 吏
459 履 李 痢 理 裡 璃 里 流 慮 梁 量
460 離 溜 陸 琉 律 率 立 粒 僚
461 葎 掠 略 劉 留 了 硫 亮 瞭 稜 倫
462 隆 竜 龍 寮 諒 旅 虜 猟 領 輪 隣 鱗 麟
463 両 凌 良 料 涼 陵 漁 糧 緑
464 瑠 臨 琳
465 厘
る
466 瑠 塁 涙 累 類
れ
466 励 麗 憐
467 令 伶 例 冷 隷 零 霊 恋
468 嶺 怜 玲 礼 冷 聯
469 蓮 暦 歴 簾 列 練 烈 裂
470 蓮 連 錬
ろ
470 呂
471 露 労 廊 楼 炉 櫓 路 老 朗 弄 郎 蝋 賂 籠 鹿 漏 録
472 牢 狼 論
473 肋 録
わ
473 和 鰐
474 枠 椀 倭 亘 鷲 亙
475 腕
480 弋 丞 丕 个 丱 丼 丿 丁 乂 亟
481 乖 亜 丐 仏 仟 伊 伍 伽 佃 佑 伶 侃 侖 侮 侭 俔 俟 俎 俘 俛 俑 俚 俣 俤 俥 俯 俳 俸 俺 俾 倆 倏 倔 倚 倣 倦 倨 倩 倬 倭 倶 倹 偀 偁 偃 偐 偕 偖 偬 偸 傀 傅 傘 傚 傭 傲 傳 傴 傷 傾 僂 僅 僉 僊 僑 僕 僖 僚 僣 僥 僧 僭 僮 僻 儀 儁 儂 儆 儋 儔 儕 儖 儘 儡 儲 儷 儺 儼 兀 兊 兌 兎 兢 兦 兪 兮 冂 冉 冏 冑 冓 冖 冗 冢 冤 冦 冩 冪 冫 冴 冶 冷 凅 凋 凌 凛 凜 凝 凞 凡 凩 凪 凭 凰 凱 凵 凾 刀 刃 刋 刎 刑 刓 刔 刕 刧 刪 刮 刳 刹 剄 剋 剌 剞 剔 剖 剛 剣 剱 剳 剴 剽 剿 劀 劃 劇 劈 劉 劍 劒 劔 劫 劬 劭 劼 劾 勁 勅 勍 勗 勘 勛 勝 勠 勢 勦 勧 勳 勺 匂 匆 匈 匏 匕 匙 匝 匣 匪 匯 匱 匳 匸 匹 区 医 匿 區 十 千 卅 升 午 卉 半 卑 卒 卓 協 南 博 占 卦 卮 卯 印 危 即 却 卵 卷 卸 卹 卻 卽 厂 厄 厖 厘 厚 原 厠 厦 厩 厭 厳 去 参 叉 及 友 双 反 収 叔 取 受 叙 叛 叟 叡 叢 口 古 句 叩 只 叫 召 叭 叮 可 台 叶 各 合 吉 吊 同 名 后 吏 吐 向 君 吝 吟 否 含 吸 吹 吻 吾 呂 呆 呈 呉 告 呑 呟 呪 呰 呵 呶 呻 呼 命 咀 咄 咆 咋 和 咎 咏 咒 咤 咨 咫 哀 品 哂 哄 哇 哉 哘 哮 哲 哺 哽 唄 唆 唇 唏 唐 唔 唖 唯 唱 唳 唸 唹 唾 啀 啄 商 啅 啊 問 啓 啖 啗 啜 啝 啣 啻 啼 啾 喀 喃 善 喋 喙 喚 喜 喝 喞 喟 喧 喨 喩 喪 喫 喬 喰 営 嗄 嗅 嗇 嗉 嗔 嗚 嗜 嗟 嗣 嗤 嗦 嗨 嗽 嗾 嘆 嘉 嘔 嘖 嘗 嘘 嘩 嘯 嘱 嘲 嘴 嘶 嘸 嘻 嘿 噂 噌 噎 噐 噛 噤 器 噪 噫 噬 噯 噴 噸 噺 噿 嚀 嚆 嚊 嚏 嚔 嚙 嚢 嚥 嚮 嚴 嚼 囀 囁 囂 囃 囎 囑 囓 囘 囚 四 囮 囲 図 囹 圀 圃 圄 圉 圏 圓 圖 團 圜 土 圧 在 圭 地 圻 圷 圸 圻 址 坂 均 坊 坐 坑 坡 坤 坦 坪 垂 型 垉 垓 垠 垣 垤 垪 垰 埀 埃 埒 埓 埔 埖 埜 域 埠 埴 堀 堅 堆 堊 堕 堙 堡 堤 堪 堯 堰 報 場 堵 塀 塁 塊 塋 塑 塒 塔 塗 塘 塙 塚 塞 塡 塢 塩 塵 塹 塾 境 墅 墓 墟 墜 増 墨 墫 墳 墹 墺 墻 墾 壁 壅 壊 壌 壕 壗 士 壬 壮 声 壱 売 壷 壹 壻 壼 壽 夂 夆 夏 夕 外 多 夜 夢 夥 大 天 太 夫 央 失 夷 夸 夾 奄 奇 奈 奉 奎 奏 契 奔 奕 奘 奚 奠 奢 奥 奨 奩 奪 奬 奮 女 奴 奸 妁 如 妃 妄 妊 妍 妓 妖 妙 妛 妝 妣 妤 妥 妨 妬 妲 妹 妻 妾 姆 姉 始 姐 姑 姓 委 姚 姜 姥 姦 姨 姪 姫 姶 姻 姿 威 娃 娑 娘 娚 娜 娟 娠 娥 娩 娯 娵 娶 娼 婀 婁 婆 婉 婚 婢 婦 婪 婬 婿 媄 媒 媚 媛 媤 媧 媵 媼 媽 嫁 嫂 嫉 嫌 嫐 嫖 嫗 嫘 嫡 嫣 嫦 嫩 嫺 嫻 嫽 嬉 嬋 嬌 嬖 嬗 嬢 嬪 嬬 嬰 嬲 嬶 嬾 孀 孃 孅 孆 孇 孌 孑 孔 孕 字 存 孚 孛 孜 孝 孟 季 孤 孥 学 孩 孫 孰 孱 孳 孵 學 孺 宀 它 宅 宇 守 安 宋 完 宍 宏 宕 宗 官 宙 定 宛 宜 宝 実 客 宣 室 宥 宦 宮 宰 害 宴 宵 家 宸 容 宿 寂 寃 寄 寅 密 寇 富 寐 寒 寓 寔 寛 寝 寞 察 寡 寥 實 寧 寨 審 寮 寰 寵 寸 対 寺 尉 尊 尋 導 小 尓 尖 尚 尠 尢 尤 尨 尭 就 尹 尺 尻 尼 尽 尾 尿 局 屁 層 屋 屍 屎 屏 屑 屓 展 属 屠 屡 屢 屨 屬 山 屶 屹 岌 岐 岑 岔 岔 岡 岨 岫 岬 岱 岳 岷 岸 峇 峙 峠 峡 峨 峩 峪 峯 峰 島 峻 峽 崁 崇 崋 崎 崑 崔 崕 崖 崗 崘 崙 崚 崛 崟 崢 崧 崩 崴 崽 嵂 嵆 嵋 嵌 嵎 嵐 嵓 嵕 嵜 嵩 嵬 嵯 嶂 嶄 嶇 嶋 嶌 嶍 嶐 嶔 嶝 嶠 嶢 嶬 嶮 嶲 嶷 嶺 嶼 嶽 巀 巌 巍 巒 巓 巖 川 州 巡 巣 工 左 巧 巨 巫 差 己 巳 巴 巵 巷 巻 巽 巾 市 布 帆 希 帑 帖 帙 帛 帝 帥 師 席 帯 帰 帳 帶 帷 常 帽 幀 幃 幄 幅 幇 幌 幎 幑 幔 幕 幗 幟 幡 幢 幣 幤 幥 幧 幨 幩 幪 幭 幮 幰 幵 干 平 年 幷 幸 幹 幺 幻 幼 幽 幾 庁 広 庄 庇 床 序 底 庖 店 庚 府 庠 度 座 庫 庭 庵 庶 康 庸 廁 廂 廃 廈 廉 廊 廏 廐 廓 廖 廚 廛 廝 廟 廠 廡 廢 廣 廨 廩 廬 廰 廱 廳 廴 延 廷 廸 建 廻 廼 廾 廿 弁 弄 弉 弊 弋 弌 弍 弐 弑 弓 弔 弖 弗 弘 弛 弟 弥 弦 弧 弩 弭 弯 弱 弴 弸 張 弼 弾 彁 彈 彊 彌 彎 彑 彖 彗 彙 彜 彝 形 彦 彩 彪 彫 彭 彰 影 彳 役 彼 往 征 径 待 徂 徃 很 徊 律 後 徐 徑 徒 従 得 徘 徙 徜 徠 御 徧 徭 徳 徴 徹 忉 忌 忍 忒 忖 志 忘 忙 忝 忞 忠 忤 快 忰 忱 忸 忻 忽 念 忿 怎 怐 怒 怕 怖 怙 怛 怜 思 怠 怡 急 性 怨 怩 怪 怫 怯 怱 怵 怺 恁 恂 恃 恆 恊 恋 恍 恐 恒 恕 恙 恚 恟 恠 恢 恣 恤 恥 恨 恩 恪 恫 恬 恭 息 恰 恵 悁 悃 悄 悆 悉 悋 悌 悍 悒 悔 悖 悗 悚 悛 悟 悠 悤 悦 悧 悩 悪 悲 悳 悴 悵 悶 悸 悼 悽 情 惆 惇 惑 惓 惔 惕 惘 惚 惜 惟 惠 惣 惧 惨 惰 想 惴 惶 惷 愀 愁 愃 愆 愈 愉 愍 愎 意 愕 愚 愛 愜 感 愧 愬 愴 愷 愽 愾 愿 慂 慄 慇 慈 態 慌 慍 慎 慓 慕 慙 慚 慟 慢 慣 慥 慧 慨 慫 慮 慰 慳 慴 慵 慶 慷 慾 憂 憊 憎 憐 憑 憔 憖 憙 憚 憤 憧 憩 憫 憬 憮 憲 憶 憺 憾 懃 懆 懇 懈 應 懊 懋 懌 懐 懣 懦 懲 懴 懶 懸 懺 懼 懽 懿 戀 戈 戉 戊 戌 戍 戎 戒 戔 戕 或 戚 戛 戝 戞 戟 戡 戦 戩 戮 戯 戴 戸 戻 房 所 扁 扇 扈 扉 手 才 扎 扑 扒 打 扔 払 托 扛 扞 扠 扣 扨 扮 扱 扶 批 扼 找 承 技 抂 抃 抄 抉 把 抑 抒 抓 投 抖 抗 折 抨 抬 抱 抵 抹 抻 押 抽 担 拆 拇 拈 拉 拋 拌 拍 拏 拐 拑 拒 拓 拔 拗 拘 拙 招 拜 拝 拠 拡 括 拭 拮 拯 拱 拳 拵 拶 拷 拽 拾 拿 持 挂 指 挈 按 挌 挍 挑 挓 挖 挘 挙 挟 挨 挫 振 挺 挽 挾 捉 捌 捍 捏 捐 捕 捗 捜 捧 捨 捩 捫 捲 捶 捷 捺 捻 掀 掃 掄 掉 掌 掎 掏 掖 掘 掛 掠 採 探 掣 接 控 推 掩 措 掬 掲 掴 掵 掻 掾 揀 揃 揄 揆 揉 揍 揎 描 提 揖 揚 換 握 揣 揩 揪 揮 揵 揶 揷 揺 揽 揾 援 揵 揷 揺 揽 搆 搉 搏 搓 搖 搗 搜 搢 搤 搦 搨 搬 搭 搴 搶 携 搾 摂 摎 摑 摘 摠 摧 摩 摯 摳 摶 摸 摺 摽 撃 撈 撉 撒 撓 撕 撙 撚 撞 撤 撥 撩 撫 撬 播 撮 撰 撲 撳 撹 撻 撼 撿 擁 擂 擅 擇 操 擒 擔 擘 擠 擡 擢 擣 擦 擧 擬 擯 擲 擴 擶 擺 擽 擾 攀 攅 攆 攉 攏 攐 攔 攘 攝 攣 攤 攪 攫 攬 攴 攵 收 攸 改 攻 放 政 故 效 敍 敎 救 敏 敔 敕 敖 敗 敘 教 敝 敞 敢 散 敦 敧 敫 敬 数 敲 整 敵 敷 數 文 斂 斃 斅 斉 斌 斎 斐 斑 斓 斗 料 斛 斜 斟 斡 斤 斥 斧 斫 斬 断 斯 新 斷 方 於 施 旁 旃 旄 旅 旆 旋 旌 旎 族 旒 旗 旙 无 既 日 旦 旧 旨 早 旬 旭 旱 旻 昂 昃 昆 昇 昉 昊 昌 明 昏 易 昔 昕 昜 昞 星 映 昡 昤 春 昧 昨 昪 昭 是 昴 昵 昶 昼 昿 晁 時 晃 晄 晉 晋 晏 晒 晒 晙 晞 晟 晢 晤 晦 晧 晨 晩 普 景 晰 晳 晴 晶 晷 智 晻 晼 晽 暁 暃 暄 暇 暈 暉 暎 暑 暖 暗 暘 暝 暠 暢 暦 暫 暮 暲 暴 暸 暹 暻 暾 曁 曄 曇 曉 曖 曙 曚 曜 曝 曠 曦 曩 曰 曲 曳 更 曷 曹 曺 曻 曼 曽 曾 替 最 月 有 朋 服 朏 朔 朕 朗 望 朝 期 朦 朧 木 未 末 本 札 朮 朱 朴 朶 朸 机 朽 杁 杉 杌 杏 材 村 杓 杖 杙 杜 杞 束 杠 条 杢 杣 杤 来 杦 杪 杭 杯 杰 東 杲 杳 杵 杷 杼 松 板 枇 枉 枋 枌 枏 析 枕 林 枚 果 枝 枠 枡 枢 枦 枩 枯 枳 枴 架 枷 枹 柁 柄 柆 柊 柌 柎 柏 某 柑 柒 染 柔 柘 柙 柚 柝 柞 柢 柤 柧 柩 柬 柮 柯 柰 柱 柳 柴 柵 柶 柷 柹 柺 査 柿 栂 栃 栄 栓 栖 栗 栘 栞 栟 校 栩 株 栫 栬 栭 栮 栲 栴 栻 桀 桁 桂 桃 桄 桅 桍 桎 桐 桑 桓 桔 桙 桜 桝 桟 桠 桧 桫 桴 桶 桷 桾 梁 梃 梅 梍 梏 梓 梔 梗 梛 梟 梠 梢 梧 梨 梭 梯 械 梱 梳 梵 梶 梹 梺 梼 棁 棄 棉 棊 棋 棍 棒 棔 棕 棗 棘 棚 棟 棠 棡 棣 棧 棨 棩 棪 棫 森 棯 棲 棹 棺 椀 椁 椄 椅 椋 植 椎 椏 椒 椙 椚 椛 検 椢 椣 椥 椦 椨 椪 椰 椴 椶 椹 椽 椿 楂 楊 楓 楔 楕 楚 楜 楞 楠 楡 楢 楣 楤 楦 楨 楪 楫 業 楮 楯 楳 楴 楸 楹 楼 楽 楾 楿 榁 概 榊 榎 榑 榔 榕 榘 榛 榜 榠 榧 榱 榲 榴 榻 榾 榿 槁 槃 槇 槊 構 槌 槍 槎 槐 槓 様 槙 槝 槞 槧 槨 槫 槭 槲 槶 槻 槽 槿 樂 樅 樊 樋 樌 樒 樓 樔 樗 標 樛 樞 樟 模 樣 樫 樮 樵 樶 樸 樹 樺 樽 樾 橄 橅 橇 橈 橋 橐 橘 橙 機 橡 橢 橦 橲 橸 橿 檀 檄 檎 檐 檗 檜 檞 檠 檢 檣 檥 檪 檬 檮 檳 檸 檻 檼 檽 檾 檿 櫁 櫂 櫃 櫆 櫈 櫌 櫑 櫓 櫚 櫛 櫞 櫟 櫡 櫤 櫧 櫨 櫪 櫱 櫳 櫺 櫻 欄 欅 欋 欒 欖 欝 欟 欠 次 欣 欧 欲 欵 欸 欹 欺 欽 款 歃 歆 歇 歉 歌 歎 歐 歓 歔 歖 歙 歛 歟 歡 止 正 此 步 武 歩 歪 歯 歳 歴 歸 歹 死 歿 殀 殃 殄 殆 殉 殊 殍 殕 殖 殘 殞 殤 殪 殫 殯 殱 殳 殴 段 殷 殺 殻 殽 殿 毀 毅 毆 毋 毎 毒 毓 比 毖 毘 毗 毘 毛 毟 毫 毬 毯 毳 毹 毽 氈 氏 氐 民 氓 気 氛 氣 氤 氦 氧 氮 氷 氾 氿 汀 汁 求 汎 汐 汕 汗 汚 汝 汞 江 池 汢 汧 汨 汪 汰 汲 汳 汴 汶 決 汽 汾 沁 沂 沃 沄 沆 沇 沈 沌 沍 沐 沒 沓 沔 沖 沙 沚 沛 沢 沫 沮 沱 河 沸 油 治 沼 沽 沾 沿 況 泄 泅 泆 泉 泊 泌 泓 泔 法 泖 泗 泙 泚 泛 泝 泡 波 泣 泥 注 泪 泯 泰 泱 泳 泵 泶 泷 泸 泹 泻 泽 泾 洁 洄 洋 洌 洎 洒 洗 洙 洛 洞 津 洩 洪 洫 洮 洲 洵 洶 洸 洹 活 洽 派 流 浄 浅 浆 浇 浉 浊 測 浍 济 浏 浑 浒 浙 浚 浜 浞 浟 浡 浣 浤 浦 浩 浪 浬 浮 浯 浴 海 浸 涂 涅 消 涌 涎 涓 涕 涖 涙 涛 涜 涝 涞 涟 涠 涡 涢 涣 涤 润 涧 涨 涩 涪 涫 涮 涯 液 涵 涸 涼 涿 淀 淄 淅 淆 淇 淋 淌 淑 淖 淘 淙 淚 淝 淞 淠 淡 淤 淦 淨 淫 淬 淮 深 淳 淵 混 淹 淺 添 淸 清 渇 渉 渊 渋 渍 渏 渓 渕 渙 渚 減 渝 渠 渡 渣 渤 渥 渦 温 測 渫 渭 港 渰 渲 渶 渺 渼 湃 湊 湍 湎 湓 湖 湘 湛 湜 湟 湧 湫 湮 湯 湲 湶 湾 湿 満 溂 溌 溏 源 溘 準 溜 溝 溟 溢 溥 溧 溪 溯 溲 溶 溷 溺 溽 滂 滄 滅 滉 滋 滌 滎 滑 滓 滔 滕 滖 滝 滞 滬 滯 滲 滴 滷 滸 滹 滻 滾 滿 漁 漂 漆 漉 漑 漓 演 漕 漠 漢 漣 漥 漪 漫 漬 漯 漱 漲 漳 漴 漵 漸 漿 潁 潅 潔 潘 潜 潟 潤 潦 潭 潮 潰 潴 潸 潺 潼 澁 澂 澄 澆 澇 澈 澍 澎 澑 澗 澘 澡 澤 澥 澪 澱 澳 澵 激 濁 濂 濃 濆 濉 濊 濔 濕 濘 濛 濟 濠 濡 濤 濫 濬 濮 濯 濱 濳 濵 濶 濺 濾 瀁 瀅 瀆 瀉 瀋 瀏 瀑 瀕 瀘 瀛 瀝 瀞 瀟 瀦 瀧 瀬 瀰 瀲 瀾 灌 灑 灘 灝 灞 灣 火 灯 灰 灸 灼 災 炁 炅 炉 炊 炎 炒 炙 炬 炭 炮 炯 炳 炷 炸 点 為 烈 烋 烏 烓 烔 烙 烝 烟 烠 烱 烹 烽 焄 焉 焔 焙 焚 焜 無 焦 焮 焰 焱 然 焼 煁 煆 煇 煉 煌 煎 煒 煕 煖 煙 煜 煢 煤 煥 煦 照 煩 煬 煮 煽 熄 熈 熊 熏 熒 熔 熕 熖 熙 熟 熠 熨 熬 熱 熹 熺 熾 燁 燃 燄 燈 燉 燊 燋 燎 燐 燒 燔 燕 燗 燙 燜 營 燠 燥 燦 燧 燬 燭 燮 燵 燹 燻 燼 燾 燿 爀 爆 爍 爐 爛 爝 爨 爪 爬 爭 爰 爲 爵 父 爺 爼 爽 爾 牀 牆 片 版 牌 牒 牖 牘 牙 牛 牝 牟 牡 牢 牧 物 牲 牴 牽 犀 犁 犂 犇 犒 犖 犠 犢 犧 犬 犯 状 犴 犹 狂 狄 狆 狎 狐 狒 狗 狙 狛 狛 狛

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
667	砌	砒	礦	砠	礪	硅	碎	硴	碆	硼
668	碚	碌	碣	碵	磧	磆	磑	磐	磙	磔
669	礹	礪	磯	磴	磊	磬				
670		磧	磚	磽	磴	礇	礅	礌	礒	礑
671	礫	礎	祀	祁	祠	禧	禪	祕	祓	祺
672	祿	禊	禝	禦	禧	齋	禍	禎	福	禛
673	秕	秖	稘	稲	稍	稘	稜	稠	稟	稱
674	稷	穂	穏	穐	穣	穹	窕	窗	窓	窒
675	穢	窘	窖	窩	竄	窪	窺	竰	竱	竸
676	窖	窩	竓	竰	竱	竸	竺	竽	笆	笊
677	竊	笄	笋	笏	笘	笳	笵	笙	笹	笏
678	竦	笞	笳	笵	筅	筌	筝	筍	筮	筰
679	笞		筐	筅	筌	筝	箆	箘	箟	箍
680		箆	箘	箟	箍	箜	箚	箙	箴	篋
681	箜	篌	篝	篋	篥	篩	篭	篦	篳	篷
682	篌	篏	篝	篋	篩	篳	篦	篷	篭	篠
683	篝	篩	篌	篏	篭	篦	篳	篷	篠	篝
684	篩	篭	篥	篠	篏	篝	篩	篳	篦	篷
685	篭	篥	篠	篏	篝	篩	篳	篦	篷	簀
686	簔	簍	簟	簞	簗	籌	籃	籔	籏	籠
687	籟	籘	籟	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔
688	籏	籤	籘	籟	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠
689	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘
690	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟	籔	籌	籃
691	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟	籔	籌
692	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟	籔
693	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟
694	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籔	籏	籤	籘
695	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籔	籏	籤
696	籘	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔
697	籏	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟
698	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃
699	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔
700		籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘
701	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏
702	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠
703	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘
704	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏
705	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠
706	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘
707	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔	籌
708	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟	籠
709	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘
710	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏
711	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠
712	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘
713	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏
714	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠
715	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘
716	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔	籌
717	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟	籠
718	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘
719	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔	籌
720	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟	籠
721	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘
722	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏
723	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠
724	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘
725	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏
726	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟	籠
727	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘
728	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔	籌
729	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠
730	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘
731	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏
732	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟	籠
733	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘
734	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏
735	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠
736	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘
737	籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏
738	籤	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘	籟	籠
739	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔	籏	籤	籘
740		籟	籠	籔	籌	籃	籘	籟	籠	籔

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
744	衄	衍	衒	衙	衛	衢	衫	袁	衾	衰
745	袒	衽	袤	畏	袖	袂	袈	裟	袷	裃
746	袍	装	裹	掛	裄	裙	裲	裾	裏	裡
747	裝	裨	裼	楊	褥	褪	褞	褄	襃	襖
748	褓	褻	褌	禪	襦	襞	襠	襤	襭	襪
749	褄	襷	襁	襴	襟	襞	襭	襪	襯	襲
750		覈	覊	覓	覘	覩	覦	覬	覯	覲
751	覚	覺	覽	覿	覈	覩	覦	覬	覯	覲
752	覺	訃	訐	訌	訛	訝	訥	訶	詁	詛
753	訝	詒	詬	詫	詰	誂	誄	誆	誚	誥
754	誄	誼	諂	諄	諍	諏	諒	諤	諷	諠
755	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠
756	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛
757	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷
758	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠
759	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛
760	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷
761	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠
762	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛
763	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷
764	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠
765	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛
766	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷
767	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠
768	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛
769	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷
770		諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢
771	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚
772	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤
773	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢
774	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚
775	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤
776	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢
777	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚
778	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤
779	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢
780		諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷
781	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠
782	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛
783	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷
784	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠
785	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛
786	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷
787	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠
788	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛
789	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷
790		諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢
791	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚
792	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤
793	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢
794	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚
795	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤
796	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢
797	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚
798	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤
799	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢
800		諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷
801	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠
802	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛
803	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷
804	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠
805	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛
806	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷
807	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠
808	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛
809	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷
810		諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢
811	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚
812	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤
813	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢
814	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚
815	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤
816	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢
817	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚
818	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤
819	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢
820		諠	諤	諷	諚	諛	諢	諠	諤	諷

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
821	関	閉	閙	閾	閹	閻	魅	魃	魏	魍
822	魎	魑	魘	魴	鮓	鮃	鮑	鮖	鮗	鮟
823	鮠	鮨	鮴	鯀	鯊	鮹	鯆	鯏	鯑	鯒
824	鯣	鯢	鯤	鯔	鯡	鰺	鯲	鯱	鯰	鰹
825	鰉	鰓	鰌	鰆	鰈	鰒	鰊	鰄	鰮	鰛
826	鰥	鰕	鰹	鰩	鰭	鰯	鱈	鰻	鰾	鱇
827	鱒	鱚	鱠	鳧	鳫	鳰	鴉	鴈	鳫	鴨
828	鴟	鴪	鴻	鴉	鵆	鵈	鵐	鵙	鵞	鵠
829	鵁	鵜	鵞	鵆	鵐	鵙	鵠	鵞	鵆	鵐
830		鵜	鵞	鵆	鵐	鵙	鵠	鵞	鵆	鵐
831	鵙	鵠	鵞	鵆	鵐	鵙	鵠	鵞	鵆	鵐
832	鵙	鵠	鵞	鵆	鵐	鵙	鵠	鵞	鵆	鵐
833	鵙	鵠	鵞	鵆	鵐	鵙	鵠	鵞	鵆	鵐
834	鵙	鵠	鵞	鵆	鵐	鵙	鵠	鵞	鵆	鵐
835	鵙	鵠	鵞	鵆	鵐	鵙	鵠	鵞	鵆	鵐
836	鵙	鵠	鵞	鵆	鵐	鵙	鵠	鵞	鵆	鵐
837	鵙	鵠	鵞	鵆	鵐	鵙	鵠	鵞	鵆	鵐
838	鵙	鵠	鵞	鵆	鵐	鵙	鵠	鵞	鵆	鵐
839	鵙	鵠	鵞	鵆	鵐	鵙	鵠	鵞	鵆	鵐
840		堯	槇	遙	瑤	凜	熙			

Combination of operations during Multiaccess

The following table shows whether or not a process that is generated or to be performed can be operated when any other operation is in progress:

Processes that occur or are performed / Current status	Voice call		Video-phone call		i-mode	i-mode Mail	
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Connect	Send	Receive
During a voice call	①	②	×	× *6	○	○	○ *1
During a video-phone call	×	× *6	×	× *6	×	×	×
In i-mode	○	○	○ *4	× *7	×	○	○
During i-mode Mail reception/transmission	○	○	○ *4	× *7	○	○ *5	○ *5
During SMS reception/ transmission	○	○	○	○	○	○ *5	○ *5
During 64K data communication	×	③	×	× *6	×	×	×
During packet communication	○	○	×	× *7	×	×	×
During data transmission (infrared communication/USB connection)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
During i-αppli operation	○ *2	○ *2	○ *2	○ *2	×	○	○
miniSD memory card in operation (during copy or format processing)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
miniSD memory card in operation (other than copy or format processing)	○	○	○	○	×	○	○
Updating software	×	○	×	× *7	×	×	×
While switching to miniSD mode	×	×	×	×	×	×	×

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Processes that occur or are performed / Current status	SMS		64K data communication		Packet communication		Data transmission (infrared communication)	
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive
During a voice call	○	○ *1	×	× *6	○	○	×	×
During a video-phone call	×	×	×	× *6	×	×	×	×
In i-mode	○	○	×	× *7	×	×	×	×
During i-mode Mail reception/transmission	○ *5	○ *5	×	× *7	×	×	×	×
During SMS reception/ transmission	○ *5	○ *5	○	○	○ *3	○ *3	×	×
During 64K data communication	×	○ *1	×	× *6	×	×	×	×
During packet communication	○ *8	○ *1	×	× *7	×	×	×	×
During data transmission (infrared communication/ USB connection)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
During i-αppli operation	○	○	○	○	○	○	○ *9	×
miniSD memory card in operation (during copy or format processing)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
miniSD memory card in operation (other than copy or format processing)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Updating software	×	×	×	× *7	×	×	×	×
While switching to miniSD mode	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×

○ : New communication can be performed while maintaining the current communication.
× : Another communication cannot be executed.
① : Subscribers to Call Waiting Service can make a call to another party during a call.
② : Subscribers to Call Waiting Service can receive a call from another party during a call. Subscribers to Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service can also use these services.
③ : Voice call (Receive) and 64K data communication cannot be used simultaneously. If you subscribe to Call Waiting Service, you can select either exiting current communication to answer the phone or rejecting the call. Subscribers to Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service can also use these services.

*1 The ring tone does not sound.
*2 Melody of i-αppli is stopped. When i-αppli is using i-mode communication, the following occurs:
- i-mode communication is disconnected when a video-phone call is made.
- Incoming video-phone calls are rejected.

*3 Reception and transmission cannot be performed while SMS messages are being sent.
*4 i-mode communication is disconnected if active.
*5 Sending while sending or receiving while receiving cannot be performed. Sending and receiving may not be allowed at the same time.
*6 When the Call Waiting Service is subscribed, the call is recorded as missed call in the received call list.
*7 It will be recorded as missed calls regardless of the contract of Call Waiting Service.
*8 You can compose and send SMS from the phonebook.
*9 Unavailable while i-αppli is accessing IC card.

Combination of functions during Multitask

Whether or not selections made in ***New Task*** menu can be combined with the currently run or set function is described in the following table:

○ : can be selected　× : cannot be selected

New Task menu item / Function in progress or status	Dial	1 Mail					6 Check new message			7 SMS			8 Read templates	2 i-mode								
		1 Inbox	2 Compose message	3 Chat mail	4 Unsent messages	5 Outbox	1 i-mode message	2 SMS	3 Receive option	1 Compose SMS	2 Received SMS (UIM)	3 Sent SMS (UIM)		1 iMenu	2 Bookmark	3 Go to location: 1 Enter URL	3 Go to location: 2 URL history	4 Screen memo	5 Last visited URL	6 i-mode message	7 Message R&F: 1 Message R	7 Message R&F: 2 Message F
Phone call/Dial input	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Video-phone call	×	○	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○
64K data comm.	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	○	○
Outbox/Inbox/ Unsent messages	○	×	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Compose i-mode Mail/SMS	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Chat mail	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○
Read templates	○	×	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Received/Sent SMS (UIM)	○	×	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Message Request/ Message Free	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×
Check new message (Mail)	○	○	○	×	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○
Check new message (SMS)	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
iMenu	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	×
Enter URL/URL history/ Bookmark/Last Visited URL	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○
Screen Memo	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○
Software list	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○
i αppli/i αppli download	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○
i-motion (Play Video/ Sound)/Melody/Image/ Chara-den/My Documents	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Camera/Movie Camera/ Sound Recorder	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Bar Code Reader	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Phonebook/Notepad/ Scheduler	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Calculator	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Received Calls/Redial	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Own Number	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Receiving i-mode Mail	○	○	○	×	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○
Receiving SMS	○	○	○	×	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○
PPP data comm.	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Answer Machine/ Voice Memo	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Alarm sound	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
miniSD memory card	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Video-phone call by external device	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	○	○
UIM not inserted	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	×	×	○	×	○	×	×	○	×	×	○	○
PUK blocked	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	×	×	○	×	○	×	×	○	×	×	○	○
Self Mode set	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	○	×	×	○	×	×	○	○
PIM Lock set	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Reading UIM	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Keypad Dial Lock set	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

○ : can be selected × : cannot be selected

New Task menu item / Function in progress or status	3 iαppli	4 Phonebook & Logs							5 Data Box					6 Tools				7 Stationery			0
		1 Phonebook	2 Received calls	3 Redial	4 Answer machine/ Voice memo			5 Own number	1 Image	2 i-motion	3 Melody	4 Chara-den	5 My Documents	1 Camera	2 Movie camera	3 Sound recorder	4 Bar code reader	1 Scheduler	2 Notepad	3 Calculator	Own number
					1 Recorded messages	2 Record voice memo	3 Voice memos														
Phone call	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○
Dial inpu t	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Video-phone call	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	×	○
64K data comm.	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○
Outbox/Inbox/ Unsent messages	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Compose i-mode Mail/ Compose SMS	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Chat mail	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Read templates	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Received/Sent SMS (UIM)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Message Request/ Message Free	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Check new message (Mail)/(SMS)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
iMenu	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Enter URL/URL history/ Bookmark/Last Visited URL	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Screen Memo	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Software list	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
i αppli/i αppli download	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
i-motion (Play Video/Sound)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○
Melody	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Image	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○
Chara-den	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○
My Documents	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Camera	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○
Bar Code Reader	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○
Movie Camera/ Sound Recorder	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	×	×	○	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○
Phonebook	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Notepad	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○
Scheduler	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○
Calculator	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○
Received Calls/Redial	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Own Number	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Receiving i-mode Mail/ SMS	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
PPP data comm.	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Answer Machine/ Voice Memo	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○
Alarm sound	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
miniSD memory card	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Video-phone call by external device	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○
UIM not inserted	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
PUK blocked	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Self Mode set/ Keypad Dial Lock set	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
PIM Lock set	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	×
Reading UIM	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

Services available for FOMA terminal

Service	Phone number
Collect call (reversed charge calls)	106 (no area code)
Directory assistance for general subscriber phones and for DoCoMo's mobile phones (charges apply) (unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)	104 (no area code)
Telegrams (charges apply) 8 a.m. - 10 p.m.	115 (no area code)
Time (charges apply)	117 (no area code)
Weather (charges apply)	Area code + 177
Police emergencies	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance	119 (no area code)
Marine emergencies and accident reports	118 (no area code)
Disaster Voice Mail Service (charges apply)	171 (no area code)

INFORMATION

- If you use the collect call service (106), the call charge is billed to the receiver together with a commission of 90 yen (94.5 yen with tax included) per call. (as of May 2005)
- If you use the directory assistance service (104), a service charge of 100 yen (105 yen with tax included) is billed together with the call charge. Note that this service is available free from charge for those who are under special conditions. For further information, inquire at 116 (NTT sales center) from a general subscriber phone. (as of May 2005)
- Note that calls to 110, 119 or 118 from FOMA terminal cannot be located. Since the police or fire department authorities may call you to confirm, inform them that you are calling from a mobile phone, give your number and detailed information of your whereabouts. To make sure that you are not cut off during the call, stay in one place when you make the call and do not turn off the phone after the call, but keep it on for about 10 minutes.
- Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected to the local police or fire department. Use a public payphone or general subscriber phone if you cannot get in touch with the local authorities.
- A general subscriber phone, when it is set for "Call Forwarding" or "Voice Warping", can forward an incoming call to a mobile phone. In this case, even when the receiver's side is busy, is outside the service area, or is turned off, the sender may still hear ringing tones. It is due to some optional setting applied to the receiver's side.
- You may not be able to call 116 (NTT sales center), Dial Q^2, Message Dial and make credit card calls. However, credit card calls can be made from a general subscriber phone/pay phone to FOMA terminal.

Options and related devices

Combining FOMA terminal with optional accessories supports a wide variety uses from personal use to business use. Some products are unavailable depending on the region. For details, contact DoCoMo Shops.
For details about the optional accessories, refer to the instruction manual for each device.

- Battery pack D04
- Desktop holder D04
- FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter 01
- In-car holder D03
- Flat type stereo earphone set P01
- Earphone/microphone set with switch P001*/P002*
- Earphone terminal P001*
- FOMA indoor auxiliary antenna
- Rear cover D04
- FOMA AC adapter 01
- FOMA DC adapter 01
- Flat type earphone/microphone set with switch P01/P02
- Earphone jack converter adapter P001
- Stereo earphone set P001*
- FOMA USB cable

* The earphone jack converter adapter P001 is required.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

About the data link software

The FOMA D Series Data Link Software can be used to transfer data such as Bookmark between your FOMA terminal and a connected PC. You can install the FOMA D Series Data Link Software from the attached CD-ROM or download it from the following web sites:
http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/d901is/

- For details on the installation of data link software, see “README_DL.TXT” of “DataLink” folder in the attached CD-ROM.
- For details on how to download, transferable data, operating procedure and operation environment, access the web site above or refer to the data link software Help menu.

- The FOMA USB cable (optional) is required for connecting to PC.
- Copyright laws forbid transfer of downloaded information from FOMA terminal to external sources even in its use of the data link software. Also, you cannot forward the data if it is prohibited from being output from FOMA terminal.

Supported OS

Windows 98 Second Edition, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Professional, Windows XP Home Edition
Note: A PC/AT compatible machine for the above OS is required.

When using the data link software

- Copyright laws
  Although this software is distributed as freeware, note that the copyright belongs to Mitsubishi Electric Corporation.
- Liability
  Mitsubishi Electric Corporation assumes no legal responsibility for defect liability, including software issues and false operations and other responsibility. Additionally, Mitsubishi Electric Corporation makes no guarantees whatsoever as to the merchantability of the software and conformance to specific purposes of customers.

Contact information for technical matters concerning the data link software

Mitsubishi Electric Data Link Support Center: 03-5319-3762
Business hours: weekdays 9:00 to 12:00/13:00 to 17:00 (Closed on Saturdays, Sundays, national holidays, new year’s holidays and company holidays)
Note: To avoid mistakes, please double-check the number before dialing.

Playing video data downloaded from the external devices on FOMA terminal Play Video

You can play videos (MP4 and ASF files) created with external devices such as a PC on FOMA terminals by storing in the miniSD memory cards.
- Playing video in the miniSD memory card ☛P354
- Playable MP4 files ☛P157
- The specifications of playable ASF files are as follows:

File format	SD-Video (ASF)
Encoding method	Video: MPEG-4 Sound: G.726

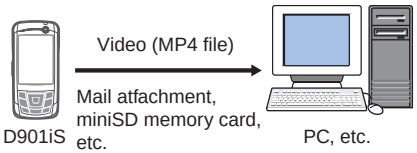
Note: Some ASF files may not be playable.

- To play a video stored in the miniSD memory card, you need to save the video data to fixed folders using the supplied data link software, etc.
  The miniSD memory card folder structure ☛P347
- In case the saved video data are not displayed, update the miniSD memory card information ☛P357

Playing video data recorded with FOMA terminal on a PC

You can play videos (MP4 files) recorded with FOMA terminals on PCs by storing in the miniSD memory cards or sending by transfer via mail.

- Video files supported by FOMA terminals ☛P157



About Video playing software

Playing videos (MP4 file) on a PC requires QuickTime Player (free of charge) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP), which is provided by Apple Computer Inc.
QuickTime Player can be downloaded from the website below:
http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/

- Downloading the software requires a PC with Internet access. Communication charges are separately required for downloading.
- For details including the operating environment, downloading procedure and operation instructions, visit the website shown above.

Playing sound data downloaded from a PC on FOMA terminal

Play Sound

The music got via Internet or contained in a CD can be stored in the miniSD memory card using a PC and played on FOMA terminal.

- This section describes the procedures of storing the music file in the miniSD memory card and replaying it by using the software (available on the market) and the supplied data link software. the following items are required to replay the music:
  - miniSD memory card
    If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores. For the information and usage precautions of the miniSD memory card, refer to “Before using the miniSD memory card” ☛P346
    Unformatted miniSD memory cards must be formatted with FOMA terminal before using. ☛P356
  - FOMA USB cable (optional)
    It is necessary in case of connecting FOMA terminal and a PC using ***miniSD mode*** (the operating system supporting ***miniSD mode*** are Windows XP and Windows 2000 only). It is not required in case miniSD memory card can be used on a PC.
  - FOMA D Series Data Link Software
    It is contained in the attached CD-ROM. Install in a PC. For the details, refer to “About the data link software”. ☛P493
  - Software (available on the market) that can convert the music in CD etc. into the AAC format
    Install in PCs. For the details of the usage of the software, confirm on the web pages of each provider of the software.
- The music data protected by the copyright law cannot be replayed on FOMA terminal.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

- When downloading sound data via Internet websites, etc., confirm usage conditions (license or prohibited act, etc.) before use.
- Tunes saved in the miniSD memory card are for personal use only. You must not infringe on intellectual property rights of a third party such as the copyright and other rights.
- Tunes saved in the miniSD memory card must not be reproduced or moved into other media such as PCs.
- Please note that DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for coping with the cases of handling with CCCD(Copy Control CD) or where sound data cannot be converted to AAC format.
- Music files stored in the miniSD memory card are replayed as video/i-motion on FOMA terminal.

1 Convert CD music, etc. you got into AAC format using the software (available on the market) and store in a PC.

- The extensions of files that can be stored in the data link software as video/i-motion are “mp4”, “m4a” and “3gp” (however, “m4a” changes to “mp4” after being stored in the data link software).

2 Insert the miniSD memory card in FOMA terminal.

- If the miniSD memory card can be used in a PC, insert the miniSD memory card into a PC or reader/writer etc. and execute the following operations of 4 to 11.

3 Switch *USB Mode Setting* to *miniSD mode* on FOMA terminal and connect a PC and FOMA terminal using FOMA USB cable. ☛P434

4 Activate the data link software and click (Multimedia data).

The Multimedia data screen appears.

5 Make the setting of the data link software.

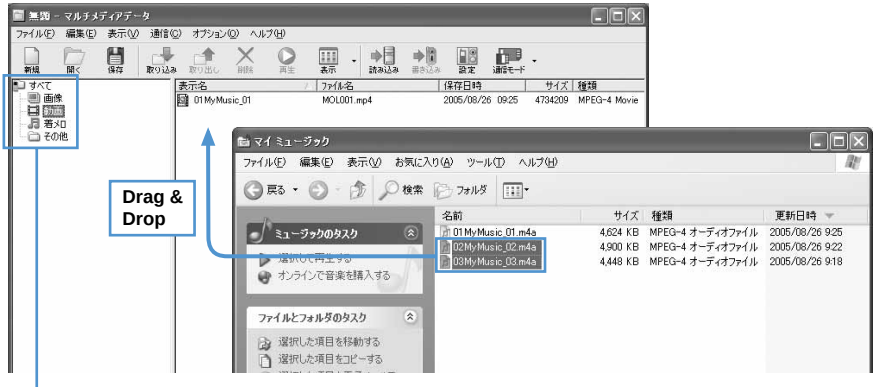
① Click ▼ in on the tool bar and select “ メモリーカードリーダー / ライターを使用 (use memory card reader/writer)”.

② Click on the tool bar and set “ 機種設定 (model setting)” to “D901iS”.

6 Select 動画 (video) from the folder list and drag & drop the music file stored in Step 1 to the video file list of the data link software.

File name is converted and the music file is stored in the data link software.

- File name is converted to “MOLzzz.mp4” (A hexadecimal value 001 to FFF in “zzz”).
- In case that characters that cannot be registered are included in the display name or file name, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to change into the name that can be registered. Click [OK].



7 Confirm the converted file name and click [OK].

8 Select the music file and click 書き込み on the tool bar.

- Multiple music files can be selected.

9 Confirm the contents of a confirmation screen and click [OK].

10 Select the drive in the miniSD memory card and click [OK].

The music file is stored in the miniSD memory card. A confirmation screen appears when completed.

- The miniSD memory card is recognized as a removable disk.
- It may take some time to store depending on the number of files to store.
- The music file is stored in the “PRL001” folder within the “SD_VIDEO” folder as video/i-motion. In case video/i-motion is already stored, the smallest number available is assigned for the file name automatically.

11 Confirm the contents and click [OK].

12 Remove the FOMA USB cable after removing the hardware on a PC.

- Switch ***USB Mode Setting*** to ***Communication mode*** on FOMA terminal.

INFORMATION

● Some stored music files may not be displayed on the miniSD memory card. In such a case, update the miniSD memory card information. However, keep it in mind when updating the miniSD memory card information, the display name of the music file is changed to the title or file name (MOLzzz (A hexadecimal value 001 to FFF in “zzz”)).

Playing the music file in the miniSD memory card on FOMA terminal

The music file saved in the miniSD memory card is replayed as video/i-motion. Operate with the miniSD memory card inserted in FOMA terminal.

1 Press Menu 6 6 1 3.

2 Select the folder (PRL001) in which the music file is saved and select a music file to replay.

- For operation while replaying, see Step 4 in “Playing video/i-motion”. ☛P330
- Press Menu 6 in the data list within the folder to replay the music files in the folder continuously. After replaying the last music file, replay returns to the first music file. The operation during continuous replay ☛“Continuously playing video/i-motion” in P355

INFORMATION

● Replaying is stopped in the following cases:

- When receiving a voice call/video-phone call
- When receiving mail
- When the time specified in Alarm Clock or the schedule setting has come
- When switching to other functions

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Troubleshooting

• Check if updating software is required first and perform Software Update if necessary. ☛P507

Power supply and charging

●FOMA terminal cannot be turned on (the terminal cannot be used).

- Is the battery pack connected properly? ☛P36
- Is the battery depleted? ☛P40
- When the mova terminal is on when using Dual Network Service, the FOMA terminal service is not available. Check whether or not FOMA terminal is on. For details, see “Network Services User’s Guide”.

●FOMA terminal cannot be charged.

- Is the battery pack connected properly? ☛P36
- Is the charger terminal dirty? Clean the terminal with dry cotton swab, etc.
- Is the AC adapter (optional) connector securely inserted to the FOMA terminal’s jack or the desktop holder (optional) connection terminal? ☛P39
- Is FOMA terminal correctly mounted on the desktop holder (optional)? ☛P39

●The call indicator flashes in red during charging.

End any calls or communications immediately.
Disconnect the optional AC adapter (Desktop holder) or DC adapter from FOMA terminal. Then connect all the devices correctly and start over. ☛P38, P39
If the problem still persists, contact “Repairs” listed on the back of this manual.

●The icon on the top of the display flashes and a rapid beep alarm is heard.

The battery is almost discharged. Charge the battery. ☛P37

Phone

●“Please wait.” is displayed and does not go out.

- The line is congested. Wait and dial again. The message can be deleted by pressing a dial key.
- You can call the number 110,119 and 118. However the call may not be connected depending on the status.

●Calls cannot be made using the dial keys.

- Have you set All Lock? ☛P141
- Have you set Remote Lock? ☛P141
- Have you set Keypad Dial Lock? ☛P144
- Have you set Self Mode? ☛P143

●*圏外* (outside service area) is indicated on the display and you hear busy signals.

Are you outside the service area or in an area with poor signal strength? ☛P41

●After dialing a number, you hear busy signals and cannot establish your call.

- Have you dialed the area code? ☛P46
- Did you hear the dial tone before entering a phone number?
- Is *圏外* indicated? ☛P41

●The ring alert does not sound.

- Is Ring volume set to ***Silent***? ☛P62
- Is the following function set?
  - ・Reject/Accept Call ☛P148
  - ・Anonymous Caller ☛P149
  - ・Mute Seconds Setting ☛P150
  - ・Reject non-Reg. Caller ☛P151
- Have you set Silent Mode? ☛P117
- Have you set Driving Mode? ☛P67
- Have you set All Lock? ☛P141
- Have you set Self Mode? ☛P143
- Is the ringing time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service set to ***0 sec***? ☛P421, P424

●An incoming voice call cannot be responded with the Any Key Answer function.

Is Any Key Answer set to ***OFF***? ☛P59

●During a voice call, the other party’s voice is hard to listen or too loud.

Has the volume setting been changed? Adjust it appropriately. ☛P62

●The redial data/received call history is erased unexpectedly.

- Is Keypad Dial Lock set on? ☛P144
- Is PIM Lock set on? ☛P143

●When there is an incoming call, a ring alert not set sounds.

- Ring tones set in multiple functions sound depending on the priority levels given below:
  ①Settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook
  ②Settings by groups in the FOMA terminal phonebook
  ③Sound Setting, Incoming Call Setting or Video-phone Receiving Setting
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ☛P145

●When there is an incoming call, an image not set appears.

- When video/i-i-motion containing sound and image is set as ring tone for Incoming Call Setting, the set video/i-motion is used as the image.
- When call images are set in multiple functions, the image appears depending on the priority levels given below:
  ①Settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook
  ②Settings by groups in the FOMA terminal phonebook
  ③Incoming Call Setting or Video-phone Receiving Setting
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ☛P145

●When there is an incoming call, the call indicator operates in a lighting pattern and lighting color not set.

- If a lighting pattern or lighting color is set for multiple functions, the call indicator operates depending on the priority levels given below:
  ①Settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook
  ②Settings by groups in the FOMA terminal phonebook
  ③Alert Lighting Setting/Incoming Call Setting or Videophone Receiving Setting
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ☛P145

Settings and operations

●Key icon is displayed instead of menu icon and icon cannot be selected.

In case some functions cannot be activated because of various lock functions or the UIM not inserted, 🔒 is displayed and some icons cannot be selected.

●The Keypad sound is not generated.

- Is Keypad Sound set to ***OFF***? ☛P115
- Have you activated Silent Mode? ☛P117

●A message ***Insert UIM.*** is displayed when FOMA terminal is powered on.

The UIM may not be properly attached or may be damaged. Check to see if the UIM is properly attached. ☛P34

●"Card not recognized." appears on the display.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. ☛P34

●***All locked.*** appears on the display.

All Lock is set. Cancel All Lock. ☛P141

●***Remote locked.*** is displayed and cannot operate the terminal.

Remote Lock is set. Cancel Remote Lock. ☛P141

●Nothing is indicated on the display.

Is ***Turn light on*** in Display Light Setting set to other than ***Always***? Screen display disappears after about 90 seconds have elapsed without any operation. During a call, (<< ✆ >>) appears on the information line. And when ***Partial display*** is set to ***OFF*** in Information Line Setting, the display in the information line also disappears. ☛P127, P133
Display reappears by any key operation.

● 🔑 is indicated on the display.

The keys cannot be used because Key Lock is set. Cancel Key Lock. ☛P147

●Pressing keys has no effect.

The keys cannot be used because Key Lock is set. Cancel Key Lock. ☛P147

●The date appears in Japanese.

- Is Select Language set to *日本語* (Japanese)? ☛P42
- Is the day for Clock Display Format set to ***Japanese***? ☛P132

●The display is dim.

Is the brightness in Display Light Setting set to ***Low***? ☛P127

●The lighting for the display and dial keys does not go ON.

Is lighting method in Display Light Setting set to ***Turn light OFF***? ☛P127

●When Auto Power ON is set, FOMA terminal cannot be turned on at the specified time.

If the power is turned off in a manner other than the power-off operation or Auto Power OFF function (battery pack came off, for example), these functions are not activated.

●Even if Alarm Clock or schedule alarm is set, the alarm does not operate at the specified date and time when the power is turned OFF.

- If the power is turned off in a manner other than the power-off operation or Auto Power OFF function (battery pack came off, for example), this function is not activated.
- Set Alarm Auto Power ON to ***ON***. ☛P390

●Call cost has not been charged.

The total cost for the UIM may exceed the limit (approx.16,770,000 yen).
You can reset to 0 yen. ☛P407

Mail and data

●Still images and video taken with the camera are blurred.

When shooting an object nearby, use the auto focus function or Macro Mode. ☛P161, P170

●Downloaded data, file attached to mail, or Message R/F cannot be displayed or played.

Because of the UIM operation restriction function, these functions are not available when the UIM is replaced or no UIM is inserted. ☛P35

●Mail reception is announced by other ring alert than that set for incoming mail.

- When the mail ring alert is set for multiple functions, the ring tone sounds depending on the priority levels given below:
  ①Settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook
  ②Settings by groups in the FOMA terminal phonebook
  ③Sound Setting/Incoming Msg. Setting
- When multiple mails are received at the same time, the mail ring alert sounds depending on the conditions set for the last mail received.
- Has the mail address of the mail sender correctly recorded in the phonebook and the mail ring alert been set?
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ☛P145

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

● Names are not displayed or ring tone does not sound at the time of mail reception even though they have been registered in the phonebook.

- The number or mail address of the other party does not match that registered in the phonebook. Register correct phone numbers and mail address in the phonebook. ☛P92
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ☛P145

● When mail is received, the call indicator operates in other lighting pattern and lighting color than those set for incoming mail.

- When the incoming mail lighting pattern and color are set for multiple functions, the call indicator operates depending on the priority levels given below:
  ①Settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook
  ②Settings by groups in the FOMA terminal phonebook
  ③Alert Lighting Setting/Incoming Msg. Setting
- When multiple mails are received at the same time, the call indicator lights or flashes in the incoming mail lighting pattern and the color depending on the conditions set for the last mail received.
- Has the mail address of the mail sender correctly recorded in the phonebook and the incoming mail lighting pattern or the incoming mail lighting color been set?
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ☛P145

● The image and video is displayed as and .

If the data has been destroyed, it cannot be correctly displayed and or appears.

● The screen reacts slowly when a key is pressed.

While transferring large-size data between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card, reactions on the FOMA terminal screen may have a delay.

Other

● Function of IC card is disabled.

If the battery pack is not connected properly or removed, the function of IC card is disabled because IC Card Lock is set. Check if the battery pack is connected properly and turn power off and then back on. ☛P36

Example of Error messages

Error Message

Main error messages displayed on FOMA terminal are shown in the alphabetical order as follows:

- The “(number)” or “XXX” in error messages is a code used to distinguish the error sent from i-mode Center.

● Address is not valid. (451)

Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or SMS messages. Make sure that the address is correct.

● Attached file space is not available.

Exceeds the maximum number of files attachable to one mail.

● Authentication interrupted.

Displayed when you stop authentication in the “basic authentication” screen.

● Authentication type is not supported. (401)

The authentication type is not supported and connection to the specified i-mode or internet web site is disabled.

● Cannot execute because of other tasks.

Stop all other functions running before updating the definition file.

● Cannot save to a miniSD card. Saving to phone memory.

The still image/video with recorded Chara-den downloaded for which Rec. file restriction has already been set to ***File restricted*** cannot be saved to a miniSD memory card. The Rec. file restriction setting cannot be changed. ☛P360

● Card error

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. Check that UIM is inserted correctly. ☛P34

● Certificate is rejected.(tampered)

The site certificate is altered. Connection is suspended.

● Chat mail data damaged. Restore default settings?

The data of chat mail contains error. Select ***Yes*** to return to the default setting. Select ***No*** to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

● Check address.

Failed to transmit SMS. Make sure that the address is correct.

● Check address.

The mail address in the mail group contains error or no mail address is entered.
Check the mail address.

● Check SMS center setting.

SMS setting at ***SMSC*** is incorrect. Check the setting. ☛P279

● Connection failed.

Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

● Connection failed. (403)

Connection to the specified i-mode or Internet web site was rejected.

● Connection failed. (562)

Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

●Connection interrupted.

Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. If the error persists, try again later.

●Contains bad data.

i-αppli cannot be started from invalid data read with Bar Code Reader.

●Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion

Reception was suspended because the data size exceeded 2 Mbytes while downloading streaming type i-motion data.

●Content length exceeds replayable size for i-motion

Reception was suspended because the data size exceeds 500 Kbytes while downloading normal type i-motion data.

●Could not check new messages.

Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. If the error persists, try again later.

●Data damaged. Restore default settings?

The data of the mail contains error. Select ***Yes*** to return to the default setting. Mail cannot be started without restoring the default setting.

●Data or miniSD card damaged.

The miniSD memory card cannot be accessed because it has a problem. Initialize the miniSD memory card or insert a new miniSD memory card. ☛P356, P350

●Date and time not set. Unable to start.

Activating i-αppliDX requires the date and time setting. Set the date and time correctly before start. ☛P42

●Delete software and IC-card data?

Among the i-αppli to delete selected items or all items, there is Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli which the data in IC card are also deleted by deleting the i-αppli. Select ***Yes*** to delete the i-αppli and the data in IC card.

●Dial callout restricted.

This prohibited operation is unavailable in Keypad Dial Lock on.

●Download failed.

Communication was interrupted during reception. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

●Error in IC-card data. Unable to delete software

Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli containing errors within IC card data cannot be deleted.

●Error in image. Does not work correctly.

It does not operate correctly because an error occurs during playing Flash movie on Site.

●Error occurred. Unable to save.

Cannot be saved because an error occurred during saving attachment.

●Exceeded number of maximum characters. Failed to quote partly.

SMS message exceeded 70 characters (160 characters for the font type of English) for reply, so some characters cannot be quoted.

●Failed to clear call cost information.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. ☛P34

●Failed to connect

Because the receiver sets Caller ID Request Service on for outgoing video-phone, connection is unavailable.
Please call back after setting to send your caller ID.

●Failed to copy.

- When copying selected items or all items of Data Box, all data cannot be copied.
- An attempt has been made to copy PIM data in an uncopiable format.

●Failed to move.

When moving selected items or all items of the data, all data cannot be moved.

●Failed to read call cost information.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. ☛P34

●Failed to restore.

An attempt was made to restore data in unrestorable format.

●Failed to save.

Cannot be saved because the still image above 10,000 byte to be saved contains an error.

●Failed to view message data.

- When deleting received mail, unsent mail or folder, the mail data to be deleted cannot be referenced. Retry later.
- Mail data cannot be referenced in chat mail. Retry later.

●Folder is full.

Unable to receive i-mode Mail and Message R/F because the memory space for the Inbox and Message R/F is insufficient. Please read unread i-mode Mail and Message R/F, release protection of i-mode Mail and Message R/F or delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and Message R/F.

●i-αppli stand-by display terminated due to security error.

i-αppli standby display has exited because an attempt was made to perform unpermitted operation.

●IC card data full. Delete software and download again.

Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli cannot be downloaded because the data in IC card are full. Download again after deleting Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli with which deletes the data in IC card, or after activating Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli and deleting unnecessary data in IC card.

●i-mode Mail service is busy. Please try again later.(555)

The i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later.

●Inbox full. Unable to retrieve new messages.

Unable to receive all SMS messages because there is insufficient storage space in the Inbox of FOMA terminal or the UIM. Please read unread mail, release mail protection or delete unnecessary mail and execute Check SMS again.

●Inbox full. Unable to retrieve new messages.

Unable to receive SMS because there is insufficient storage space in the Inbox of FOMA terminal or the UIM. Please read unread mail, release mail protection or delete unnecessary mail.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

● Inbox is full.

Unable to receive i-mode Mail because there is insufficient memory space in the Inbox. Please read unread i-mode Mail, release i-mode Mail protection or delete unnecessary i-mode Mail.

● Incoming message data damaged. Restore default settings?

The received data of chat mail contains error. Select ***Yes*** to return to the default setting. Select ***No*** to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

● Infrared Connection interrupted.

An error occurred during infrared communication. During infrared communications, do not move FOMA terminal pointed at the other party's infrared data port before data sending and receiving is complete. ☛P364

● Infrared Failed to connect via authentication.

Sending all data was failed because the authentication password is not correct. Enter the same authentication password between sender and receiver. ☛P366, P368

● Infrared No response. Initiate data exchange?

After entering into the infrared communication state, 5 or more seconds have elapsed with no other terminals for communications found. Point FOMA terminal at the other terminal's infrared data port with a distance of 20 cm or less and select ***Yes***. ☛P364

● Infrared No UIM inserted, Unable to start requested software.

Because no UIM is inserted, the specified i-αppli cannot be started even when i-αppli To is set in the data received by infrared communications.

● Input error (205)

Input data for i-mode or Internet web site contains error. Check the input data for errors.

● Insufficient memory.

Operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory.

● Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay. Change now?

You tried to download streaming type i-motion file with the i-motion type setting ***Normal type***. Select ***Yes*** to change the i-motion type setting. Select ***No*** if you don't change the setting. ☛P312

● Invalid data

The downloaded Chara-den, Deco-mail template or still image above 10,000 byte is invalid.

● Invalid data (XXX)

- The specified i-mode or Internet web site does not support i-mode.
- The URL may be incorrect. Make sure that the URL is correct.
- Unable to display because there is an error in the received data.

● Invalid data. Connection cannot be established. (400)

Cannot be connected because of the error in i-mode or Internet web site. The URL may be incorrect. Make sure that the URL is correct.

● Invalid data. Unable to save.

Data received through infrared communications cannot be saved because it is in a format incompatible with FOMA terminal.

● Invalid data. Unable to save.

The downloaded Chara-den cannot be saved because the Chara-den is invalid.

● Invalid information. Unable to play.

A play was impossible because attached data of melodies or video/i-motion is incorrect.

● Invalid UIM, requested service not available.

You tried to display/play back data downloaded from i-mode or Internet web site or saved from attachments of a mail or Message R/F using a UIM different from the one you were using when you stored the data. Insert the same UIM as used when those data were downloaded to use it.

● Invalid UIM, requested software can't start.

The i-αppli to be used together with the UIM used when downloading it from a site, etc. cannot be started. Insert the same UIM as used when the software was downloaded to use it.

● Invalid URL

The entered URL contains error. Check the URL.

● Mail address not recorded.

The mail address is not saved in the selected mail group. Save the mail address in the mail group. ☛P265

● Mails could not be sent to following address.(561)

Sending i-mode Mail is failed for some receivers. Pressing [▼] displays the receiver that the transmission failed. Check to see if the address of the receiver is correct and retry transmission at another location with good radio wave condition.

● Memory in My Picture/Other Images/Movie/Melody folder full./Number of saved data reached limit in PIM folder.

Copying/moving selected items, copying/moving all items, back up and Sync Data Info is unavailable because the number of saved items in folders of the miniSD memory card is full. Delete unnecessary data. ☛P354, P355

● Memory is full. Unable to save.

FOMA terminal or UIM does not have enough memory space and the i-mode Mail or SMS cannot be saved. Move SMS to UIM or FOMA terminal or delete i-mode Mail.

● Memory shortage. Return to Main Menu.

Operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory.
The main menu reappears.

● Message kept in center.

SMS messages have already been sent.

● Message rejected by recipient.

SMS is rejected by the SMS Center.

● Message rejected by recipient.

Transmitting SMS is rejected.

● miniSD card damaged. Saving to phone memory.

When ***miniSD*** has been specified as the destination for saving still images or videos recorded with the camera or Chara-den but the miniSD memory card cannot be accessed, the destination automatically switched to ***Phone***.

●miniSD card full.

When the miniSD memory card becomes full with ***miniSD*** set as the destination in Still Image Setting or Recording Setting for the camera, the destination is automatically switched to ***Phone***.

●miniSD card memory full.

Copying/moving selected items, copying/moving all items, back-up of data and update of information is not allowed because the memory in the miniSD memory card is full. Delete unnecessary data. ☛P354, P355

●Name too long. Saved with incomplete name.

When registering an item selected from the display of a site, etc. to the phonebook, the number of characters has exceeded the specified value. Pressing [ ] causes the phonebook registration screen to be displayed, with characters exceeding the limit deleted for each item.

●No content is available. (204)

Could not find data at the specified site.

●No miniSD card found.

Unless a miniSD memory card is inserted to FOMA terminal, still images or videos recorded with the camera cannot be saved in the miniSD memory card or data saved in FOMA terminal cannot be copied or moved to it. Insert the miniSD memory card before saving or copying/moving data. ☛P350

●No Requested File (492)

The specified file could not be found during download of a still image above 10,000 bytes.

●No requested software.

The i-αppli specified by the site, mail and external equipment is not stored in your FOMA terminal.

●No response (408)

Unable to receive a response from i-mode or Internet web site within the specified time. Retry later.

●No UIM, requested software can't start.

The i-αppli to be used together with the UIM used when downloading it from a site, etc. cannot be started. Insert the same UIM as used when the software was downloaded to use it.

●Not exist in phonebook.

The entered phone number is not saved in the phonebook. Add the number to the phonebook.

●Now calling. Unable to record movie.

When using the camera during a call, it cannot be switched to video shooting and voice recording. End the call before switching to video shooting and voice recording.

●Number of characters exceeds limit.

i-mode Mail message exceeded 10,000 one-byte (5,000 two-byte) characters for reply. Please send after decreasing some characters.

●Out of service area.

Unable to execute because the terminal is in a place where radio waves do not reach or out of the service area.

●Outgoing message data damaged. Restore default settings?

The send data of chat mail contains error. Select ***Yes*** to return to the default setting. Select ***No*** to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

●Page is not found. (404)

Unable to find i-mode or Internet web site. Make sure that the URL is correct.

●Password is not correct. (401)

The user name or password entered in the basic authentication screen of i-mode or Internet web site is incorrect. Please try again.

●PIM lock.

This prohibited operation is unavailable in PIM Lock on.

●Please set the clock to obtain data.

Unable to receive because the date and time are not set. Please set the date and time correctly. ☛P42

●Please wait.

- The line is congested. Please try again later.
- Use of i-mode is restricted. Retry later.

●PUK blocked.

Inquire at DoCoMo Shops.

●Receiving data exceeds maximum size for i-motion

Reception was suspended because the data size exceeded 2 Mbytes during downloading streaming type i-motion data.

●Receiving data exceeds replayable size for i-motion

Reception was suspended because the data size exceeded 500 Kbytes while downloading normal type i-motion data or when playback was performed while downloading data.

●Receiving messages stopped. Some messages unreceived.

Unable to receive all SMS messages because an error occurred during reception. Please move to another location with good radio reception and execute Check SMS again. ☛P279

●Registration is in progress. (554)

User registration with i-mode is in process. Please try again later.

●Remotely Controllable Services Denied

Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service that you tried to control remotely has not subscribed yet. It is required to subscribe to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.

●Replay period has not yet started.

Unable to play because of the term prior to the playback period specified for i-motion. Please try again after the playback period has started. ☛P331

●Requested software unavailable.

The i-αppli cannot be started because of an error in i-αppli.
Starting specified i-αppli by i-αppli To function from a site, mail or an external device is disabled if there is a problem in i-αppli operation settings or start-up conditions.

●Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?

The term of validity of the certificate in FOMA terminal is premature or overdue. To connect, select ***Yes***; to stop, select ***No***.

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

● Root certificate is not valid.
The certificate in FOMA terminal is off. To establish a connection, change the setting. ☛P212

● Run software and delete data in IC-card. Then delete software.
This i-αppli cannot be deleted without deleting the data in IC card. Delete the i-αppli after activating the i-αppli and deleting the data in IC card.

● Save unsaved data to phone memory or delete.
Infrared communications cannot end, leaving data saved in INBOX for infrared communications. Save the data in Inbox into FOMA terminal or delete it. ☛P369

● Self Mode activated.
This prohibited operation is unavailable during Self Mode.

● Service is not registered.
- Unable to run because you are not an i-mode subscriber. Apply to use the i-mode service.
- If you have subscribed to i-mode after purchasing FOMA terminal, once turn FOMA terminal power off and then turn on.

● Service unavailable.
SMS is not available.

● Signature space is not available.
- When i-mode Mail with a message and a signature includes more than 10,000 one-byte (5,000 two-byte) characters, the signature cannot be attached. Send by reducing the number of characters of the message or without attaching a signature.
- The signature cannot be attached when ***English*** is set for ***Font type*** in SMS Setting. Change ***Font type*** to ***Japanese***. ☛P279

● Size of this page is not supported.
- Reception has stopped because i-mode or internet web site size was larger than the limit size. Press [▽] to display the data already received normally.
- Reception was interrupted because the data size exceeds maximum size while downloading Chara-den, Deco-mail template or a still image above 10,000 bytes.

● Software terminated due to security error.
i-αppli has exited because an attempt was made to perform unpermitted operation.

● Software updated.
The i-αppli cannot be upgraded because it has already been upgraded to the latest version.

● SSL session cannot be established.
Communication was interrupted due to an SSL communication error or an error on the server concerning the client authentication.

● SSL session failed.
A problem was detected with the authentication process during SSL communication. Connection is suspended.

● SSL session was terminated.
Some problem is detected with the site certificate during SSL communication.
The message is displayed when you select ***No*** in the connection confirmation screen and SSL communication is disconnected.

● Terminal memory full.
Copying/moving selected items, copying/moving all items and restoration of data is unavailable because the number of saved items in FOMA terminal is full. Delete corresponding unnecessary data.

● The data cannot be saved. Download?
This i-motion file cannot be saved. Select ***Yes*** to download; select ***No*** not to download.

● The data may not be replayed.
Video/i-motion file format not supported by FOMA terminal. They may not be played in some cases.

● This certificate has expired. Do you connect?
CN name (server name) of the site certificate does not match the actual server name. To connect, select ***Yes***; to stop, select ***No***. ☛P212

● This certificate has expired. Do you connect?
The term of validity of the site certificate is premature or overdue. ☛P212 Select ***Yes*** to connect or ***No*** not to connect. This message may be displayed when the date and time have not been set or are incorrect. Set the time and date correctly. ☛P42

● This site is not certified. Do you connect?
The site certificate is not supported by FOMA terminal. Select ***Yes*** to connect or ***No*** not to connect.

● This software contains an error.
Unable to download because the i-αppli data contains an error.

● This software contains an error. Unable to download.
Unable to download because the i-αppli data contains an error.

● This software is not supported by this phone.
The i-αppli cannot be downloaded because it is not compatible with FOMA terminal.

● This software is presently out of use.
Using the i-αppli is stopped by IP (Information service provider).

● This UIM cannot be recognized.
The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. Check if the UIM is installed correctly. ☛P34

● Time out
The i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later.

● Too much data was entered.
Unable to transmit data because too many characters were entered in the entry field of i-mode or Internet web site. Please reduce the number of characters and retry transmission.

● Transmission failed
Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or SMS. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry transmission.

● Transmission failed. (552)
Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or SMS due to the error of i-mode Center or the SMS Center. Please try to send again later.

● UIM full.

UIM does not have enough storage space and SMS cannot be saved. Delete SMS from the UIM or move to FOMA terminal. ☛P283, P282

● UIM not inserted. Requested service unavailable.

The UIM is not inserted. Please use your FOMA terminal after inserting the UIM. ☛P34

● Unable to call.

A voice/video-phone call cannot be made during voice/video-phone calls or 64K data communication.

● Unable to delete some applications in IC card. Delete others?

Among the i-αppli to delete selected items or all items, Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli which cannot be deleted exists because the data within IC card cannot be deleted. Select ***Yes*** to delete other i-αppli than that.

● Unable to display data.

Display failed because an error occurred in mail template.

● Unable to display image.

Unable to display because original file for the image to be attached cannot be found or the image contains error. Check the image.

● Unable to display message.

Unable to display because there is an error in the received/sent mail.

● Unable to display this Chara-den.

Chara-den containing illegal data cannot be displayed.

● Unable to display version info.

The definition file version cannot be confirmed. Update the definition file again. ☛P512

● Unable to download. Data exceeds maximum size (452)

Reception is disabled because i-mode or Internet web site size is too large.

● Unable to input anymore text.

The number of characters exceeds the maximum limit. Reduce the number of characters.

● Unable to move specified page.

When an i-motion ticker contains a link to a site (Web To), etc., in case the URL contains more than 256 characters or downloading was interrupted, the linked page cannot be displayed.

● Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error.

Cannot obtain because the replay restriction data is incorrect.

● Unable to play.

Melody or i-motion data cannot be played.

● Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)

The i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later.

● Unable to save specified image.

The image cannot be saved because the image in the site, screen memo or Message R/F contains error.

● Unable to save.

Cannot be saved because the data to be saved as a mail template contained an error.

● Unable to shoot serially.

You cannot shoot continuously because memory and the number of items to be saved in ***Image*** is full. Continuous shoot is cancelled automatically.

● Unable to update pattern definitions.

Updating the definition file has failed. Stop all other functions currently running and retry the update in a place with strong radio wave signals.

● Unable to use data type.

Data in a file format incompatible with FOMA terminal cannot be copied or moved from a miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal or searched for.

● Unable to view file. Access to URL is limited. (491)

The specified access count was exceeded while downloading a still image above 10,000 bytes.

● Unsent message data damaged. Restore default settings?

The unsent data of chat mail contains error. Select ***Yes*** to return to the default setting. Select ***No*** to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

● Unsupported content.

A code containing contents not compatible with FOMA terminal cannot be read with Bar Code Reader.

● URL address changed. (301)

URL of i-mode or Internet web site was changed. Check the correct URL.

● URL is too long to register.

Unable to register as a bookmark or a screen memo because the URL is too long.

● You have no certificate. Do you connect?

The user certificate has not been downloaded. To continue the connection, select ***Yes***; to stop, select ***No***.

● Your certificate has expired. Do you connect?

The user certificate has expired. To continue the connection, select ***Yes***; to stop, select ***No***. ☛P212

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- A written warranty is provided with every FOMA terminal; make sure that you receive it.
  Store the warranty in a safe place when you have read it and checked that it contains the “shop name/date” you purchased it. If it does not contain the necessary information, contact the shop where you bought it. The warranty is valid for a period of one year from the date of purchase.
- This product and all accessories are subject to change, in part or whole, for the sake of improvement without prior notice.
- Data registered in the phonebook, etc. may be lost or become corrupted due to failure, repair or other handlings of FOMA terminal. It is recommended that you make a note of the data in the phonebook, etc. If you have a PC (Window 98 Second Edition, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Professional, Windows XP Home Edition), you can use the specified data link software to transfer and store the data registered in the phonebook, etc. on a PC. When your FOMA terminal is repaired and so on, downloaded information via i-mode or i-αppli (except some data) are not forwarded to a new FOMA terminal according to the copyright laws.

After-Sales Service

■ **When problems occur**

Before requesting service, read the section “Troubleshooting”. ☛P497
If the problem still persists, contact “Repairs” on the back of this manual.

■ **If the result of inquiries indicates that a repair is required**

Take your FOMA terminal to a repair office designated by DoCoMo. Be sure to check the opening hours of the repair office before you go. Note that you must present the warranty.

■ **In the warranty period**

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired at no charge subject to the conditions of the warranty.
- The written warranty must be presented to receive warranty service. The subscriber will be charged for the repairs without presentation of the written warranty or repairs of defects resulting from misuse, accident or neglect even during the warranty period.
- The subscriber is charged even during the warranty period for the repair of failures caused by the use of devices or consumable items that are not DoCoMo-specified.

■ **Repairs may not be possible in the following cases:**

- Repair is not possible when corrosion due to exposure to moisture, condensation or perspiration is detected in a moisture seal reaction or test, or if any of the internal boards are damaged or deformed. Since these conditions are outside the scope of the warranty, a repair, if at all possible, will be charged.

■ **After expiration of the warranty**

- All repairs that are requested are charged.

■ **Replacement parts**

- FOMA terminal’s replacement parts (parts required to maintain product function) will be kept in stock for at least 6 years after termination of production. The product can be repaired during this period. Depending on the nature of the required repair, it may still be possible to repair your phone even after this period. Contact the service center listed on the back of this manual.
- For details, see “List of service stations” attached.

■ **Notes**

- Do not modify the FOMA terminal, the UIM or its accessories.
  - Fire, injury or damage may result.

- In order to prevent interference of radio waves or network breakdown, the FOMA terminal and UIM are manufactured according to technical standards stipulated by law. Do not use FOMA terminals or UIMs that do not meet these standards.
- If the FOMA is modified (part replacement, modification, painting, etc.) it will be repaired only after the modified parts have been restored to the condition at the time of purchase. However, repair may be refused depending on the nature of modification.
- Repair of failures or damage caused by modification are charged even during the warranty period.

- Do not remove any inscription stickers attached to your FOMA terminal.
  The inscription stickers certify that the FOMA terminal satisfies specific technical standards. Note that if stickers are removed intentionally or are reattached in such a way that confirmation of the sticker's contents is impossible, repair or servicing may be refused because confirmation of whether or not the phone conforms to relevant technical standards cannot be made.
- The on/off function settings and stored data may be cleared (reset) by failure, repair or other handling processes. Should this happen, set up the functions again.
- Magnetic components are used in the earpiece and speaker of the FOMA terminal. Do not allow cash cards or other devices that are vulnerable to magnetism to come into contact with the phone.
- If your phone becomes wet or moist, turn the power off and remove the battery pack immediately and bring it to a repair office disignated by DoCoMo as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of the phone.

■ **Phonebook data, downloaded data or IC card data**

- Maintain a separate record of the data you register in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo will not accept any liability and responsibility whatsoever for changes or loss of information.
- Data created, imported or downloaded by the subscriber may become corrupted or be lost when changing the model or repairing mobile phone. DoCoMo will not accept any responsibility for that. Also, DoCoMo may, at its option, repair a mobile phone by replacing it. In such an event, it will not be possible to transfer the data (except some data) to the new phone. Regarding this FOMA terminal, images and incoming melodies downloaded via i-mode official sites can be transferred when repairing the mobile phone (some contents cannot be transferred).

Updating Software

Software Update

This function checks for the necessity for updating FOMA terminal software and downloads part of the software as required through packet communication* to make updates of the software.

When software update is required, the information will be posted in “お知らせ&ヘルプ (Notice & Help)” on the DoCoMo website or iMenu.

* Packet communication for software update is free of charge.

・Software may be updated in the following two methods:

・Immediate update ：Update on the spot as desired.

・Advanced update ：Reserve a day and time-slot for automatic update of the software in the specified day and time.

・Software cannot be updated in the following cases:

・During All Lock
・When the date and time are not set
・When the battery is not fully charged
・When PIN1 code is locked
・During IC Card Lock
・The power is off
・While talking
・While using other functions
・When UIM is not inserted
・When PIN1 code is being entered
・When 圏外 is indicated
・During PIM Lock
・In Self Mode on
・During Remote Lock
・During packet communication connecting with a PC

・At the time of updating software, the unique information of your mobile phone terminal (model or serial number, etc.) will be automatically sent to the server (or the server for updating software managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo will not use the sent information for any other purpose than software update.

INFORMATION

● If software has been already updated, when checking software update, a message is displayed indicating update is not necessary, so use as it is.
● Software update is available even if the host selection setting is other than i-mode.
● Software update (downloading or rewriting) may take time.
● If software update is executed when ***ON*** is set for PIN1 Code On/Off, the PIN code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.
● Other functions are not available while software is being updated. Only incoming voice calls can be answered while downloading.
● If ***Movie ringtone*** has been set as a ring tone, a melody sounds for an incoming call during download instead of Movie ringtone. If you set video/i-motion as an image, the first image is displayed.
● Any incoming video-phone call cannot be answered during download. Unanswered calls are recorded as missed ones in the received call history.
● Even if any alarm is set while software is being updated, the updating continues without activating the alarm.
● For software update, SSL session is established to the server (our site). Enable SSL certificate in Certificate Setting. Configured as valid by default. ☛P212
● Software update should be done with battery fully charged and enough battery power ( ).
● It is recommended that software update be executed when good signal quality is obtained, three bars of the antenna icon ( ) are displayed and the terminal is not being moved.
  * If radio wave signals become weaker during software downloading or downloading has stopped, retry software update in a place with strong radio wave signals.
● A displayed icon for the message stored at i-mode Center disappears after software update.
  If Receive Option Setting is set to ***ON*** and mail arrives during software updating, the screen that notifies an arrival of mail in the i-mode Center may not appear after the software update being completed.
● Never remove the battery pack while updating software. Update may fail.

● Software update can be done while various data, such as phonebook data registered in the FOMA terminal, camera images, downloaded data are retained; however, note that data protection sometimes cannot be secured according to the conditions of your FOMA terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak). DoCoMo recommends to back up necessary data. (Note that some data such as downloaded data may not be backed up.)

● When software update has failed, the message ***Rewrite failed*** appears and all the operations are unavailable. In such a case, please bring FOMA terminal to a repair office designated by DoCoMo.

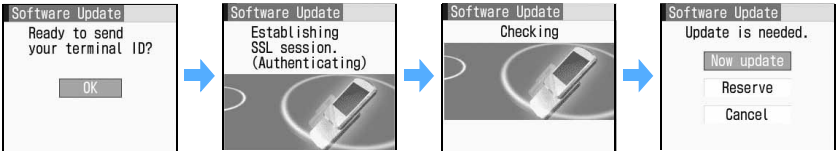
Starting Software Update

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 9 WXYZ 6 MNO on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code, check notice and press ●.

- The entered terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) is displayed as "✳".
- The terminal security code by default is set to "0000".

3 Confirm whether software update is required by pressing ● twice.



- Pressing ● on the confirmation screen for sending terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

When updating is not necessary

If software updating has been found to be unnecessary as a result of checking for the necessity of updating, the screen as shown on the left is displayed. Press ● to use FOMA terminal as it is.

Updating software immediately

Immediate Update

- Immediate update may not be available when the server is busy.

1 Display the selection screen for the update procedure.

2 Select *Now update* and press [●].

Downloading is started and the call indicator flashes.

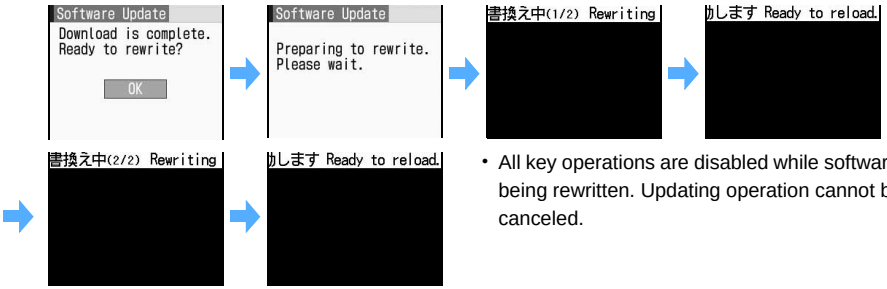
- Press [●] to cancel downloading. If downloading is canceled halfway, the data downloaded up to then is deleted.
- After starting downloading, updating process is executed without the operation of selecting the menu.

When the server is busy

- Select ***Reserve*** and reserve a date and time for update.

3 After completion of downloading, software is rewritten automatically.

As downloading completes, software rewriting is automatically started. Rewriting is started by pressing [●] after downloading as well. During rewriting, the call indicator flashes.



- All key operations are disabled while software is being rewritten. Updating operation cannot be canceled.

4 Automatically reloaded after the completion of rewriting.

After reload, wait while connection is made again to the server.

5 Press [●].

Update is completed and the stand-by display appears.

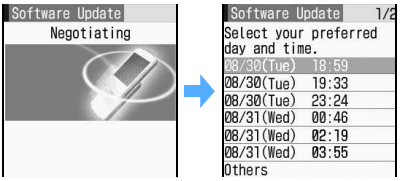
Updating software at pre-specified time

Reserved Update

When downloading takes time or the server is busy, you can choose to set the time to start software update in advance by communicating with the server.

1 Display the selection screen for the update procedure.

2 Select *Reserve*.



Inquire the option for preferred day and time by communicating with the server.

- Available date and time for reservation will be shown by the time of the server.

3 Select preferred day and time.

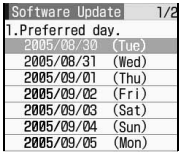
■ Selecting from the options displayed

① Select preferred day and time and select *Yes*.

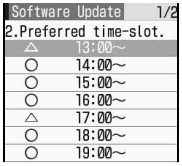
- If there are more than one option page for preferred day and time, press ▶ to switch to the next or previous page.

■ Selecting from other than options displayed

① Select *Others*.



② Select preferred day and time-slot.



Availability for reservation at each time-slot will be shown:
○ : available △ : barely available

- If there are more than one option page for preferred day, press ▶ to switch to the next or previous page.

③ Select preferred day and time-slot.

Connection is made to the server and the options close to preferred day and time-slot are displayed.

- If there are more than one option page for preferred time-slot, press ▶ to switch to the next or previous page.
- Press 🕮 to display the description of the symbol on the left of time-slot.

④ Select preferred day and time and select *Yes*.

- If there are more than one option page for preferred day and time, press ▶ to switch to the next or previous page.

4 Press ●.

Reservation is completed and the menu is displayed.

- is shown on the stand-by display when reservation is made.

Checking/changing/canceling reservation

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 9 WXYZ 6 MNO on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and check the contents.

- Select ***OK*** to stop checking.

Changing reservation

① Select *Change* and press ●.

The option selection screen is displayed.

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Updating software at pre-specified time". ☛P510
- Pressing ● on the confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

Canceling reservation

① Select *Cancel* and select *Yes*.

A confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID is displayed.

② Press ● twice.

The reservation is canceled and the menu is displayed.

- Pressing ● on the confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

When the reserved time arrives

- When the reserved time arrives, the screen as shown on the left is displayed and updating software is started automatically. Before the reserved time, make sure that the battery is fully charged and the handset is in a location where radio waves reach and then show the standby display.
  When downloading is completed, rewritting software is automatically started, followed by reload.
- To cancel the software update, press clear and select ***Yes***.

INFORMATION

- In case the reserved time arrives while talking or receiving messages, updating software starts after finishing talking or receiving messages. When the reserved time arrives during i-mode communication, updating software starts after i-mode communication is disconnected.
- If software update is executed when ***ON*** is set for PIN1 Code On/Off, the PIN code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.
- If any alarm is set for the same time, the alarm takes precedence and the software update may not be started.

Protecting FOMA terminal from hazardous data

Virus Scan Function

Update pattern definition first to keep the pattern definition up-to-date.

For the data or program downloaded via a website or received mail, this function detects data that may cause troubles and then deletes it or inhibits activation of applications in order to protect FOMA terminal from viruses.

- Pattern definition used for checking needs to be upgraded, because it is updated whenever a new trouble is detected.
- Virus Scan Function is for preventing the data that cause some problem to mobile phone from invading when viewing websites or receiving mail. Please note that if pattern definition corresponding to specific troubles has not been downloaded to the mobile phone or such pattern definition does not exist, this function cannot prevent the trouble from happening.
- Pattern definition is different depending on the model of mobile phone. Please keep in mind that DoCoMo may stop distributing the pattern definition for the models that have been on the market for 3 years or more.
- When updating pattern definition, your private information concerning the mobile phone (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for the scan function managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo does not use the sent information for purposes other than the scan function.

Setting scan function

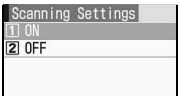
Scanning Setting

If Scanning Setting is set to ***ON***, data or program is checked automatically when it is executed.

Default ON

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 3 DEF 7 PQRS 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

2 Press 1 and select *Yes*.



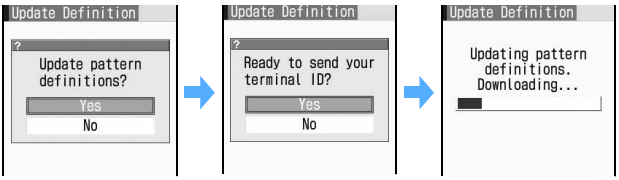
- When the virus scan function, when set, has detected data that may cause troubles, it displays a message in one of 5 warning levels. ☛P513
- To cancel scan function, press 2 and select *Yes*.

Updating pattern definition

Update Definition

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 3 DEF 7 PQRS 1 on the stand-by display.

2 Select *Yes* twice to update the pattern definition.



3 Press .

Update is completed.

- If pattern definition update has been found to be unnecessary as a result of checking for the necessity of updating, the message meaning that the pattern definition is up-to-date is displayed. Please use FOMA terminal as it is.

INFORMATION

- Updating pattern definition is stopped with a voice call arrived. When there is a video-phone call or data is received using an external device or the infrared communication function,updating is not interruptted.
- If the date/time set for an alarm or a schedule alarm is reached, the screen for notifying the date and time is displayed during updating pattern definition and the alarm sounds, but updating is continued.
- Set the date of FOMA terminal correctly.

Displaying the scan result

When displaying a list of detected problem elements

① **Select *Detail* while a warning message is being displayed.**

The list of the name of problem elements detected by scan is displayed.

- When 6 or more problem elements have been detected, the names of the 6th and subsequent problem elements are omitted and the total count of the detected problem elements is displayed.

Display of the scan result

Warning level	Message	Handling method
Warning Level 0	Problem detected. Operation may not run properly. OK Detail	***OK*** : Continues processing of the started application. ***Detail*** : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 1	Problem detected. Operation may not run properly. Cancel operation? Yes No Detail	***Yes*** : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. ***No*** : Continues processing of the started application. ***Detail*** : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 2	Problem detected. Operation may not run properly. Canceling operation. OK Detail	***OK*** : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. ***Detail*** : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 3	Problem detected. Operation may not run properly. Delete data? Yes No Detail	***Yes*** : Deletes data that may cause troubles. ***No*** : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. ***Detail*** : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 4	Problem detected. Deleting data. OK Detail	***OK*** : Deletes data that may cause troubles. ***Detail*** : Lists names of the detected problem elements.

INFORMATION

● In case some problem is detected through scan in the i-αppli set as the i-αppli stand-by display and activating i-αppli is stopped, the i-αppli stand-by display is canceled.

Checking the pattern definition version

Scan Version

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 3 DEF 7 PQRS 3 DEF on the stand-by display.

SAR certification information

This model phone FOMA D901iS meets the MIC's*1 technical regulation for exposure to radio waves. The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and through evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)*2 averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP*3.
All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 0,710 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC) and the test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.
For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO): http://www.who.int/peh-emf/
ICNIRP: http://www.icnirp.de/
MIC: http://www.soumu.go.jp/english/index.html
TELEC: http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/index_e.html
NTT DoCoMo: http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/ (Japanese only)
MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC: http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/d901is/

*1 Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications
*2 The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.
*3 International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

MEMO

MEMO

Quick Search/INDEX/ Quick Reference Manual

Quick Search **518**
INDEX **520**
Quick Reference Manual **524**

Quick Search

Use this Quick Search to look for the frequently used or convenient functions directly.

Useful functions for phone calls

- Notify/not notify your phone number..... 44 Caller ID Notification
- Talk without holding your phone..... 75 Speakerphone function
- Adjust volume of caller's voice ..... 62 Volume Setting
- Put the current call on hold..... 47 On-hold
- Switch to video-phone call during voice call..... 49 Switch to video-phone

When unable to answer an incoming call

- Record caller's messages ..... 69 Answer Machine
- Use Voice Mail Service..... 420 Voice Mail
- Put the incoming call on hold..... 65 Response and Hold

How to change melodies or lighting patterns

- Mute sound heard when pressing a keypad..... 115 Keypad Sound
- Use your favorite ring tones..... 112 Sound Setting
- Adjust volume of ring tones ..... 62 Ring Volume Setting
- Turn Silent Mode on ..... 117 Silent Mode
- Use vibrator for incoming calls ..... 115 Vibrator Setting
- Customize the call indicator's color and pattern.... 130 Alert Lighting Setting
- Use personal ring tones for callers..... 93 Phonebook New Entry

How to change the screen display

- Customize the stand-by display (wallpaper)..... 118 Stand-by Display Setting
- Show the calendar on the stand-by display ..... 121 Stand-by calendar
- Adjust the date & time ..... 42 Date and Time Setting
- Change the size of characters..... 131 Font
- Learn the meaning of icons on the screen ..... 24 Reading display

Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. ☛P346

Advanced functions for mail

- Send your original Deco-mail ..... 227 Deco-mail
- Send images with mail..... 233 Attachment
- Sort and save mail automatically..... 262 Sort Criteria

Advanced functions for camera

- Change the size of image to shoot..... 167 Image size
- Change the shutter sound ..... 167 Shutter sound
- Turn the compact light on when shooting..... 159 Compact light
- Save data into the miniSD memory card ..... 167 Save to
- Display saved images..... 318 My Picture

Settings for your phone safety

- Keep your phonebook data secret..... 108 Secret Attribute
- Reject calls without caller ID..... 149 Anonymous Caller
- Reject callers not registered in your phonebook ... 151 Reject non-Reg. Caller
- Lock your phone when you don't carry it ..... 141 Remote Lock
- Disable the key operation ..... 147 Key Lock

Other useful functions

- Call up function menus simply..... 29 Shortcut operations
- Use your phone as a calculator ..... 409 Calculator
- Read a QR code or barcode..... 175 Bar Code Reader
- Send/receive data via infrared communication..... 364 Infrared communication
- Use your phone as an alarm clock ..... 388 Alarm Clock
- Use the miniSD memory card..... 346 miniSD memory card

- See "How to refer this manual" inside the front cover for search methods other than Quick Search.
- See "Quick Reference Manual" for operating procedure of frequently used functions.

INDEX

A

Add Address 226
Add to Phonebook
  Mail 260
  Site 202
  URL 203
Added Service 429
Adjust volume 62
After-Sales Service 505
Alarm Auto Power ON 390
Alarm Clock 388
Album 357
Alert Lighting Setting 130
All Lock 141
Anonymous Caller 149
Answer Machine
  Greeting Response Time 70
  Greeting Setting 71
  Play/delete messages 71
  Quick Record Message 69
Arrival Act Setting 428
Arrival Call Act 428
AT command 455
Attachment
  Attaching 233
  Auto playing (Message Attachment) 268
  Changing/removing 235
  Deleting 249
  Display images 245
  Play melodies 248
  Receive setting (Incoming Msg. Attach.) 267
  Save images 245
  Save melodies 249
  Save still images 246
Attach/remove battery pack 36
Auto Answer 414
Auto Assist Setting 53
Auto Display 208
Auto focus 161
Automatic time correction 42
AV Phone To (→ Phone to)

B

Bar Code Reader 175
Battery Icon 130
Battery Level 40
Battery pack 36
Bookmark
  Deleting 195
  Display sites by shortcut 195
  Displaying 194
  i-mode Shortcut 194
  Moving/copying 195
  Register from mail 261
  Register from site 193
  Rename folder 194
  Rename title 194
  Sort 196

C

Cache 189
Calculator 409
Calendar (→ Scheduler)
Call cost
  Call Cost Limit 408
  Checking 407
  Remove Call Cost Icon 409
  Reset Call Cost 408
Call duration 37
  Checking 407
Call Forwarding Service 424
Call indicator 22
Call Waiting Service 422
Caller ID Notification 44
  Set for each call 51
Caller ID Request Service 426
Camera 154
  Auto focus 161
  Auto timer 169
  Brightness 173
  Camera effect 172
  Color density 174
  Compact light 159
  Compose mail from image 159
  Continuous shoot 162
  File 157
  Frame 171
  Image size 171
  Lens cover 155
  Macro Mode 170
  Movie Camera 164
  Number of saved still images 157
  One-shot Message 174
  Quality 172
  Recording Setting 166
  Recording time of video 157
  Restore default setting 174
  Save as mirror image 160
  Shooting screen 156
  Size restrictions 172
  Still Camera 158
  Still Image Setting 166
  Switch in-camera/out-camera 159
  White balance 173
  Zoom 168
Certificate Download 213
Certificate operation 212
Change i-mode Password 191
Character Encode 193
Characters entry 464
  Change input modes 464
  Character assignments (Slot Input Method) 479
  Character assignments (5-touch Input Method) 478
  Character entry screen 464
  Copying 470
  Cutting 470
  Deleting 466
  Enter face marks 467
  Enter fixed phrases 467
  Enter pictograms 468
  Enter symbols 468
  Full-screen entry 464
  In-line entry 464
  Input Method Setting 472
  Input prediction function 467
  Kana/Kanji Conversion 465
  KUTEN Code Input 470
  Line feed 466
  Pasting 470
  Quote data 468
  Save Phrase 469
  Save Word 470
  Slot Input Method 471
  5-touch Input Method 465
Chara-den 337
  Deleting 363
  Displaying 338
  Downloading 201
  List of actions 339
  Moving 358
  Recording 340
  Set as substitute image 80
  Sort 363
  Still Image Setting/Video Setting 343
  Use album 357
  Video-phone call 79
  View/Edit Detail Info 360
Charge Alert 116
Charging 37
Charging time 37
Chat Mail 270
  Broadcast address 274
  Chat mail screen 271
  Chat Mail Setting 276
  Chat Member Setting 271
  Deleting 274
  Edit chat members 274
  Exiting 275
  Receiving 273
  Sending 272
  Set personal information 275
Check i-mode Message 243
  Setting 265
Check Messages (Voice Mail) ... 422
Check new message
  Check i-mode Message 243
  Check SMS 279
  Message Retrieval Setting 265
Check phone number 44
Check Records 110
Close Setting 59
Column Search 102
Communication configuration file 435
Compact light 23
Confirm Settings
  Functions 415
  Mail Setting 220
Connection Timeout Setting 204
Contact Image 125
Copying 470
Custom Menu 400
Custom stand-by display 122
Customize Silent Mode 117
Customized Call 52
Cutting 470

D

Data communication 432
  Communication configuration file 433
  Connecting 434
  Dialup network 446
  FOMA PC configuration software 433
  Glossary 433
  Setup work 433
Data interchange with external device 493
Data link software 493
Date and Time Setting 42
Date To function 411

Deco-mail
Composing....227
Template....236
Display....22
Guide row....25
Reading....24
Task bar....26
Display Address....255
Display Color Setting....206
Display data....354
Display Light Setting....127
i-αppli....293
Display sites by shortcut....195
DoCoMo for General Inquiries...428
Driving Mode....67
Dual Network Service....427

E

Earphone/microphone jack....23
Earphone/microphone set with switch
Connecting....23
Use the set....412
Earpiece....22
Easy Selector Plus....23
Edit by Slide....386
Edy....296
Electronic money....296
English Guidance....427
English mode....42
Enter characters (→ Characters entry)
Error Message....499
External connection terminal....23

F

Face marks
Entering....467
List....479
FeliCa....314
FirstPass....215
Fixed phrases
Entering....467
List....479
Registering....469
Flash function....189
Flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (→ Earphone/microphone set with switch)
Focus Mode....32
FOMA card (→ UIM)
FOMA PC configuration software....437
Font....131
Font Size....269
Forward Mail....244

G

Group Search....100

H

Headset Quick Dial....413
Headset Switch....414
Host
Certificate Host....215
ISP Connection Communication....204

I

IC card function....314
IC Card Lock....316
Image
Adjusting....327
Change brightness or tone....323
Change size....322
Clipping....322
Compose mail from image....319
Create animation....320
Cutting....326
Deleting....363
Display from mail....245
Displaying....318
Editing....321
Effects....324
Frames....324
Limit file size for saving....327
Moving/copying....358
Paste Text....326
Reversing/rotating....324
Save from mail....245
Save from site....198
Set as stand-by image....319
Settings....328
Shooting....158
Sorting....363
Stamps....325
View/Edit Detail Info....360
Image & Effect Setting....205
i-melody....199
iMenu....181
i-mode....180
i-mode FeliCa....314
i-mode Mail (→ Mail)
i-mode password....136
i-mode Setting....204
i-mode Shortcut
Bookmark....194
i-αppli....300
i-motion....310
Playing/saving....246
Setting....312
i-motion Mail....222
Playing/saving....246
Sending....233
i-motion (Data Box)....328
Deleting....363
Sorting....363
Use album....357
Inbox....250
In-camera....22
In-car Handsfree....55
Incoming Call Setting....63
Incoming Msg. Alert....209
Incoming Msg. Attach.....267
Incoming Msg. Image....126
Incoming Msg. Setting....269
Information line....26
Setting....133
Infrared communication....364
Data Transfer Setting....370
INBOX....369
Receiving....367
Remote control function....370
Sending....365
Use from i-αppli....308
Infrared Communication Mode...370
Infrared data port....364
Input prediction function....467
International call....53
Internet Connection....192
i-shot....221
ISP Connection Communication....204
i-αppli....286
Auto Start....300
Check number of items....307
Create/delete folders....304
Deleting....306
Detail Info....292
Downloading....288
i-αppli Shortcut....300
i-αppli To....302
Light setting....293
Moving....306
One-touch Button....299
Pre-installed i-αppli....294
Protecting....305
Quitting....290
Settings....292
Software in Folder....307
Software Info Display....290
Software Information....307
Sorting....307
Starting....290
Trace information....291
Upgrade....304
Use Bar Code Reader....308
Use Camera....308
Use infrared communication....308
Vibrator setting....293
i-αppli DX....286
i-αppli Shortcut....300
i-αppli Stand-by Display Operation....302
Setting....121

K

Key Lock....147
Keylock switch....23
Keypad Dial Lock....144
Keypad Sound....115
KUTEN code input list....484
Entering....470

L

Light setting (→ Display Light Setting)
Line feed....466
List of fixed phrases....479
List of pictograms....481
List of symbols....481
Low Battery Alert....41

M

Mail....218
Add Address....226
Attach images....233
Attachment....233
Auto Receive....240
Check i-mode Message....243
Check number of items....255
Compose from phonebook....100
Compose from schedule....397
Compose Message....225
Copy text....260
Copying....255
Create/delete folders....254
Deco-mail....227
Delete Attachment....249
Deleting....258
Delivered report....224
Display Address....255
Display Type....268
Display/Save Image....245
Editing....239
Folder list screen....251
Font Size....269
Forwarding....244
Inbox/Outbox....250
Insert signature....225
List screen....251
Mail List Setting....267
Make calls from mail....256
Moving....255
Msgs. in Folder....255
Play/Save Melody....248

Protecting ... 257
Quick Mail ... 239
Receiving ... 240
Register link items in phonebook ... 260
Register URL in bookmark ... 261
Replying ... 243
Saving ... 238
Sorting ... 256
View screen ... 251
Mail address ... 218
Display Address ... 255
Mail Group Setting ... 265
Mail List Setting ... 267
Mail menu ... 224
Mail Reply Format ... 267
Mail Setting (FOMA terminal) ... 261
Mail Setting (i-mode Center) ... 219
Mail templates ... 236
Mail To (Mail) ... 259
Mail To (Site) ... 201
Mail/Call Image Setting ... 125
Make calls from phonebook ... 99
Make calls (→ Phone)
Melody
Compose mail from melody ... 344
Deleting ... 363
List ... 114
Moving ... 358
Playing ... 344
Save from mail ... 249
Save from site ... 199
Set as ring tone ... 345
Settings ... 345
Sorting ... 363
Use album ... 357
View/Edit Detail Info ... 360
Member list ... 398
Menu ... 27
Change design ... 129
Describe function ... 30
List ... 474
Menu Setting ... 128
Submenu ... 31
Message Attachment ... 268
Message i-αppli ... 287
Message Retrieval Setting ... 265
Message R/F ... 207
Auto Display ... 208
Check i-mode Message ... 243
Deleting ... 211
Display by Type ... 212
Display Priority ... 270
Displaying ... 209
Incoming Msg. Alert ... 209
Protecting ... 211
Receiving ... 207
Reloading images ... 211
Microphone ... 22
miniSD memory card ... 346
Back up ... 353
Check free space ... 351
Display data ... 354
Folder structure ... 347
Format ... 356
Inserting/removing ... 350
Scan Card ... 357
Update information ... 357
miniSD memory card adapter ... 347
miniSD memory card slot ... 23
Missed Call Notice ... 422
Missed call ... 61
Mobile Wallet ... 314
Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli ... 287
Starting ... 315
Movie Camera (→ Camera)
Multiaccess ... 382
Combination ... 488
Multi-address transmission ... 226
Multi Number ... 429
Multitask ... 384
Combination ... 490
Mute Seconds Setting ... 150
My Document ... 375
Deleting ... 363
Sorting ... 363
Use folder ... 357
My Menu ... 191
My phone number ... 44
My Picture ... 318
Deleting ... 363
Sorting ... 363
Use album ... 357

N

Name displays ... 93
Name Search ... 101
Names and functions of parts ... 22
Network Service ... 420
Noise Reduction ... 55
Notepad ... 410
Notification (Voice Mail) ... 422
Nuisance Call Blocking Service ... 425
Number of saved, registered and protected items in FOMA terminal ... 33
Number Search ... 102
NW Search Method ... 415

O

On hold
On-hold while talking ... 47
Response and Hold ... 65
One-shot Message ... 174
On-hold Tone ... 66
Open Answer ... 59
Options and related devices ... 492
Outbox ... 250
Out-camera ... 23
Outgoing Call Image ... 125
Outgoing Msg. Image ... 126
Own Number display ... 44
Recording ... 404

P

Packet communication
Dialup connection (APN) setup ... 444
Optimization ... 443
Settings ... 438
Pasting ... 470
Pause ... 48
PDF data
Bookmarks/marks ... 378
Capture Screen ... 380
Deleting ... 363
Displaying ... 375
Download from site ... 200
Moving/copying ... 358
Settings ... 380
Sorting ... 363
View/Edit Detail Info ... 360
Phone
Customized Call ... 52
Making calls ... 46
Receiving calls ... 56
Switch to video-phone call ... 49
Phone To (Mail) ... 259
Phone To (Site) ... 201
Phonebook ... 92
Caller ID Setting ... 107
Change the order ... 105
Check number of records ... 110
Check phonebook entries ... 103
Copy information ... 104
Deleting ... 106
Display in Japanese syllabary ... 100
Editing ... 104
Group Setting ... 98
Quick Dial ... 110
Register from mail ... 260
Register from site ... 202
Register to FOMA terminal ... 93
Register to UIM ... 97
Reject/Accept Call ... 148
Searching ... 99
Secret Attribute ... 108
Secret Code Setting ... 108
Video-phone Rate Setting ... 107
Phonebook No. Search ... 102
Phonebook Search ... 99
Pictogram words
Entering ... 467
List ... 481
Pictograms
Conversion list ... 483
Entering ... 468
List ... 481
PIM Lock ... 143
PIN1 Code ON/OFF ... 137
PIN1 code/PIN2 code
Changing ... 138
Play Sound ... 494
Power ... 41
Auto Power ON/OFF ... 387
Predict conversion function ... 467
Prefix setting ... 54
Priority Comm Mode ... 64
Privacy Mode Setting ... 145
PUK (PIN Unblocking Key) ... 35

Q

Quality Alarm ... 116
Quick Mail ... 239
Quick Reference Manual ... 524

R

Random Display Image ... 120
Ranking Search ... 101
Reason for no caller ID ... 57
Receive calls (→ Phone)
Receive Display ... 126
Receive Option ... 242
Setting ... 265
Received Calls ... 60
Received mail (→ Mail)
Reconnect Alarm ... 55
Redial ... 50
Register USSD ... 429
Reject non-Registered Caller ... 151
Reject nuisance caller ... 425
Reject/Accept Call ... 148
Remote Control ... 429
Remote control function ... 370
Remote Lock ... 141
Repairs ... 428
Reply to Mail ... 243
Response and Hold ... 65
Ring tone ... 112
Ring Volume Setting ... 62

S

SAR....514
Save Phase....469
Save Word....470
Scheduler
Calendar View Mode....391
Check No. of Items....399
Checking....396
Compose mail from schedule....397
Copying/pasting....396
Day Off Setting....391
Deleting....397
Holiday Setting....392
Member list....398
Saving....392
Secret Attribute....399
When the set time arrives....395
Screen Memo
Deleting....198
Displaying....197
Protecting....197
Renaming....197
Saving....196
Secrecy Search....109
Secret Attribute
Phonebook....108
Schedule....399
Secrecy Search....109
Secret Code
Registering....219
Setting....108
Secret Mode....147
Security code....136
Select Language....42
Self Mode....143
Send DTMF....86
Sent mail (→ Mail)
Service Dialing Number....428
Short Message (→ SMS)
Shutter key....23
Signature setting....264
Silent Mode....117
Simple menu....28
Site....181
Connect to SSL page....187
Display URL....190
Displaying....186
Last Visited URL....187
Operating....188
Reloading....190
Scrolling....190
Slot Input Method....471
SMS....223
Check SMS....279
Compose from phonebook....100
Composing....276
Deleting....258
Delivered report....224
Display Priority....270
Folder list screen....251
Insert signature....277
List screen....251
Quick Mail....239
Receiving....278
Save to UIM....280
Setting....279
Sort Criteria....262
View screen....251
Software Update....507
Sort Criteria....262
Sound Recorder....371
Sound Setting....112
Speaker....23
Speakerphone
Video-phone call....75
Voice call....47
SSL communication....183
Connecting....187
Stand-by display....41
Stand-by Display Setting....118
Clock Display Format....132
Stand-by time....37
Stand-by Voice Memo....405
Still Camera (→ Camera)
Sub Address....54
Submenu....31
Symbols
Conversion list....482
Entering....468
List....481

T

Talking Voice Memo....405
TASK key....23
Template....236
Downloading....233
Terminal security code
Changing....137
Timed pause....49
Transmit tone signals (DTMF)....86
Troubleshooting....497

U

UIM (FOMA card)
Functional differences....36
Inserting/removing....34
Operation restriction function....35
Register phonebook data....97
Security codes....35
Unblocking PIN lock....139
Unsent mail (→ Mail)
Unsent messages (folder)....250
URL
Copying....202
Displaying....190
Entering....192
History....192
Last Visited URL....187
Register in phonebook....203
USB Mode Setting....434
User certificate....213

V

Vibrator Setting....115
i-αppli....293
Video-phone....74
Brightness/color density....82
Camera Effects....82
Change images....83
Chara-den....79
Display settings....86
External Device....89
Frames....81
Indicate V-phone....88
Macro Mode....86
Make calls....74
Quality of outgoing images....81
Rate Setting....107
Receive calls....78
Send still image....83
Send tone signals....86
Settings during a call....87
Substitute image setting....80
Switch in-camera/out-camera....85
Switch outgoing images....81
Switch to voice call....77
Video-phone Settings....87
Zoom....85
Video-phone Dialing Image....125
Video-phone Receiving Setting....63
Video/i-motion
Capture....332
Clipping....333
Clip by size....334
Compoe i-motion Mail....329
Deleting....363
Edit Ticker....335
Editing....332
Moving/copying....358
Play album....360
Playback restrictions....331
Playing....328
Recording....164
Set as stand-by image....331
Set bookmark....330
Settings....336
Sort....363
View/Edit Detail Info....360
Virus Scan Function....511
Voice call (→ Phone)
Voice Mail Service....420
Voice Memo....405
Saving to phonebook....406
Volume Setting....62

W

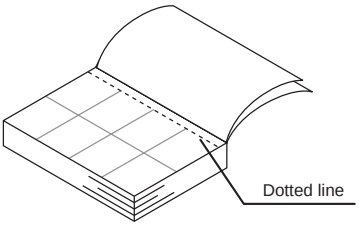
Warranty....505
Web To (Mail)....259
Web To (Site)....201
WORLD CALL....53
WORLD WING....36

Other

186/184 Call....51
3D Sound....113
5-touch Input Method....465
64K data communication
Settings....441
✲ 31#/#31#....51

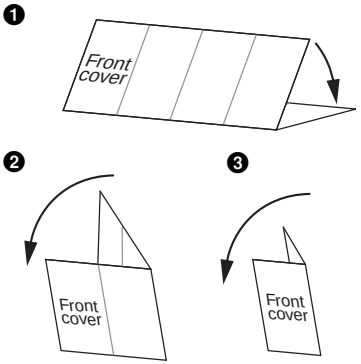
Quick Reference Manual

Use Quick Reference Manual included in this manual as follows.



Cut along the dotted line.

- Be careful not to hurt yourself when cutting.



Fold the sheet along the line so that the front cover is on top.

FOMA® D901iS
Quick Reference Manual

General Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

(In English)

0120-005-250 (toll free)
* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

(In Japanese only)

No prefix 151 (toll free)
* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

0120-800-000 (toll free)
* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

No prefix 113 (toll free)
* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

0120-800-000 (toll free)
* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

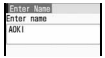
- Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
- For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

Registering entries in the phonebook

Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook

1 [Menu] [4 ghi] [2 abc] on the stand-by display

2 Enter a name → [i-mode]



3 Set each item → [i-mode]

- Shooting: [Menu] (Still image)/ [Video] (Video) Shooting procedure ☛P8
- Saving the other items such as ring tone: [▽]/[▽]

4 Enter the phonebook No. (0 to 699) → [●]

Registering entries into the UIM phonebook

1 [Menu] [4 ghi] [3 def] on the stand-by display

2 Enter a name → [i-mode]

3 Set each item → [i-mode]

Registering from the redial data or received call history

1 [▽] or [▽] on the stand-by display

2 Place the cursor at the entry to register → [Menu] [1 ,.]
- Adding to the registered entry: [Menu] [2 abc]

3 [1 ,.] (FOMA terminal phonebook) / [2 abc] (UIM phonebook)
- To add to the registered entry, select the party to add

4 Set each item → [i-mode]
- For the UIM phonebook, go to Step 6

5 Enter the phonebook No. (0 to 699) → [●]

6 To add to the registered entry, select ***Overwrite*** or ***New entry***

Editing the phonebook entries

1 [i-mode] on the stand-by display
- Switching the phonebook: [i-mode]

2 Place the cursor at the entry to edit → [Menu] [3 def]

3 Edit → [i-mode]
- For the UIM phonebook, go to Step 5

4 Enter the phonebook No. (0 to 699) → [●]

5 Select ***Overwrite*** or ***New entry***

Searching the phonebook entries

1 [Menu] [4 ghi] [1 ,.] on the stand-by display
- Switching the phonebook: [i-mode]

2 [1 ,.] to [7 pqrs]
- For the UIM phonebook, press [1 ,.] to [4 ghi]

Character entry

Switching 5-touch and Slot Input Method

● Switching during character inputs

[Menu] [7 pqrs] [1 ,.]

● Switching during stand-by

[Menu] [8 tuv] [5 jkl] [3 def] → Select input method field → [1 ,.](5-touch input) / [2 abc](slot input) → [i-mode]

Switching input mode

[*] several times during character inputs

- Pressing [i-mode] and selecting input mode can also switch

Entering/converting character (5-touch Input Method)

<Example> Entering "企業"

1 Enter characters in hiragana/kanji mode
"き" : [2 abc] 2 times → [▽] (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by automatic cursor function.)
"ぎ" : [2 abc] 2 times → [Func Input]
"ょ" : [8 tuv] 3 times → [Pwr Shift]
"う" : [1 ,.] 3 times
- Inserting characters: Move the cursor to position to insert → Enter characters
- Available operation before setting the entered characters
[Menu]: Changes characters to two-byte katakana
[クリア]: Canceling entered characters
[Pwr Shift]: Changes upper/lower case
[✉]: Return to a previous character immediately after character entry
(example:…→1→お→え→う→…)
[Func Input]: Adding voiced sound "゛" and semi-voiced sound "゜"
(example: →ぱ→ぱ→ほ→…)

2 [i-mode]
- Displaying conversion option list: [▽]/[i-mode]
- Returning to status before conversion: [クリア]

3 [●]

Deleting characters

● When the cursor is in the text

[クリア]: Deleting characters at the cursor
[クリア] for over a second: Deleting characters at the cursor position and all the characters at the right of the cursor

● When the cursor is in the end of the text

[クリア]: Deleting character at the left of the cursor
[クリア] for over a second: Deleting all entered characters

Entering symbols, pictograms and fixed phrases

● Entering symbols

[Pwr Shift] while entering → Select a symbol
- [i-mode] [1 ,.] can also input

● Entering pictograms

[✉] while entering → Select a pictogram
- [i-mode] [2 abc] can also input

● Entering fixed phrases

[i-mode] [7 pqrs] while entering → Select the type of fixed phrase → Select a fixed phrase
- [i-mode] [Menu] can also input

Kuten Code Input

[i-mode] [8 tuv] while entering → Enter 4-digit code

Cut here

Camera

Shooting still image/video

● Shooting still image

1 In stand-by, open the lens cover
2 Point the camera at the object and [●] or [📷]
3 [●] or [📷]

● Recording video

1 [●] for over a second on the stand-by display
2 Point the camera at the object and [●] or [📷]
3 [▭] or [📷]
4 [●] or [📷]

Displaying or playing shot image/video

● Displaying image

1 [●][1 ✉] on the stand-by display
2 Select ***Camera*** → Select image
• Displaying other images in folder: [●]

● Playing video

1 [●][2 abc] on the stand-by display
2 Select ***Camera*** → Select video
• Operation available during video playback
[●]: Adjust volume
[●]: Play fast forward
[●]: Pause/play
[▭]: Stop

Video-phone

Making video-phone calls

1 Enter the phone number on the stand-by display
2 [📞]
• Specifying the communication speed for dialing: [Menu][3 def] → Select call type → [Menu] → Select ***Yes***
3 Talk with the other party
• Placing call on hold: [●]
• Switching the speakerphone call: [Off]/[✉]
• Switching the image to send: [📞]

4 If a call is ended, [Off]

Receiving video-phone calls

1 A call is received
• Holding answer: [📞]
2 [Vol.]
• Operation during a call is the same as Step 3 of "Making video-phone calls"
3 If a call is ended, [Off]

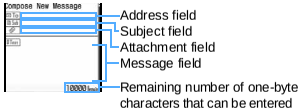
i-mode Mail

Number of characters sent/ received

Item	One-byte characters	Two-byte characters
Subject	30 characters	15 characters
Address	50 characters	-
Message	10,000 characters	5,000 characters

Composing and sending i-mode Mail

1 [✉] for over a second on the stand-by display



2 Select address field → Select input method → Enter or select address
3 Select subject field → Enter subject
4 Select message field → Enter message
• Composing Deco-mail: [✉] on the message text entry screen → Select decoration method → Enter characters
5 [▭]
• Saving mail: [Menu][2 abc]

File attachments

1 Select attachment field on the mail composition screen
Displaying the mail composition screen ☛P11
2 Select attachment type
• Shooting and attaching still image: ***Image*** → ***Use still camera***
• Recording and attaching video: ***i-motion*** → ***Use video camera***
3 Select ***Phone memory*** or ***miniSD card*** → Select a folder
4 Select a file
• Removing attachment: Place the cursor at the attachment field → [✉] → Select ***Yes***

Editing and sending unsent/sent i-mode Mail

<Example> Editing unsent mail

1 [✉][4 ghi] on the stand-by display
• Editing sent mail: [✉][5 jkl] on the stand-by display
2 Select a folder
3 Select mail
• Editing sent mail: [▭]
4 Edit → [▭]

Receiving i-mode Mail

1 Receive mail
The mail ring tone sounds, the call indicator lights/flashes and the reception result screen is displayed.
2 [●] or [1 ✉]
3 Select a folder
4 Select mail

Checking for i-mode Mail

[✉] twice on the stand-by display

Menu list

Press [Menu] on the stand-by display and input the number of each item.

<Example> Activating a camera
[Menu] → [5 mno] → [1 ✉]

1 Mail
- 1 Inbox
- 2 Compose message
- 3 Chat mail
- 4 Unsent messages
- 5 Outbox
- 6 Check new message
  - 1 i-mode message
  - 2 SMS
  - 3 Receive option
  - 4 Message retrieval
- 7 SMS
  - 1 Compose SMS
  - 2 Received SMS
  - 3 Sent SMS
  - 4 SMS settings
- 8 Read templates
- 9 Mail setting
  - 1 Incoming message
  - 2 Incoming chat mail
  - 3 Sort criteria
  - 4 Signature
  - 5 Reply format
  - 6 Receive option
  - 7 Incoming msg attach
  - 8 Mail group
  - 9 Display settings
    - 1 Message list
    - 2 Message attachment
    - 3 Display priority

2 i-mode
- 1 i Menu
- 2 Bookmark
- 3 Go to location
  - 1 Enter URL
  - 2 URL history
- 4 Screen memo
- 5 Last visited URL
- 6 i-mode message
- 7 Message R&F
  - 1 Message R
  - 2 Message F
  - 3 Message settings
    - 1 Auto display
    - 2 Message retrieval
    - 3 Message attachment
    - 4 Incoming msg. alert
- 8 i-mode setting
  - 1 i-mode shortcuts
  - 2 Connection timeout
  - 3 Host selection
  - 4 Set certificate
  - 5 Certificate download
  - 6 Certificate host
- 9 Display settings
  - 1 Image/Effect
  - 2 Display color
  - 3 i-motion settings

3 i-αppli
- 1 Software list
- 2 i-αppli settings
  - 1 Software sort
  - 2 Auto start
  - 3 Software info display
  - 4 Light settings
  - 5 Vibrate settings
  - 6 i-αppli shortcut
- 3 Display history

Cut here

4 Phonebook & Logs
- 1 Phonebook
- 2 Phonebook new entry
- 3 Phonebook(UIM) new entry
- 4 Received calls
- 5 Redial
- 6 Ans. machine/Voice memo
  - 1 Answer machine
  - 2 Recorded messages
  - 3 Record voice memo
  - 4 Voice memos
- 7 Own number

5 Data Box
- 1 Image
- 2 i-motion
- 3 Melody
- 4 Chara-den
- 5 My Documents

6 Tools
- 1 Camera
- 2 Movie camera
- 3 Sound recorder
- 4 Bar code reader
- 5 Data exchange
  - 1 Send all Ir data
  - 2 Receive Ir data
  - 3 Data exchange settings
  - 4 USB mode settings
- 6 miniSD card
- 7 IC card software list

7 Stationery
- 1 Scheduler
- 2 Notepad
- 3 Alarm clock
- 4 Calculator

8 Settings
- 1 Sounds/Vibrate
  - 1 Set sound
  - 2 Ring volume
    - 1 Ring alert volume
    - 2 Msg. alert volume
  - 3 Volume
  - 4 Keypad sound
  - 5 Low battery alert
  - 6 Silent mode
  - 7 Vibrator
  - 8 Set mute seconds
  - 9 Charge alert
- 2 Display
  - 1 Stand-by
  - 2 Mail/Call image
    - 1 Outgoing call
    - 2 Incoming call
    - 3 Video-phone dialing
    - 4 Video-phone receiving
    - 5 Contact image
    - 6 Outgoing msg. image
    - 7 Incoming msg. image
    - 8 Retrieving image
    - 9 Receive display
  - 3 Color scheme
  - 4 Battery icon
  - 5 Display light
  - 6 Alert lighting
  - 7 Font
  - 8 Select language
  - 9 Information line
- 3 Security
  - 1 Lock
    - 1 All lock
    - 2 PIM lock
    - 3 Remote lock
    - 4 IC card lock

8 Settings
- 2 Secret mode
- 3 Keypad dial lock
- 4 UIM
- 5 Change security code
- 6 Privacy mode
- 7 Scanning function
  - 1 Update definition
  - 2 Scanning settings
  - 3 Scan version
- 4 Info/Reset
  - 1 Call duration
  - 2 Confirm
  - 3 Battery level
  - 4 Call cost
    - 1 Last call cost
    - 2 Call cost limit
    - 3 Remove call cost icon
    - 4 Reset call cost
  - 5 Reset
  - 6 Delete all data
- 5 Clock
  - 1 Date & time
  - 2 Auto power ON
  - 3 Auto power OFF
  - 4 Clock display format
  - 5 Alarm auto power ON
- 6 Call/Answer
  - 1 Outgoing call
  - 2 Incoming call
  - 3 Anonymous caller

8 Settings
- 4 Headset
  - 1 Headset switch
  - 2 Auto answer
  - 3 Headset quick dial
- 5 Reject/Accept call
- 6 Memory reject call
- 7 Status message
- 8 Any key answer
- 9 Priority comm mode
- 7 Call
  - 1 Noise reduction
  - 2 Reconnect alarm
  - 3 On-hold tone
  - 4 Quality alarm
  - 5 Prefix dialing
  - 6 Auto assist setting
  - 7 Sub address
  - 8 Close settings
  - 9 Open answer
- 8 Video-phone
  - 1 Video-phone dialing
  - 2 Video-phone receiving
  - 3 Operation
  - 4 Image
  - 5 External device
  - 6 Indicate V-phone
    - 1 Indication ON
    - 2 Indication OFF
    - 3 Check Indication
- 9 Others
  - 1 Save word
  - 2 Save phrase
  - 3 Text input method
  - 4 Self mode
  - 5 NW search method
  - 6 Software Update
  - 7 Edit by slide

9 NW Services
- 1 Voice mail
  - 1 Voicemail service
    - 1 Activate Voice mail
    - 2 Set ringing time
    - 3 Deactivate Voice mail
    - 4 Voice mail Status Request
    - 5 Play messages
    - 6 Voice mail settings
    - 7 Check messages
  - 2 Notification
  - 3 Notify missed call
    - 1 Activate Missed Call Notification
    - 2 Deactivate Missed Call Notification
    - 3 Missed Call Notification Status Request
  - 4 Remove voicemail count
- 2 Call waiting
  - 1 Activate Call Waiting
  - 2 Deactivate Call Waiting
  - 3 Call Waiting Status Request
- 3 Call forwarding
  - 1 Activate Call Forwarding
  - 2 Deactivate Call Forwarding
  - 3 Register The Forwarding Number
  - 4 Setting at Forwarded Party Busy
  - 5 Call Forwarding Status Request
- 4 Nuisance call barring
  - 1 Register Nuisance Caller
  - 2 Delete all entries
  - 3 Delete Most Recent Entry
- 5 Caller ID notification
  - 1 Activate/Deactivate Caller ID Notification
  - 2 Caller ID Notification Status Request

9 NW Services
- 6 Caller ID request
  - 1 Activate Caller ID Request
  - 2 Deactivate Caller ID Request
  - 3 Caller ID Request Status Request
- 7 Set arrival act
  - 1 Activate Arrival Act
  - 2 Deactivate Arrival Act
  - 3 Arrival Act Status Request
- 8 Arrival call act
- 9 Others
  - 1 Register USSD
  - 2 Record reply message
  - 3 Remote control
    - 1 Activate Remote Control
    - 2 Deactivate Remote Control
    - 3 Remote Control Status Request
  - 4 English guidance
    - 1 Guidance Setting
    - 2 Guidance Status Request
  - 5 Dual network
    - 1 Dual Network Switching
    - 2 Dual Network Status Request
  - 6 Service Dialing Number
    - 1 ドコモ故障問合せ
    - 2 ドコモ総合案内・受付
- 0 Own number

Key operations for functions

Start operation on the stand-by display.

Function	Operation procedure
Power ON/OFF	for over 2 seconds
Setting/canceling Self Mode	for over a second → Select *Yes* (To cancel, for over a second)
Setting/canceling Key Lock	Slide the keylock switch downward and release
Setting/canceling Driving Mode	for over a second
i-mode menu	
i-αppli folder list	for over a second
Received Calls	
Activating/canceling Privacy Mode*	for over a second (To cancel, for over a second → Enter the terminal security code)
Redial	
Setting/canceling Silent Mode	or for over a second
New Task menu	

Function	Operation procedure
Answer Machine/Voice Memo menu	
Setting/canceling IC Card Lock	for over a second → Select *Yes* (To cancel, for over a second → Enter the terminal security code)

* Available only when Privacy Mode Setting is made.

Network services

Voice Mail Service

Separate application (pay) is required.

● Activating the service

1. on the stand-by display
2. Select *Yes*
3. Select *Yes*
4. Enter ringing time →

Cut here

● **Deactivating the service**

1 Menu 9 WXYZ 1 あ 1 あ 3 DEF on the stand-by display

2 Select ***Yes***

● **Playing back voice mail message**

1 Menu 9 WXYZ 1 あ 1 あ 5 JKL on the stand-by display

2 Select ***Yes***

3 Follow the voice prompts

Call Waiting Service

Separate application (pay) is required.

● **Activating/deactivating the service**

1 Menu 9 WXYZ 2 ABC on the stand-by display

2 1 あ (Start) or 2 ABC (Stop)

3 Select ***Yes***

● **Answering another call**

TALK during a call

• Switching the other parties: Flash

● **Making another call**

Menu 8 TUV during a call → Enter phone number → TALK

• Switching the other parties: Flash

● **Ending a call**

If another call is ended, END

• Call resumption with on-hold person: TALK

Call Forwarding Service

Separate application (free) is required.

● **Activating the service**

1 Menu 9 WXYZ 3 DEF 1 あ on the stand-by display

2 Select ***Yes***

3 Select ***Yes***

4 Enter the forwarding destination phone number → ●

• Entering the destination from the phonebook: Menu

5 ☎ → Select ***Yes***

6 Enter ringing time → ●

● **Deactivating the service**

1 Menu 9 WXYZ 3 DEF 2 ABC on the stand-by display

2 Select ***Yes***

Caller ID Request Service

Separate application is not required (free).

● **Activating/deactivating the service**

1 Menu 9 WXYZ 6 MNO on the stand-by display

2 1 あ (Start) or 2 ABC (Stop)

3 Select ***Yes***

Services available from FOMA terminal

Service	Phone No.
Collect calls (calls charged to receiver)	106
Directory assistance for general subscriber phone numbers and DoCoMo mobile phone numbers (charged) (unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)	104
Telegrams (charged) 8 am to 10 pm	115

Service	Phone No.
Time (charged)	117
Weather (charged)	Area code +177
Police (emergency calls)	110
Fire and ambulance (emergency calls)	119
Emergency calls at sea	118
Disaster Voice Mail Service (charged)	171

Reading display

Top of the display

① : Battery level　漢 : Character input mode

② : Received signal level　圏外 : Out of service area

Self : Self Mode is set

⇌ : During data transfer

③ : In i-mode communication (site connection)

: In i-mode communication (packet communication)

④ : During infrared communication

⑤ : Speakerphone function used

: During USB hands-free communication

: Total call cost exceeds the maximum limit

⑥ : Mail storage status in i-mode Center

⑦ : Received mail status

⑧ : Received Message R status

⑨ : Received Message F status

⑩ : i-αppli stand-by display on

: i-αppli DX stand-by display on

/ : i-αppli/i-αppli DX execution

⑪ : During SSL page display

⑫ : Secret Mode is set

⑬ : i-αppli Auto Start failed

Bottom of the display

① : Number of missed calls

② : Number of recorded messages

③ : Number of new voice mail messages

④ : Number of unread mail

⑤ : Silent Mode is set

: Customize Silent Mode is set

⑥ : Ring alert volume is silent

: Vibrator for incoming voice call is set

: Ring alert volume is silent and vibrator for incoming voice call set

⑦ : Driving Mode is set

⑧ : Answer Machine is set

: Recorded messages full

⑨ : Key Lock is set

⑩ : Connected with USB cable

⑪ : Effective Easy Selector Plus keys in Focus Mode

⑫ : miniSD memory card inserted

⑬ : Reading UIM

: IC Card Lock is set

⑭ : PIM Lock is set

: Keypad Dial Lock is set

⑮ : Alarm Clock is set

: Schedule alarm is set

: Alarm Clock and schedule alarm are set

⑯ : Software Update reserved

* When ***Partial display*** in Information Line Setting is set to ***ON***, and the display light is turned off, various icons (battery level, received signal level, received mail status, missed calls, Silent Mode and Key Lock) are displayed on the information line.

General Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

(In English)

0120-005-250 (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

(In Japanese only)

No prefix 151 (toll free)

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

0120-800-000 (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

No prefix 113 (toll free)

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

0120-800-000 (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

• Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

• For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

Cut here

Mobile phone etiquette

When using your FOMA terminal, always be considerate of your environment and those around you.

Turn the power off in the following situations

■**In prohibited areas**

Use of mobile phones in the following places is prohibited. You must turn the power off.

・Airplanes ・Hospitals

You must also turn the power off when in lobbies or waiting rooms of hospitals as there could be people in such areas who could be adversely affected by mobile phone signals.

■**While driving**

Using your FOMA terminal while driving could cause an accident. Stop the vehicle in a safe place before using the phone or use the phone in Driving Mode.

■**On crowded trains or in other areas where there could be a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator**

Operating a mobile phone could interfere with implanted cardiac pacemakers or defibrillators.

■**When visiting live events, movie theaters, museums or other public spaces**

The ringing of your phone and your telephone conversations could disturb others around you in quiet public spaces.

Be considerate of your location and those around you with respect to the volume of your speaking voice and your FOMA terminal's ring tone

■**When using a mobile phone in a restaurant, hotel lobby or other quiet places, always remember to lower your voice.**

■**When using a mobile phone on the street, find a place that does not interfere with passing traffic.**

Consider privacy

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Functions convenient for public etiquette

You may select a mode to reject incoming calls, turn off all sounds generated by your FOMA terminal, or choose some other modes to keep from disturbing those around you.

●**Silent Mode/Customize Silent Mode**

Keypad sound, ring tones and other all sounds generated by the FOMA terminal are turned off except for the shutter sound while shooting (Silent Mode). ☛P117

The user is allowed to change Silent Mode operations (Customize Silent Mode). ☛P117

●**Driving Mode**

When a call is received while driving, an announcement informs the caller that you cannot answer the call because you are driving and the call is then disconnected. Your driving concentration is not affected as the ring tones are silenced. ☛P67

●**Vibrator**

When a call is received, the FOMA terminal vibrates instead of ringing. ☛P115

●**Answer Machine**

When you cannot answer a call, the caller can leave a brief voice message. ☛P69

You may also use optional services such as Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service. ☛P420, P424

This printed matter is recyclable. Please recycle this manual when you no longer need it for reference purposes.

Application for “Voice Mail Service”, “Call Waiting Service”, “Call Forwarding Service”, “Nuisance Call Blocking Service” , “WORLD CALL” and “WORLD WING” is available using DoCoMo e-site.

●Access via i-mode iMenu ►□料金＆お申込(charges & application) ►■ドコモeサイト(DoCoMo e-site)
Packet communication charges free

●Access via PC http://www.esite.nttdocomo.co.jp/

- You will need your “network ID” that you specified at the time of application in order to access e-site via i-mode.
- No packet communication charges are incurred when accessing e-site via i-mode. However, part of the charge may apply in some cases.
- You will need your “user ID” and “password” in order to access e-site from your PC.
- If you do not have or if you have forgotten your “network ID”, “user ID” and “password”, please contact the DoCoMo Information Center listed below.
- DoCoMo e-site may not be available depending upon the content of your subscription.
- There may be cases where access to e-site may not be available due to system maintenance, etc.

General Inquiries ＜DoCoMo Information Center＞

(In English)

0120-005-250 (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

(In Japanese only)

(No prefix) 151 (toll free)

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

0120-800-000 (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

- Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

(No prefix) 113 (toll free)

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

0120-800-000 (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

- Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
- For further information, refer to the “Nationwide Service Station List” included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

Do not forget your cellular phone
... or your manners!

When using your portable phone in a public place, do not forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION

Li-ion

To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to an NTT DoCoMo service center, an NTT DoCoMo agent or a recycle center.

Made from 100% recycled paper.

This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.

8600148B
’05.9 (2.1st edition)